Clinical Pathologic Conferences of Cook County Hospital

Volume I

Cardiovascular-Renal Problems

Clinical Pathologic Conferences of Cook County Hospital

Volume I

Cardiovascular-Renal Problems

Edited by

HANS POPPER M D Ph D

Director Department of Pathology Cook County Hospital
Scientific Director Hektoen Institute for Medical Research of the Cook County Hospital
Associate Professor of Pathology Northwestern University Medical School

and

DANIEL S KUSHNER M D

Associate Director of Medical Education Cook County Hospital
Research Associate Hektoen Institute for Medical Research of the Cook County Hospital
Clinical Assistant in Medicine and *Fellow in Pathology* Northwestern University Medical School



New York THE BLAKISTON COMPANY INC Toronto

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number 54–9854

Printed in the United States of America
At the Country Life Press Garden City, N Y

Participants

ALLEN ARTHUR C MD
Pathologist The James Ewing Hospital
Assistant Attending Pathologist Memorial Cancer Center New York City

ARIES PHILIP L MD
Former Attending Pediatrician Cook County Hospital
Professor of Pediatrics Chicago Medical School

ARKIN AARON PH D MD
Consulting Physician Cook County Hospital
Rush Professor of Medicine University of Illinois College of Medicine

ARMSTRONG S H JR MD
Attending Physician and Director of Medical Education Cook County Hospital
Professor of Medicine University of Illinois College of Medicine

ATLAS DONALD H, PH D MD
Attending Physician Cook County Hospital
Associate Professor of Medicine Chicago Medical School

BENNETT GRANVILLE MD
Professor of Pathology and Head of Department
University of Illinois College of Medicine

BERNSTEIN ARTHUR MD
Attending Physician Cook County Hospital
Clinical Associate Professor of Medicine University of Illinois College of Medicine

BRONSTEIN I P MD
Attending Pediatrician Children s Division Cook County Hospital
Professor of Pediatrics University of Illinois College of Medicine

CARDON LEONARD MD
Attending Physician Cook County Hospital
Associate Professor of Medicine Northwestern University Medical School

CORNBLEET THEODORE PH D MD
Attending Dermatologist Cook County Hospital
Clinical Professor of Dermatology University of Illinois College of Medicine

DEFEO HERMAN F M D
Attending Physician Cook County Hospital
Associate Professor of Medicine Loyola University Stritch School of Medicine

FELDMAN L M D
Attending Physician Cook County Hospital
Associate Professor of Medicine University of Illinois College of Medicine

FOLEY EDMUND F M D
Head of Department of Medicine Cook County Hospital
Professor of Medicine University of Illinois College of Medicine

FRIEDELL MORRIS T M D
Attending Surgeon Cook County Hospital
Associate Clinical Professor of Surgery Loyola University Stritch School of Medicine

FRIEDMAN IRVING A M D
Associate Director Hematology Laboratory and Associate Attending Physician Cook County Hospital

GASUL BENJAMIN M M D
Director Pediatric Cardiology Cook County Hospital
Associate Clinical Professor of Pediatrics University of Illinois College of Medicine

GOLDEN JACOB S M D
Former Attending Physician Cook County Hospital
Assistant Professor of Medicine Northwestern University Medical School

HOFFMAN SAMUEL J M D
Executive Director Hektoen Institute for Medical Research of Cook County Hospital
Associate Professor of Pediatrics University of Illinois College of Medicine

HOFFMAN WILLIAM S PH D M D
Former Director of Biochemistry Hektoen Institute for Medical Research of the Cook County Hospital
Professorial Lecturer in Medicine University of Illinois College of Medicine

HOLMES GEORGE W M D
Attending Surgeon Cook County Hospital
Associate in Surgery Northwestern University Medical School

ISAACS HARRY J M D
Attending Physician Cook County Hospital
Professor and Chairman Department of Medicine Chicago Medical School

KAPLAN SHERMAN R M D
Former Attending Physician Cook County Hospital
Assistant Attending Physician Mount Sinai Hospital Miami Beach Florida

KOBAK ALFRED J M D
Attending Physician Department of Obstetrics Cook County Hospital
Associate Clinical Professor in Obstetrics and Gynecology University of Illinois College of Medicine

LANDAU GEORGE M M D
Director Department of Radiology Cook County Hospital
Assistant Professor of Radiology Northwestern University Medical School

LEVIN I MICHAEL M D
Consultant in Pediatrics Children s Division Cook County Hospital

LEVINE RACHMIEL M D
Chairman Department of Medicine and Director of Education Michael Reese Hospital
Professorial Lecturer (Physiology) University of Chicago

LUISADA ALDO A M D
Associate Professor of Medicine and Director Division of Cardiology Chicago Medical School

O DONOGHUE JOHN B M D
Attending Surgeon Cook County Hospital
Clinical Professor of Surgery Loyola University Stritch School of Medicine

POPPER HANS M D PH D
Director Department of Pathology Cook County Hospital
Scientific Director Hektoen Institute for Medical Research of the Cook County Hospital
Associate Professor of Pathology Northwestern University Medical School

PREC OLDRICH PH D M D
Former Cardiophysiologist Hektoen Institute for Medical Research Cook County Hospital
Director of Cardiovascular Research Laboratory St Luke s Hospital

RIMMERMAN ABRAHAM B M D
Attending Physician Chief of Cardiac Clinic Cook County Hospital
Professor of Medicine Chicago Medical School

ROLNICK HARRY C M D
Former Attending Urologist Cook County Hospital
Professor and Chairman Department of Urology Chicago Medical School

ROSENBLUM ARTHUR H M D
Attending Pediatrician Cook County Hospital
Associate Department of Pediatrics Northwestern University Medical School

SNAPPER I PH D M D
Former Director of Medical Education Cook County Hospital at present Director of Medicine and Medical Education Beth El Hospital Brooklyn New York

STEIGMANN FREDERICK M D
Attending Physician and Director of Therapeutics Cook County Hospital
Associate Professor of Medicine University of Illinois College of Medicine

SZANTO PAUL B M D
Associate Director Department of Pathology Cook County Hospital
Assistant Professor of Pathology University of Illinois College of Medicine

TAUBENHAUS MATTHEW M D
Associate Attending Physician Department of Medicine Michael Reese Hospital

TURNER GEORGE C M D
Attending Physician Cook County Hospital
Medical Director Tuberculosis Hospital Oak Forest Illinois
Assistant Professor of Medicine Northwestern University Medical School

VAN DELLEN THEODORE R M D
Associate Professor of Medicine and Assistant Dean Northwestern University Medical School
Attending Physician Passavant Memorial Hospital

*VOLINI ITALO M D
Vice President of Staff and Attending Physician Cook County Hospital
Professor and Head of Department Loyola University Stritch School of Medicine

WARNICK EDWARD G M D
Former Associate Radiologist Cook County Hospital
Assistant Clinical Professor of Radiology Loyola University Stritch School of Medicine

ZAUS EARL A M D
Attending Physician Cook County Hospital
Associate Professor of Medicine Northwestern University Medical School

* *Deceased*

Foreword

Cook County Hospital has a long and cherished tradition of Clinical Pathologic Conferences going back to the time of the unforgettable Richard Jaffe In the practice of medicine many challenging questions arise and often a satisfactory answer to them never becomes available It may therefore be enlightening to read solutions to some of these clinical problems as they are derived from pathologic analyses Such a presentation is appropriate for a large general hospital whose mission as a teaching institution in its own right is reflected in such conferences Its teaching function differs in principle from that of a university although it offers all of its facilities for the teaching of undergraduate medical students The main emphasis is given to the training of the house staff and the medical development of its attending staff as well as of physicians taking postgraduate courses at the Cook County Graduate School of Medicine In such conferences the intern will be able to follow a clinical problem from its beginning to its end The resident will sharpen his sense of correlation between the clinical and laboratory observations and the underlying abnormality and the postgraduate physician the attending physician the alumnus and the visiting postgraduate student may enjoy the opportunity to refresh himself in various fields of medicine to note progress made and last but not least to accept and offer ideas and information There is also a mutual stimulation between the presentation of these conferences and the basic and clinical investigations in the hospital and the affiliated Hektoen Institute for Medical Research This volume is therefore submitted to make available this type of teaching endeavor to a larger audience Thanks and credit should be given to the entire attending and house staff of Cook County Hospital Their clinical observations and devotion to the care of the patients make these conferences possible Appreciation should be expressed to the members *of the Department of Pathology* for organizing and conducting the con

I should like to express gratitude for their interest and encouragement I have also to thank most cordially, several donors for generous gifts of chemical material, among these donors are Dr Girard of Paris, Dr Laqueur of Amsterdam Dr Macbeth of Organon Limited, Mr Smart and Dr Miescher of the Ciba Company To Dr Macbeth I am greatly indebted for extensive references to relevant literature I should like also to acknowledge valuable advice from Dr F H A Marshall To Dr J N Goldsmith I am especially grateful not only has he prepared an exceptionally helpful index but he has given great help with proof reading and advice on various details Lastly I must mention the unremitting help which I have received from my wife without whose aid this book could not have been written

H B

London 1944

PART I GONADOTROPHINS

Chapter I *The Nature and Functions of Gonadotrophins*

Introductory remarks Inactivation excretion sources and distribution of gonadotrophin Are the pituitary gonadotrophins identical with those produced by the placenta? Are FRH and LH distinct compounds? The action of gonadotrophins on the ovary and testis The interstitial cell stimulating hormone Puberty and the awakening of sexual activity

Introductory Remarks

THE gonadotrophins are so called because they govern the development and biological activities of the gonads * Cushing & Goetsch (1915) showed that pituitary deficiency, whether naturally or artificially produced is accompanied by atrophy of the reproductive and adrenal glands Noble (1938*a*) has described the progressive atrophy of these organs and of some of the accessory genital structures which follows hypophysectomy in male and female rats (Table 1)

TABLE 1 Progressive atrophy of reproductive organs after hypophysectomy in male and female rats (Noble 1938*a*)

Males

Intervening time (weeks)	Number	Average weights of organs in mg			
		Testes	Prostate	Seminal vesicles	Adrenals
1	12	1 04	120	52	12
2	12	854	109	56	12
4	8	366	87	42	8
6	5	273	54	34	5

Females

Weeks	Number	Average weights of organs in mg		
		Ovaries	Uterus	Adrenals
1	4	24	142	28
2	6	22	129	23
4	4	17	117	14
6	3	15	82	8

The changes in the gonads and adrenal cortices after removal of the pituitary include shrinkage of nuclei and cytoplasm with arrest of secretion These results can be prevented or if already present can be reversed by injecting extracts made from the anterior lobe of the pituitary of other animals into the muscles or subcutaneous tissues

The chemical nature of the gonadotrophins has not been exactly determined They are soluble in water give the general reactions of proteins and are precipitated without denaturation by ethyl alcohol According to Askew & Parkes (1933) the ovulation producing hormone of pregnancy urine is inactivated by heating to 100 C in water but loses none of its activity if kept at that temperature for 1 hour when dry the results are unaffected by the exclusion of oxygen From

* γονή = gonad τροφή = nourishment

these and other observations it seems that the gonadotrophins are proteins or are so closely associated with proteins that their activity disappears when the latter are destroyed The gonadotrophins also contain carbohydrate in the form of mannose and galactose Among gonadotrophins from different sources Gurin (1942) has detected differences in the carbohydrate content

The effects of proteolytic enzymes on gonadotrophin Evans Simpson & Austin (1933*b*) found that the gonadotrophin of pregnant mares serum was but little affected by pepsin during 4 hours at 37° C when the *p*H was between 4 and 5 though at a *p*H of between 1 8 and 2 its activity was destroyed They note that other samples lost their potency when subjected to this *p*H in the absence of pepsin Trypsin at a *p*H of 8 5 inactivated the hormone Bates Riddle & Lahr (1934) obtained FRH from beef pituitaries and digested it with trypsin at 37° C and *p*H 8 0 for 2 hours The material after this treatment was injected in four equal daily doses into immature ring doves whose testes were weighed 96 hours after the first dose, and compared with those of untreated birds of the same age The results show that the hormone had been destroyed by the tryptic digest (Table 2) (See also Riddle, Bates Lahr & Moran 1936)

TABLE 2 The effect of trypsin on a gonadotrophic extract rich in FRH (Bates, Riddle & Lahr, 1934)

Material injected	Dose (mg)	Average weight of doves testes 96 hours after the first injection mg	
		Uninjected control doves	Injected doves
Untreated FRH	4	8 7	49 2
	4	6 5	34 0
FRH after digestion with trypsin	4	6 5	6 8
	4	7 8	10 7
	8	6 3	6 6
	8	6 3	8 8

Van Dyke (1936) says that the gonadotrophin of pregnancy urine is rendered inert by boiling ultra violet light hydrogen peroxide or trypsin but not by pepsin though according to Fevold (1937) it is destroyed by pepsin Collip (1937) states that pituitary gonadotrophin is inactivated by prolonged boiling and is sensitive to alkali losing its potency at a little beyond *p*H 8 Thyrotrophic hormone he says shows approximately the same reactions Using extracts of sheep s pituitary McShan & Meyer (1938 1939) found that LH* is largely if not entirely destroyed by trypsin when exposed to it for 3½ hours at 37° C and *p*H 8 0 and is relatively resistant to ptyalin whereas FRH is resistant to trypsin and destroyed by ptyalin Ch en & Van Dyke (1939) found that tryptic digestion abolished most of the luteinizing action of extracts of sheep or horse pituitary but large doses of such digested extracts still caused some luteinization in the ovaries of hypophysectomized immature rats, showing that the destruction was not complete

* For brevity and ease of discussion follicle ripening and luteinizing hormones will be referred to as FRH and LH respectively as though their separate identities had been established

Chow Greep & Van Dyke (1939) incubated extracts of fresh pig pituitaries at 37° C with various proteolytic enzymes some of their results are given in Table 3 and show that the gonadotrophin used was inactivated by trypsin chymotrypsin and pepsin but not by papain or carboxypeptidase

TABLE 3 The effect of proteolytic enzymes on pituitary gonadotrophin (Chow Greep & Van Dyke, 1939)

Enzyme	*p*H of digest	FRH	LH	Thyrotrophin
Pepsin	4 57	+		+
Papain	4 57	−	−	−
Trypsin	8 69	+ −	+	+
Chymotrypsin	8 69	+ −	+	+
Carboxypeptidase	8 69	−	−	−

NOTE + = inactivated − = not inactivated + − = partially inactivated

Abramowitz & Hisaw (1939) have also investigated the action of proteolytic enzymes on three different gonadotrophins namely purified FRH and LH extracted from the pituitaries of sheep and a chorionic gonadotrophin derived from the urine of pregnant women Their findings suggest some differences in the proteolytic reactions of the extracts which were tested (Table 4)

TABLE 4 Proteolysis of pituitary and chorionic gonadotrophins (Abramowitz & Hisaw 1939)

Enzyme	*p*H of digest	Pituitary gonadotrophin FRH	LH	Chorionic gonadotrophin
Papain	7 1	+ −	−	+
Trypsin	7 1	+	+	+
Chymotrypsin	7 6	+ −	+ −	+
Crude ptyalin	7 1	+	−	+

NOTE + = inactivated − = not inactivated + − = partially inactivated

Li (1940) ground and treated the pituitaries of gonadectomized rats with trypsin at *p*H 9 6 and incubated the material for 2 hours at 38 C after which it was assayed on 21 day old female rats eight doses being given in 4 days and the findings were compared with those obtained by pituitaries which had not been treated with trypsin (Table 5) His results show that the extract used which was rich in FRH was to a large extent inactivated by trypsin the high degree of alkalinity of the digest will be noted

TABLE 5 The effect of trypsin on the gonadotrophic potency of the rat s pituitary (Li 1940)

Sex of pituitary donor	Total dose (mg)	Pituitary treated by trypsin	Mean weight of ovaries in test rats (mg)	Mean weight of uterus in test rats (mg)
Female	5	−	69 76	82 10
Female	10	+	23 73	63 77
Male	5	−	66 65	82 89
Male	10	+	22 81	40 35

The results of proteolysis which have just been mentioned though they are not all in complete agreement suggest that the gonadotrophins if not themselves

Preface to the Fifth Edition

Although many, many books written on heart disease are continuously coming off the presses yet it seems to our Publishers and to your Editors that bringing these volumes up to date in loose leaf form is a worthwhile project

The problem of cardiovascular disease has become so large and so complicated that it appears to us impossible for one man to write a completely satisfactory book on this subject We have been unusually fortunate in the cooperation of the outstanding authorities in cardiovascular disease in this country and whatever value these volumes have is almost entirely due to them

Since there are in all fifty nine contributors and since the various problems of cardiovascular disease are so closely related there has been necessarily some overlapping In our opinion this is justifiable since it is seldom that two authorities have exactly the same ideas concerning any cardiovascular problem

Although these volumes cover the entire subject of cardiovascular disease the form is not encyclopedic There is no chapter on the prognosis in different types of cardiovascular disease since this subject is considered in the various chapters

There has been a radical revision of these volumes in this edition Practically every chapter has been revised and brought up to date with additional references

With loose leaf binding it will be possible to keep the chapters up to date and to continuously revise them in the light of newer concepts and advancements in the various aspects of cardiology Revisions and additions will be issued as the Editors deem necessary

A criticism of the past editions has been that they did not cover the subject completely and hence could not be used as reference volumes This of course depends upon the index as much as the contents We believe this criticism has been overcome through the new and complete index which has been prepared by one who is well trained and experienced in such matters

Although we hesitate to draw attention to any of the chapters specifically yet some of the chapters should be mentioned

The section on surgery has been covered in an outstanding manner by Dr Claude S Beck in Surgery of the Heart and Pericardium and Dr Robert R Glover and Dr Julio C Davila in Surgery of the Cardiovascular System As in the Fourth Edition attention should be drawn to the chapter on Electrocardiography by Dr Samuel Bellet and Dr Thomas M McMillan Any physician can find an almost exact duplicate for most electrocardiograms among the figures in this chapter and from

the text make a conservative and accurate interpretation of such electrocardiograms although, in our opinion it is important for any physician using a galvanometer to take a course in electrocardiography before attempting to interpret electrocardiograms

There has been a determined effort to secure many illustrative case histories, since this is recognized as a practical method of presenting the necessary procedures for diagnosis and effective treatment

Although it is impossible to include pictures of all the men who have contributed toward the advancement of the knowledge of cardiovascular disease yet some have been chosen by Dr William G Leaman as the most outstanding

The arrangement of the material in the previous editions has been criticized This arrangement was based upon the Nomenclature and Criteria for Diagnosis of Diseases of the Heart as published by the American Heart Association namely etiological anatomical physiological and treatment with peripheral vascular disease at the end In this edition as far as possible treatment follows the various etiological types of cardiovascular diseases

Nothing that we may say can adequately express our gratitude to those who have contributed to these volumes and we heartily agree with the late Sir Thomas Lewis in his remarks concerning their qualifications as authorities upon the subjects which they have discussed

Again we wish to thank the F A Davis Company and particularly Frederick C Smith M D and Mrs Florence W Brehm for their kindness and helpfulness in preparing these volumes

William D Stroud, M D
Morris W Stroud III M D

Table of Contents

VOLUME 1

Pages xv to xxii replace former pages xv to xxvi © 1959

VOLUME 2

Cardiovascular Disease

I

I

Historical Comments Pertaining to Cardiology

It is impossible to appreciate and understand fully the remarkable achievements of modern medicine without a general knowledge at least, of the historical events which made possible the exalted position of modern medicine Furthermore the future of medicine cannot be plotted wisely if the errors of the past and the present remain unrecognized and are therefore perpetuated

Medicine and astronomy were the first of the natural sciences and the long and noble tradition of medicine is inseparably linked with the evolutionary ascendancy of civilization and the welfare of mankind The history of medicine like history in general, represents great cycles of events and human activity The span of these cycles is not precise but extends from one era to another and often bridges several eras One cycle may not yet be complete when another cycle has its inception History is actually the record of the actions of man based on thought understanding initiative and accomplishment It is profoundly influenced by customs contemporary events opportunities and adversities religious beliefs and various prohibitions economic and political conditions wars famines and epidemics

Therefore to appreciate fully the history of medicine it is necessary to appraise the overall cyclic pattern and to regard the individuals who for good or for bad have enacted their roles in the evolution of the magnificent yet uncompleted pageant which we know as modern medicine'

It would be impossible to record comprehensively the historical development of knowledge relating to the heart and circulation within the limitations of a chapter Therefore emphasis will be accorded the historical milestones pertaining to the evolution of physical diagnosis with special reference to the heart

Modern medicine finds itself in an era of mechanization Almost countless new methods of diagnosis have been introduced and while each method is of limited importance through wise utilization and judicious interpretation each becomes a valuable adjunct to diagnostic procedures In modern medical philosophy a tendency exists to subordinate the importance of physical diagnosis This is true not only in practice but also unfortunately in teaching The time has not come when diagnostic ad

juncts can or should supersede the basic and time tested methods of physical diagnosis

The utilization of inspection and palpation is clearly described in the earliest medical records the Egyptian papyri These documents, inscribed on a paper like material derived their name from the fact that the fabric was prepared from the fibers of the reed Cyperus papyrus, which grew in profusion along the banks of the river Nile Seven of them deal with medical and surgical subjects

The Edwin Smith Surgical Papyrus the last to be discovered but the oldest in space of time was discovered in Thebes in 1862 It was found by Edwin Smith, the first American Egyptologist This valuable document came into possession of Smith s daughter after his death and she in turn presented it to the New York Historical Society in 1906, it remained in obscurity until 1920 The society then invited J H Breasted of the Oriental Institute of the University of Chicago, to decipher and translate the manuscript Breasted published his results in 1930

Breasted dated the Edwin Smith Surgical Papyrus from the seventeenth century B C but insisted that the author s original manuscript was inscribed at least one thousand years earlier during the Pyramid Age (3000 2500 B C) He believed that the author may have been Imhotep the first known physician and architect

These early documents indicated that fractures, superficial tumors, large deep seated tumors and the enlarging gravid uterus were observed and palpated The Edwin Smith Surgical Papyrus also contains a record of the earliest attempt to palpate and count the peripheral arterial pulse This was undoubtedly done by means of the water clock which was a product of ancient Egyptian ingenuity

The preservation of the papyri was not a matter of chance but clearly rested in the religious beliefs of the Egyptians These people of antiquity held the belief that the soul of the departed continued to live and that it passed before their supreme diety, Osiris, in judgment of earthly deeds or misdeeds The soul then returned to the body to dwell there throughout eternity Thus provisions were made to permit the body also to exist eternally

This religious belief was the basis for the Egyptians' ingenious method of mummification the success of which was favored by a relatively arid climate The mummified body was placed in a sarcophagus with the intent of further preservation and the tombs varied from small and unpretentious structures of stone to the mighty pyramids Objects were placed within the structures for the comfort of the returned soul such as food and drink jewels various papyri, vessels of many types and chariots in the case of the Pharaohs Thus, the valuable documents of antiquity could not have survived the ravages of time and weather but for the ingenious actions of man based on religous beliefs

Similar data pertaining to inspection and palpation also have been derived from the ancient civilizations of China and India

Important advances in physical diagnosis did not occur until the Golden Age of early Greek civilization which from a medical standpoint,

had its inception in the life of Hippocrates (493 429 B C) of Cos Hippocrates has probably been the most controversial personality in all medical history virtually every statement regarding his life and works has been questioned if not contradicted Jones referred to 'the shadowy Hippocrates of ancient tradition while Sigerist stated all that we certainly know of Hippocrates is that he lived"

The famous Hippocratic Works were probably written by contemporaries and successors of Hippocrates as evidenced by the fact that they contain many contradictions It is probable that the Aphorisms were Hippocrates own products He formulated the doctrine which appears to be the true beginning of physical diagnosis wherein he advocated and practiced the utilization of mental concentration and analysis together with the application of the five senses in the diagnosis of disease

Gee stated that the ancient Greeks used the method of tapping to differentiate ascites from tympanites but this was not the true beginning of percussion

During the ensuing centuries little progress was made in physical diagnosis, in a large measure owing to the fact that the complex anatomic maze of the human body was slowly and often erroneously revealed

Finally an illustrious personality appeared in the medical world who conceived an erroneous idea concerning the structure of the heart and the vascular system and their functions Either Claudius Galen (138 201 A D) of Pergamon Asia Minor and subsequently of Rome was a man of great persuasive powers or his contemporaries and many generations of his successors were gullible and without critical insight for his errors were accepted and perpetuated for nearly fourteen and a half centuries As late as 1649 Jean Riolan (Riolanus) (1577 1657) of Paris a fanatical admirer of Galen s teachings, remarked that if subsequent observations and dissections differed from those of the great master (Galen), any variations were attributable to the fact that nature had changed

Galen s anatomic observations were incorrect and he amplified these errors by concocting speculative physiologic fallacies to condone his anatomic mistakes He possessed no idea whatsoever of the basic physiologic principle of the circulation of the blood

In this period of history most dissections were performed on animals and occasionally on stillborn infants It was not until the close of the fifteenth century that dissection of cadavers was officially authorized when a bull to this effect was issued by Pope Sixtus IV

In the succeeding centuries considerable progress in the medical sciences became evident Notable progress occurred in embryology significant strides were made in pathologic anatomy and histology became an established science through the efforts and contributions of such celebrities as van Leeuwenhoek Malpighi and Spallanzani

Only two outstanding medical events occurred during the Medieval Era (1096 1453) The first was the correct description of the pulmonary circulation by the great Arabian physician Ibn an Nafis (circa 1210 1288) of Cairo Credit for the first description of the pulmonary circulation has usually been accorded the martyr Michael Servetus (1509 1553) of Villa

nueva de Sigena, Spain who independently and without knowledge of his predecessors contribution recorded his own findings in 1553 The work of Ibn an Nafis was not generally known until the investigations of Meyerhof and of Haddad and Khairallah were published in 1935 and 1936 Ibn an Nafis' description of the pulmonary circulation was found in his Commentary on Avicenna's Anatomy

The second great medical event in this era which influenced the field of cardiac diagnosis at least indirectly was the founding of the famous school of Salerno, during the reign of Frederick II (1215 1250) This great school was based on the modern concept of organization, as an attempt was made to secure teachers who were the most talented and whose viewpoints varied Teachers were sought from afar and the faculty was created without national or racial prejudice It comprised Greeks Italians Persians, Jews and the monks of Western Europe

The Renaissance (1453 1600) or the era which witnessed the awakening of culture science and the arts brought forth distinguished contributors to the medical sciences This was particularly true in the field of anatomy where such celebrated men as da Carpi (1470 1550), Vesalius (1514 1564) Canano (1515 1579) Guido Guidi (Vidius) (? 1569), and many others contributed generously to the understanding of many of the structural complexities of the human body While no new innovations concerned with the diagnosis of diseases occurred the increased understanding of anatomy was clearly a preface which made subsequent contributions possible

Probably the most gifted and diversely talented contributor of the Renaissance was the fabulous Leonardo da Vinci (1452 1519) Commonly known as an artist of rare ability he was likewise an anatomist of distinction His drawings revealed the general character of the heart the main coronary vessels and their large tributaries and in at least one of the drawings he attempted to schematize the invisible pores' of Galen in the interventricular septum Leonardo discovered and described the moderator band of the right ventricle In addition to the aforementioned accomplishments he was the pioneer of exquisite medical illustration an inventor architect engineer expert ballistician, geologist, geographer and astronomer

Nearly a century and a quarter elapsed after the Renaissance before the forthcoming of a significant contribution to physical diagnosis A resourceful Italian physician Francesco Ippolito Albertini (1662 1738) of Bologna introduced a method for determining enlargement of the heart He was a pupil of the famous Malpighi and a friend and contemporary of Valsalva Albertini was particularly interested in the correlation of signs of disease and postmortem findings He carefully studied the apex beat of the heart by means of inspection and palpation and utilized the character of the apex beat and its outward displacement as signs of enlargement of the organ Albertini's observations appeared in 1726 in his work 'De affectionibus cordis'

The next important component in physical diagnosis was brought forth 35 years later when Joseph Leopold Auenbrugger (1722 1809) introduced

percussion He was born in Graz Styria in Austria and was the son of an innkeeper The fact that Auenbrugger was the son of an innkeeper has singular significance in the story of his discovery

During his youth he was obliged to help his father in the duties of the inn In those days the process of tapping was used to determine whether walls were solid or contained hollow hiding places, and innkeepers utilized the method to determine the level of the fluids in kegs Young Auen brugger undoubtedly became expert in this procedure Another significant fact relating to his discovery was his musical talent and early training in music

Auenbrugger studied medicine at Vienna under van Swieten founder of the old Viennese school of medicine and originator of its famous library Van Swieten in turn had been a student of the famous Boerhaave From 1751 to 1762 Auenbrugger was associated with the Spanish Hospital in Vienna first as assistant and later as physician It was during this tenure that he made his classic observations after seven years of diligent and painstaking work

After describing the sounds produced by tapping various regions of the healthy thorax and the technic of percussion Auenbrugger described the changes produced by disease as revealed by postmortem examination His work was published in 1761 under the title *Inventum novum ex per cussione thoracis humani ut signo abstrusos interni pectoris morbos detegendi*

Auenbrugger came near to discovering auscultation as revealed by the Eleventh Observation in his '*Inventum novum* A brief excerpt from the translation follows "If at this time while the patient is coughing and spitting the palm of the hand be placed over the site of the vomica that is over the place where its existence had been detected by percussion the noise of the fluid within the chest will be sufficiently manifest '

Auenbrugger s discovery was generally ignored and even his teacher van Swieten did not accept the new method of diagnosis Only two Euro pean physicians Stoll of Vienna and Charles G Ludwig of Leipzig acclaimed and practiced the method The *Inventum novum* was trans lated into French by Rozierre in 1770 and twice into English but con tinued to be quite universally ignored for nearly fifty years when the great French clinician Jean Nicolas Corvisart (1755 1821) of Paris acclaimed and practiced percussion Corvisart who was Laennec s teacher and personal physician to Napoleon Bonaparte had worked with per cussion for many years after studying Auenbrugger s book Corvisart made his own translation of this work giving Auenbrugger full credit for the discovery and added his own experience with percussion in the diag nosis or disease Corvisart s book was published in 1808 and from then on percussion became universally accepted as the third component of physi cal diagnosis

Before the age of sixty Auenbrugger had written a libretto for the cele brated Italian composer Antonio Salieri The opera Der Rauchfang kehrer (The Chimney Sweep) was presented in Vienna in 1781 and *attracted favorable comment from Empress Maria Theresa who urged*

Auenbrugger to continue with his musical works However, he demurred stating that his first responsibility was to further the science of medicine

In 1784 Emperor Joseph enobled Auenbrugger not for his great medical discovery, but for his untiring services to the poor Auenbrugger became wealthy but continued unselfishly to give of his time to the many indigent persons who sought his services

Auenbrugger and his wife celebrated their golden wedding anniversary in 1804 and soon thereafter his wife died He never recovered from his grief which, combined with the failing health of age eventuated in the development of an acute respiratory infection that caused his death five years later at the age of eighty seven years

In 1828, Pierre Adolphe Piorry (1794 1879) of Poitiers invented the pleximeter and hoped to improve on Auenbrugger s method of percussion His work appeared in Paris under the caption *De la percussion médiate* " Piorry s method was never universally adopted although the pleximeter was used by some clinicians even in the early part of the present century

The completion of the tetralogy of physical diagnosis occurred in 1819 when René Theophile Hyacinthe Laennec (1781 1826) discovered auscultation and published his classic work on the subject He was born in Quimper in lower Brittany the first child of a tuberculous mother There were a younger brother Michel and two younger sisters The mother died soon after the birth of the second daughter The father an unsuccessful lawyer was unable to care for the children so arrangements were made for a paternal uncle to bring up the two boys

The uncle Guillaume François Laennec, was a famous physician He was a student of the celebrated John Hunter and became Professor of Medicine at Nantes It is probable that the uncle s influence played an important part in Rene s determination to study medicine

René was a frail and impressionable child and, unfortunately, witnessed many of the horrors of the French Revolution A guillotine was within sight of the boy s home The revolution had a profound effect on French medicine as evidenced by the fact that from 1786 to 1789 not one medical student was graduated by the Paris Faculty

Toward the close of this tragic period of France's history young Laennec began the study of medicine in 1795 He first studied medicine at L'Hotel Dieu in Nantes and five years later entered L'Ecole de Medecine in Paris Laennec studied medicine under the great Corvisart physiology under the guidance of Bichat, and surgery under the famous Dupuytren

Laennec's first published work while still a medical student was concerned with mitral stenosis found at necropsy Shortly before his graduation in 1804 he proved that phthisis and pulmonary tuberculosis were one and the same disease

For five years after his graduation Laennec lectured on pathologic anatomy and engaged in private practice In 1812 he was appointed physician to Beaujon Hospital and four years later was named to the staff of Necker Hospital where he made his famous discovery In 1819 Laennec s classic work, "Traite de l auscultation médiate ' was published It is of interest

to note the ensuing portion of the introduction to his book as it appears in the first American edition published in 1823

In 1816 I was consulted by a young woman laboring under general symptoms of diseased heart and in whose case percussion and the application of the hand were of little avail on account of the great degree of fatness The other method just mentioned being rendered inadmissible by the age and sex of the patient I happened to recollect a simple and well known fact in acoustics and fancied at the same time that it might be turned to some use on the present occasion The fact I allude to is the augmented impression of sound when conveyed through certain solid bodies as when we hear the scratch of a pin at one end of a piece of wood applying our ear to the other *Immediately on this suggestion I rolled* a quire of paper into a sort of cylinder and applied one end of it to the region of the heart and the other to my ear and was not a little surprised and pleased to find that I could thereby perceive the action of the heart in a manner much more clear and distinct than I had ever been able to do by the immediate application of the ear From this moment I imagined that the circumstances might furnish means of enabling us to ascertain the character not only of the action of the heart but of every species of sound produced by motion of all the thoracic viscera'

Laennec s book warrants study even today Its comprehensiveness in some respects is similar to a modern text Laennec described and discussed pulsations of the heart heart sounds rhythm irregularities and the symptoms of heart disease He believed the anginal syndrome to be a nervous affection The volume includes discussions of cardiac hypertrophy and dilatation fibrosis atrophy fatty degeneration calcification carditis endocarditis pericarditis tubercles cardiac thrombosis malformations displacements aneurysm and congestion of the viscera in heart failure

Laennec recognized the fact that the first heart sound is associated with systole of the ventricle but erroneously believed that the second sound was due to systole of the auricle He also described thrills and venous hums and commented on their origin and significance

Laennec s work was not accepted at first in his native country but was eagerly acclaimed by physicians of neighboring countries especially by those of the British Isles who attended his clinic in large numbers With the *acceptance of auscultation by the physicians of England Scotland* and Ireland these schools of medicine forged rapidly ahead and produced such outstanding celebrities as Stokes Graves Adams Cheyne Corrigan Parry and Jenner

Laennec was always a frail person and suffered for many years from a *chronic asthmatic bronchitis In 1828 he became seriously ill from an* acute respiratory illness and died at the premature age of 45 years Few physicians at that age have contributed so greatly to medicine and received such broad recognition as did Rene Théophile Hyacinthe Laennec

The physician who advanced physical diagnosis to its acme of science *and art was Josef Skoda (1805 1881) of Vienna He was born in Pilsen,* Bohemia the son of a locksmith It is interesting to note that his father s modest little shop finally developed into the large Skoda works which to

a large extent furnished arms and munitions to Germany during World War I

Young Skoda was graduated from the University of Vienna in 1831 and taught physics and mathematics to aid in his own support while securing his education He was an apt and diligent student, was painstakingly thorough, and possessed the gift of concentration on important details Skoda secured a subordinate position at the Allgemeines Krankenhaus in Vienna after his graduation and worked under the guidance of Rokitansky, Draut, and Wirer

Skoda early in his medical career became greatly interested in percussion and auscultation and spent many hours at the bedside interrogating and examining patients He was meticulously thorough in his examinations and was possessed of almost inexhaustible patience However, his progress was slow because he was eclipsed by numerous internationally known satellites

Skoda s great moment of opportunity came while he was still a young man The French minister to Austria, the Duc de Blacas became seriously ill and such celebrities as Malfatti Turckheim and Wirer had identified the illness as due to disease of the liver For some reason young Skoda was requested to examine the Duc After a deliberate and thorough examination Skoda refuted the previous diagnosis and submitted his own diagnosis of aneurysm of the abdominal aorta Shortly thereafter the Duc died and postmortem examination confirmed Skoda s diagnosis

This feat on the part of an earnest young but obscure physician impressed the great Turckheim who immediately took a great interest in Skoda and created teaching opportunities for him For many years Skoda was professor of medicine at the Allgemeines Krankenhaus in Vienna where clinical material was abundant and postmortem examinations were plentiful In this environment of medical opportunity Skoda elevated physical diagnosis to its greatest heights His classic work, *Abhandlung uber Perkussion und Auskultation* appeared in 1839

Skoda's clinic was one of the most popular of the day and attracted *students from all over the world One of the last American students to* attend Skoda s clinic was the late Charles H Hoover who lost his life in the Cleveland Clinic tragedy of 1927

Many others of course have participated in the development of physical diagnosis—they are too numerous to mention here In the light of the accomplishments of all these illustrious predecessors it is discouraging to find the science and the art of physical diagnosis threatened into subservience by an almost inexhaustible array of mechanistic diagnostic adjuncts

REFERENCES

1 Arcieri J P The Circulation of the Blood and Andrea Cesalpino of Arezzo S F Vanni New York 1945 pp 20 24 32 33 35 37 40 42 47 49 54 64 66 68 74 80 100 101 116 and 133

2 Auenbrugger Leopold The Discovery of Percussion Brit M J 1 1191 119? (May 15) 1909

3 Balfour G W Notes on the Practice of Skoda Edinburgh M J 68 397 405 1847

4 Breasted J H The Edwin Smith Surgical Papyrus Published in Facsimile and Hieroglyphic Transliteration with Translation and Commentary in Two Volumes The University of Chicago Press Chicago 1930 Vol 1

5 Castiglioni Arturo A History of Medicine (Translated by E B Krumbhaar) Alfred A Knopf New York 1941 pp 55 57 148 178 217 226 700 701 703 and 711

6 Chevalier A G Medicine and the Natural Sciences in France during the Napoleonic Era Ciba Symp 3 964 969 (Sept) 1941

7 Chevalier A G The Physicians in the Revolutionary Assemblies Ciba Symp 7 239 249 (Feb) 1946

8 Dawes S L Little Biographies XXXIV Skoda Albany M Ann 30 199 202 1909

9 Dock George The First Aphorism of Hippocrates Ann Int Med 6 129 42 (July) 1932

10 Duncan J M The Father of Medicine Edinburgh M J 22 481-499 (Dec) 1876

11 Edelstein Ludwig The Genuine Works of Hippocrates Bull Hist Med 7 236 248 (Feb) 1939

12 Editorial The Centenary of Skoda Brit M J 2 1551 1552 (Dec. 9) 1905

13 Garrison F H Laennec (Editorial) Bull New York Acad Med s 2 2 389 393 (Aug) 1926

14 Garrison F H An Introduction to the History of Medicine with Medical Chronology Suggestions for Study and Bibliographic Data W B Saunders Company Philadelphia 1929 pp 54 92 101 248 411 413 415 431 and 432

15 Gee S J Auscultation and Percussion Together with Other Methods of Physical Examination of the Chest Smith Elder & Company London 1877 p 56

16 Glomset D J Romances of Cardiology J Iowa M Soc 35 52 58 (Feb) 96 102 114 (Mar) 1945

17 Haddad S I and Khairallah A A A Forgotten Chapter in the History of the Circulation of the Blood Ann Surg 104 1 8 (July) 1936

18 Herrick J B A Short History of Cardiology Charles C Thomas Springfield Ill 1942 pp 4 6 8 11 13 14 17 21 38 46 47 87 88 91 96 166 and 208

19 Horine E F An Epitome of Ancient Pulse Lore Bull Hist. Med 10 210 211 220 221 and 223 (July) 1941

20 Jones W H S (translator) Hippocrates William Heinemann Ltd London 1931 Vol 4 pp 99 221

21 Laennec R T H A Treatise on the Diseases of the Chest in Which They Are Described According to Their Anatomical Characters and Their Diagnosis Established on a New Principle by Means of Acoustic Instruments (Translated by John Forbes) James Webster Philadelphia 1823 319 pp

22 Lorimer G An Address on Medicine in Ancient Greece the Methods of Hippocrates and Work Accomplished by Him Brit M J 2 196-199 (July 27) 1907

23 Lund F B The Life and Writing of Hippocrates a Sketch Boston M & S J 191 1009 1014 (No 27) 1924

24 Major R H Classic Descriptions of Disease with Biographical Sketches of the Authors Charles C Thomas Springfield Ill 1939 pp 77 79 405 407 609 612

25 Major R H Hippocrates and the Island of Cos Yale J Biol & Med 14 1 11 (Oct) 1941

26 Medical Intelligence (news note) Monument to Laennec Boston M & S J 76 382 (June 6) 1876

27 Meyerhof Max Ibn an Nafis (XIIIth cent.) and His Theory of the Lesser Circulation Isis 23 100 120 1935

28 Obituary Hofrath Professor Joseph Skoda M Times & Gas London 2 51 1881

29 Otis E O Auenbrugger and Laennec the Discoverers of Percussion and Auscultation Boston M & S J 139 281 285 305 308 (Sept 22) 1898

30 Robinson Victor Rene Theophile Hyacinthe Laennec (1781 1826) M Life 28 456 469 (Sept) 1921

31 Shastid T H Hippocrates the Father of Modern Medicine M Pickwick. 5 3 12 (Jan) 1919
32 Sigerist H E The Great Doctors a Biographical History of Medicine (Translated by Eden and Cedar Paul) W W Norton & Company Inc New York 1933 pp 36 297 302
33 Singer Charles Hippocrates and the Hippocratic Collection In The Encyclopaedia Brittanica Ed 14 London The Encyclopaedia Britannica Company Ltd Vol 11 pp 584 585
34 Singer Charles Some Galenic and Animal Sources of Vesalius J Hist. Med & Allied Sc 1 6 24 (Jan) 1946
35 Temkin Owsei Was Servetus Influenced by Ibn an Nafis? Bull Hist. Med. 8 731 734 (May) 1940
36 Webb G B René Theophile Hyacinthe Laennec a Memoir Paul B Hoeber Inc New York 1928
37 Willius F A and Dry T J A History of the Heart and the Circulation W B Saunders Company Philadelphia 1948 pp 4 9 11 12 16-19 26 29 33 36 73 74 86 87 115 116 118 119 128 269 273 274 276 307 309 315 319 and 320 322
38 Willius F A and Keys T E Cardiac Classics a Collection of Classic Works on the Heart and Circulation with Comprehensive Biographic Accounts of the Authors The C V Mosby Company St Louis 1941 pp 189 213 323 382

HOWARD B SPRAGUE M D
AND
PAUL D WHITE, M D

2

Introduction to Diseases of the Cardiovascular System*

Introduction One of the most useful contributions to progress in the study of disease is a proper definition of terms and a classification of diagnoses based upon a complete analysis of the various syndromes In cardiovascular disease this has proved most practical by describing the diagnosis of each case from the standpoint of the etiological factor responsible for the disease the changes in the structure of the tissues or organs involved the disturbances of their function and the interference by the disease with bodily activity By including in this way a fourfold explanation of the status of the heart or blood vessels we avoid vague categories of the past which have described only one aspect of the disease such as mitral regurgitation' "auricular fibrillation dropsy or intermittency of the pulse Therefore for satisfactory diagnosis of the condition of a patient suffering from heart disease at least one subheading from each of the four main divisions of the following classification must usually be included This classification modifies somewhat those previously published but corresponds in the main to the latest outline prepared for the American Heart Association **

ETIOLOGICAL

Congenital Cardiovascular Defect This is an unexplained aberration of development thought to be due generally to faulty germ plasm and rarely to intrauterine infection

Recent studies have shown an apparent relationship between the combination of congenital cataract and certain congenital heart lesions and *infection of the mother by German measles during the first two or three* months of pregnancy It is possible that other virus infections of the

The classification presented has been found useful for cardiovascular diagnosis It is based primarily on the original paper of White P D and Myers M M J A M A 77 1414 (Oct 29) 1921

* This etiologic grouping covers the chief factors responsible for heart disease but it must be granted that no classification of reasonable dimensions can cover all conditions in which the heart may be involved acutely or temporarily or through the influence of some generalized disease such as scleroderma For example diseases resulting in profound changes in blood viscosity or hemoclastic crises may affect the intrinsic cardiac circulation as they may the cerebral circulation Thus it seems better to speak for instance of the heart in malaria rather than malarial heart disease or the heart in polycythemia rather than polycythemia heart disease

mother during early germinal layer formation of the fetus may be of importance in the genesis of congenital anomalies of all types

Rheumatic Involvement of Heart or Blood Vessels Widespread damage of the heart often accompanies the rheumatic infection, the cause of which is unknown A filter passing virus has been suggested as the agent

Some relationship allergic or otherwise, evidently exists between rheumatic fever and infection with the hemolytic streptococcus In its epidemic form it often follows scarlet fever and other streptococcal infections in large groups of susceptible individuals such as occurred in training areas in World War II

a Rheumatic fever (polyarthritis) ' Inflammatory rheumatism "

b Sydenham's chorea, ' St Vitus' dance "

c Indefinite systemic type (growing pains," tonsillitis or pharyngitis gastrointestinal disorders epistaxis pulmonary inflammation and cutaneous or subcutaneous manifestations such as nodules erythema multiforme and purpura)

Bacterial Infection (specify bacterium if possible)

a Acute (Streptococcus hemolyticus staphylococcus pneumcoccus, gonococcus Bacillus influenzae meningococcus some fungus organisms viruses rickettsiae etc) Such acute infections may involve any or all parts of the heart or may be primarily valvular myocardial, or pericardial

b Subacute (usually nonhemolytic—Streptococcus viridans—type of endocarditis but including other infections such as tuberculosis of the pericardium)

Although the difference between the acute and subacute types of bacterial endocarditis is largely a matter of the duration of the disease the types differ also in the fact that the acute type is usually a complication of an acute septicemia and often affects previously uninjured hearts whereas the subacute type is much more likely to attack heart valves damaged by rheumatism and to have an unexpected and insidious onset

Syphilis This affects most commonly the first portion of the aorta, less often the heart muscle and the arteries of both greater and lesser circulations

Virus Infection Virus diseases are in rare cases the cause of a true myocarditis Influenza and mumps, for example may produce myocardial inflammation and German measles in the fetus may result in permanent defects in development of the heart The virus of influenza has been considered responsible for at least some cases of Fiedler's (isolated) myocarditis

Infestation by Animal Parasites This includes myocardial involvement in trichinosis and trypanosomiasis and invasion by flukes and echinococcus cysts It is very rare in the United States

Thyroid Disease *a* Thyrotoxicosis Long continued overactivity of the thyroid gland may result in fatigue of the heart from tachycardia and the onset of auricular fibrillation The hypothesis of a true toxic effect from the abnormal secretion of the gland is unproved

b Hypothyroidism Myxedema has been held responsible in some cases for marked cardiac dilatation and weakness and commonly for low voltage

curves by electrocardiograph Cases treated satisfactorily by thyroid medication have shown sometimes striking decrease in heart size by x rays and always improvement in the electrocardiographic complexes

Hypertension *a* Systemic Prolonged hypertension results characteristically in cardiac hypertrophy chiefly of the left ventricle and finally failure from fatigue of the muscle with or without the complication of coronary arteriosclerosis

b Pulmonary Factors increasing the tension in the pulmonary circuit such as mitral stenosis emphysema pulmonary fibrosis and primary disease of the pulmonary vessels (Ayerza's disease), may cause hypertrophy and failure of the right ventricle (*chronic cor pulmonale*) *Acute cor pulmonale* is caused by massive or multiple pulmonary embolism

Atheroma and Sclerosis *a* Coronary Disease Degenerative changes of the coronary vessels appear responsible for the common symptom of angina pectoris and their further extension for coronary thrombosis Slower occlusion with the development of compensatory circulation may result in cardiac weakness or may cause no symptoms

b Valvular Sclerosis the sequel to atheroma or calcareous disease of the valves (chiefly mitral or aortic) results in murmus of regurgitation or obstruction dependent upon the degree of the process It is not known how often such changes are preceded by infection of the valves

c Peripheral Arterial Atheroma and Sclerosis are causes of vascular but not of cardiac disease

Toxins *a* Mineral toxin

b Bacterial toxin (diphtheria focal infection pneumonia or other acute disease)

c Other organic toxins (tobacco caffeine digitalis mushroom toxin azotemia, etc)

Neoplasm (Primary or Secondary)

Trauma Valve rupture gunshot or stab wounds contusions etc

Irritability *a* Neurocirculatory asthenia Soldier s heart ' Effort syndrome This is a common disorder of cardiovascular action in which symptoms of fatigue appear without adequate cause No organic disease can be discovered in the heart If not identical with it is closely associated in most instances with an anxiety state

b Arrhythmias of unknown (? nervous) origin

Cardiac Neurosis This is a mental attitude toward cardiac disease with or without organic or functional heart disorder characterized by apprehension and related to anxiety states but rarely to hysteria or other psychoses The complaints are not consistent with the cardiac findings or are exaggerated beyond the normal by fear

Miscellaneous and Indefinite Causes *a* Anemia With marked lowering of hemoglobin from primary or secondary anemia there are symptoms of breathlessness and tachycardia with cardiac dilatation and often murmurs of functional type Changes in heart muscle (tigering) also occur In sickle cell anemia there is the added factor of small vascular occlusions of the coronary circuit

b Obesity and Fatty Infiltration ' Fatty Heart The symptoms of

cardiac type in obese individuals are largely due to fatigue and "effort syndrome" but in certain cases large fat deposits in or about the myocardium especially of the right ventricle, may embarrass its action

c "Athlete s Heart" It is doubtful if a normal heart can be injured by physical activity, but in certain cases prolonged exertion as in long distance running or ski racing, results in cardiac hypertrophy Much of what is attributed to "athlete's heart' is, however due to nervous reactions from competitive effort

d Deficiency Diseases In dietary deficiency diseases, such as rickets and beriberi, myocardial changes have been demonstrated Excess of such food factors as cod liver oil and irradiated ergosterol has, on the other hand been shown experimentally to injure the heart

e Scleroderma may become so generalized as to involve heart muscle

f Hemachromatosis can produce myocardial changes by foreign body reaction to blood pigment deposition in the heart muscle

g Senile In the absence of obvious coronary disease advanced age may be associated with changes (dehydration pyknosis *etc*) of cardiac muscle which attend the general weakening of the body and make it less able to withstand such strains as infection and surgery

Unknown Certain obscure cardiovascular conditions still exist which it is only possible to call of "unknown' cause They should be classified in this way to stimulate further investigation The most frequently observed is the heart showing unexplained enlargement often preponderant right ventricular dilatation

Possible Heart Disease Cases in which signs or symptoms exist which are not explicable by present methods should until capable of classification, be called 'possible' heart disease

Potential Heart Disease This term is limited almost entirely to patients who have had rheumatic infections but who, up to the time of examination have shown no cardiovascular disease The term may be applied also to untreated chronic cases of thyrotoxicosis and to syphilitic patients who have received little or no treatment

STRUCTURAL

Displacement of Heart

a Congenital (dextrocardia or ectopia cordis)

b Acquired mechanically

Change in Size of Heart as a Whole or of Individual Chambers

a Atrophy of heart

b Hypertrophy

(*a*) Eccentric

(*b*) Concentric

c Dilatation of heart

(*a*) Eccentric

(*b*) Concentric

Myocardial Disease (Acute or Chronic)

a Congenital defects

b Inflammation (diffuse or localized)

c Fibrosis
d Fatty change (infiltration or degeneration)
e Infarction (ischemic necrosis)
f Calcification
g Neoplasm

Cardiac Aneurysm

Cardiac Rupture

Congenital Anomalies of Cardiac Chambers or Septa

Endocardial Disease (Acute or Chronic, involving valves, mural endocardium papillary muscles or chordae tendineae)
a Congenital defects
b Inflammation
c Sclerosis
d Valvular deformity
(1) Mitral—insufficiency or stenosis
(2) Aortic—insufficiency or stenosis
(3) Tricuspid—insufficiency or stenosis
(4) Pulmonary—insufficiency or stenosis

Pericardial Disease (Acute or Chronic)
a Congenital defects
b Inflammation
c Effusion (state type of fluid) with or without constriction of the heart itself
d Adhesions with or without constriction of the heart itself
e Calcification
f Pneumopericardium
g Neoplasm

Vascular Disease
a Coronary vessels
(1) Congenital anomaly
(2) Inflammation
(3) Atheroma
(4) Sclerosis
(5) Aneurysm
(6) Embolism
(7) Thrombosis
(8) Periarteritis nodosa
b Aorta
(1) Congenital anomaly especially coarctation and right sided or double arch
(2) Inflammation
(3) Atheroma
(4) Sclerosis
(5) Dilatation or aneurysm
(6) Embolism
(7) Thrombosis

(8) Medial necrosis an important finding in cases of dissecting aneurysms of the aorta
(9) Senile ectasia

c Pulmonary artery
(1) Congenital anomaly
(2) Inflammation
(3) Atheroma
(4) Sclerosis
(5) Dilatation or aneurysm
(6) Embolism
(7) Thrombosis

d Peripheral arteries
(1) Congenital anomaly
(2) Inflammation
(3) Atheroma
(4) Sclerosis
(5) Dilatation or aneurysm
(6) Embolism
(7) Thrombosis (thromboangiitis obliterans)
(8) Periarteritis nodosa

e Disease of veins, capillaries and lymphatics

Undiagnosed Cardiovascular Disease

FUNCTIONAL

Normal Mechanism of the Heartbeat and Its Disturbances This section includes changes in the activity of the heart which in many instances can be accurately analyzed only by the electrocardiograph

a Normal rhythm and changes of vagosympathetic origin Under this heading are the disturbances which occur from an exaggeration of the activity of the nerves responsible for accelerating or slowing the pace making function of the sinoauricular node

Normal rate—usually seventy to eighty per minute

Sinoauricular Tachycardia This is the response to such factors as exertion, emotion, fever hemorrhage asphyxia thyrotoxicosis cardiac failure vagal paralysis or sympathetic stimulation which results in a rapid heart rate under control of the normal pacemaker The rate is between 110 and 175 per minute

Sinoauricular Bradycardia This is also a normal response of the heart by slowing to such factors as rest convalescence jaundice nausea, or vagal stimulation The rate is under fifty per minute

Sinus Arrhythmia During respiration there is a normal reflex change in vagosympathetic tone which results in an inspiratory quickening and expiratory slowing of the heart called sinus arrhythmia Rarely this sinus arrhythmia is not related to respiration

Sinoauricular Standstill With marked vagal hypertonia the sino auricular node may be so depressed that at intervals it does not initiate an impulse Thus the node is said to be blocked or to be at a standstill

Wandering Pacemaker In certain cases the point of impulse formation in the auricle may be shown by electrocardiograph to change its position phasically or irregularly This appears as an alteration of the auricular (P) wave

Ventricular Escape (Auriculoventricular Nodal Escape) When the impulses arriving from the sinoauricular node are much slowed or when the auriculoventricular node is irritable it may 'escape and cause the ventricles to beat at the same time as as the auricles or to precede them

Auriculoventricular Nodal Rhythm If the auriculoventricular node becomes irritable or the sinoauricular node much de pressed the former may become the pacemaker for the whole heart and the ventricle may beat constantly before or syn chronously with the auricle

b Disturbances of the pacemaking function

Premature Beats Irritable foci in various parts of the heart may initiate single or multiple beats at rates faster than the sino auricular node or prolongation of the refractory period with delayed response of certain areas of the heart muscle may result in single or multiple circus movements in one or more direc tions The origin of these beats may be

(α) Auricular
(β) Ventricular
(γ) Junctional
(δ) Unknown

Paroxysmal Tachycardia If the irritable focus or area of block produces impulses in a connected series a paroxysm of rapid beats may occur These may also be

(α) Auricular
(β) Ventricular
(γ) Junctional
(δ) Unknown

Auricular Flutter This disturbance is probably due to a cir cus movement or wave of excitation circulating about the great veins at the base of the heart and sending off impulses regularly to the rest of the heart at a speed between 200 and 400 per minute A regular grade of block usually exists between the auricles and ventricles The condition may be

(α) Paroxysmal
(β) Permanent

Auricular Fibrillation This rhythm is a more advanced stage of the circus movement than auricular flutter and more rapid (average rate in the auricle 300 to 600 per minute) and irregu

lar An irregular degree of block exists between auricles and ventricles
(α) Paroxysmal
(β) Permanent

Ectopic Auricular Rhythms of Other Nature Than Paroxysmal Tachycardia, Auricular Flutter, or Auricular Fibrillation Such rhythms are of obscure mechanism, best explained as under b (1) above and are relatively rare

Ventricular Fibrillation This rhythm is not compatible with life for more than a very short time and has been rarely proved by electrocardiograph, although it may be a common terminal state of the heart muscle Its mechanism may be similar to that in the auricle in auricular fibrillation *

c Disturbances of Conduction

Shortened auriculoventricular conduction time (short P R interval) may be found in rare cases in association with abnormally wide QRS waves, resembling those of bundle branch block, in apparently normal individuals subject to attacks of paroxysmal tachycardia or auricular fibrillation

Auriculoventricular Block
(α) Partial
[1] Prolonged conduction time (over 0 2 sec) between auricle and ventricle
[2] Occasional dropped beats (failure of the ventricle to respond to every auricular impulse)
[3] High grade block (such as 2 1, 3 2 3 1 4 1, etc)
(β) Complete Idioventricular Rhythm The auricle and ventricle are entirely dissociated, the ventricle beating at a rate usually between 20 and 40

Intra auricular Block (produced in experimental animals but not clearly demonstrated yet in man)

Intraventricular Block
(α) Incomplete bundle branch block
(β) Bundle branch block (right or left) (The present preponderant opinion is that in left bundle branch block the R wave in Lead I is upright and in Lead III inverted The reverse applies to right bundle branch block)

Abnormal Electrical Axis Deviation (Right or Left) Deviation of the electrical axis to the right (inverted R in Lead I and upright in Lead III) is found in the vertical type of heart as in tall thin individuals with low diaphragms and in persons having right ventricular enlargement (due to mitral stenosis congenital pulmonary stenosis '*cor pulmonale*' etc) Deviation to the left (upright R in Lead I and deeply inverted in Lead III) is found in those with the horizontal type of heart or with

* An almost regular rhythm intermediate between ventricular tachycardia and ventricular fibrillation which is comparable to auricular flutter may be found in paroxysms or prior to the terminal irregular rhythm of ventricular fibrillation

left ventricular enlargement (due to hypertension aortic re gurgitation or stenosis etc)

Faulty Cardiac Efficiency

a Congestive failure
b Pulsus alternans
c Neurocirculatory asthenia
d Valvular incompetency
 (1) Mitral
 (2) Aortic
 (3) Tricuspid
 (4) Pulmonary
e Angina pectoris a reaction of the heart to coronary insufficiency
f Adams Stokes syndrome

Faulty Vascular Efficiency

a Hypertension
b Hypotension
c Vascular spasm (cerebral crises Raynaud s disease)
d Vascular dilatation (vasomotor shock)

CARDIOVASCULAR ABILITY

1 Patients with organic heart disease able to carry on ordinary physical activity without discomfort

2 Patients with organic heart disease unable to carry on ordinary physical activity without discomfort
 (*a*) Activity slightly limited
 (*b*) Activity greatly limited

3 Patients with organic heart disease and with symptoms or signs of heart failure when at rest unable to carry on any physical activity with out discomfort

JOHN T KING M D
AND
JOSEPH D B KING M D

3

The Normal Heart

Introduction The heart may be considered normal (L *normalis* from *norma* rule or pattern) provided it conforms both in function and structure with the pattern determined from the examination of the hearts of healthy individuals The limits of the norm or standard are established through *inspection palpation percussion auscultation* and by special methods such as *roentgenography electrocardiography* determination of *arterial and venous pressures, determination of the circulation time cardiac output* per minute *intracardiac pressures* and *tension of the blood gases*

Inspection Inspection of the normal individual usually indicates the absence of such signs of circulatory or cardiac disorder as cyanosis dyspnea orthopnea and edema of the dependent parts Peripheral pulsation the degree of which can be delimited for the normal subject only by examination of many healthy individuals may usually be seen over the carotid arteries under the outer ends of the clavicles (subclavians) in the episternal notch (innominate) and frequently over the brachial arteries especially in elderly subjects Rarely the radial pulse is visible *While the venous pulse in the neck consists of three waves—a c* and *v*—only two are distinguishable customarily with the naked eye *viz a* and *c* deviation from the normal appearance of the jugular waves may throw important light upon the condition of the heart Certain normal individuals especially under conditions favoring peripheral vascular relaxation show capillary pulsation

The precordium is relatively prominent upon the chest wall in about one of each four normal individuals allowance should be made for this normal deviation from the average chest conformity in estimating the prominence due to such conditions as cardiac hypertrophy pericardial effusion aneurysm or pleural effusion The *point of maximum intensity* of cardiac impulse (P M I) may be found in most individuals in the fourth interspace when recumbent in the fifth when erect Unless there be an unusual body configuration the P M I in health is not over 9 cm ($3\frac{3}{5}$ inches) to the left of the midsternal line it is usually less according to the size of the subject The impulse in this region is usually caused by right ventricular thrust though the left ventricle forms the anatomical apex of the heart When the subject assumes the left lateral

decubitus, the heart falls toward the left and the P M I may shift laterally approximately one half as far as it had been distant from the median line when the subject was supine

With the patient in the right decubitus, the P M I moves toward the midline, and its distance therefrom is usually about one half as great as when the patient is supine Pathological displacement of the P M I may be caused by one or more of various conditions of the heart mediastinum pleural or abdominal cavities Normally, the impulse may be masked by a thickened chest wall (obesity) or by overlying lung (emphysema) It may be exaggerated in a patient with a thin chest wall, or in the presence of rapid forceful heartbeat caused by exercise, fever or the use of tobacco or coffee While the P M I consists of a

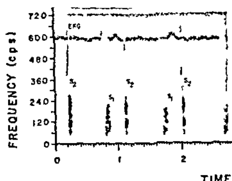


FIGURE 1 Spectral phonocardiograph Normal heart sounds Thirty two year old man Apex (From Johns Hopkins Hospital Bulletin 95 90 [Aug] 1954 With *permission of Dr Victor A McKusick*)

propulsive thrust it should be remembered that retraction may occur normally *inside* the P M I and in the *interspace above it* The impulse itself consists normally of a single systolic forward thrust, there being no visible cardiac movement in diastole

Palpation The initial palpatory procedure should consist of laying the *hand flat against the precordium so as to include the P M I*, allowing the fingers to conform to the contour of the chest Such examination throws light upon the general activity and size of the heart and aids in locating the P M I which may be found more accurately through careful palpation with the finger tips Shocks produced by closure of valves and thrills can be distinguished best by means of the rigid palm of the hand the fingers should be hyperextended as far dorsally as possible thus permitting the vibration to be transmitted to the bones of the hand Following exercise or other stimulus a normal heart may transmit a certain distinct jar to the hand palpating the P M I such a phenomenon however lacks the truly snapping and clearly cut quality such as is found in mitral stenosis A tapping impact associated with a normal heart may be felt over the pulmonic valve area in emphysema or other obstructive pulmonary condition, such a shock is synchronous with a second sound In the presence of hypertension congenital stenosis of the

aorta or aneurysm a diastolic shock may be felt at the aortic area though the heart may otherwise be normal A true thrill is a vibratory sensation (described by Laennec as a cat s purr) that is associated with various cardiac diseases the normal heart may under excitement cause a fine vibratory sensation to be transmitted to the palpating hand during systole but this is rarely sufficiently pronounced to suggest the thrill of cardiac disease

The Pulse For purpose of convenience the radial pulse is examined in preference to that of other vessels and such examination may throw valuable light upon the condition of the heart Examination should be made with the finger tips and the following qualities noted *volume* of the vessel itself and of the pulse wave *rhythm* *tension* *rate* per minute special characters of the pulse and condition of the *vessel wall* finally a comparison of the two radial pulses is made In the consideration of such features of the pulse as volume tension and special characteristics it is well to remember that the volume and tension and many of the distinguishing qualities depend upon (1) the rate of cardiac contraction and the volume of ventricular output with each systole (2) the degree of elasticity of the arterial walls and the patency of the lumen (3) the degree of peripheral resistance

Volume By volume is understood the apparent size of the pulse wave as it passes the palpating fingers Volume may be modified in health under various conditions for example it may be small under conditions favoring vasoconstriction such as chilling or large after exertion or excitement and under conditions favoring peripheral vascular relaxation

Rhythm Arrhythmia is found commonly in normal hearts especially among children That most frequently encountered consists of acceleration during inspiration retardation during expiration—sinus arrhythmia, this type may be recognized by its disappearance when the breath is held or after paralysis of the vagus effect by atropine Arrhythmia independent of respiration is sometimes found especially in children and may suggest the complete arrhythmia of auricular fibrillation Intermittent pulse due to precocious cardiac systole (extrasystole) is common among normal individuals the condition is often most pronounced when the individual is resting (as after retiring) or after excitement fatigue or as the result of constipation distention pregnancy or excessive use of coffee tea or tobacco It is common among infants during the first few days of life [10] Precocious systole following each normal contraction of the heart causes bigeminal pulse provided the premature beats reach the wrist If the premature contraction occurs after each two normal systoles or if two premature contractions follow regularly after one normal systole a trigeminal rhythm is established As a general rule a premature contraction of ventricular origin is followed by a pause that is roughly as much longer than the usual diastolic pause as the preceding premature systole was premature Such a prolonged diastolic pause is spoken of as a *compensatory pause* Auricular premature systoles are followed by an incompletely compensatory or by a normal diastolic rest period

Tension The propulsive power of each cardiac ejaculation, together with the resistance of the peripheral vascular bed and the elasticity of the arterial wall produces a considerable degree of pressure within the arteries To estimate tension the pulse is felt with the fingers of both hands, pressure is exerted with the fingers of the proximal hand until the pulse is no longer palpable with the distal hand The pressure necessary to compress the pulse indicates the arterial tension

Rate The rate of the pulse at rest is given as sixty six per minute for normal men and seventy four for women these figures having been derived from more than 2500 observations on about 1200 subjects [17] The pulse is normally more rapid in childhood, following exercise or under conditions of mental excitement Fever usually accelerates the pulse rate to a degree of about ten beats per minute for each degree of fever (F) Paroxysmal tachycardia may occur in an individual with an otherwise normal heart

Vessel Wall No examination of the pulse is complete without palpation of the vessel wall Atheromatous changes are indicated by increased rigidity of the vessel with tortuosity and palpable calcium deposits causing a 'goose neck" or nodular vessel

Percussion The precordial area is percussed for the purpose of determining the extent to deep cardiac dulness which marks the approximate border of the heart and the superficial cardiac flatness, which represents that portion of the heart not covered by lung In outlining the deep dulness *mediate* percussion may be used In this method the percussing or *plexor* finger strikes a finger of the other hand known as the *pleximeter* Or *immediate* or *direct* percussion may be employed the stroke being made with the finger tips directly against the chest wall Either method is suitable though indirect percussion is the rule The pleximeter finger is first laid against the chest wall parallel to the expected border of the heart at a point well outside the probable limit of dulness The examiner taps the pleximeter finger with the plexor finger, moving the pleximeter finger gradually toward the heart The percussion note or normal lung resonance becomes duller as soon as the pleximeter finger reaches the cardiac border The size of the normal heart will be described later in the article on *Roentgenology of the Heart and Great Vessels* Percussion may not be expected to permit the delimiting of the heart with less than 0 5 to 1 cm error on each border left and right In adults the normal cardiac dulness should not extend more than 10 cm to the left or more than 4 5 cm to the right of the midsternal line though there may be a slight exaggeration of these measurements in individuals whose hearts lie more than ordinarily in the transverse position due to some such condition as abnormal obesity or distention

The superficial cardiac flatness can be delimited only through very light percussion In normal individuals a portion of the heart roughly as large as a silver dollar is not covered by lung, hence percussion of this part of the precordium produces a perfectly 'flat note This area begins at the junction of the fourth left rib with the sternum and extends outward and downward in a convex curve

The relative value of various methods for estimating the position of the left border of the heart has been compared with the clinical localization of the apex by inspection and palpation with percussion of the left border, and with the roentgenogram (seven foot technic)[19] Comparison of percussion and roentgenogram of the left border in eighty two cases showed an average difference of 1 5 cm in measurements of individual cases by the two methods In certain cases in which x ray examination was not practicable localization of the apex by physical signs was found satisfactory In a series of thirty cases roentgenograms showed the heart s shadow beyond the palpated P M I in nineteen while in eleven the P M I lay outside the cardiac shadow Luton[19] concluded that determination of the left border by palpation of the apex and percussion is of value in addition to x ray measurements

In infancy and childhood the left ventricle about equal in size to the right at birth, becomes approximately twice the size of the right ventricle at the end of the first six years of life[10]

Auscultation A binaural stethoscope fitted with a bell or diaphragm chest piece or with both is most suitable for the auscultation of the heart To be disregarded are noises from without (to exclude which the ear pieces must be sufficiently large to fill the external auditory canal completely) skin friction sounds hair sounds (petrolatum may be applied if necessary to mask friction against the hair) joint sounds from the examiner s fingers or from the patient muscle sounds (the patient must be relaxed warm) and the superficial slap of the heart

Sounds The sounds of the heart are usually two traditionally represented by the syllables lub for the first and dupp for the second sound Systole which occupies the period after the first sound and before the second lasts for approximately 0 37 second while diastole is about 0 48 second in length varying with the heart s rate A third sound which has been found in 50 9 per cent of young adults[21] was present among healthy soldiers in 23 6 per cent[12] This sound is soft low pitched and is best heard with the subject supine or in the left lateral decubitus It is most clearly audible at the P M I or just inside and is associated in some manner with ventricular filling (end of active diastole about 0 13 second after the beginning of the second sound)

The first sound at the apex may be exaggerated as a result of exertion fever and nervousness and is normally louder in young people than in older The pulmonic second sound is usually louder than the aortic before twenty years of age between twenty and thirty the predominance of one sound over the other is about equally frequent after thirty the second aortic sound is usually louder

Reduplication of either first or second sound may occur in health Reduplication of the first is uncommon (about three per cent) and is apparently due to impact of the heart against the chest wall it usually disappears or becomes less marked when the subject lies upon the back Such reduplication consists of two rather loud sounds of approximately equal intensity At times a normal presystolic sound may be heard[2] the sound usually below the level of audibility follows shortly (0 02 second) after

the beginning of auricular contraction and precedes the first sound by about 0.01 second. It may be associated with "tension of the ventricular walls." Reduplication of the second sound is common in health especially during deep respiration. As a rule, it is probably due to a retardation of right ventricular emptying with delay in closure of the pulmonic as compared with that of the aortic valve.

During World War I, in the course of examination of soldiers on active duty, King[12] found various auscultatory phenomena, their frequency of incidence being shown by the table that follows.

TABLE 1

AUSCULTATORY PHENOMENA OF 500 SUPPOSEDLY NORMAL HEARTS

	No. Cases	*Per Cent*
Third heart sound	118	23.6
Reduplication of first sound at apex	16	3.2
Systolic apical click	2	0.4
Systolic murmur at apex present in recumbent posture, absent in erect posture	65	13.0
Cardiorespiratory systolic murmurs limited to inspiration		
At apex	16	3.2
At conus arteriosus	4	0.8
At aortic area	3	0.6
Cardiorespiratory systolic murmurs present in both inspiration and expiration		
At apex	13	2.6
At conus arteriosus	5	1.0
At aortic area	2	0.4
Accidental systolic murmurs		
At conus arteriosus	70	14.0
At aortic area	31	6.2
Cardiorespiratory diastolic murmurs		
Near aortic area	3	0.6
Near conus	1	0.2
Near apex	*0*	*0.0*
Extrasystoles	9	1.8
Reduplicated second sound at conus area	23	4.6

Systolic Click. Occasionally a sharp superficial, dry, clicking sound is heard at or near the P.M.I. It may occur at any time during systole. While it is not affected radically by inspiration it does occasionally disappear when the subject is supine, which lends strength to the writers' impression that it is an accidental extracardiac phenomenon. Though it may be found rarely after acute pericarditis it has no apparent significance.

Sternal Crunch. Either heart sound or both of them may be associated with a superficial crunching sound when the stethoscope is placed at the lower left border of the sternum. This has been said to be due to friction

of the heart against certain superficial structures notably the pericardio diaphragmatic ligament [1] This sound may be prolonged into a squeak closely resembling a murmur and may be mistaken for the murmur of mitral insufficiency The crunch is heard best when the subject leans forward and its intensity is decreased as a rule when the supine posture is assumed it may disappear altogether in this posture The fact that the sternal crunch is at times quite loud over a dilated or hypertrophied heart has led some observers to the fallacious assumption that the sound is an indication of heart disease however the frequent occurrence of the crunch among perfectly normal individuals leaves no doubt that it is of no pathological significance The crunch may also be particularly intense in individuals with flat or funnel chests

Normal Murmurs An apical murmur heard with the subject in the recumbent posture is not uncommon its prompt disappearance when erect places the murmur at once among normal cardiac phenomena It gives the distinct impression of originating within the heart the question has been raised of whether it may be due to a real but slight mitral incom petence that is to be considered physiological in certain individuals [illegible]

Cardiorespiratory murmurs limited to inspiration, may be heard at the apex or base outside or just inside the apex and in the left lower thoracic region behind They are caused by impingement of the heart as it moves in systole against the lung, causing a systolic accentuation of the inspira tory breath sound They are apt to be loud over the lingula pulmonalis, just inside the cardiac apex and are usually best heard with the subject erect They may disappear altogether when the supine position is as sumed As a rule they disappear when the breath is held in inspiration, if they do not disappear they are sufficiently modified by this procedure to allow recognition Any murmur limited to the inspiratory phase of respiration should be considered to belong to the category of cardio respiratory murmurs

The examiner should observe the precaution to have the subject hold the breath after inspiration through several cardiac cycles in certain individuals the murmur may persist temporarily after full inspiration but will fade away if the lungs are kept full over several heart beats

Graphic Analysis of Heart Sounds Further refinement of the graphic representation of heart sounds is provided by the spectral phonocardio graph [16] (see Figure 1) The sounds are picked up by a microphone applied to the precordium and pass through a battery of filters each of which is tuned to a particular frequency pass band Each filter lets through only energy in its particular frequency band In turn each filter activates a small light behind a rotating phosphorescent belt The record has the time dimension as the abscissa and frequency spectrum as ordi nate Intensity is indicated by the blackness of the mark

The spectral phonocardiograph thus obtained is the application to phonocardiography of the sound spectrograph or visible speech *Its* advantages over the oscillographic phonocardiograph are that is has dis tinctive patterns permitting a precise physical definition of the numerous adjectives used in describing heart sounds and murmurs It promises f

ture value in the teaching of phonocardiography and in objective differentiation of sounds and murmurs which have different pathologic significance but which may sound identical to the ear

X-ray Measurement of Heart It is not necessary to go into details or technic of this method of arriving at the size of the heart, except to say that measurements of the normal hearts that are to be discussed are derived from either teleroentgenograms or orthodiagrams They indicate therefore the actual size of the heart as it functions

In attempting to decide whether or not a heart is of normal size it is well that the examiner bear in mind certain peculiarities of the normal heart For example the right auricle undergoes rapid hypertrophy during the first six weeks of life allowance for this natural phenomenon must be made before diagnosis of auricular hypertrophy is made [10]

A very interesting study of the child s heart derived from yearly x rays of 246 normal school children during seven school years shows that the average median diameter of the right side of the heart increases steadily with age in children from two through thirteen years of age being greater in girls than in boys Before the age of seven the girl s heart is larger than the boy s after the age of eleven the condition is reversed The transverse width of the heart varies between 7 and 8 2 per cent of the height of boys from two through thirteen years of age and from 6 9 to 8 4 per cent of the height of girls of corresponding ages There was found to exist a closer correlation between the size of the heart and height than between the size of the heart and age Approximately one-third of the heart lies to the right of the midline in childhood The transverse diameter of the heart is approximately one half that of the width of the chest and there is no change in this relationship with increasing age or height

A schedule of the size of the normal heart in childhood follows

TABLE 2

Age	*Transverse Measurement Cm*	*Age*	*Transverse Measurement Cm*
First quarter year	5 3	Third year	7 8
Second quarter year	6 1	4 to 5 years	8 0
Second half year	6 7	6 to 7 years	8 4
First year	7 2	8 to 10 years	9 1
Second year	7 2	11 to 14 years	9 6

In obese individuals or as a result of such conditions as ascites and abdominal tumor the diaphragm is usually rather high causing the heart to assume a relatively transverse position measurements of a heart of normal size in this position may be greater than those of normal hearts in the usual position The relatively transverse heart also shows a tendency toward filling the left cardiohepatic angle A heart of normal size may be displaced as a result of scoliosis lateral posture hydro or pneumothorax and various other conditions Hence the measurements of the heart in either direction if of no significance unless the general condition of the patient at that time is taken into consideration

In this section the size of the heart will be considered as it is indicated by the maximum size from the midline to the left (M L) and to the right (M R) The greatest transverse diameter will be considered the sum of the two

Important data have been brought out bearing upon the relation of the transverse measurement of the heart with that of the chest The following relations exist [8]

TABLE 3

$$\frac{\text{Transverse heart measurement}}{\text{Transverse lung measurement}} = \frac{1}{1\ 9} \text{ in children}$$

$$\frac{\text{Transverse heart measurement}}{\text{Transverse lung measurement}} = \frac{1}{1\ 92} \text{ in 20 year old subjects}$$

$$\frac{\text{Transverse heart measurement}}{\text{Transverse lung measurement}} = \frac{1}{1\ 95} \text{ in 30 year old subjects}$$

The figure for the normal heart may be as high as 1 1 99 Chest *measurements were made from the ribs*

The width of the heart, as a general rule should not be greater than one half that of the chest [6] but there is found in the literature evidence for a certain latitude in applying the rule Certain roentgenologists feel that the normal heart may measure as much as fifty five per cent of the width of the chest in individuals of peculiar body configuration

The actual size of the adult heart at least as far as can be estimated from a large number of measurements upon the hearts of normal soldiers has been shown to be as follows [18]

TABLE 4

Height Cm	*Cases*	*M R Cm*	*M L Cm*	*L D Cm*	*B D Cm*	*Area Sq Cm*
155 to 164	18	4 0	8 3	13 3	9 9	111
165 to 174	174	4 1	8 5	13 1	10 2	118
175 to 187	185	4 3	8 7	14 2	10 7	122

M L Distance from the midline to the most distant left border
M R Distance from the midline to the most distant right border
L D The maximum long diameter measured from the right auricular notch to the most distant apical border
B D The maximum broad diameter measured at right angles from the long diameter to the most distant border above and below

Cardiac Output According to Grollman[9] the cardiac output is generally acknowledged to be the most important function descriptive of the circulation It is defined as the output of the left ventricle in liters per minute The estimation of cardiac output at rest and especially during effort yields invaluable information in delineating the normal from the abnormal heart

Methods based on the Fick principle

According to the Fick principle

Cardiac output equals

$$\frac{O_2 \text{ intake (ml per min)}}{\underset{\text{(Vol \%)}}{\text{Arterial blood } O_2 \text{ content}} - \underset{\text{(Vol \%)}}{\text{Mixed venous blood } O_2 \text{ content}}} \times 100$$

OR Cardiac output equals

$$\frac{CO_2 \text{ output (ml per min)}}{\underset{\text{(Vol \%)}}{\text{Mixed venous blood } CO_2} - \underset{\text{(Vol \%)}}{\text{Arterial blood } CO_2}} \times 100$$

Direct Fick Method By means of right heart catheterization, introduced in this country by Cournand samples of mixed venous blood can be obtained directly from the right auricle or ventricle As a result of this advance this so called ' direct Fick method is at present the most widely accepted Disadvantages of this method include the psychic effect on the cardiac output of the subject by introducing a catheter in the arm and the difficulty of satisfactory exercise performance with the apparatus in place

The cardiac index or cardiac output per square meter of body surface determined by the method of right heart catheterization, was found to average, under basal conditions 3 12 liters per minute for thirteen normal males 3 73 liters per minute for eleven hospitalized males with normal circulation and 2 99 liters per minute in six hospitalized females with normal circulation [4]

Stroke volume can be computed by dividing the cardiac output per minute by the cardiac rate

Indirect Methods Based on the Fick Principle These methods do not require catheterization of right heart Here the assumption is made that the volume of gas absorbed by inhalation is a function of the pulmonary blood flow, hence cardiac output Foreign gases chiefly acetylene,[9] ethyl iodide [20] and nitrous oxide[13] are employed

Other Methods *Dye Dilution Methods* The principle here is that the degree of dilution by the blood stream of an injected dye will be determined by the blood flow Dye is injected into a vein and multiple samples of blood are drawn seconds later from the femoral artery From the concentration of dye in these samples a dye dilution curve can be described Cardiac output may be then determined from the amount of dye injected, the duration of the curve and the concentrations of the dye in the arterial samples [7] Results with the dye injection method are more or less similar to those obtained by the direct Fick method A comparison of these two methods revealed a scatter "no greater than would be expected when known inaccuracies in both methods are considered ' [11]

Methods Employing Sphygmomanometry Starr[19] has provided the clinician with a formula for estimating cardiac output from simple bedside measurements The formula, derived from cadaver experiments in which cardiac systole was simulated, is as follows

Stroke volume = 93 + 0 54 pulse pressure (auscultatory) —0 47 diastolic pressure (auscultatory) —0 61 age,

diastolic pressure being considered the point of muffling of sounds

Circulation Time The circulation time or circulatory rate may be measured by a number of simple tests [3]

Arm to Mouth Time Sodium dehydrocholate (Decholin) 2 0 cc is injected into the antecubital vein The end point is a bitter taste experienced by the subject Average normal circulation time by this method is 18 seconds

Arm to Lung Time In this test ether (0 5 cc) in saline (1 5 cc) is injected into the antecubital vein End point is the odor of ether on the subject s breath The circulation time in this test is six seconds

Arm to Brain Time Papaverine affords a suitable method of estimating arm to brain circulation time Pointing out that cyanide probably exerts its typical effect in the carotid sinus the authors report that the action of papaverine is slower and probably indicates the arm to respiratory center time or the time required for papaverine to affect the vessels of the brain The end point after injection into an antecubital vein is a *sudden deep inspiration in which the abdominal muscles are employed* there may also be a sigh or a gentle exclamation This is followed by flushing, dizziness sense of heat, and tachycardia Forty mg of papaverine are employed in the test the injection being given within one second Normal values for forty one men and nine women without evidence of circulatory disease were 15 4 to 27 seconds (average 20) While the reaction time is distinctly slower than that with other methods, the papaverine test has the advantage that the observation can be made without additional injection, in a patient who is receiving intravenous therapy with this drug

On the whole the decholin test seems to have gained widest favor, and is in common use without serious complications

Intracardiac Measurements By the technic of intracardiac catheterization direct measurements of pressures within the right heart are provided In addition partial pressures of respiratory gases can be determined from blood samples withdrawn from the cardiac chambers (Table 5)

TABLE 5

OXYGEN CONTENT OF BLOOD AND PRESSURES IN PULMONARY ARTERY RIGHT VENTRICLE AND RIGHT AURICLE OF CONTROL GROUP OF PATIENTS (FROM DEXTER L *et al* [4])

Patient No	Diagnosis	Age	*Oxygen Content (Vol Per cent)* Pulmonary Artery (Main Stem)	Right Ventricle (Mid Portion)	Right Auricle (Upper Portion)	*Pressure (mm Hg)* Pulmonary Artery	Right Ventricle	Right Auricle	A P Diameter of Chest (cm)
1	No disease	15	14 6	14 4	14 4	32/12	32/6	6	15 5
2	No disease	17	15 3	14 8	15 3	20/8	20/0	0	16 0

REFERENCES

1 Blumer G Arch Int Med 14 605 (Oct) 1914
2 Bridgman E W Arch Int Med 14 476 (Oct.) 1914
3 Campbell J A and Graettinger J S Med Clin N America 39 31 (Jan) 1955
4 Cournand A Riley R L Breed E S Baldwin E de F and Richards D W Jr Jour Clin Invest 24 106 (Jan) 1945
5 Dexter L Haynes F W Burwell C S Eppinger E C Sagerson R P and Evans J M Jour Clin Invest 26 554 (May) 1947
6 East C F T and Bain C W C Recent Advances in Cardiology P Blakiston s Son Co Philadelphia 1929
7 Ebert R V Veterans Administration Technical Bulletin 10 45 (April) 1948
8 Groedel F W Grundriss v Atlas der Rontgendiagnostik etc J F Lehmans Munchen 1921
9 Grollman A The Cardiac Output of Man in Health and Disease Charles C. Thomas Springfield Ill
10 Hamilton R L Arch Pediat 47 405 (July) 1930
11 Hamilton W F Riley R L Attyah A M Cournand A Fowell D M Himmelstein A Noble R P Remington J W Richards D W Jr Wheeler N C and Witham A C Am Jour of Physiol 153 287 (May) 1948
12 King J T Jr Arch Int Med 24 89 (July) 1919
13 Krogh A and Lindhard J Skandinav Arch f Physiol 27 100 1912 (cited in Altschule M D Physiology in Diseases of the Heart and Lungs Harvard University Press 1949)
14 Lehmkuhl H Fortschr a d Geb d Rontgenstrahlen 38 696 (Oct) 1928
15 Luton S South M J 23 681 (Aug) 1930
16 McKusick V A Talbott S A and Webb C N Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 94 187 (April) 1954
17 Peterson A and Walter W J A M A 78 341 (Feb 4) 1922
18 Smith B Arch Int Med 25 522 (May) 1920
19 Starr I Jr Trans Ass Am Physicians LXVII 192 1954
20 Starr I Jr and Gamble C J Am Jour Physiol 87 450 (Dec) 1928
21 Thayer W S Arch Int Med 4 297 (Oct) 1909
22 Thayer W S Am J M Sc 169 313 (March) 1925

CHARLES C WOLFERTH, M D
AND
ALEXANDER MARGOLIES M D

4

Heart Sounds

Introduction In the consideration of sound it is necessary to bear in mind that there are two components involved *viz* the actual vibrations and the sensation produced by these vibrations Students of sound may be interested primarily in either or both When the clinician practices cardiac auscultation, he is concerned with the auditory sensations produced by the vibrations If on the other hand, he registers the sounds by means of a sound recording apparatus, he interests himself in the physical characteristics of the vibrations In the use of terminology it is necessary to bear these distinctions in mind Thus intensity and loudness of a sound are not interchangeable terms although as intensity increases or decreases loudness varies in the corresponding direction The human auditory apparatus has so accommodated itself to its environment that tremendous changes in intensity may be reflected by what seem to be much less marked changes in loudness Furthermore the sensation of loudness of a sound may be modified by stimuli immediately preceding it *Thus recorded vibrations do not faithfully mirror what is* heard on auscultation

The knowledge concerning heart sounds which had accumulated from the time of Laennec until 1907 when Einthoven published his string galvanometer method of registering sounds was based almost entirely on auscultatory studies since previous attempts at registration had not been very successful The literature covering the period during which this knowledge was in the making reveals much inaccurate observation and reasoning responsible for certain misconceptions still widely held today On the other hand the work of some of the great masters of auscultation notably Potain must command our admiration

Sound registration has made possible accurate study of the time relations of heart sounds with other cardiac events thus furnishing data essential for the understanding of the mechanism of production of the sounds Attempts have also been made to study the physical characteristics of the vibrations but because of the imperfections of the methods of registration available great caution must be observed to avoid error In spite of these limitations Einthoven [1] Lewis [2] Wiggers [3] and others have been able to make notable contributions to the understanding of heart sounds

Most of the important heart sound registration studies have been made by physiologists who were not primarily interested in the clinical applications of the method, although many facts of clinical importance have been demonstrated There remain wide gaps in our knowledge regarding the mechanisms of sounds produced by cardiac action in normal and diseased hearts This discussion is an attempt to bring the student and the practitioner abreast with current knowledge of the subject

The unsatisfactory state of the art of auscultation as it is generally practiced becomes obvious to anyone in a position to review the findings of various examiners of the same patients and the differences in the conclusions reached following such examinations Nevertheless it may be stated that nearly all these differences of opinion are unnecessary and due to the fact that many physicians have not rigorously trained them selves in the art of auscultation To acquire this training, no superiority of senses is needed Reasonably normal ability to concentrate normal hearing, a normal sense of timing and a normal appreciation of such qualities of sound as pitch and loudness are about all the qualifications that are necessary Most medical students and practitioners possess all of them Many errors in auscultation are those of omission, due to such factors as lack of thoroughness of examination or unfamiliarity with certain types of sounds Most students are apt to miss the low pitched murmur of mitral stenosis until their attention has been called to this sound and they have become thoroughly familiar with its characteristics As soon as their receptor mechanisms are trained, they develop proficiency in the recognition of the murmur Today perhaps only a small minority of even well trained physicians recognize with any approach to accuracy such a common and important auscultatory finding as gallop rhythm Nevertheless gallop rhythm is nearly always easy to detect after one has become familiar with it The important steps in acquiring skill in the art of auscultation are (1) to acquire familiarity with the various sounds and murmurs and their characteristics (2) where to listen for them (3) what maneuvers may be employed to elicit or accentuate sounds and murmurs and (4) to educate one's sense of timing One of the most frequent errors of interpretation of sounds is due to faulty timing

What value sound registration may possess for further clinical research would be difficult to predict There is one field however in which sound registration studies have a real value Their comparison with ausculta tory findings constitutes an excellent training method for sharpening the auscultatory faculty Recently, there has been a great reawakening of interest on the part of clinicians in the study of heart sounds doubtless due in part to improvements in methods of registration

THE FIRST HEART SOUND

It has been established that the first heart sound is related to an early stage of ventricular contraction Einthoven[4] believed that the sound and electrical disturbance in the ventricle begins simultaneously Wiggers[5] however failed to confirm Einthoven s observation and believes that the beginning of the electrical disturbance precedes the sound

The assumption is generally made that the first sound heard over the precordium is almost wholly left ventricular in origin but studies of asynchronous contraction and splitting of the sounds such as occur in ventricular extrasystoles and bundle branch block suggest that the right ventricle sometimes contributes a larger share than is generally believed [6] Although the right ventricle usually contains much less muscle than the left and by reason of lower pressure probably does not contract so forcibly, nevertheless the position of the heart is such that sounds produced in the right chamber may be better transmitted through the anterior chest wall than those from the left side

It is assumed by many writers that mitral and tricuspid valve closure are concerned in the sound production and it is customary to designate certain comparatively short high pitched first sounds as having a valvular quality It is probable that the valves close early in systole while intraventricular tension is still low There is at present no convincing evidence to indicate whether or not valve closure contributes vibrations to the first sound The practice therefore of describing certain first sounds as valvular is open to criticism unless it be clearly understood that the term has no reference to the mechanism of production

A factor which may sometimes contribute to the production of the first sound as heard over the precordium is the sudden pressure of the contracting apex against the chest wall The importance of this factor is also difficult to evaluate but it is of interest that in cases with a sharp apex impulse the loudness of the first sound may sometimes be diminished by firm pressure with a finger over the area of the impulse

In discussing the mechanism of production of the first heart sound Wiggers[3] has stated that sound intensity varies directly as the systolic *tension developed within the ventricles* and there is good reason to believe with the tension developed during the isometric period of systole (the time between the beginning of ventricular systole and opening of the semilunar valves) A comparison of the time relationships of the first heart sound and the dynamic events of the heartbeat demonstrates clearly that the major portion of the first heart sound occurs before the semilunar valves have opened The sound would therefore appear to be synchronous with at least part of the period of rising tension within the ventricles A study of the clinical material however does not support the view that the intensity of the sound varies according to the actual amount of elevation of intraventricular pressure during this period Evidence bearing on this point may be summarized as follows

1 It has been shown that the marked variations of intensity of the first heart sound usually present in complete heart block depend on the time relations of auricular and ventricular contractions [7] These changes in sound intensity are independent of changes in pulse volume (Fig 1) Similar changes in the first sound are also observed in other disturbances of cardiac mechanism in which varying auriculoventricular relationships occur such as ventricular escape extrasystoles (both auricular and ventricular) and paroxysmal tachycardia [8] It is easily demonstrable in the case of extrasystoles that beats with small pulses may have a first sound

either decidedly louder or fainter than the adjacent normal beats, depending in part but not entirely upon the auriculoventricular relationship (Fig 2)

2 In mitral stenosis there is frequently a very sharp loud first sound irrespective of the blood pressure or the vigor of the heartbeat Conversely, in mitral regurgitation the loudness of the first sound tends to be diminished and, in many cases the sound cannot be heard even at the apex though cardiac contraction may be carried out in a vigorous manner and the pulse volume be good

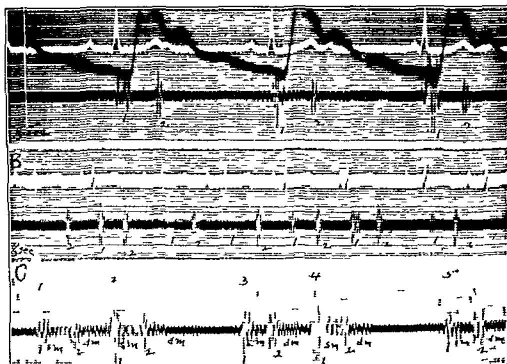


FIGURE 1 *A* Complete heart block As the P R intervals decrease the first sound becomes louder The pulse remains about the same irrespective of the loudness of the first sound *B* Ventricular escape and minor grade heart block with variations in loudness of the first heart sound depending on the As Vs intervals The first sound is loud when the P R interval is comparatively short C Variations of the first sounds in auricular fibrillation In the second and fourth beats which are relatively premature the vibrations of the first sound are much larger than in the third and fifth beats The second sounds in these four beats show little variation High pitched systolic and low pitched diastolic murmurs are present

Observations of this type suggest that some other factor must be concerned in determining the intensity of the first heart sound Possibly the rapidity of rise of intraventricular tension may be more important than the height of tension developed The point may be illustrated in the following way If a string is suddenly snapped taut a sound may be produced even though the tension is low but if the application of tension is more gradual the sound will be less with the same or even greater tension The hypothesis as applied to the first heart sound however would be difficult to establish since no method is available by which the

rapidity of intraventricular pressure rise can be determined except in experimental animals There are some facts however which would seem to favor the hypothesis

(1) In the case of mitral regurgitation there may be retardation of the development of intraventricular tension due to leakage of blood

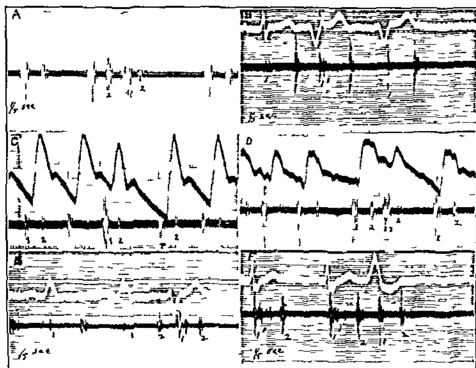


Figure 2 The heart sounds in extrasystolic beats *A* The first sound is represented by about the same pattern of vibrations in the extrasystoles as in normal beats The second sound in the extrasystole shows small vibrations and the interval between the first and second sounds is decreased *B* The first sounds are louder in the extrasystoles than in the beat with the prolonged P R interval and normal type of ventricular complex In the first extrasystole the first sound is split *C* The extrasystolic first sound is much louder than the first sounds in the beats with prolonged P R interval *D* Both the first and second sounds of the extrasystole are split *E* The first sound of the extrasystole shows much larger vibrations than the first sounds of the supraventricular beats in which left bundle branch block is present *F* The first sound is split in the supraventricular beats (showing right bundle branch block) whereas in the extrasystole it is single

(and therefore leakage of pressure) back to the left auricle during the early part of systole Wiggers and Feil[9] have shown that the amount of this regurgitation must be small Nevertheless their curves of intra ventricular pressure appear to show that the gradient of rise during the isometric period is less steep when regurgitation is present In mitral stenosis on the other hand rigidity of the valve leaflets which holds them near a position of closure may favor the rapid development of intraventricular tension (2) The marked differences in the first sound associated with changes in auriculoventricular relationships may be due

to the effect of auricular contraction on the position of the A V valves It has been demonstrated by Dean[10] that auricular systole causes marked changes in the position of the A V valve leaflets Considering this fact it logically follows that if the leaflets were near a position of closure at the beginning of ventricular contraction intraventricular tension might be expected to rise more rapidly than if the leaflets were more widely opened so that some regurgitation of blood (and therefore pressure) back into the auricles occurred before valve closure

There is a widely held clinical view that a loud first sound signifies a strongly acting heart and a weak sound a feebly acting heart Wiggers[7] has supported this view stating that the relative intensity of the sounds may be safely used as a clinical index of the vigor with which the ventricular contraction is carried out There is some clinical evidence in favor of it (1) In hearts with small ventricles showing quick wide excursions under fluoroscopic examination the first sound tends to be loud and sharp On the other hand when the ventricles are enlarged and their excursions insignificant the sound is frequently faint (2) During conditions of marked depression of the circulation such as are produced by surgical shock or severe infection, the first sound may be faint but with the onset of recovery and restored cardiovascular function it becomes much louder

On the other hand the effects of A V time relationships and disease of the mitral valve on the first sound do not support the view that the relative intensity of the first sound may be safely used as a clinical index of the vigor with which ventricular contraction is carried out, unless these factors are excluded The auriculoventricular relationships and the function of the A V valves in many cases are far more important in determining the loudness of the first sound than the actual vigor of contraction Even in auricular fibrillation in which the variable of auriculoventricular relationships does not have to be considered the loudness of the first sound does not always vary in the same direction as the actual strength or force of the beat[8] Thus in some cases there may be no significant change in the relative intensity of loudness of the first sounds even though *great differences in successive pulse waves are present This* is most likely to occur in mitral stenosis In other cases premature beats with small pulse waves may have first sounds either louder or fainter than the less premature beats

In the paragraphs above the thought in mind has been chiefly the significance of variations of the first heart sound as they apply to single cases When an attempt is made to evaluate the first heart sounds in different cases there are not only the factors mentioned above to deal with but certain others in addition Thus lack of synchronism in its components may markedly modify the intensity of the sound So called reduplication or splitting is very common both in healthy and diseased hearts Registration of such sounds frequently shows clear cut separation of two elements[6] The cardiodynamic studies of Katz[11] show that perfect synchronism of contraction of the two sides is the exception rather than the rule and studies of sound records would appear to bear out

this view When slight asynchronism is present but not enough to produce actual separation of two components, there may be merely prolongation of the sound and lessening of its intensity This may cause the so called muffled first sound It is present in many cases in which there is no reason to regard the vigor of cardiac contraction as diminished

Among other factors to be considered are differences in shape of the chest wall variations in the position of the heart the varied composition and thickness of overlying tissues and their damping effect on the sound vibrations transmitted through them and finally the extent of abdominal distention especially the amount of gas in the stomach and its effects on the position and action of the heart and the resonance of the sounds

Study of the first heart sound in over 500 cardiovascular cases[1] with special reference to the loudness of the sound yielded the following results In general youth small heart size thin chest wall thyrotoxicosis mitral stenosis and hypertension tended to be associated with a loud first sound Old age thick chest wall bradycardia emphysema shock pericardial effusion mitral regurgitation and myocardial disease especially myocardial infarction tended to be associated with a faint first sound The above correlations were slight however as compared to the correlation between loudness of the first sound and duration of the P R interval Thus when the P R interval was in the short normal range (0 12 to 0 14 second) the first sound tended to be loud when the P R interval was in the long normal range (0 18 to 0 20 second) the first sound tended to be faint when the P R interval was in the intermediate range (0 15 to 0 17 second) the first sound tended to be of medium loudness In persons with healthy hearts this correlation is remarkably good It is exceptional to find in the absence of heart disease a loud first sound and a long normal P R interval or a faint first sound and a short normal P R interval

In view of the considerations stated above the clinician must be cautious in attempting to draw conclusions from the character of the first heart sound regarding the condition of the heart He must take into account the various factors which are known to influence the loudness of the first sound

In the above discussion no emphasis has been placed on the quality or timbre of the first heart sound although clinicians can scarcely fail to be impressed by the probability that they are significant A comparison of sound records made in different cases shows decided variations in the principal as well as the minor vibrations of first heart sounds The imperfections of present methods of registration do not justify attempts to study the finer characteristics of the sounds Although there are many exceptions to the rule the tendency is to associate a so called booming or muscular low pitched and prolonged first sound with hypertrophied ventricular muscle such as may occur in arterial hypertension aortic insufficiency or in the hearts of athletes A short sharp higher pitched first sound is suggestive of mitral stenosis hyperthyroidism or the effort syndrome To what extent alterations in the character of the sounds such as those mentioned may be due to differences in muscle mass

thickness of fibers extent or rapidity of their contraction, and the accompanying intraventricular pressure changes remains unknown

Splitting of the First Heart Sound It is obvious both from careful auscultation and analysis of sound records that the first heart sound is a complex phenomenon It has long been recognized that at least two major components are often concerned in its production At times these two components are sufficiently widely separated so that two distinct sounds may be recognized This phenomenon has been called splitting or reduplication of the first heart sound Comparatively little work has been reported concerning the cause or nature of this splitting The two chief views have been as follows (1) The two components are of different origin One is muscular and due to movement of interlacing cardiac fibers as they contract The other is valvular and due to forcible closure of the auriculoventricular valves in the early stages of contraction This hypothesis which is the one most widely held has led to the description of the first heart sound as predominantly 'muscular' or valvular' in quality (2) The second view holds that the mechanism of production of the two components is similar in nature one component being produced as a result of left ventricular contraction and the other as a result of right ventricular contraction A necessary corollary to this view is that when the sound is split there must be asynchronism in the action of the two ventricles in at least some part of the early stage of contraction Although this hypothesis received some support in the earlier literature it was discarded for a long time because the idea that the ventricles could exhibit asynchronism in contraction was regarded as untenable [13] However during the past few years evidence has been produced to indicate that even healthy hearts may exhibit at least sight asynchronism in contraction of the two ventricles Furthermore evidence is available to suggest that one major component of the first sound may arise in the left ventricle and one in the right ventricle [6]

A certain amount of confusion has arisen in the literature because of the lack of a satisfactory definition as to just what constitutes the first heart sound Registration of the heart sounds reveals the fact that occasionally there may be as many as three separate groups of major vibrations in the time zone during which the first sound is supposed to occur Likewise groups of minor vibrations are frequently observed At the present time any definition as to what constitutes the first sound must be regarded as arbitrary although definition is necessary if the subject is to be discussed without confusion

Sound tracings frequently show minor vibrations resulting from auricular contractions which are not detected on auscultation These vibrations may be regarded as the prototype of presystolic or auricular gallop sounds which will be discussed later As a rule they begin in the range of 0 08 to 0 14 second after the beginning of the P wave Thus if the P R interval is in the low normal range the sound vibrations may coincide with the beginning of the Q R S complex and at times the beginning of the Q R S complex may actually precede the beginning of

these vibrations If the disturbance is great enough to produce audible sound the occurrence of this sound preceding the sound caused by ventricular contraction may give the impression of splitting of the first sound In our opinion there are good practical reasons for not including this sound of auricular origin as a part of the first heart sound As a rule it begins even before the first electrical manifestation of ventricular activity and under these circumstances can be recognized clinically as 'presystolic Furthermore this sound is nearly always a manifestation of gallop rhythm and should be recognized as such because of the important clinical *significance of gallop rhythm The significance is apt* to be missed if this grouping of sounds is called splitting or reduplication of the first sound

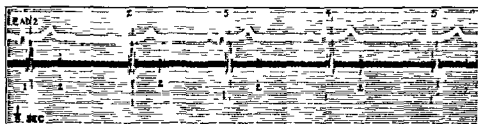


FIGURE 3 Phasic respiratory splitting of the first heart sound Beat two shows some merging of the two components beat three shows them side by side producing a so called muffled or prolonged first sound and beat five shows a separation of the two components

A short high pitched clicking or knocking early systolic sound (to be discussed later) is occasionally heard over the precordial area and is usually loudest in the second third or fourth interspace just to the right or left of the sternum The occurrence of this sound following the first heart sound is apt to furnish an auditory impression of reduplication However its area of maximum intensity its clicking or knocking quality and its occurrence at the instant of ejection of blood from the heart mark it off from what is ordinarily regarded as the first heart sound

In the normal healthy individual the first heart sound may be heard as a single or double sound Variations associated with the phases of respiration are not uncommon particularly in young people (Fig 3) Thus in a succession of beats extending through a complete respiratory cycle one may find single short sounds prolonged so called muffled or impure sounds and splitting into two distinct components

A study of the time relations of single first heart sounds shows that the major vibrations usually begin in the range of 0 03 to 0 08 second after the beginning of the Q R S complex of the electrocardiogram and before ejection of blood Thus, the sound occurs during the isometric period of ventricular contraction

For the purposes of this discussion therefore we define the first heart sound as a sound or grouping of sounds heard in the precordial area associated with the act of ventricular contraction and occurring during the isometric phase of contraction of the ventricle from which each

component of the sound arises The reason for such a definition is to exclude sounds due to auricular contraction and those associated with the beginning of ejection from the ventricles, either of which, occurring in close association with the first sound may be mistaken for true reduplication

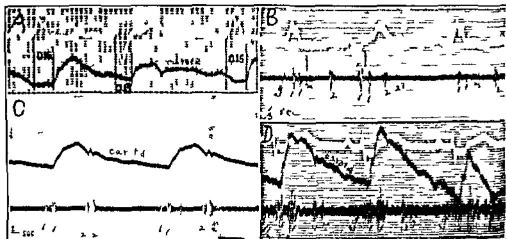


FIGURE 4 The relationship of split sounds to left ventricular ejection *A* Electrocardiogram and carotid pulse *B* Electrocardiogram and sounds Both *A* and *B* were made in a patient with left bundle branch block and ventricular extrasystoles Despite the prematurity of the extrasystole (which tends to cause delay in ejection) and the smallness of its pulse (which slows its velocity) the premature pulse falls relatively earlier than those of the supraventricular beats In the beats showing left bundle branch block both components of the split first sound precede the carotid upstroke In the extrasystoles the first component precedes and the second follows the carotid upstroke The vertical lines in *B* indicate the times of the carotid upstroke *C* Split first and split second sounds in left bundle branch block Both components of the split first sound precede the beginning of the carotid pulse The second component of the split second sound begins just ahead of the carotid incisura and represents aortic closure *D* The relations between ejection and split first sounds in right bundle branch block The first component of the first sound preceded the carotid upstroke and the second followed considerably later The first component of the split second sound begins just before the carotid incisura and represents aortic closure The tracings in this figure reflect part of the evidence indicating that in left bundle branch block left ventricular ejection is delayed and that in right bundle branch block left ventricular ejection does not tend to be delayed

The phenomenon of reduplication, although of no great clinical significance is of considerable importance to the investigator of the mechanism of production of the first sound Until we are able to explain the nature of reduplication we cannot expect to advance far in our understanding of the first sound There is good evidence to support the view that most single first sounds include the two major components which when they are sufficiently separated in time are responsible for reduplication It has been observed from time to time for years that in bundle branch block, there is apt to be reduplication of the heart sounds[14] This finding suggested the possibility that reduplication of sounds in such cases might be related to asynchronism in contraction of the two ventricles As stated

above Katz[11] had shown that in dogs, slight asynchronism in ejection from the two ventricles was a common occurrence It therefore seemed possible that such might also be the case in humans and that this asynchronism might be considerable when bundle branch block is present

An attempt to test this hypothesis by roentgenkymograms of aortic and pulmonic pulses timed by electrocardiograms showed that in left bundle branch block ejection into the aorta began several hundredths of a second after ejection into the pulmonary artery[6] This delay in aortic ejection could be confirmed by simultaneous electrocardiogram and carotid artery tracing In such cases both components of the sound preceded the carotid pulse However in certain ventricular extrasystoles interrupting left bundle branch block carotid pulsation was found to occur earlier than during regular rhythm despite the smaller pulse and consequently slower transmission to the carotid (Fig 4) In right bundle branch block however no delay in aortic or carotid pulse has *been found (unpublished observations)* * *Pulmonic artery pulsation* in contrast to what was found in left bundle branch block tended to lag behind aortic pulsation in ca es with split first sounds One component of sound tended to precede and one to follow the beginning of the carotid pulse In cases with split first sounds and no bundle branch block there was also found asynchronism in the beginning of ejection into the two great vessels

These data seemed to favor the view that splitting of the first sound at least in certain cases was associated with asynchronism in the beginning of ejection from the two ventricles and that in all probability one component was produced in each ventricle However the evidence which we regarded as most important in favor of this view was of a different type We have mentioned above the fact that the time relation of auricular and ventricular contraction may have a very important effect on the loudness of the first sound This is reflected in sound tracings by variation in amplitude of recorded vibrations

It seemed therefore that if cases could be found which showed constant splitting of the first heart sound and varying auriculoventricular relationships from beat to beat it would be interesting to observe the behavior of each component of the first sound We have had the opportunity to study two such cases in considerable detail[1] In both cases each component of the first sound was influenced by its own time relationship to auricular contraction (Fig 5) Thus in any given beat both components might be represented in the tracing by (1) large vibrations (2) small vibrations (3) the first component having large vibrations and the second small vibrations or (4) the first component having small vibrations and the second large vibrations It seemed to us that such behavior could not be accounted for if both components arose in a single ventricle but on the other hand made necessary the hypothesis that one of the two major components arose in each ventricle

* There is one exception to this statement In premature beats with a feeble pulse the beginning of ejection may be greatly delayed without corresponding delay in the first heart sound (Unpublished observations)

Although the evidence mentioned above would appear to indicate that in split first sounds each ventricle contributes a component, the possibility cannot be denied at present that in certain cases splitting of the sound in one ventricle may occur However there is as yet, no valid evidence to support such a view

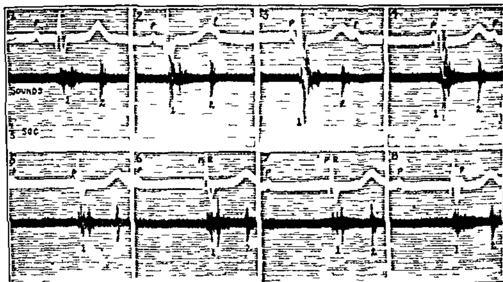


FIGURE 5 Complete heart block and split first heart sounds Beats were selected from a continuous strip of tracing to show the effect of varying As Vs relations on each component of the split first sound Either component may be represented by small or large vibrations depending on its own time relation to auricular contraction

When the two major components of the first sound are clearly separated it is noted that each is of extremely short duration usually less than that ordinarily found in the first sound (Fig 3) It is probable therefore that in single first sounds both components are usually present and partially superimposed If the asynchronism is a little greater so that the two components are recorded side by side but not actually separated, the muffled or impure first sound results However, in some cases there appears to be only a single component to the first sound The clearest example is seen in certain cases of left bundle branch block which exhibit a first sound a pause and then a systolic murmur an auscultatory finding pointed out by King[14] In such cases the sound in all probability emanates from the right ventricle In cases without bundle branch block but with very short single first sounds—the type often described as valvular—one may venture to think that this quality is due to the fact that only one component is loud enough to be heard

When we consider how the first sound is actually produced it is clear that the dynamic factor must be ventricular contraction Available evidence points to the view that the major vibrations occur during the isometric period of ventricular contraction and probably while intraventricular pressure is rising rapidly This force sets up vibrations which

are quickly damped What structure or structures are actually set into vibration in such fashion as to produce sound has not as yet been established Some workers adhere to the view that the auriculoventricular valves are the important source of vibrations[16] whereas some believe that various other structures are also concerned[1] So far as we are aware the evidence available at present does not clearly establish either view Furthermore we no not know just what it is that governs the magnitude of the vibrations and therefore the loudness of the sound It seems probable that the significant factor is the gradient of the rise of intraventricular pressure (the amount of force in terms of the speed of its development) in each ventricle and its effect on setting ventricular structures into vibration Such an hypothesis whether eventually proven to be valid or not appears to account better than any other now available for the behavior of the first sound

THE SECOND HEART SOUND

It may be regarded as established that the second heart sound is produced by after vibrations due to closure of the semilunar valves This sound has two components one furnished by aortic closure and the other by pulmonic closure According to Wiggers[3] the shortness of the sound is due to the quickness with which the vibrations are damped by the friction of the blood and lessening of their frequency as the pressure falls

Wiggers[1] states that the intensity of the aortic and pulmonic second sounds varies roughly with the mean pressures in the respective circuits but that dynamic studies show them to be more definitely related to the actual pressures existing in the large vessels at the very beginning of diastole It is questionable whether or not Wiggers view is adequate It fails to explain the fact that extrasystoles and the more premature beats during auricular fibrillation sometimes have second sounds as loud as more effective beats (Fig 1 *C* and 2 *B*) Furthermore the fact that the pulmonic second sound may be quite as loud as the aortic even though the pressure at the moment of closure must be very much lower suggests that factors other than the actual level of pressure play an important part

It would seem possible therefore that the difference in pressure in a ventricle and in its corresponding great vessel which must govern the speed of closure of a semilunar valve might be as important as the actual level of pressure in responsibility for the intensity of the sound Thus if the gradient of fall of intraventricular pressure were comparatively steep just prior to valve closure movement of the valve toward the position of closure should be correspondingly rapid and the after vibrations correspondingly more intense and productive of a louder sound

Clinicians have long taken into account another factor which must be concerned in the production of the second sound *viz* the physical state of the valve leaflets The character of the sound should depend not only on the speed and the pressure of closure but also on the capacity of the valves to be set into vibration analogous to the string or reed of

a musical instrument This factor has received much attention in connection with the aortic second sound

To how great an extent thickening or disease of the aortic leaflets modifies the aortic second sound is not known with certainty The accentuation attributed to this factor may be due partly in some cases to a more anterior position of the ascending portion of a normal aorta or to dilatation or tortuosity and consequently better transmission of the second sound to the surface Whatever may be the actual mechanism concerned in the change in sound either an accentuation or a definitely higher pitch of the aortic second sound (in the absence of hypertension) should immediately lead to suspicion of thickening of the valve leaflets or disease of the aorta On the other hand marked diminution or absence of the aortic second sound not accounted for by low blood pressure should suggest lessened mobility of the valve and lead to a careful search for aortic stenosis or insufficiency

Arterial hypertension tends to cause increased loudness and higher pitch of the aortic second sound However the enormous variability of the sounds in patients with similar degrees of hypertension is most impressive Satisfactory explanations for these differences are not available but they may be due at least in part to factors discussed above

The various diseases that are known to cause hypertension in the pulmonary arterial system such as pulmonary arteriosclerosis, pulmonary emphysema congenital defects with left to right shunt and certain types of left sided heart disease (particularly mitral stenosis) frequently have associated with them accentuation of the pulmonic second sound The main change is usually in loudness of the sound rather than pitch and timbre in this it tends to differ from the aortic second sound Before *deciding whether the pulmonic second sound is altered from the normal,* however the examiner should always take into account the age of the patient as well as the thickness of the chest wall In youth and in the thin chested the sound tends to be comparatively louder

Splitting of the Second Heart Sound Splitting or reduplication of the second sound is very common in both healthy and diseased hearts Two so called types have been described That due to asynchronous closure of the aortic and pulmonic valves and that due to asynchronous closure of leaflets of either valve Whether or not the latter type occurs is doubtful in most cases the reduplication is clearly due to asynchronism in closure of the two valves It is present in many cases of bundle branch block[6] (Fig 4 *C*) and of ventricular extrasystoles as well (Figs 2 *B* *D* and *E*) unless the beat is highly premature and ineffective It may be discovered in many cases with reduplication of the first sound whether the heart is healthy or diseased On the other hand it occurs frequently when no splitting of the first sound is discoverable

There are at least two reasons why the second sound may be split when the first sound is not In the first place the components of the second heart sound are shorter in duration than those of the first therefore an equal grade of asynchronism might merely prolong the first sound without causing separation whereas it might bring about clear

cut separation in the second sound that could be both heard on auscultation and registered in sound tracings Secondly the length of dynamic systole in the two ventricles may vary [11] This is probably best exemplified in certain cases which in different phases of respiration show no change in the duration or frequency of the vibrations of the first sound whereas the two components of the second sound may vary in position from superimposition to complete separation and reduplication (Fig 6)

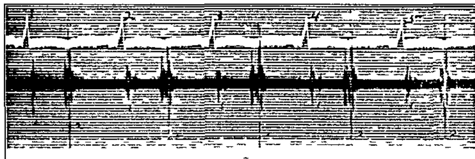


FIGURE 6 Phasic respiratory splitting of the second heart sound In the first and fifth beats the two components are approximated closely enough to give the impression of a prolonged second sound In beat three they are completely separated

The observations of Katz[11] indicate that these changes may de dependent on variations of blood inflow to the two sides of the heart during the different phases of respiration or to vagus effect

THE MID SYSTOLIC CLICK

In 1913 Gallavardin[18] described a clicklike sound which occurs during ventricular systole and falls between the first and second heart sounds In discussing this finding he applied two terms to it namely pseudo reduplication of the second heart sound and telesystolic extracardiac sound We have suggested the less cumbersome term of mid systolic click [19] The chief objection to this term is that the sound does not necessarily fall in mid systole but may occur earlier or later than this point Lian and Deparis [20] independently called the sound Le Claquement meso systolique pleuro pericardiale a term very similar to ours except for the last word which refers to Gallavardin s and their own conception of the mechanism of production of the sound Gallavardin stated that in three cases which had exhibited the sound during life pleuropericardial adhesions were found at necropsy He believed therefore that the sound is produced by tugging on pleuropericardial adhesions during systole a view which at this time cannot be regarded as established The clicklike sound can be imitated in the cadaver by moving the heart against a subpleural emphysematous bulla with the lung applied to the inner chest wall while one auscults over this area Furthermore the sound is similar to that which can be produced by injecting air into the mediastinal tissues (unpublished observations)

The sound is a click or crepitating noise not at all like any sound known to be produced within the heart except the opening snap of mitral stenosis which it sometimes resembles in quality but not in time relations It is usually a single sound but there may be two or even three sounds in rapid succession which may give the auditory impression of a short friction (Fig 7) It is usually heard best near the apex but

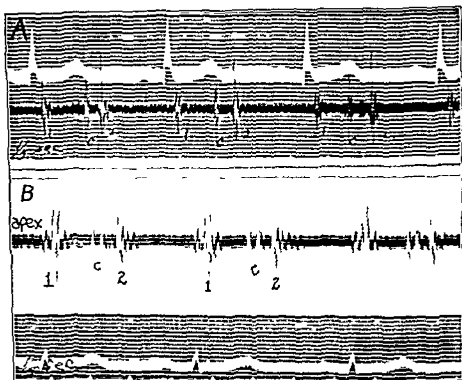


FIGURE 7 The mid systolic click *A* Variation in time relations to first and second heart sounds *B* A double click

occasionally as high as the third interspace It is often loud enough to be heard over the entire precordium Although it tends to fall about midway between the first and second sounds it may be near enough to one or the other to be mistaken for reduplication by those who disregard its other qualities In many cases there is a phasic respiratory variation in its time relations to the first and second sounds so that in one phase of respiration it may be nearer to the first sound and in another nearer to the second sound

The mid systolic click is quite common although usually overlooked by those who are not familiar with its characteristics So far as we have been able to ascertain it has no pathological significance It is usually found in healthy individuals but occasionally is present in patients with one or another type of heart disease Its chief clinical importance is that it is sometimes wrongly interpreted and mistaken for evidence of heart disease It is for this reason that all who examine hearts should be able to recognize it

GALLOP RHYTHM AND THE THIRD HEART SOUND

The presystolic type of gallop or canter rhythm was clearly described as early as 1838 by Charcelay [1] Potain however has been the most important contributor to this subject He divided gallop rhythm into three types protodiastolic mesodiastolic and presystolic and distinguished them from splitting of the first and second heart sounds He

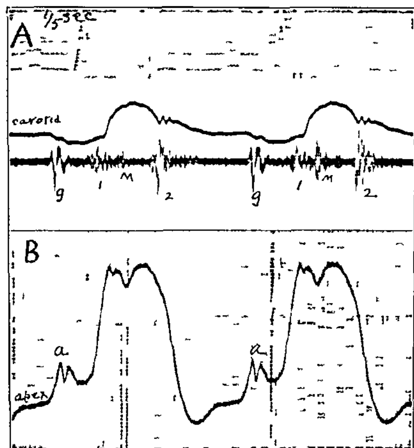


FIGURE 8 Presystolic gallop rhythm *A* Electrocardiogram carotid pulse and sounds at the apex The gallop sound is represented by vibrations of much lower frequency than the first sound the systolic murmur or the second sound *B* Electrocardiogram and apex cardiogram The summit of the prominent presystolic wave (*a*) occurs at the same time as the gallop sound

also stated that the gallop sound could be heard in twenty per cent of normal individuals Potain s classification has been modified in two respects (1) Following the work of Gibson [3] and of Thayer [4] the protodiastolic sound heard in individuals with healthy hearts most frequently in children and young adults has been called the physiological third heart sound There has been a tendency to remove this sound from the category of gallop rhythm despite the fact that Thayer believed that protodiastolic gallop and third heart sounds were produced by analogous if not identical mechanisms (2) Most recent writers have denied the

The sound is a click or crepitatir known to be produced within the hea stenosis which it sometimes resembl tions It is usually a single sound b sounds in rapid succession which m a short friction (Fig 7) It is usu

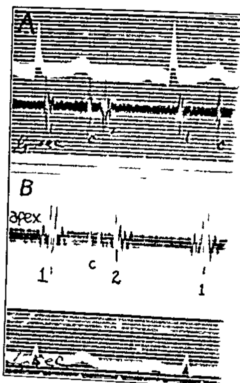


FIGURE 7 The mid systolic click *A* second heart soun

occasionally as high as the third in be heard over the entire precordiu midway between the first and secor one or the other to be mistaken for its other qualities In many cases t in its time relations to the first and of respiration it may be nearer to th to the second sound

The mid systolic click is quite co by those who are not familiar with it been able to ascertain it has no path found in healthy individuals but occas one or another type of heart disease that it is sometimes wrongly interpret heart disease It is for this reason tha be able to recognize it

considered are (1) The so called systolic gallop or other sounds which occur during systole (2) reduplication of either the first or second sound (3) the opening snap of mitral stenosis and (4) the sound due to calcification of the pericardium The characteristics which differentiate them are noted in the appended table

The presystolic gallop sound is clearly a result of auricular contraction as was first stated by Charcelay No dependable report of presystolic gallop in the absence of auricular beats is to be found in the literature We have never recorded it when it was not in close association with the P wave of the electrocardiogram In nearly all cases it is initiated within a range of 0 08 to 0 14 second after the beginning of the P wave If the sounds are recorded in conjunction with an apex cardiogram it is found that the gallop sound falls at the peak of the wave produced at the apex by auricular contraction (Fig 8) For these reasons we believe that the name might properly be changed from presystolic to auricular gallop as has been suggested[illegible] The time relations of the sound are determined solely by the position of auricular systole It is usually presystolic because auricular systole usually falls shortly before ventricular systole When auricular systole moves to some other position in the cardiac cycle auriculosystolic gallop moves along with it If the A V interval is very short the gallop sound may be so close to the first sound as to simulate splitting of the first sound (Fig 9 *A*)

Protodiastolic gallop occurs within the range of approximately 0 12 to 0 20 second after the beginning of the second sound In quality and the areas of maximum intensity the protodiastolic sounds are indis tinguishable from presystolic gallop sounds This sound falls at the summit of the wave of early diastolic ventricular filling The statement has been made repeatedly in the literature that gallop rhythm does not occur in the presence of auricular fibrillation This statement is true only so far as presystolic gallop sounds are concerned Protodiastolic gallop rhythm occurs not infrequently in the presence of auricular fibrillation (Figs 10 and 12 *B*)

Summation Gallop Rhythm It has long been known that gallop rhythm is most apt to be present when the heart rate is rapid at least 100 beats per minute Furthermore it has been noted that prolonged auriculoventricular conduction time in some way favors the occurrence of gallop rhythm Gubergritz[76] suggested that presystolic and proto diastolic sounds were due to similar mechanisms and in support of this view cited the observation that at various times the same patient might show one or the other type of gallop sound We have been able to confirm this observation by recording heart sounds and we have also found that both types may be present at the same time (Fig 11 *A*) Furthermore it has been possible to show that various forms of cardiac mechanism which tend to superimpose auricular contraction on the wave of early diastolic ventricular filling favor the production of gallop rhythm If either presystolic or protodiastolic gallop rhythm had previously been present the coincidence of auricular contraction with early diastolic filling greatly increases the loudness of the sound (Figs 11

and 12) If both protodiastolic and presystolic gallop sounds are present, increase in heart rate decreases the interval between them If the rate goes above 100 they are apt to merge, with the production of a single sound much louder than would be expected from simple addition of the two sounds In 1933 we presented evidence showing

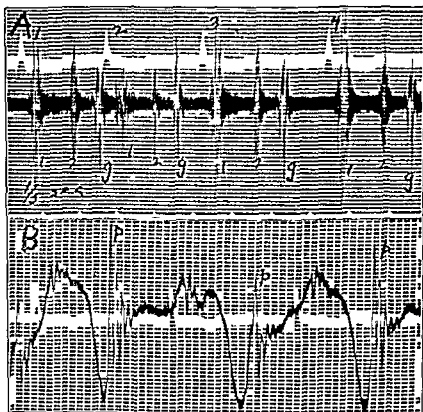


FIGURE 10 Protodiastolic gallop rhythm *A* Loud gallop sounds in auricular fibrillation *The interval between the second and gallop sound (g) is less in beat* two than in beat four This variation is dependent on the duration of the preceding ventricular diastole *B* Apex cardiogram same patient The large protodiastolic wave (*p*) falls at the time the gallop sound is to be expected The time relations of the protodiastolic wave show the same variations as those of the gallop sound

the relationship between the behavior of gallop rhythm and the time relations of early diastolic and auriculosystolic ventricular filling [7] The term 'summation gallop' was used to refer to the gallop sounds either produced or intensified by coincidence of the two waves of ventricular filling Further studies during the past six years have confirmed the validity and usefulness of the concept of summation gallop This concept permits at least some understanding of what was formerly regarded as mysterious behavior Most physicians, unless they are constantly on the lookout for faint dull low pitched gallop sounds rarely detect any type except summation gallop Nearly all the loud gallop sounds which obtrude themselves on the ear are of this type The criticisms which have been

offered against the hypothesis of summation[24] had all been covered by the evidence presented in the original paper and have therefore required no further consideration

Clinical Characteristics Potain has said that gallop sounds can sometimes be palpated better than heard He was doubtless referring to

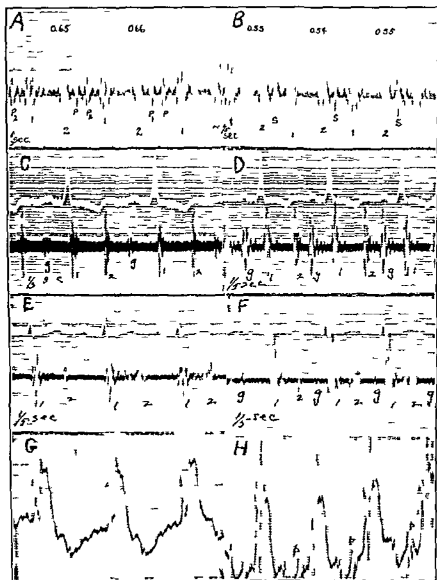


FIGURE 11 The effect of heart rate on gallop rhythm *A* and *B* from same patient In *A* both protodiastolic (*p* 1) and presystolic (*p* 2) gallop sounds are present In *B* the heart rate is accelerated so that the gallop sounds are merged into summation (*s*) gallop *C* and *D* from one patient The protodiastolic gallop sound (*g*) becomes much louder when the heart rate is increased *E* *F* *G* and *H* from one patient When the rate is increased (*F*) gallop rhythm (*g*) makes its appearance and a diastolic wave (*p*) in the apex cardiogram (*H*) becomes prominent

the impact of the wave of ventricular filling which accompanies the gallop sound. To recognize gallop rhythm one must be familiar with the low pitch of the sound, the positions in the heart cycle it is apt

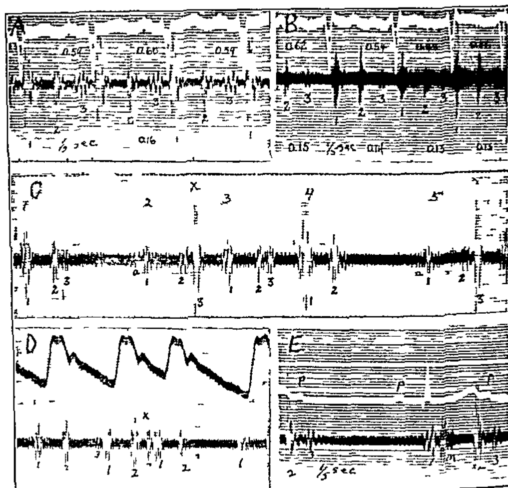


FIGURE 12. Effects of occurrence of auricular contraction in early ventricular diastole on the production of gallop sounds. *A* and *B*. Same patient. In *A* incomplete summation gallop rhythm is present producing a prolonged gallop sound (3). In *B* the rhythm has changed to auricular fibrillation so that only faint much shorter protodiastolic gallop sounds (3) persist. *C*. Incomplete heart block. The gallop sound (3) is present only when the P wave occurs near the end of the T wave. The most favorable position is just at the end of the T wave (beats two and five). *D*. In the premature beat the P wave coming just at the end of the preceding ventricular systole causes a summation gallop sound (3). *E*. Two to one heart block. The auricular beat falling before the ventricular beat causes only minor sound vibrations. The auricular beat falling in early diastole causes a distinct gallop sound (3).

to occupy the positions at which it is best heard (the apex or fourth interspace just to the left of the sternum) and the maneuvers which tend to accentuate it (such as placing the patient in the left lateral recumbent position or employing some method to increase the heart rate).

Gallop sounds are very variable in their behavior. They are usually but not always best heard with the patient in the recumbent position

They may be present during one examination and absent at the next They may even appear or disappear during a single application of the stethoscope if the rate changes (see Fig 11) They tend to be more conspicuous during decompensation and may disappear with the recovery of compensation

Gallop rhythm is usually left sided and heard best at the apex except in hypertensive disease with heart failure when it is frequently 'right sided and heard best in the fourth interspace just to the left of the sternum Apical gallop sounds are almost certainly produced in the left ventricle and those heard near the midline probably in the right ventricle

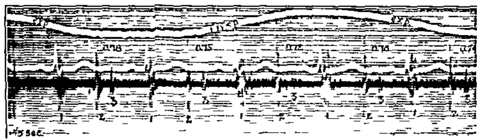


FIGURE 13 The effect of respiration on third sounds In this case the third sounds (3) were loudest just at the end of expiration and faintest when the lungs were filled

Mechanism The actual mechanism of production of gallop sounds has not been clearly demonstrated Some workers believe that the additional sound is produced by vibrations set up in the auriculoventricular valves [15] Others incline to the view that the wave of ventricular filling transmits an impact through the ventricular wall to adjacent structures such as the chest wall setting them into vibration

Those who believe that gallop sounds are valvular in origin may be divided into two schools namely those who hold that the sounds are due to opening of the valves and those who maintain that they are due to closure The view that gallop sounds are due to opening of the auriculoventricular valves in diastole is easily ruled out by consideration of the time relationships since the sound falls at the summit of the protodiastolic wave of ventricular filling which comes several hundredths of a second after opening of the valves Those who believe the sounds are due to valve closure assume that waves of ventricular filling by reflection back of the valves push them to a position of closure thus causing a sound This hypothesis does not seem to us to be valid for the following reasons (1) The sound comes at the summit of the wave of filling as recorded in the apex cardiogram (Figs 10 and 11) and during the downstroke of the jugular V wave If it were due to valve closure it should come after the summit of the filling wave furthermore in right sided gallop if valve closure occurred at the instant of the gallop sound there should be an interruption in the downward curve of the jugular tracing at the same instant, since the emptying of the venous

system would be checked if the A V valves were closed However, such is not the case The downward curve may continue uninterruptedly for at least 0 02 or 0 03 second after the beginning of the gallop sound (2) All sounds that we know to be valvular in origin are much higher in pitch and tend to be shorter in duration than gallop sounds

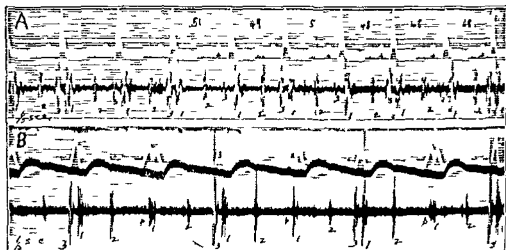


FIGURE 14 Alternation in gallop sounds *A* True alternation in which the gallop sounds (3) were alternately quite loud and faint Although ventricular alternation was present no definite alternation in loudness of either first or second sounds was detected *B* Pseudo alternation of gallop sounds (3) due to left bundle branch block in alternate beats The onset of left ventricular diastole is delayed when left bundle branch block is present so that the following auricular contraction occurs early enough in ventricular diastole to produce summation and therefore a loud gallop sound (*d*)

A wave of ventricular filling is indispensable for the production of gallop rhythm Anything tending to increase the size or velocity of such a wave favors the production of a gallop sound Among such factors are fever anemia hyperthyroidism or heart failure with increased intra auricular pressure In some cases, a third sound can be heard during only a part of the respiratory cycle (Fig 13) Occasionally alternation in the gallop sound is present (Fig 14) Both of these phenomena are probably due to *variations in the waves of ventricular filling* Other factors known to favor the production of gallop rhythm aside from the summation phenomenon discussed previously, are such diverse conditions as acute rheumatic carditis the so called anterior or apical myocardial infarction and the dilated failing heart of hyper tensive disease It seems probable that in such conditions the altered state of the heart muscle may offer less resistance to the impact of waves of ventricular filling Available evidence suggests that in some cases the increased waves of filling are chiefly responsible for the production of the gallop sound in others myocardial change However the combina tion of these two factors is most apt to produce gallop rhythm

The low pitch of the sounds their areas of maximum intensity their time relations to the waves of ventricular filling the prominence

of these waves in apex cardiograms their palpability when gallop rhythm is present and the important bearing which the state of the ventricular muscle (but not the valves) has on the production of gallop sounds would all seem to favor the impact' hypothesis The sound can be quite faithfully reproduced in the cadaver by gently tapping the finger against lung tissue applied to the inner chest wall and ausculting over the outside of the chest It is a remarkable fact that gallop rhythm is not often heard with the patient in the upright position However in those cases in which it is heard in the upright position it is apt to be much louder in the recumbent position The most favorable position for eliciting gallop rhythm is usually the left lateral decubitus It is not quite clear what bearing these facts have on the mechanism

The conception of gallop rhythm presented above has a definite bearing on prognosis Thus the larger the wave of filling or the greater its velocity the less is the change necessary in the state of the heart muscle for the production of gallop rhythm In hyperthyroidism with more rapid circulation time and because of tachycardia only a single large wave of ventricular filling it is quite probable that gallop rhythm (summation type) may occur with little alteration from the normal state of the heart muscle On the other hand, as stated above when the heart muscle is severely diseased there is good reason to believe that gallop rhythm may occur in spite of little change from the normal in the wave of filling The prognosis therefore may be modified by various factors In such conditions as hyperthyroidism anemia or acute carditis it is apt to be determined by the course of the underlying disease Thus while gallop rhythm may still be interpreted as the cry of a heart for help [9] the distress is not necessarily irremediable Studies made in groups of cases showing gallop rhythm indicate that on the whole this disturbance has a serious prognostic significance Such studies are of great value Nevertheless one must guard against the fallacy of venturing a prognosis in any patient on the basis of gallop rhythm alone any more than on any other single finding Gallop rhythm is a danger signal but one must still discover the nature and gravity of the danger

The Physiological Third Heart Sound This sound which is very commonly present in healthy children and not infrequently in young adults has auscultatory characteristics identical with gallop sounds Over the chest wall the sound heard is nearly always protodiastolic Low frequency vibrations may sometimes be recorded during the presystolic period but are only rarely audible [0] However as long as ago as 1914 Benjamins[30a] and more recently Taquini[30b] have recorded vibrations corresponding in time to auricular contraction when output receivers were placed in the esophagus at the auricular level It would be difficult to determine to what extent these vibrations may be adventitious due to movements of the auricles against the output receiver Such a finding does not permit the assumption that a sound is being produced within the auricles For example gently tapping the diaphragm of a stethoscope produces a sound which seems quite loud as one listens through the ear pieces the cause of such a sound however is not movement of the finger

per se but its impact against an interposed structure capable of being set into vibration *

The phenomenon of summation affects the physiological third heart sound as it does gallop rhythm There are, however important differences In gallop rhythm there is usually good reason for believing that

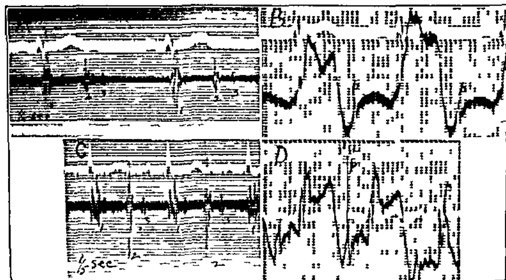


FIGURE 15 The physiological third heart sound *A* and *B* Same patient *C* and *D* Same patient In each case there is a prominent protodiastolic wave (*p*) in the apex cardiogram at the instant the third heart sound (3) occurs

waves of ventricular filling are increased in velocity or size or that there is some disease of the heart muscle In the healthy young people with physiological third heart sounds there is no reason for believing any of these factors to be present If therefore, the sounds have a similar mechanism, it is necessary to postulate that in youth the heart muscle possesses some quality that later tends to be lost Such a quality might be a certain pliability or elasticity which would permit the impact of the wave of ventricular filling to be transmitted through the ventricular wall more readily than occurs in older less elastic muscle We have no proof to offer for such a view except for the fact that in apex cardiograms rather large waves are found, corresponding in time to the third sounds just as in the case of gallop rhythm (Fig 15) If this view is correct the mechanisms of the physiological third heart sound is closely related

* This factor may have considerable importance even when sounds are heard or recorded from the surface of the chest provided impact is transmitted through the chest wall at that instant There can be little doubt that impact against the inner chest wall contributes to various sounds heard through the stethoscope or recorded These may be regarded for practical purposes as component parts of a heart sound although the actual place of origin of the vibrations is outside the heart However vibrations set up in an output receiver because of the transmission of an impact through the chest wall (vibrations which would not be present except for the interposed output receiver) should not be regarded as a legitimate part of heart sounds but should be looked upon as an imperfection in technic

to that of gallop rhythm The question may be asked why it is that when the rate is slow enough to avoid summation presystolic physio logical third heart sounds are so much less frequently heard than pre systolic gallop sounds This may be due to the fact that in the young healthy heart with no tendency to increased venous pressure the auricle is not likely to contain a large amount of blood in the latter part of ventricular diastole when auricular systole occurs so that a large wave of ventricular filling would not be expected at that time

THE PROTODIASTOLIC SOUND ASSOCIATED WITH CALCIFICATION OF THE PERICARDIUM

In 1933 Lian Marchal and Pautrat [1] described a strong vibrating sound heard in early diastole in two patients with calcification of the pericardium They termed it protodiastolic pericardiac vibration We have observed and recorded this sound in several patients The time relations of the sound are identical with those of protodiastolic gallop rhythm although the sound tends to be much sharper higher pitched and louder It has associated with it a vigorous apex impulse which falls at the same instant as the sound (Fig 16) The mechanisms of the sound production is probably somewhat similar to that of gallop rhythm with the sheet of calcium influencing the production of sound vibrations in some way as yet not understood We have noted the loud sound only in cases with circumscribed calcified areas In one case in which the heart was found to be almost completely encased in calcium a faint sound with similar time relations could be heard only near the base The extent of the area over which the sound is audible appears to depend on its loudness

SYSTOLIC GALLOP RHYTHM

The term meso systolic gallop was first proposed by Cuffer and Barbillon[3] who have received credit for the discovery of systolic gallop rhythm However the descriptions to be found in their article are vague and give the impression that they were mistaking such common conditions as splitting of sounds and diastolic types of gallop rhythm for systolic gallop However Potain[3a] a little later clearly described the aortic type of systolic gallop rhythm There has been more recently a tendency to include the mid systolic click with the systolic gallop sound [3,4,5] The aortic systolic gallop sound falls about midway between the first and second sound There is remarkable constancy in its time relations from beat to beat It is a little higher in pitch than diastolic gallop sounds but has none of the clicking or crepitating character of the mid systolic click It is heard best in the aortic area It may occur in cases with typhoid or typhoidlike fevers (we observed it in one girl with acute miliary tuberculosis) hypertensive cardiovascular disease and aortic insufficiency The last four cases in which we have discovered systolic gallop rhythm all had aortic insufficiency and it apparently occurs more commonly in this condition than any other We were able to obtain a roentgenkymogram of the ascending aorta in one patient with aortic

regurgitation and systolic gallop rhythm[36] It was found that the systolic gallop sound was synchronous with the peak of the systolic expansion of the aorta It is probable that the sound is due to checking of the expansion of the ascending aorta (as was first suggested by Potain) or to the impact of the expanding aorta against surrounding structures

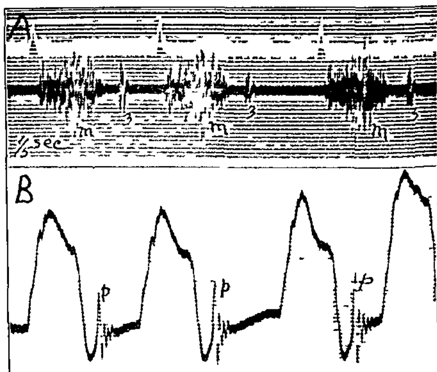


FIGURE 16 The protodiastolic pericardiac vibration A and B Same patient. There was a loud systolic murmur (*m*) a sharp third sound (3) and at the same *time a sharp outward thrust at the apex* (*p*)

A similar sound heard at the apex in one of our cases with aortic systolic gallop rhythm[36] fell 0 04 second later than the aortic sound and was synchronous with the peak of a positive wave in the apex cardiogram suggesting that impact of the ventricle against the chest wall as a factor in its production (Fig 17) We have not as yet observed systolic gallop rhythm in any patient with a normal cardiovascular system

THE OPENING SNAP OF MITRAL STENOSIS

This sound has been confused by some writers with reduplication of the second sound and by others with gallop rhythm Duroziez[37] Guttman,[38] Sansom[39] and Rouches[40] described it and differentiated it from other heart sounds It is a short sharp, snapping or clicking sound, usually occurring 0 07 to 0 13 second after the beginning of the second sound It is usually heard best in the third or fourth interspace near the anatomical position of the mitral valve this position being higher and farther to the right than the usual point of maximum intensity of left

sided gallop sounds We have made studies of its time relationships to various other cardiac events [41] It occurs just before the beginning of the diastolic murmur of mitral stenosis (Fig 18) In contradistinction to

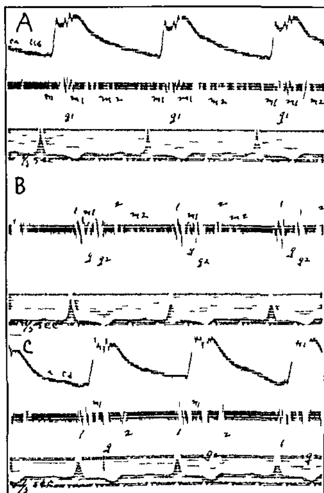


FIGURE 17 Systolic gallop rhythm *A* *B* and *C* from same patient In *A* the sounds were recorded in the first interspace to the right of the sternum At this position the only conspicuous sound aside from systolic and diastolic murmurs was a loud nearly mid systolic sound (*g* 1) In *C* at the apex first and second sounds were recorded and also a loud sound (*g* 2) slightly later in time than the mid systolic sound recorded at the base In *B* sounds recorded in the fourth interspace just to the left of the sternum show both the aortic and apical systolic gallop sounds (*g* 1 and *g* 2) split first and second sounds as well as the systolic (*m* 1) and diastolic (*m* 2) murmurs

the gallop sound it does not have associated with it a prominent wave in the apex cardiogram but occurs approximately 0 03 second before the small protodiastolic wave usually present in mitral stenosis The significant time relationship of the snap in cases having split second sounds is with the aortic component (Fig 18 *C*) The interval varies in auricular fibrillation being shorter after highly premature beats and longer after

delayed beats All available evidence indicates that the sound is due, as both Guttman and Rouches believed to sudden curtailment of the opening movement of the stenosed mitral valve as the blood flow from the auricle to the ventricle begins in early diastole

The opening snap has a practical value in the diagnosis of mitral stenosis second only to that of the characteristic murmur It is present

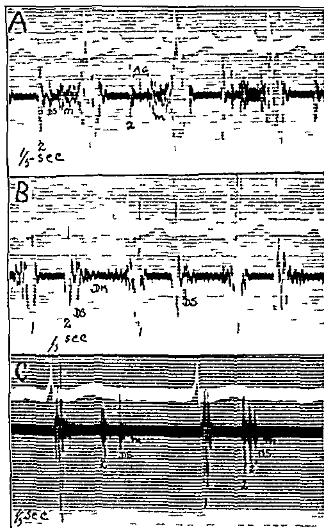


FIGURE 18 The opening snap of mitral stenosis *A* and *B* Same patient *A* Sounds were recorded where the diminuendo and crescendo murmur (*m*) of mitral stenosis was loudest in order to show its time relation to the opening snap (*DS*) The snap occurs during the auscultatory gap (*AG*) between the second sound and the beginning of the murmur *B* The sounds were recorded where the snap (*DS*) was loudest At this area the murmur was relatively insignificant *C* Loud opening snap (*DS*) in a patient with mitral stenosis in whom the diastolic murmur (*m*) was barely audible In the second beat the second sound is split (2 2) so that three separate loud sounds are heard in rapid succession The first of these represents aortic closure and it is to this sound that the snap (*DS*) maintains its significant time relation In auricular fibrillation this time varies depending on the length of the preceding ventricular diastole

in well over half the cases and in many it is distinct and easily heard when the murmur is difficult to elicit. Its sharp snapping or clicking quality distinguishes it from all other sounds heard during diastole. Its point of maximum intensity and time relation to the second sound also help to differentiate it from both reduplication of the second sound and protodiastolic gallop rhythm. So far as our experience goes the opening

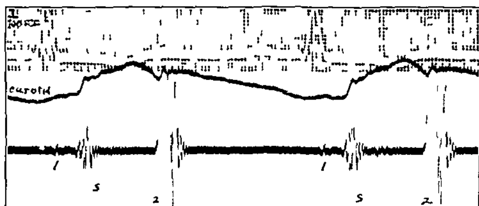


FIGURE 19 The semilunar opening click (*s*) recorded at the base. At this area the first sound (1) was insignificant. The click was loud and sharp and preceded the carotid upstroke by 0.02 second. The film was run rapidly to display time relations. Each vertical line represents 0.01 second.

snap occurs only in mitral stenosis. Others have stated that it occurs in aortic insufficiency and adhesive pericarditis. It may be heard in cases of aortic insufficiency in which mitral stenosis is also present but not otherwise. The statement that it occurs in adhesive pericarditis is an error possibly due to confusing the opening snap with the "protodiastolic pericardiac vibration" of Lian present in some cases with calcified pericardium. The two can be differentiated by the time relations and areas of maximum audibility of the sounds as well as by the fact that the pericardiac vibration has a sharp palpable impulse associated with it.

THE SEMILUNAR OPENING CLICK

We have recently become aware of a sound occurring in early systole which we believe we had previously either overlooked or mistaken for the second component of a split first sound. The characteristics of this sound are so distinctive that once they are known the sound is easy to recognize. The term semilunar opening click was adopted to call attention to the character of the sound, the area over which it is heard best and its time relations. It is loudest at the base either over the aortic or pulmonic area. When it occurs over the aortic area it can be shown by simultaneously recorded sound and carotid artery tracings to fall within the range of 0.01 to 0.02 second before the primary carotid oscillation (Fig. 19). This means that it is approximately synchronous with the beginning of ejection into the aorta. When the sound is

heard best over the pulmonic area the relations to the carotid pulse are not quite so constant, but it is probable that in such cases the sound is synchronous with beginning ejection into the pulmonary artery. The sound is short, high pitched and usually clicklike in character. The time of its occurrence is such that grouped with a single first sound the *two may resemble a split first sound*. However the click may be present when the first sound is split. Under these circumstances the click in some cases may fall between the two components of the split first sound or in others may follow the second component.

The semilunar opening click is most likely to be found when the heart has extra work to do. Most of our patients in whom this sound was heard over the aortic area had systemic arterial hypertension. In two aortic aneurysm was present. In the patients in whom it was heard best over the pulmonary artery, there was dilatation of the pulmonary vessels suggesting pulmonary hypertension. We have heard the sound in several patients with patent ductus arteriosus.

SOUNDS IN WHOSE PRODUCTION THE PRESENCE OF AIR PLAYS A PART

Water wheel Murmur The best known of this group of sounds is a spectacular churning or splashing noise the so called water wheel murmur (bruit de la roue hydraulique) or bruit de moulin, heard over the precordial area when both fluid and air are present in the pericardial sac. These sounds may be very loud so that they are audible some distance from the chest, more often, however, they can be heard only by applying the stethoscope or ear to the precordial area. The sounds are rarely observed except in dealing with war wounds involving the chest. However the combination of air and fluid in the left chest also has been described as producing a splashing sound. The presence of air and fluid in the pericardial sac does not necessarily mean that the water wheel murmur will always be present. One of us failed to elicit it in a case in which approximately half of a large pericardial effusion was withdrawn and replaced by air.

Splashing Sound *Apparently the combination of a large overactive* heart and just the proper mixture of gas and fluid in the stomach may also produce a splashing sound with each heartbeat. O H Perry Pepper[4] has reported such a case and refers to a similar case previously reported by Spillman and Perrin[40]. While making rounds, he heard a similar sound in a patient with aortic insufficiency and a very large heart. The splashing sound in this patient lasted for only a short time and was not heard again during his stay in the hospital. This sound has little clinical significance beyond the fact that it should not be confused with the water wheel pericardial murmur.

The Pericardial Knock This designation has been applied to a knocking or tapping sound heard over the chest usually during the systolic phase of the heartbeat in certain cases with left sided pneumothorax. The term seems inept since so far as is known the pericardium is not an important factor in the production of the sound. According

to Barnwell[44] it was first suggested because of the finding of a shell fragment in the pericardium of a patient exhibiting the sound This is also one of the sounds which may be quite loud and heard some distance from the chest The patient is usually quite aware of its presence Scattered case reports are to be found in the older literature Rees and Hughes[4] reported nine cases with very loud tapping sounds following war wounds of the chest although some of their cases may not have

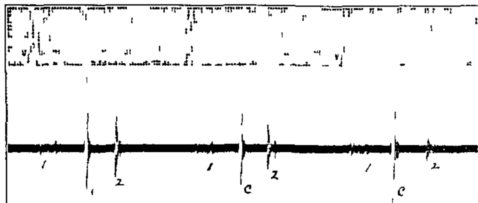


FIGURE 20 Mid systolic short loud crepitating sound (c) in a patient with mediastinal emphysema

belonged in this group Various explanations for its mechanism have been offered Barnwell and Greene[44] suggested two possible mechanisms (1) the free diastolic fling of the heart against the left diaphragm over a distended hollow abdominal viscus (2) the uncushioned systolic impact of the heart against the chest wall in cases of left pneumothorax Cooper (observations to be reported) has found that the sound can be elicited in a large proportion of patients in whom left sided pneumothorax has been induced in the treatment of tuberculosis He observed however that it was necessary to place the patients in certain positions of recumbency usually in the left lateral decubitus in order to produce the sound It is tremendously influenced by the phase of respiration In studies of some of these patients made with Cooper we concluded that impact against the chest wall of the partially collapsed lung as it is moved with the heart during systole is responsible for the sound The lung movement can easily be seen by fluoroscopy Furthermore this hypothesis fits in well with the influence of position and respiration on the production of the sound

Sounds Due to Mediastinal Emphysema The most important discussion of this subject is found in the recent paper by Hamman[46] It was Hamman s belief that in his cases there was interstitial emphysema of the lungs which traveled to the mediastinum Presumably the cause of the sound is movement of the heart against the emphysematous tissue with the production of sounds analogous to those produced by the pressure of a stethoscope against subcutaneous emphysema These

sounds may be quite loud They are noted by the patient himself and may sometimes be heard across the room Hamman used many adjectives in describing the sound including such terms as crunching crackling crepitating, bubbling clicking and popping We have observed a similar sound in one patient after perirenal air injection and in another after paravertebral novocain injection of the upper thoracic sympathetics In both patients a loud crackling sound was heard during systole (Fig 20), but one case differed from those of Hamman in that at times a similar but less loud sound could be heard during diastole We assumed that in our cases, air had traveled to the mediastinal space from the sites of injection In one air could be demonstrated in the mediastinum by roentgenogram Mencher,[4] has shown that mediastinal emphysema is not uncommon after perirenal air injection So far as we are aware this sound has not been observed previously after paravertebral injection We have been able to duplicate the sound heard in our patients by injecting air into the mediastinal tissues of a dog

SOUNDS ASSOCIATED WITH AURICULAR CONTRACTION

There are certain sounds due to auricular activity such as auricular friction sounds (observed occasionally in pericarditis) and murmurs (commonest in mitral stenosis) which do not fall within the scope of this discussion We have discussed previously two effects of auricular contraction on sounds emanating from the ventricles These are the influence of the As Vs time relation on the loudness of the first heart sound and the role played by auricular contraction on the production of presystolic and summation types of gallop rhythm

It has long been known that sounds corresponding in time to auricular activity can often be heard in cases of heart block As long ago as 1897 Pouzin[48] supported the view that these sounds were due to closure of the auriculoventricular valves following immediately after auricular contraction * Gallavardin[49] dissented from Pouzin s view and held that these sounds are analogous to those of gallop rhythm and arise in the ventricles He proposed that the auscultatory sign be called "galop du block "

Lewis [51] on the basis of phonocardiographic studies, found that there is sometimes a "double auricular sound He suggested that the first is due to contraction of the auricles and tension in its walls and the second due to closure of the auriculoventricular valves following cessation of flow from auricules to ventricles When only a single sound is heard Lewis

*Griffith [50] in studying a case of this type made the further observation that when auricles and ventricles contracted at about the same time the first heart sound was likely to be much louder than in other beats Griffith s observation apparently not considered important at that time led eventually to the discovery that the time relations of auricular and ventricular activity exert a powerful influence on the loudness of the first sound even when the cardiac mechanism is normal a phenomenon which we have discussed in connection with the first heart sound However it is clear that the contribution of the auricles to the production of the first heart sound is indirect due to the effect of auricular discharge on ventricular activity and not due to sound originating within the auricles themselves

suggested that it is due to valve closure In our experience the double auricular sound is extremely rare We have recorded it in only one case It is possible that the second component of the sound is due to auriculo ventricular valve closure In both Lewis case and our own it began

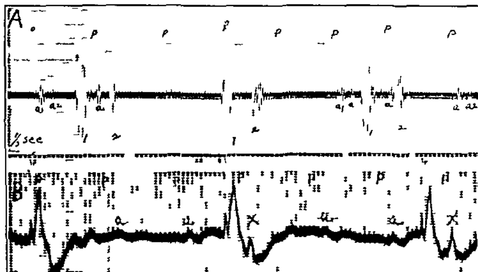


FIGURE 21 *A* Double auricular sound (*a* 1 *a* 2) in complete heart block When auricular contraction falls during ventricular contraction an extra sound (*a*) is recorded having the same time relation to the P wave as the first com ponent (*a* 1) of the double sound *B* Apex cardiogram Same patient (The P waves in the electrocardiogram can barely be seen due to failure to loosen and standardize the string) When however the auricles beat during certain phases of ventricular systole an extra wave (*x*) may be seen in the apex cardiogram much larger than waves caused by auricular contraction during ventricular diastole (*a*) We interpret these large waves as indicating that auricular contraction was moving the ventricle as a whole against the chest wall During diastole when the ventricular wall is flaccid no such wave is found but only small waves of filling

approximately 0 30 second after the beginning of the P wave (Fig 21) However we have not observed this late sound in the presence of normal rhythm * although we have recorded it as a single auricular sound ' in cases of heart block

The first component is apt to fall 0 08 to 0 14 second after the begin ning *of the P wave as is the case in presystolic gallop rhythm* It is probably not due to A V valve closure We have pointed out previously in this discussion that presystolic gallop sounds precede that event In both Lewis and our case of heart block a sound having the same time relation to auricular activity as this first component was heard and recorded even during the ejection period of ventricular systole (Fig 21)

Characteristics of the so called auricular sound which falls in the range of 0 08 to 0 14 second after the beginning of the P wave in cases

* If due to A V valve closure it could not occur when the P R int rval is normal since the valve would already be closed by ventricular contraction

TABLE 1

Extra Sounds Associated with the Heartbeat and Some of Their Characteristics

	Point of Maximum Intensity	*Time Relation*	*Characte*	*Remarks*
Reduplicated first sound	Apex or just to left of lower part of sternum	Interval 0 04 to 0 12 second	Both sounds similar altho one may be louder than the other	Easily differentiated by the time relations from all extra sounds except late pre ystolic gallop and semi lunar opening click Common in both healthy and diseased hearts
Semi lunar open ing click	Aortic or pulmonic area	Synchronous with be ginning of ventricular ejection	Sharp clicking or snap ping	Differentiated from reduplication of the first sound by area of maximum intensity Rare
Mid systolic click	Inside apex fourth or fifth interspace	Between first and second sound Often varies with respiratory phases	Sharp snap or clicking sound	No clinical importance Must be differentiated from apical systolic gallop rhythm Fairly common No pathological significance
Systolic gallop	Aortic area or apex	Constant and about mid way between the first and second sound	Medium pitch May be loud or faint	The aortic type is distinctive The apical type must be differ entiated from the mid systolic click Rare
Pericardial knock	At apex or to left of heart	Inconstant Usually sys tolic but may also have diastolic component	Knocking May be very loud	Occurs in cases with air in left pleura space Can often be elicted after left sided pneumothorax
Sounds due to medi astinal emphysema	Precordial area	Usually systolic May have diastolic compo nent	Snapping or crunching May be very loud	May follow spontaneous pneumothorax or perirenal air injec tion Resembles the pericardial knock Rare
Sounds due to agita tion of air and fluid in stomach by the heartbeat	Lower precordium and epigastrium	Systolic and diastolic	Splashing sounds	Appears to require for its production large overactive heart as well as the appropriate combination of air and fluid in the stomach Extremely rare
Reduplicated second sound	Base	Interval 0 03 to 0 11 second	Both sounds usually have similar character altho one may be louder or higher pitched than the other	Must be differentiated from the opening snap Common in both healthy and diseased hearts

TABLE 1 (Continued)

EXTRA SOUNDS ASSOCIATED WITH THE HEARTBEAT AND SOME OF THEIR CHARACTERISTICS

	Point of Maximum Intensity	*Time Relation*	*Character*	*Remarks*
The opening snap	Just below mitral ring third or fourth interspace	0 07 to 0 13 second after second sound	Sharp snap or clicking sound Loud or faint	Must be differentiated from reduplication of the second sound Common in mitral stenosis and pathognomonic of this lesion.
Physiological third *heart sound*	Inside apex usually *fourth interspace*	0 12 to 0 18 second after *second sound*	Usually faint low pitched	Cannot be distinguished from gallop except by absence of *heart disease Common in youth*
Protodiastolic gallop	Inside apex usually fourth or fifth interspace	0 17 to 0 20 second after second sound	Usually faint low pitched	Cannot be distinguished from physiological third heart sound except by presence of heart disease Common in diseased or failing hearts
Presystolic (auricular systolic) gallop	Inside apex usually fourth or fifth interspace	0 08 to 0 14 second after beginning of P	Usually faint low pitched	Ability to time it before the first sound is most important differential point Common in diseased or failing hearts
Summation form of gallop	Inside apex usually fourth or fifth interspace or just to left of sternum	Usually 0 12 to 0 20 second after second sound	Low pitched may be faint loud or short murmur	The rate usually exceeds 100 beats per minute unless delayed conduction is present Occurs when auricular systole falls close to preceding ventricular beat Common in diseased or failing hearts
Protodiastolic pericardiac vibration	Precordial	Usually 0 12 to 0 20 second after second sound	Strong vibrating sound	Louder than normal heart sounds Differentiated from protodiastolic gallop and physiological third heart sound by its constancy and greater strength from the opening snap by greater intensity and longer interval after the second sound Pathognomonic of pericardial calcification
Auricular Sounds Early Type	Apex	0 08 to 0 14 second after beginning of P wave	Low pitched	Heard in heart block Similar to presystolic gallop
Late Type	Third or fourth interspace	0 24 to 0 30 second after beginning of P wave	Low pitched	Heard in heart block Mechanism not known

of heart block, are as follows (1) It is likely to be much louder when it is superimposed on early ventricular filling than at any other time (in this respect behaving like summation gallop) (2) It is low pitched (3) It is heard best near the apex All these findings, together with its time relations support Gallavardin s view that it is a form of gallop rhythm and that, although the sound results from auricular activity, it actually arises in the ventricle Such an explanation however, does not account for the sound heard during ventricular systole In our case this sound, like the first component during diastole, was also heard best at the apex An apex cardiogram and a roentgenkymogram of the left ventricular border both showed a wave whose peak was simultaneous with the sound In the former the auricular wave during ventricular systole was very prominent (Fig 21 *B*) We concluded, therefore, that auricular systole, occurring during ventricular systole, pushed the contracting ventricle against the chest wall causing impact and producing sound

One may raise the question as to why "*galop du bloc*" should be relatively commoner in cases of heart block than is presystolic gallop rhythm in cases with a normal cardiac mechanism We have been much impressed by the rapidity and extent of ventricular dilatation which may develop when complete heart block replaces normal sinus rhythm One possible mechanism is that under such circumstances, the thickness of the ventricular wall must be decreased so that a wave of ventricular filling caused by auricular systole would result in less absorption of the impact in the ventricular wall (and therefore more transmission to the chest) than would be the case if that wall were thicker Furthermore, in cases of heart block with slow ventricular rate ventricular systole is prolonged so that in early diastole the auricles are likely to be engorged with blood If auricular contraction comes at such a time it is apt to augment greatly the wave of the early diastolic filling, a circumstance which would be favorable to the production of sound

In some cases of heart block a sound associated with auricular activity is heard best in the third or fourth interspaces and not at the apex So far as we are aware these sounds have not been carefully studied but they may be the same as the second component of the double auricular sound Their position suggests that they might be due to A V valve closure It seems to us unlikely that they are due directly to contraction and tension of the auricular walls but this possibility has not been excluded

The problem of auricular sounds" needs further study, particularly in cases of complete heart block On the basis of evidence available at present, it is clear that at least two and probably three different mechanisms may produce so called auricular sounds The earlier of the two auricular sounds which may be heard during ventricular diastolic periods in heart block resembles presystolic gallop sounds so closely that it, like presystolic gallop, is almost certainly caused by the effect of auricular contraction on the wave of ventricular filling The later "auricular sound' which has been observed only in cases of heart block may be due

to auriculoventricular valve closure The auricular sound noted during ventricular systole cannot be due to either of these mechanisms The limited observations made suggest that it is due to the effect of auricular contraction in pushing the contracting ventricle against the chest wall The question as to whether auricular contraction and tension of its walls produces sound which can be heard by the stethoscope remains open

Table 1 points out characteristics tending to differentiate these extra or additional sounds

REFERENCES

1 Einthoven W Arch f d ges Psysiol 117 461 1907
2 Lewis T Heart 4 241 1912 1913 Quart J Med 4 441 1913 Lectures on the Heart Paul B Hoeber New York 1915
3 Wiggers C J 'The Circulation in Health and Disease Lea and Febiger Philadelphia and New York 1923
4 Einthoven W The Harvey Lectures p 111 J B Lippincott Co Philadelphia 1924 1925
5 Wiggers C J Am. Heart J 1 173 (Dec) 1925
6 Wolferth C C and Margolies A Am Heart J 10 425 (April) 1935
7 Wolferth C C and Margolies A Arch Int Med 46 1048 (Dec) 1930
8 Wolferth C C and Margolies A Tr A Am. Physicians 45 44 1930
9 Wiggers C J and Feil H Heart 9 149 1922
10 Dean A L Jr Am J Physiol 40 206 1916
11 Katz L N Am. J Physiol 72 655 (May) 1925
12 Wolferth C C and Margolies A Tr Coll Physicians 4th Series 4 No 1 (Jan June) 1936
13 Holt E Am Heart J 2 453 (April) 1927
14 King J T Am. J M Sc 187 149 (Feb) 1934
15 Wolferth C C and Margolies A J Clin Invest 14 605 (Sept) 1935
16 Dock W Arch Int Med 51 737 (May) 1933
17 Wiggers C J The Circulation in Health and Disease p 320 Lea and Febiger Philadelphia and New York 1923
18 Gallavardin L Lyon Med 121 409 1913
19 Wolferth C C and Margolies A M Clin North America 14 897 (Jan) 1931
20 Lian C and Deparis M Bull et mem Soc med d hop de Paris 49 496 (April 17) 1933
21 Charcelay Arch gen de med 3rd ser 3 393 1838
22 Potain C Clin med de la Charite Lecture on Gallop Rhythm G Masson Paris 1894
23 Gibson A G Lancet 2 1380 1907
24 Thayer W S Boston M & S J *158 713 1908* Arch Int Med *6 297 1909*
25 Duchosal P Am Heart J 7 613 (June) 1932
26 Gubergritz M N Ztschr f Kreislaufforsch 21 65 (Feb 1) 1929
27 Wolferth C C and Morgolies A Am Heart J 8 441 (April) 1933
28 Bramwell C Quart J Med 4 149 (April) 1935
29 Obrastzow W P Zt chr f klin med 57 70 1905
30a Benjamins C E Pflugers Arch f Physiol 158 125 1914
30b Taquini A C Exploracion del Corazon por via Esofagica El Ateneo Buenos Aires 1936 p 104 *et seq*
31 Lian C Marchal M and Pautrat J Bull et mem Soc med d hop de Paris 49 20 (Jan 23) 1933

32 Cuffer and Barbillion Arch gen de med 1 129 1887 1 301 1887
33 Potain C Semaine Med 20 175 1900
34 Thompson W P and Levine S A New England J Med 213 1021 (Nov 21) 1935
35 Johnston F D Am Heart J 15 221 (Feb) 1938
36 Wolferth C C and Margolies A Am Heart J 19 129 (Feb) 1940
37 Duroziez P Arch Gen de Med 20 385 1862
38 Guttman P Lehrbuch der klinischen Untersuchungs Methoden August Hirschwald Berlin p 257 1872
39 Sansom A F Proc med Soc London 5 191 1881 M Times & Gazette 2 58 1881
40 Rouches F J M These de Paris (July) 1888
41 Margolies A and Wolferth C C Am Heart J 7 443 (April) 1932
42 Pepper O H P J A M A 58 340 1912
43 Spillman and Perrin Province Med 20 429 1907
44 Barnwell J B From J Alexander s Collapse Therapy of Pulmonary Tuberculosis Chap 11 p 225 C C Thomas Springfield Ill and Baltimore 1937
45 Rees W A and Hughes G S Lancet 1 55 1918
46 Hamman L Tr A Am Physicians 52 311 1937
47 Mencher W H J A M A 109 1338 (Oct 23) 1937
48 Pouzin These de Paris 1897 1898
49 Gallavardin L Arch d mal d Coeur 7 171 1914
50 Griffith T W Heart 3 143 1912
51 Lewis Thomas Lectures on the Heart p 53 *et seq* Paul B Hoeber New York 1915

FREDRICK A WILLIUS, M D

5A

Historical Origin and Evolution of Certain Congenital Anomalies of the Heart and Great Vessels

The tremendous progress that has been achieved in the last two decades in the surgical treatment of certain congenital anomalies of the heart and great vessels warrants a consideration of the historical aspects of the subject At *the present time nearly one hundred congenital anomalies* of the cardiovascular system have been described Only a few of them will be considered in this discussion

The medical pioneers who so well established the basis for the recent progress in this field comprise clinicians, physiologists pathologists anatomists embryologists and surgeons

For nearly fourteen and a half centuries little or no progress was evident in the field of the cardiovascular system following Galen s (138 201 A D) incorrect concept and teachings [2, 7] Galen completely lacked the concept of the circulation of the blood and was led into serious error by attempting to merge purely speculative physiologic hypotheses of convenience with inaccurate and incomplete anatomic observations It was with fanatical zeal that his followers unequivocally accepted his fallacious concepts As late as 1649 Jean Riolan (Riolanus) (1577 1657) is credited with the statement that if subsequent dissections and observations differed from those of the Master (Galen) any discrepancies were attributable to the fact that nature had changed [7]

It was not until 1628 when William Harvey s correct exposition of the circulation of the blood appeared that constructive progress in the field of the cardiovascular system occurred In his monumental work *Exercitatio anatomica de motu cordis et sanguinis in animalibus* Harvey also described the fetal circulation and the flow of blood through the foramen ovale (functional two chambered heart) He wrote

> Thus in embryos while the lungs are yet at rest and have no action or motion as if they were not present nature makes use of the two ventricles of the heart as one for transmission of the blood

In this and like vagaries of the embryonal cardiovascular development which perforce must be called normal lie opportunities for a multiplicity of congenital anomalies of the heart and great vessels which do in fact heavily afflict deplorable members of each generation born [14]

PATENT DUCTUS ARTERIOSUS

The usual reference to the ductus arteriosus as the "ductus botalli represents an eponymic error Castiglioni has discussed the historical mystery of one Botallo who is believed to have confused the foramen ovale with the ductus [7] So many contradictory statements concerning Botallo are recorded that it has been impossible to solve the enigma of his identity to say nothing of his contributions One page of history states that he was born in 1530, the same year that other references indicate as the year of his graduation and he is said also to have been a student of the famous surgeon Lanfranc who lived more than two centuries earlier [7]

The first authentic record concerning the discovery of the ductus arteriosus is the observation of Giulio Cesare Aranzio (1530 1589), Professor of Anatomy at Bologna,[7] who extensively studied the anatomy of the fetus and made his observations about the middle of the sixteenth century

In 1593, Giambattista Carcano (1536 1606) of Milan Professor of Anatomy at Pavia, confirmed Aranzio s findings when he also described the ductus arteriosus [7]

According to Peacock, in 1757 Reimann recorded an instance of patent ductus arteriosus in an infant in whom postmortem examination revealed the left subclavian artery issuing from the ductus [22] Reimann's report a work of German origin is the first published record of this compounded anomaly

Numerous other references found in the early literature are chiefly concerned with the revelation of patency of the ductus arteriosus as disclosed at postmortem examination In 1836 Ledиberder of France described an instance of the type in which the ductus is merely a fistulous communication between the aorta and the pulmonary artery [16]

In 1845 Norman Chevers (1818 1886) of London made the first report of typical solitary patency of the ductus arteriosus occurring in an adult [8] Postmortem examination verified the clinical diagnosis As early as 1847 Babington of England observed vegetations involving the patent ductus and was the first to record the complication which is now known as subacute bacterial endarteritis [8]

The characteristic murmur of patency of the ductus arteriosus is at times referred to as Gibson s murmur George A Gibson (1854-1913) of Edinburgh was the first to emphasize and describe the characteristic murmur as a diagnostic sign of the anomaly He stated

> "The most characteristic physical sign is a murmur in the second left intercostal space over the septum where the thrill is felt and this murmur is of late systolic rhythm that is to say that when compared with the apex beat it distinctly follows it The murmur is usually somewhat long in its duration and of a high pitched character it is usually louder on deep inspiration It is further frequently accompanied by considerable accentuation of the pulmonary second sound due to the increase of pressure in the pulmonary artery [12]

Because of the fact that patency of the ductus arteriosus was the first congenital anomaly of the heart to be treated surgically it is of unusual interest to recall the prophetic publication of John C Munro (1858 1910)

a surgeon of Boston Massachusetts, who in 1907 predicted the feasibility of surgical closure of the patent ductus Munro expressed his prediction as follows

After death which took place without oedema or marked cyanosis examination showed an open ductus arteriosus lying easily within reach behind the sternum without any other defect or lesion except a dilated right ventricle The simplicity of the remedy was so striking that I at once made further dis sections and satisfied myself that it would be possible to ligate the duct provided a diagnosis could be made beforehand The operation I would pro pose as demonstrated on the cadaver is as follows Under ether which I prefer to chloroform in any case involving collapse of the lung the sternum can be easily split along its centre or a little to the right opposite the second costal cartilage This is easily done with knife The sternal halves are then retracted ample room for working being obtained The right pleural cavity will probably be opened but the left one will not. Judging from analogous cases in surgery this should not be serious but if necessary the physiologist s apparatus for maintaining artificial respiration could be employed I hardly believe that it would be needed After retracting the thymus upward the pericardium is exposed Its reflection lies so high on the large vessels that the ductus to all intents and purposes is intrapericardial In the upper angle the aorta will be seen on the patient s right and the pulmonary artery on the left By follow ing close to the aorta toward the under surface of the arch the ductus as large as the aorta itself will be seen as the first vessel to the left pointing upward and a little to the right Both pulmonary branches lie too far posteriorly to be seen and by keeping close to the aorta the main pulmonary trunk will escape injury On pushing through the tissues by blunt dissection the ductus theoretically should be easily surrounded by a ligature It is a question whether or not simply crushing it would not accomplish as much and in case of necessity I believe that it would be worth trying After closing the anterior pericardial wound the sternum can be sutured or not and the skin closed [0]

It was not however until 1939 thirty two years after Munro s article appeared that Gross and Hubbard reported the first successful surgical closure of the patent ductus [13]

COARCTATION OF THE AORTA

Apparently the first published instance of coarctation of the aorta is a case which Morgagni in 1761 reported from his correspondence [19] The recorded description supports the supposition that accessory congenital defects were present although no mention of them was made

In 1791 thirty years later Paris recorded another instance of coarcta tion of the aorta disclosed at postmortem examination in 1789 [21] While the early literature contains numerous publications dealing with isolated instances many of them are based solely on postmortem findings Among the authors of these reports are such contributors as August Albrecht Meckel (1827) [18] Reynaud (1828) [23] Cruveilhier (1835) [9] and Chevers (1845) [8] to mention only a few It was Meckel who first called attention to the erosion of the ribs which results from the pulsations of the dilated and tortuous intercostal arteries which serve as collateral communications between the upper and lower segments of the obstructed aorta [18]

It was not, however, until 1903, when Bonnet carefully reviewed his cases and those in the literature, that the present day classification of coarctation came into being. Bonnet classified two basic types. The "infantile type" represents a persistence of, or exaggeration of, conditions prevailing in the fetus before birth. Here a constriction with a long segment of narrowing of the aorta occurs between the origin of the left subclavian artery and the insertion of the ductus arteriosus. It is frequently associated with other congenital anomalies of the heart. The "adult type" has no counterpart in the fetus and is represented by a marked constriction or obliteration of the aorta adjacent to, or near the insertion of, the ductus arteriosus or the ligamentum arteriosum as the case may be. The obstruction is usually limited to a short segment of the aorta.[5]

The long obscurity of this congenital anomaly has ended with relative suddenness. Wernicke of Berlin, for his discussion of coarctation of the aorta in 1875, had discovered only five cases in the literature prior to that time in which the correct diagnosis had been made during the life of the patient.[26] Abbott in 1915 had discovered only twelve such instances.[1] Thus it is within approximately four decades that a rarely identified clinical entity has become one of fairly common place recognition.

SO CALLED TETRALOGY OF FALLOT (LA MALADIE BLEUE)

The casual student of medical history frequently is confused by the eponymic designation of diseases. This is vividly demonstrated in the case of Pick's disease, where three different clinical entities were described by three different physicians all bearing the name of Pick and each dissimilar disease bearing the title of Pick's disease. Examples of this are found in the history of congenital anomalies of the heart and great vessels.

Etienne Louis Arthur Fallot (1850 1911), of Marseille, in 1888 published a remarkably accurate account of a set of congenital anomalies of the heart and great vessels which he designated as *la maladie bleue*. The following quotation in translation is from the conclusions of his classic article:

> This malformation constitutes a true anatomicopathologic type represented by the following tetralogy: (1) stenosis of the pulmonary artery, (2) interventricular communication, (3) rightward deviation of the origin of the aorta, (4) hypertrophy, almost always concentric, of the right ventricle —and to these may be added sometimes, but in a strictly accessory manner, the failure of occlusion of the foramen ovale.'[10]

Fallot's publication received wide acclaim, and it was not long before the combination of anomalies became known universally as the "tetralogy of Fallot." Perhaps because few modern medical authors on the subject saw fit to delve into the earlier literature, or perhaps because of Fallot's brilliant account, his name continues to be usually the only one associated with this condition.

It is of unusual interest that the first known record of this combination of congenital anomalies was published in 1673 by Niels Stensen or Nicholas Steno (1638 1686), the eminent Danish anatomist, whose observations were conducted during the course of his dissection of a fetal monster. The

modern rediscovery of this case is credited to Professor Erik Warburg of Copenhagen who kindly forwarded a copy of his report to me The fol lowing quotation from Stensen s report is of interest

> Most of all the unusual form of the arteries proceeding from the heart merited both attention and amazement At the first view portending something strange the pulmonary artery appeared much more narrowly constricted than the aorta therefore I laid it open from the right ventricle of the heart to the lung itself and at once saw plainly that the canal which leads from the pul monary artery to the aorta (ductus arteriosus) quite evident in all other fetuses was entirely missing
>
> But when I opened the right ventricle the probe being passed upward along the septum found an aperture opening directly into the aorta just as easily as it soon passed upward to that very aorta from the left ventricle
>
> Thus there were three openings in the right ventricle—one from the auricle two into the arteries and the same aortic canal common to both ventricles had twin orifices divided by the septum of the heart In the auricles nothing differed from the usual fetal conformation. [17]

That hypertrophy of the right ventricle was not a feature of this case was probably due to the fact that the subject did not live beyond birth

In 1761 Morgagni[1'] in his *De Sedibus* described a somewhat similar case which many authors have discussed but it does not meet the require ments for inclusion as a typical example of the tetralogy

An early and complete description of the classic combination was pub lished in 1777 by the famous Dutch physician teacher and linguist, Eduard Sandifort (1742 1814) of Leyden [4] His account was comprehensive and included all the cardinal factors enumerated by Fallot 111 years later

In 1784 only seven years after Sandifort s classic account the great William Hunter (1718 1783) of Glasgow and London published his obser vations from the postmortem examination of a child who had lived thirteen years In his report hypertrophy of the right ventricle is not mentioned but the ensuing quotation is of interest

> There was a singular conformation of the heart which allowed only a very small portion of the blood to pass through the lungs That peculiarity was partly in the pulmonary artery which was so small at its beginning from the right ventricle that it would barely give passage to a small probe But there was another peculiarity—*viz* the *septum cordis* was deficient or per forated at the basis of the heart so as in the dead body to allow my thumb (a small one) to pass across from either ventricle to the other the orifice of the aorta being situated so close to this perforation as in the action of the heart to receive the blood from the right ventricle as well as from the left. [1v]

Other early accounts of this tetralogy selected through analysis of published reports were given by Cailliot in 1807 [10] Pallois in 1809 [10] and Gintrac in 1824[10] and the frequency of such publications increased as the year of Fallot s description approached [10]

Worthy of mention is Thomas Bevill Peacock (1812 1882) of London who in 1866 published the second edition of his classic work *On Malforma tions of the Human Heart* This incidentally was the first book on con

genital anomalies of the heart to be published. In this volume, Peacock described more than eighteen cases, nine of which were typical examples of the tetralogy.[22]

It is evident that numerous observers—some very early—had accurately described the congenital derangement responsible for *la maladie bleue* before Fallot's description appeared in 1888. In this presentation there is no intention whatsoever to detract from the recognized prestige of Fallot's publication, but in historical documentation the correct sequence of priority should be maintained.

UNCOMPLICATED SEPTAL DEFECTS

The general conformation of the fetal heart and the foramen ovale were first described in 1593 in a volume by the same Giambattista Carcano who studied the ductus arteriosus, but the foramen and the septum which normally replaces it were not immediately understood.

In 1640 Pierre Gassendi (1592-1655) of Champtercier, France, later a professor at Aix, with three other authors published a book in which Gassendi's contribution was an account of the demonstration of a patent foramen ovale at postmortem examination of an adult. Gassendi was not the discoverer but a witness—and indeed it should be repeated that he and presumably his colleagues interpreted the findings as proof of an erroneous theory of circulation. Gassendi wrote, in translation:

> While I was residing in Aix whenever a dissection was being performed I was present frequently in the anatomical amphitheatre. Now for many years I had observed invariably that dissectors taking the heart in their hands would test the perviousness of its septum with a blunt instrument which they call a spatula and would conclude as physicians have concluded that the transmission of blood from the right chamber to the left must occur by insensible transudation. Now when this problem came to be discussed by the professors of anatomy eight years ago there came among the disputants a diligent surgeon, Payanus by name, who wanted to demonstrate to us onlookers that the facts were otherwise. So taking up the spatula he undertook to penetrate the mediastinum of the heart. But he did not attempt to push the instrument straight through as the others had done, but having introduced its tip (for the tissue of the septum presents a thousand little openings) pushed onward with utmost gentleness, turning the instrument with the greatest patience up and from side to side, seeking always a farther ingress, and at last the instrument was seen entering the left chamber. But then, because we had alleged that he had made an artificial opening, he himself requested one of us to incise the septum down to his instrument, with a sharp scalpel. When the incision had been made we found that no tissue anywhere had been injured and we saw that only the meatus or canal, notwithstanding the fact that it was a very winding passage, was lined with a very thin and glistening membrane.[11]

Allan Burns (1781-1813) of Glasgow, a little known contributor to the records of medical history, published a significant work in 1809. Among the cases of congenital anomalies of the heart which he discussed were instances in which the foramen ovale and the ductus arteriosus were open, others in which only the foramen ovale was open, and others in which a defect in the interventricular septum occurred.[6]

One of the most important and outstanding contributions dealing with septal defects was that of the brilliant Bohemian pathologist, Carl Rokitansky (1804 1878), for many years Professor of Pathology at Vienna In 1875, after fourteen years of investigation Rokitansky published his important volume dealing with septal defects and his theory of their genesis He showed that the ventricles in their development are separated from each other by the upward growth of the septum and that the common arterial trunk is also separated into right and left halves by a septum having its origin in an indentation in the walls of the vessel The septum of the ventricles and the septum between the two halves of the arterial trunk become joined so that each ventricle finally communicates with one half of the vessel Normally a rotation of the arterial ends of the ventricles and the great arterial trunk occurs so that the portion of the trunk which is to become the pulmonary artery is in front and to the left of that portion which is to become the aorta If in the course of development this process of rotation fails to occur prior to the union of the ventricular and aortic septa it remains possible for the aortic portion of the trunk to open into the right ventricle while the pulmonary portion communicates with the *left ventricle*

In 1861 while performing a postmortem examination, Henri Louis Roger (1809 1891) of Paris demonstrated the presence of an interventricular septal defect in the absence of stenosis of the pulmonary artery "[4] Eighteen years later (1879) Roger published his classic article dealing with the characteristic physical signs of the uncomplicated interventricular septal defect The following translated excerpt from his article is of interest

> The condition is revealed only through auscultation and is evidenced by a physical sign whose characteristics are wholly peculiar—a strong and lengthy *murmur* It occurs quite alone begins with systole and continues so long as to overspread entirely the normal tic tac sounds It is greatest not at the apex (as with le ions of the auriculoventricular orifices) nor at the right of the base (as with stricture of the aorta) nor at the left (as with stenosis of the pulmonary artery) but in the upper third of the precordial region It is medial like the septum itself from the focal point its intensity diminishes regularly by degrees in proportion with the increase of distance the location is fixed and there is no propagation in the vessels It coincides with no other *sign of morbid organic condition except purring tremor* An *anomalous* murmur in which this group of characteristics is combined is *the pathognomonic sign of patency of the interventricular septum* [4]

Even today this characteristic murmur is known as the bruit de Roger '

The most extensive contributor to knowledge pertaining to congenital anomalies of the heart and great vessels was Maude E Abbott (1869 1940) of Montreal Among many publications her greatest work was the remarkable *Atlas of Congenital Cardiac Disease* This volume which appeared in 1936 under the sponsorship of the American Heart Association contains a critical analysis of 1 000 cases

Maude Abbott s teaching and writings were the most outstanding factors in converting the mysteries and uncertainties of congenital anomalies

of the heart and great vessels into understandable realities Through her work and influence the clinical diagnosis of the various defects has become remarkably precise and thus has enabled the surgeon to intervene, so that an ever increasing number of hitherto incurable patients are now finding relief

From this historical review it is evident that our medical forebears have built the basic structure of cardiology wisely and well Without this foundation of knowledge at their command present day scientists could not possibly have achieved the amazing progress of the last two decades

REFERENCES

1 Abbott Maude E Congenital Cardiac Disease (Reprinted from Osler and McCrae s Modern Medicine Ed 2 1915 vol 4) Philadelphia Lea and Febiger 1915 pp 323 445

2 Abbott Maude E Atlas of Congenital Cardiac Disease New York The American Heart Association 1936

3 Babington Benjamin Guy Cyanosis Dependent on Patent Ductus Arteriosus with Disease of the Aortic Valve Tr Path Soc London 1 55 58 1847

4 Bennett L E Sandifort s Observations Chapter I Concerning a Very Rare Disease of the Heart Bull Hist Med 20 539 570 (Nov) 1946

5 Bonnet L M Sur la lesion dite stenose congénitale de l aorte dans la région de l isthme Rev méd (Paris) 23 108 126 255 265 335 353 418 438 481 502 1903

6 Burns Allan Observations on Some of the Most Frequent and Important Diseases of the Heart Edinburgh Thomas Bryce and Co 1809 pp 16 19 21 28 85 87

7 Castiglioni Arturo A History of Medicine (Translated by E B Krumbhaar) New York Alfred A Knopf 1941 pp 427 429

8 Chevers Norman Observations on the Permanence of the Ductus Arteriosus and Constriction of the Thoracic Aorta London M Gaz N S 1 36 188 (May 30) 1845

9 Cruveilhier J Anatomie pathologique du corps humain Maladies des arteres Retrecissement par froncement de l aorte sans alteration des parois Paris J B Baillière 1835 1842 vol 2 livraison 40 plate 3 figs 3 and 3 pp 8 10

10 Fallot F L A Contribution à l Anatomie pathologique de la Maladie bleue (Cyanose cardiaque) Marseille Médical 25 77 138 207 270 341 343 344 403 1888

11 Bonaciolus (Gassendi *et al*) *De foetus formatione* (or *Ennease Muliebris*) Leyden F Hegerus 1640 pp 270 272 transcribed and translated with discussion by G Kasten Tallmadge *in* Pierre Gassendi and the Elegans de Septo cordis pervio observatio Bull Hist Med 7 429 457 (May) 1939 see especially pp 437 442 and 456 457)

12 Gibson George Alexander Diseases of the Heart and Aorta Edinburgh and London Y J Pentland 1898 pp 303 304

13 Gross R E and Hubbard J P Surgical Ligation of a Patent Ductus Arteriosus Report of First Successful Case J A M A 112 729 731 (Feb 25) 1939

14 Translated from Guilielmi Harvei Angli Exercitatio anatomica de motu cordis et sanguinis in animalibus Frankfurt W Fitzeri (Facsimile Vol V of Monumenta Medica edited by Henry E Sigerist Florence R Lier and Co) 1928 Chapter 6 p 35

15 Hunter William Three Cases of Mal conformation in the Heart. Medical Observations and Inquiries (by a Society of Physicians in London) 6 302 303 1784

16 Lediberder Organisation anormale du coeur oblitération de l artere pulmonaire a sa naissance absence du canal arteriel Bull Soc Anatomique Paris S 3 2 68 70 1836

17 Translated from Maar V (ed) Nicolai Stenonis Opera Philosophica Copenhagen Vilhelm Tryde 1910 Vol 2 p 52

18 Meckel A Verschliessung der Aorta am vierten Brustwirbel Arch f Anat u Physiol (Meckel s) 1827 pp 345 354 p 347 and tab V

19 Morgagni John Baptist The Seats and Causes of Diseases Investigated by Anatomy in Five Books Book II Of Diseases of the Thorax (Translated by Ben

jamin Alexander) London printed for A Millar and T Caddell his successor (1769) vol I letter XVII articles 12 13 p 435 and vol I letter XVIII articles 5 6 pp 461 462
20 Munro J C Surgery of the Vascular System. I Ligation of the Ductus Arteriosus Ann. Surg 46 335 338 (Sept.) 1907
21 Paris Rétrécissement considérable de l aorte pectorale J de chir (Desault) (Paris) 2 107 110 1791
22 Peacock T B On Malformations of the Human Heart, Etc with Original Cases and Illustrations Ed 2 London John Churchill and Sons 1866 (Cases II III IV V VII VIII X XI XII c f pp 47 49 56 57 66 and 125)
23 Reynaud A Observation d une oblitération presque complete de l aorte J hebd de méd Paris 1 161 175 1828
24 Roger Henri Recherches cliniques sur la communication congenitale des deux coeurs par inocclusion du septum interventriculaire Bull l Acad méd Paris S 2 8 1079 and 1091 1878
25 Von Rokitansky Carl Die Defekte der Scheidewande des Herzens Pathologisch anatomische abhandlung Wien. Wilhelm Braumuller 1875
26 Wernicke R Der Verengerung and Obliteration der Aorta in der Gegend des Ductus arteriosus Botalli und ihre Diagnose intra vitam. Berlin, G Lange 1875 32 pp
27 Willius Fredrick A and Dry Thomas J A History of the Heart and the Circulation Philadelphia W B Saunders Company 1948

5B

Congenital Cardiovascular Abnormalities

Incidence [1] Reports of congenital cardiovascular defects found at necropsies would indicate that among the population at large the incidence is approximately 1 per cent, the greater number of cases naturally occurring in early childhood. The incidence of cardiac anomalies among infants dying before the age of two years was 4 per cent and among individuals ranging from two years through adult life 0.7 per cent. In a study of the incidence of congenital malformations in over 5000 pregnancies, defects of the cardiovascular system were found in 0.9 per cent of total births. At all ages including the neonatal period individuals with persistent cyanosis due to cardiac defects are fewer in number than those who present no cyanosis.

Etiology Under normal conditions the embryonal cardiac tube passes through a series of coordinated changes in its progress toward the four chambered human heart. These include division into four primitive chambers, rotation of the tube upon itself so as to conserve space, absorption of the sinus venosus into the atrium and the bulbus cordis into the ventricle, separation of the primitive atrium, primitive ventricle and truncus arteriosus by the formation of septa and valves.

The majority of cardiac anomalies result from arrest in this coordinated process of development. The earlier in embryonal life this occurs, the more complicated the anomaly. If before the fifth week of fetal life, a nonviable monstrosity results. Interruption of normal development of the heart between the fifth and eighth weeks will result in a viable infant born with an abnormal heart. The graver anomalies of the cyanotic group take origin in the earlier part of this period when division of the atrioventricular canal and truncus arteriosus is proceeding concurrently with shifting and rotation of these parts upon themselves in the median axis of the heart while involution of the primitive bulbus cordis is taking place. By the end of the eighth week of fetal life the septa have closed.

The relative frequency of associated anomalies elsewhere in the body bears out the belief that malformation of the heart is due largely to factors which have disturbed the normal course of development rather than to localized inflammatory states. Since the fundamental structure of the heart is established by the eighth week of fetal life, such factors must have been operative in the early weeks of pregnancy. Studies have emphasized the importance of environmental factors in producing malformation of

Pages 73 to 140E replace former pages 73 to 140 ©1 59

the fetus Experimentally, cardiovascular malformations in the fetus have been produced by a diet deficient in vitamins fed to pregnant animals and by exposure of the embryo to irradiation, hypoxia, trypan blue, or to an atmosphere high in carbon dioxide [2] Nutritional deficiencies of the fetus may be due not only to dietary deficiencies of the mother but perhaps also to maternal or placental diseases Renal disease endocrine disorders even emotional disturbances may play a part At least one disease of viral origin has been incriminated Infants of mothers who developed rubella within the first three months of pregnancy have been born with cardiac anomalies which may be associated with congenital cataract, congenital deafness, or mental retardation In the experience of the writer, severe vomiting or significant bleeding in the first trimester has occurred as frequently as viral diseases in the history of mothers who have given birth to children with cardiovascular malformations Syphilis rarely if ever plays an etiologic role Unsuccessful attempts to induce abortion early in pregnancy have been admitted by some mothers In the majority of cases however, no history of maternal disturbance in health can be obtained

That an hereditary tendency may play a part is suggested by the occasional association of conditions of known familial origin, such as polydactylism or arachnodactyly, as well as by the appearance of cardiac anomalies in more than one generation in siblings or in collateral branches of the family What advice as to future progeny should be given to parents of a first child born with a defective heart? In the case of young parents it would seem wise to encourage a second pregnancy Granted that the chance of producing another abnormal child is greater than the average in the majority of instances subsequent offspring will be normal Since the proportion of defective children becomes progressively greater as the age of the mother increases, contrary advice should probably be given to parents past the age of thirty

After birth anatomic closure of the ductus arteriosus and foramen ovale is gradual rather than abrupt Gradual reduction in the caliber of the ductus culminates in obliteration not earlier on the average than six to eight weeks after birth Following functional abandonment of the foramen ovale adhesion between the septum and valve takes place slowly and is usually not complete until the latter half of the first year The isthmic portion of the aorta lying between the left subclavian artery and the ductus arteriosus, which in the fetus is normally narrow, requires a period of approximately two months to reach the full caliber of the contiguous parts of the aorta The finding of some degree of narrowing of the isthmus or of patency of the ductus arteriosus or foramen ovale within the period shortly following birth should not be interpreted as abnormal Although anatomic closure is gradual functional closure of the ductus arteriosus and foramen ovale may take place shortly after birth

Classification The following classification suggested by Dr Maude E Abbott[3] based on the presence absence or late appearance of cyanosis has proven of value It has been modified by the author on the basis of recently developed hemodynamic concepts

Group I—Acyanotic Lesions in which no communication exists between the arterial and venous circulation Admixture of venous and arterial blood does not occur Pulmonary flow equals systemic flow Cyanosis appears only in the presence of heart failure and is due to peripheral stasis

Group II—Arteriovenous Shunt Lesions in which there exists a communication between arterial and venous circulations without the presence of a complicating anomaly that might alter the normal pressure relations within the heart Under normal conditions of pressure the shunt will be arteriovenous and the pulmonary flow will be greater than the systemic flow In the presence of pulmonary hypertension due to occlusive changes within the intrapulmonary arteries there may be a reversal of flow and the appearance of cyanosis This may be preceded by a period of balanced pressure during which the flow may be bidirectional

Group III—Cyanotic Anomalies which ensure the mixture of venous and arterial blood within the heart or which prevent adequately oxygenated blood from entering the systemic circulation Anoxemia exists at birth although not always of a degree sufficient to be visible as cyanosis in the neonatal period The lungs may receive an excessive normal or inadequate supply of blood depending on individual variations in the structure of the cardiovascular anomalies which are included in this group

Pathogenesis of Congenital Cyanosis Lowered oxygen saturation of the blood which reveals itself clinically by the appearance of cyanosis may be the result of a variety of causes acting singly or in combination In their classic monograph on cyanosis Lundsgaard and Van Slyke[4] outlined the following primary factors responsible for its production (1) Diminished oxygenation within the lungs (2) direct venous arterial shunt in the presence of an anomalous defect (3) increased utilization of oxygen within the peripheral circulation as a result of stasis (4) high hemoglobin level All of these factors may play a part in the production of cyanosis in the individual with a suitable cardiac anomaly Hitherto the part played by diminished oxygenation within the lungs has been thought to be due mainly to secondary factors such as the development of pathologic changes within the walls of the alveoli or pulmonary capillaries which might hinder the penetration of oxygen into the blood Taussig[5] has emphasized the primary part that inadequate pulmonary circulation itself may play in the production of cyanosis Such diminution in pulmonary blood volume may occur in the presence of anomalies which hinder the exit of blood from the right ventricle The volume of blood passing through the lungs may be so reduced as to diminish oxygenation to a point insufficient for the maintenance of life

Arterial anoxemia may be present even in the absence of visible cyanosis At least 5 Gm of reduced hemoglobin per 100 cc of blood in the peripheral vessels are necessary to produce cyanosis The appearance of severe anemia may efface a preceding cyanosis even though the degree of oxygen unsaturation is still high With equivalent values of oxygen unsaturation cyanosis will be less marked in the individual with a normal blood count than in the individual with polycythemia The intensity of

cyanosis in itself thus is not an indication of the extent of anoxemia from which the individual may be suffering

In addition to the factors which are directly responsible for the production of anoxemia, other modifying factors may influence its visibility in the form of cyanosis Such are thickness of epidermis, variations of skin pigment and number size, and distribution of skin capillaries The ability to detect slight cyanosis varies also with the skill of the individual observer



FIGURE 1 Clubbing of fingers in a nineteen year old boy with cyanosis

Polycythemia may precede cyanosis Some individuals however even though definitely cyanotic and with greatly lowered oxygen saturation may show delay in the development of compensatory polycythemia One such cyanotic infant seen by the writer at the age of eleven months with an erythrocyte count of 4 870 000 and a hemoglobin content of 12 5 Gm, was sufficiently anoxemic to be subject to daily attacks of unconsciousness Her arterial oxygen saturation was 41 per cent One therefore cannot assume that the prognosis in a cyanotic individual is more favorable in the absence of marked polycythemia nor that the degree of anoxemia will be small *Clubbing* always follows cyanosis (Fig 1)

Cases of congenital cyanosis offer excellent opportunities for the study of the adaptation of the body to high grades of oxygen unsaturation Such a case study has been reported by Talbott[9] and his associates with a summary of previous observations Individuals with congenital cyanosis showed blood gas concentrations that deviated consistently from the

normal Such deviations included increased oxygen capacity, decreased oxygen saturation and decreased carbon dioxide content of the arterial blood decreased partial pressure of alveolar carbon dioxide and decreased arterial *p*H The metabolic investigations on Talbott s patient revealed profound variations from the normal in the acid base equilibrium Studies on arterial blood gases and acid base balance in sixty cyanotic congenital cardiacs by Morse and Cassels[7] have confirmed these findings The alka line reserve of the plasma was reduced in two thirds of the cases due mainly to fixed acid excess and CO_2 deficit By means of the high oxygen capacity due to increased hemoglobin the oxygen content of the arterial blood was maintained within normal range in all but 15 per cent In a group of forty five cyanotic congenital cardiacs studied by Holling[8] an additional compensatory mechanism seemed to be the passage of oxygen from blood to tissues at pressures of oxygen lower than normal

Cyanotic congenital cardiacs show an increased circulating blood vol ume due to increased rise in the volume of circulating red blood cells There is a reduction in plasma volume The red blood cells are normal and contain hemoglobin of the adult type Polycythemia may mask a nutri tional anemia If the level of hemoglobin is not commensurate with the erythrocyte count the administration of iron is advisable

Blood samples obtained postoperatively after pulmonary blood flow had been increased by aortic pulmonary anastomosis or by pulmonary valvot omy showed marked rise in alkaline reserve and arterial *p*H in addition to an increase in arterial oxygen saturation and decrease in oxygen capacity [7] The subnormal plasma volume rises to a level slightly higher than normal while the greatly elevated red blood cell volume is reduced to a level which may still be somewhat above the normal average

Pulmonary Hypertension [9] Normally the pressure in the pulmonary cir cuit is about one quarter to one fifth that in the systemic circuit and pulmonary flow equals systemic flow When normal pressure relationships prevail and a communication exists between the systemic and pulmonary circulations the shunt through the defect will be arteriovenous The size of the shunt and the rate of pulmonary flow vary primarily in accordance with the size of the defect If the defect is small the shunt will be clinically insignificant With larger defects the shunt may be large Because of the distensibility of the pulmonary vascular channels flow may increase up to three times normal without increasing pulmonary pressure Beyond a certain critical level of pulmonary blood flow however a rise of pressure may occur which at first is only slight or moderate

Only a mild degree of pulmonary hypertension can be produced solely by increased pulmonary flow Severe pulmonary hypertension develops as a result of increased pulmonary resistance due to anatomic changes within the small arterioles of the lungs which reduce the size of the lumen As a result pulmonary pressure will rise until it becomes equal to and finally greater than systemic pressure At this stage reversal of flow occurs (at first only during exercise) leading to a venoarterial shunt and the appear ance of anoxemia and cyanosis With progressively increasing pulmonary vascular resistance the blood flow within the lungs decreases and may be so

greatly reduced as to diminish oxygenation to a point insufficient for the maintenance of life

Patients with pulmonary hypertension of significant degree show anatomic changes in the intrapulmonary arterioles These changes are of two types (1) medial thickening, and (2) intimal fibrosis often with superimposed thrombosis The pathologic physiologic processes responsible for these changes and their relation to increased pulmonary flow are unknown Whether the thickening of the media is due to anatomic hypertrophy of the muscular layer or to vasoconstriction is also uncertain Because of the small pressure differential between the two atria, pulmonary hypertension resulting from an atrial defect is due solely to the size of the flow and to secondary intimal changes within the pulmonary arterioles In the case of a ventricular septal defect however or of an aortic pulmonary communication such as a patent ductus the defect connects a region of high pressure with one in which the pressure is only one fifth as great A very large ventricular defect or patent ductus which presents little or no resistance at the site of the lesion provides free communication between the arterial and venous circulations Blood will be ejected into the lungs under systemic pressure The systolic pressure will be equal in both ventricles the aorta and the pulmonary artery Flooding of the lungs with blood can only be prevented by increased intrapulmonary resistance and a rise in diastolic pressure

In the fetus there is a high level of resistance to pulmonary blood flow due to the structure of the muscular arterioles which have a thick wall and narrow lumen Thickening of the medial musculature is found in these vessels Normally a gradual change takes place within the first six months of life so that the wall becomes thin the lumen wide and resistance to blood flow low Similar thickening of the medial layer of the intrapulmonary arterioles occurs in the presence of a large ventricular septal defect or patent ductus and has been ascribed to postnatal persistence or development of fetal type vessels in order to maintain high resistance in the pulmonary circuit and thus permit an adequate amount of blood to enter the systemic circulation Closure of congenital defects at this stage may be followed by thinning of the vessel walls similar to that which occurs under normal postnatal conditions

Intimal fibrotic thickening which may sometimes be associated with organized emboli or thrombi is probably of postnatal origin and irreversible It results in further narrowing of the vessels and progressively increasing hypertension It may be found in vessels which show medial thickening as well as in vessels which seem to have been normal originally When the intrapulmonary arterioles are markedly narrowed and pulmonary resistance high the volume of blood within the lungs is diminished and may be normal or less than normal even though the communicating defect is large At this stage surgical closure is contraindicated since the defect itself may be serving as a safety valve

There is no direct relation between age and pulmonary hypertension Pulmonary pressure may be very high in some infants or young children and may remain normal in adults even with large shunts

There is no good explanation for the persistence of pulmonary hyper tension and vascular changes in the patient who has no communication between the pulmonary and systemic circuit Nervous factors have been incriminated

Symptoms and Prognosis A minority of infants with congenital cardiac anomalies tend to be slow to gain weight, delayed in growth and development and subject to digestive disorders Lowered resistance to infection is especially common among such malnourished children and conversely the prognosis is far more favorable among infants whose nutri tion and development have not been hampered by the cardiac lesion In later life these individuals may remain dwarfed and of fragile build but frequently a spurt of growth occurs as puberty is reached

The natural death rate is greatest in the first two years of life only in part due to death of cyanotic babies with malformed hearts not capable of maintaining postnatal circulation There is a high death rate among babies with large ventricular septal defect, short wide patent ductus com mon arterial trunk from which a large pulmonary artery arises or with a single ventricle which supplies the common ejectile force for both the systemic and the pulmonary circulation In all of these malformations the lungs are flooded with a large volume of blood under systemic pressure They may all lead to a similar clinical picture of repeated respiratory infections progressive emphysema, cardiomegaly associated with respira tory distress pulmonary edema with or without hepatomegaly Death occurs also in infants with the left ventricle supplied by a coronary artery arising from the pulmonary artery or with endothelial fibroelastosis A fair number of infants with coarctation of the aorta may die of congestive failure

After the second year of life the rate of death becomes minimal in the noncyanotic child Noncyanotic school children with congenital cardiac anomalies rarely present symptoms In a relatively small group with lesions permitting an excessive shunt of arterial blood into the pulmonary circulation the increased volume of blood in the lungs may result in tachypnea and the inadequate peripheral circulation may produce fatigue and stunting of growth The expectation of life in noncyanotic individuals is usually good in so far as the defect itself is concerned although some cardiac strain is present and must be taken into consideration as a factor liable to produce heart failure in early adult life A good tolerance for exercise even in the presence of a greatly enlarged heart is a striking characteristic however Complications such as bacterial endocarditis usually delay their appearance until adult life

Certain special symptoms may be associated with individual lesions Because of the tremendous dilatation of blood vessels in the upper part of the body individuals with coarctation of the aorta may suffer from head aches epistaxis or pains in the chest or shoulders Intermittent claudica tion may result from inadequate circulation in the legs Sudden death may be due to rupture of the aorta or of a small cerebral aneurysm In the presence of right or double aortic arch dyspnea or dysphagia may occur from pressure of the encircling ring upon the trachea or esoph—

Pressure upon the recurrent laryngeal nerve by a dilated pulmonary artery may produce hoarseness or aphonia Individuals with severe pulmonary hypertension are subject to chest pain and recurrent attacks of hemoptysis The occurrence of Stokes Adams attacks in congenital heart block has been reported

The presence of congenital defects elsewhere in the body is not uncommon, as is mental deficiency, which may be associated with mongolism On the other hand, many congenital cardiacs, including those with cyanosis, have a high level of intelligence

In subjects with congenital cyanosis the course is progressively downward, the duration of life depending upon the nature of the defect and the amount of interference with oxygenation which it imposes In the graver cyanotic cases death usually occurs at an early age from the mechanical difficulties of the circulation In contradistinction, a not inconsiderable group of individuals with less severe lesions of the cyanotic type has been able to lead long and even arduous lives Cyanotic women have given birth to normal infants In all cases, however, with permanently lowered oxygen saturation of the blood due to structural changes within the heart or great vessels a vicious cycle is engendered which ends sooner or later in death from anoxemia of the tissues, unless life has been shortened by an intercurrent complication

Infants with lesions of the cyanotic type need not be blue babies As the requisite threshold of oxygen unsaturation is passed however, cyanosis makes its appearance—first visible as a bluish discoloration of the lips and fingertips later deepening in intensity and spreading over the entire surface of the skin and mucous membranes, accentuated by cold temperatures and by muscular exertion Polycythemia may precede cyanosis and increase as the anoxemia increases Clubbing of fingertips (Fig 1), toes and nose follows cyanosis after varying intervals of time Tortuous, thick walled capillaries and violet discoloration become visible in the retinae Squatting is a common habit among cyanotic children suffering from an inadequate flow of blood to the lungs Dyspnea, attacks of which may occur even before cyanosis is apparent, may culminate in seizures of extreme respiratory distress associated with marked exacerbations of cyanosis Epileptiform seizures or syncopal attacks are not uncommon, especially when the red blood cells are extraordinarily increased Cerebral thrombosis with hemiplegia may be terminal An important complication in cyanotic individuals with right to left shunt is the passage of a paradoxical embolus through the anomalous opening to lodge in brain spleen kidney, etc Such an embolus if infected may form the focus for the development of a brain abscess which probably occurs as frequently in cyanotic congenital cardiacs as does endocarditis Fatal gastrointestinal hemorrhages have been observed in cyanotic infants who presented no ulcerative lesions at necropsy Presumably the bleeding was due to increased capillary permeability of anoxic origin

Congestive failure is the most frequent cause of death in adults with cardiac anomalies Despite these dangers that lie in wait for the individual

born with a defective heart, many such persons have been able to lead long and useful lives

Diagnosis The existence of a cardiac anomaly is obvious in the relatively rare individual who presents cyanosis and clubbing associated with abnormal cardiac signs It may however fail to be recognized in the non cyanotic individual In the infant past the neonatal period the presence of an intense murmur not associated with marked anemia is usually indicative of the existence of an abnormal heart Newborn infants whether or not they are cyanotic may present murmurs which disappear and are not associated with cardiac anomalies On the other hand it is possible for the heart to appear normal at birth in infants who later develop a cardiac murmur associated with other signs of congenital heart disease In older noncyanotic children and adults a congenital lesion may be suspected when a systolic murmur is heard best to the left of the sternum rather than at the apex where the murmur of an acquired mitral lesion is best heard The presence of a thrill and of cardiac enlargement would confirm the existence of an organic lesion In the absence of murmurs unusually loud clanging heart sounds may at times arouse suspicion

Once the presence of a cardiac anomaly is accepted the differentiation of the particular lesion is a more difficult task In the graver complicated lesions of the cyanotic group an exact diagnosis may be impossible particularly in the young infant

Probably the only cardiac abnormality associated with a pathognomonic *electrocardiogram* is mirror image dextrocardia in which all complexes of Lead I are inverted and the curves of Leads II and III replace each other An exact diagnosis of congenital heart block can only be obtained by graphic methods but the existence of heart block does not point to any specific anomaly such as ventricular septal defect, since interruption of the bundle of His by fibrous tissue may be found in an otherwise normal heart The tracing obtained from an individual with a cardiac anomaly may be entirely normal If abnormal, it need not differ from one due to acquired disease In early life however, the presence of biphasic QRS complexes if splintered or prolonged, or of right or left ventricular preponderance should suggest the possibility of a congenital defect Information obtained from precordial leads may be of greater value than the roentgenogram in the determination of predominant right or left ventricular enlargement Such information however is inferential only and may at times be misleading Recent studies have attempted to define electrocardiographic variations due to systolic and diastolic overloading of the right or left ventricle[10] Attempts are being made to correlate such changes with specific congenital cardiac lesions

Since an enlarged right atrium is common in congenital heart disease the frequent finding of high P waves is not unexpected

Inversion of T waves in the electrocardiogram of infants with cardiac enlargement has been stated to be indicative of the presence of an anomalous left coronary artery arising from the pulmonary artery Negative T waves of varying contour however may be found not only in association with an anomalous coronary artery but also in glycogen storage disea--

endothelial fibroelastosis, as well as in infants with cardiomegaly and congestive failure of unknown origin not necessarily fatal

Roentgenograms [11] Scalloping of the lower border of the posterior ribs occurs most frequently in the presence of coarctation of the aorta The existence of anomalous retroesophageal vessels, of right sided or double aortic arch, and of dextrocardia may be established by roentgenographic means Aside from these it is rarely possible to diagnose a specific anatomic defect from routine roentgenograms unaided by other information Identical changes in contour may be produced by dissimilar lesions the same lesion may produce dissimilar alterations in the cardiac shadow in different individuals, finally the heart may be normal in size or contour even though an anomaly exists Criteria for individual chamber enlargement in acquired heart disease are not necessarily applicable to cardiac anomalies where the fundamental configuration of the heart may bear no resemblance to the usual four chambered heart

Anomalies associated with an arteriovenous shunt will result in dilatation of the pulmonary artery and its branches due to the increased volume of blood sent to the lungs Evidence of such enlargement of the pulmonary vascular tree will be revealed by increased fulness of the pulmonary segment together with large, sharply delineated hilar shadows and prominence of the smaller vessels in the middle third of the lung fields In contrast the presence of a venoarterial shunt will result in diminution of the amount of blood sent to the lungs and decrease in size of the hilar shadows with diminished vascularity in the peripheral lung fields

Roentgenograms taken in various positions together with fluoroscopic examination are of value in revealing alteration in size and contour of individual chambers of the heart and great vessels, as well as variations in the hilar and intrapulmonary vascular shadows Correlation with clinical and electrocardiographic findings may lead to a correct diagnosis of anatomic defects The characteristic roentgenographic changes will be described in the discussion of individual lesions

Angiocardiography [12] Consists of the roentgenographic visualization of the cardiac chambers and great vessels following the rapid injection of a radiopaque fluid into a peripheral vein Serial roentgenograms are obtained while the contrast substance is passing through the heart and great vessels The most readily available commercial machine takes two roentgenograms per second Angiocardiograms may at times provide valuable diagnostic information Particularly in young infants and children however the passage of contrast substance occurs so rapidly as to visualize the entire heart within a second or less It is often impossible to follow the sequence of events and to make an accurate anatomic diagnosis The maximum potential value of this procedure will not be obtained until a practical and not too expensive apparatus is developed by means of which at least ten roentgenograms per second may be obtained simultaneously in two planes at an exposure time of $\frac{1}{200}$ second with electrocardiographic control Such an apparatus is available but at a cost beyond the reach of the average institution

Regional angiocardiography has been developed with the aid of an intra

cardiac catheter placed at a selected site, forced injection of contrast substance and short exposure time For example with the catheter placed in the right ventricle it is possible to ensure good visualization of the infundibulum and pulmonary valve With the catheter placed in either the right or left pulmonary artery accurate information can be obtained as to the existence of anomalous pulmonary venous drainage from either lung

Retrograde Aortography When good visualization of the aorta is essential the radiopaque substance may be injected directly into the brachial artery or through a catheter inserted into the exposed brachial, external carotid or femoral artery Visualization of the site of coarctation or of the passage of contrast substance from the aorta through a patent ductus or aortic septal defect may thus be obtained

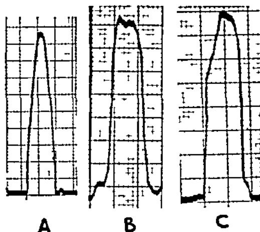


FIGURE 2 Pressure tracings from right ventricle A Pulmonary stenosis with intact ventricular septum peaked symmetrical curves B Pulmonary stenosis with ventricular septal defect asymmetric curve with rapid ascent and plateau top C Pulmonary hypertension initial rapid upslope followed by more gradual rise to a peak after which there is rapid descent to the diastolic level

Cardiac Catheterization Samples of blood are obtained by directing a catheter usually inserted through the median basilic or saphenous vein into various regions of the heart and great vessels under fluoroscopic control Samples thus obtained by venous catheterization and by direct puncture of the femoral artery may be compared for oxygen and carbon dioxide content Pressures may be measured in the great veins the cardiac chambers, and the pulmonary artery The rate of oxygen consumption and carbon dioxide elimination is determined by indirect calorimetry With data thus obtained the cardiac output may be calculated by the Fick principle With the use of suitable formulae an estimation may be obtained of the volume of blood flow through the pulmonary artery, the systemic circulation and through intracardiac shunts

Pressure tracings taken from the right ventricle during cardiac catheterization show differential features (See Fig 2) Curves from a ventricle which has no adequate outlet as in the case of severe pulmonary stenosis

and intact ventricular septum, have a peaked symmetrical appearance, whereas in the presence of a ventricular septal defect the curves resemble those obtained from a ventricle with a normal valvular outlet They are asymmetric with a rapid ascent and plateau top [13] Curves from the right ventricle of patients with pulmonary hypertension tend to show an initial rapid upslope followed by a more gradual rise to a peak after which there is rapid descent to the diastolic level [14]

The information provided by venous catheterization can be of great diagnostic value The finding of a significantly higher content of oxygen in blood from the right atrium or right ventricle for instance points to the presence of an arterial venous shunt into these chambers The specific findings that may be noted in association with individual cardiac anomalies will be described later in a discussion of these lesions

Methods have been devised whereby it is possible to perform cardiac catheterization and selective angiocardiography in a single stage procedure with the simultaneous use of high speed motion picture photography [15]

Oximetry The oximeter is an instrument which records the color changes due to varying amounts of reduced hemoglobin in the peripheral arteries of the ear lobes by means of a photoelectric cell attached to the pinna It can be used to furnish a record of the changes in arterial oxygen saturation during exercise and while breathing 100 per cent oxygen [16] In the normal individual there is no significant change in oxygen saturation when rising from the supine to the erect position or during moderate exercise Patients with cyanotic heart disease show a decrease in oxygen saturation of about 2 per cent when changing to the erect position and a fall of at least 10 per cent with exercise In the normal individual the arterial oxygen saturation is about 95 per cent During the inhalation of 100 per cent oxygen full saturation is obtained rapidly In cyanotic patients with right to left shunts the arterial oxygen saturation is below normal The time required to attain maximum oxygen saturation when breathing oxygen is prolonged and full saturation is not reached

The oximeter can also be used to measure the time required for circulation of injected dyes such as methylene or Evans blue which possess absorption characteristics suitable for detection by this instrument The dye may be injected either into the peripheral circulation or directly into the right ventricle through a cardiac catheter, and the time of arrival at the ear measured with the oximeter

Curves obtained following the injection of dye intravenously have been found to have a typical pattern in the presence of left to right[17] and right to left[18] shunts Localization of the shunt can be determined by intracardiac injection of the dye during catheterization

INDIVIDUAL CONGENITAL LESIONS

Acyanotic Lesions

Pericardial Defects These vary from complete absence of the parietal layer, as in the nonviable forms of ectopia cordis to a more or less extensive defect of the left side of this structure so that the pericardial

cavity communicates freely with the left pleura either by a localized open ing with serous margins or by a deficiency so large that the heart and left lung come to lie in a common cavity The left phrenic nerve is displaced to the right in a degree increasing with that of the defect, a point of value in the diagnosis of congenital origin The pathologic significance of this condition lies in the abnormal juxtaposition of the serous surfaces of the heart and left lung which predisposes to inflammatory processes and in the existence of a cor mobile with consequent tendency to kinking of the great vessels

Ectopia Cordis Rarely the heart may be displaced to the cervical region More frequently it is extruded in the thoracic region through a fissure of the sternum or into the abdomen through a defect in the dia phragm Combined sternal and diaphragmatic defects may be present The only viable forms are those of pectoral heart with inferior sternal fissure and both layers of pericardium present and abdominal heart A case has been reported of an old soldier who died of right suppurative nephritis and who at necropsy was found to have an absent left kidney In its place lay the heart in the pericardial sac with vessels passing into the thorax through a diaphragmatic defect There have been recent reports of successful surgical repair of ectopia cordis situated in the thoracoabdominal region [19]

Anomalous Bands and Chordae These vary considerably in pathologic interest and in origin In the right atrium a delicate fenestrated mem brane or system of fine strands (*network of Chiari*) continuous with the eustachian or thebesian valves may stretch across the cavity to be attached to the upper part of the interatrial septum or adjacent parts It represents a persistence of the valvula venosa dextra or sinistra and is of little clinical import except that it may form a nidus for thrombotic proc esses leading to pulmonary embolism Anomalous chordae in the left ventricle may occur, sometimes taking origin from the walls of this cavity and sometimes extending downward through the mitral orifice from an attachment in the left or even in the right atrium These may give rise to unusual adventitious sounds but are otherwise unimportant

Anomalies of the Semilunar Cusps The aortic and pulmonary cusps may be increased or diminished in number Supernumerary cusps are commonest at the pulmonary orifice Four or even five segments may exist and of these two may be congenitally fused or incompletely divided pre senting a combination of both types of anomaly Reduction in number of cusps is however more frequent than their increase A bicuspid aortic valve may occur alone or in combination with coarctation of the aorta or subaortic stenosis The anomaly may consist of only two segments without trace of a third Commonly one of the two cusps presents on its arterial surface a low partly obliterated raphe which represents the contiguous margins of the combined cusps and partly divides the sinus of Valsalva behind it The cusps are usually large well formed and perfectly adapted to close the arterial orifice in the absence of postnatal inflammatory proc esses which may lead to thickening and deformities along the line of closure resulting in incompetence and obstruction Isolated aortic endo

carditis should lead one to suspect the existence of an underlying bicuspid valve of congenital origin Bicuspid pulmonary valve is rarer than aortic as an isolated lesion In combination however, with hypoplasia of the pulmonary artery in tetralogy of Fallot it is a relatively common anomaly

Small, dark red, circumscribed nodules on the valve cusps of infants in the first months of life are due to the formation of localized *blood cysts* which become incorporated in the substance of the cusp during fetal life. They are of no pathologic importance and should not be mistaken for endocardial vegetations

Primary Idiopathic Hypertrophy Theoretically this should include instances of marked cardiac enlargement in infancy and early childhood due to primary hypertrophy or hyperplasia of muscle tissue In a comparatively small number of cases the use of this term may still be warranted Many cases of cardiac enlargement however, which in the past were considered of idiopathic origin are now recognized to be due to such disorders as glycogen storage disease avitaminosis, abnormalities of the coronary vessels endothelial fibroelastosis, hypertension of the greater or lesser circulation paroxysmal tachycardia, interstitial myocarditis Tumors of the heart (congenital rhabdomyomata) also must be considered in the differential diagnosis

Endocardial Fibroelastosis (Fetal Endocarditis Endocardial Fibrosis, Endocardial Sclerosis) [60] Although some degree of endocardial thickening may occur secondarily in association with various cardiac malformations, endocardial fibroelastosis may also make its appearance in infancy as a primary developmental disturbance In such cases the left ventricle and atrium are greatly enlarged with marked thickening of the endocardium (sometimes involving the aortic and mitral valves) due to great increase in the number of elastic fibers with slight excess of collagen There is no evidence of inflammatory reaction The right ventricle is rarely involved unless sclerosis and narrowing of the mitral valve is associated If the child lives long enough degenerative changes of the myocardium may appear secondary to penetration of the sinusoids and thebesian vessels by the fibroelastic tissue

Infants with this condition are apparently normal at birth Murmurs are frequently absent The electrocardiogram may show either no axis deviation or left axis deviation in standard leads but precordial leads usually present evidence of left ventricular hypertrophy T waves may be low, diphasic or inverted especially in leads I, V^5 and V^6 Due to diminished contractility an angiocardiogram will show slow emptying of the left ventricle so that the aortic shadow may be poorly visualized

In young infants symptoms due to left heart failure with acute pulmonary edema may be sudden in origin and are often precipitated by a minor infection Death may occur suddenly or within a brief period of time More frequently the infant may respond to treatment and survive the initial attack but will suffer one or more recurrences until a final episode results in death some weeks or months later An occasional infant may recover and be able to lead a normal life for years even though cardiomegaly and electrocardiographic abnormalities persist In children in

whom symptoms are delayed past the age of two years there is a lesser degree of cardiac hypertrophy and endocardial thickening and the disease runs a more chronic course The type of endocardial sclerosis associated with mural thrombosis which has recently been described in adults may have no relation to the developmental malformation but may be of acquired origin In the adults fibrotic endocardial changes have predominated although some increase in elastic tissue was present

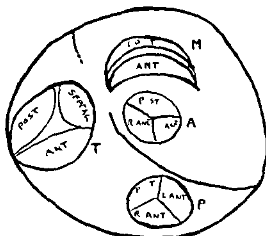


FIGURE 3 Diagram showing relation of the most frequent site of interventricular septal defect to the membranous space and to the valves of the heart. *P* denotes the pulmonic valve *A* the aortic *M* the mitral and *T* the tricuspid valves The dotted area in the interventricular septum denotes the membranous portion of the septum the broken area the site of septal defect Fibers of the bundle of Hi pass through the membranous space and the region posterior to the membrane Heart block is unusual in association with the usual subaortic septal defect.

Various theories to explain the symptomatology of this lesion have been proposed It has been suggested that the rigid endocardium may limit diastolic filling and systolic expulsion that it may interfere with the proper conduction of contraction impulses and finally that it may interfere with the blood supply to the myocardium by preventing normal emptying of the thebesian veins into the ventricle

Congenital Heart Block Congenital heart block may be an independent malformation of the conduction system occurring in the absence of any associated cardiac anomaly

Of the more than 100 cases reported in the literature prior to 1950 only fourteen cases with graphic proof of the diagnosis had come to necropsy Six of these presented a normal ventricular septum In one of these six individuals an ostium primum was present Of the remaining cases one showed complete absence of the membranous septum while the others all presented multiple cardiac anomalies In none was there found the uncomplicated subaortic septal defect in the usual anterior location The bundle of His lies posterior to the usual high ventricular septal defect (Fig 3) Embryologically moreover, the development of the bundle of His

takes place prior to that of the ventricular septum As a rule, even gross absence of the atrial or ventricular septum need not interfere with the preservation of conducting tissue The bundle of His may be found in the rudimentary portion of a ventricular septum or in the posterior wall of a common ventricle

The criteria for diagnosis of congenital heart block are the presence of a slow pulse noted early in life graphic proof of the existence of heart block, and the absence of a history of infection, such as rheumatic fever or diphtheria, preceding the appearance of a slow pulse The condition has been diagnosed *in utero* by the discovery of fetal bradycardia It has occurred in siblings

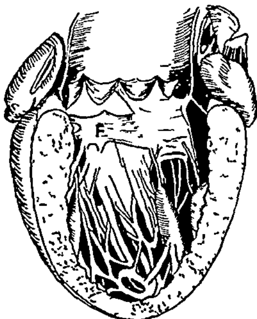


FIGURE 4 Subaortic stenosis A band of fibrous tissue *F* encircles the wall of the left ventricle just below the aortic cusps (From Muir D C and Brown J W Brit. M J 1 966 1935)

The idioventricular rate in childhood is faster than in adults The rate can be accelerated during exercise or fever and following the administration of atropine or epinephrine Slight slowing can be produced by ocular pressure Variation in the intensity of the first sound may be present An inconstant mid diastolic sound or short murmur located to the right of the apex is not uncommon A low pitched parasternal systolic murmur is almost universally present and is indistinguishable from an innocent functional murmur The presence of such a murmur has frequently been the only basis for the clinical diagnosis of ventricular septal defect The heart usually seems top normal in size or slightly enlarged In the absence of associated cardiac anomalies the contour is normal It has been suggested that the auscultatory findings and cardiomegaly noted in patients with complete heart block may be related to the large stroke volume associated with the slow heart rate and the resultant large end diastolic

heart volume [1] The prognosis varies with the presence and severity of associated abnormalities When complete heart block is the sole anomaly, the condition may be asymptomatic and compatible with a long life [2] Stokes Adams attacks have been reported in about 15 per cent of the cases usually associated with severe cardiac defects Their occurrence is serious but when present in early life they have in isolated cases been known to disappear Pregnancy seems to be well tolerated

Congenital Aortic Stenosis [3] This may involve the aortic valve or the subaortic region of the left ventricle Subaortic stenosis may be due to muscular hypertrophy or more commonly to an annular fibrous thickening of the endocardium of the left ventricle located 1 to 2 centimeters below the valve often involving the base of the anterior segment of the aortic valve The posteromedial attachment may involve the ventricular aspect of the aortic leaflet of the mitral valve (Fig 4) This rim of thickened tissue may become calcified in later life and serve as a site for the development of bacterial endocarditis More rarely a diaphragm situated below the aortic valve blocks the egress of blood except through a small orifice In valvular stenosis surgical experience has disclosed the frequent presence of sclerotic formed cusps with thickened fused commissures Poststenotic dilatation often develops beyond the site of stenosis In subaortic stenosis such dilatation may include the aortic valvular ring and sinuses of Valsalva Valvular and subaortic stenosis usually occur separately but may be combined Coarctation of the aorta endothelial fibroelastosis or patent ductus arteriosus may be associated with aortic stenosis Cases have been reported of combined aortic and pulmonary stenosis and of concomitant ventricular septal defect

Both valvular and subaortic stenosis may show varying degrees of severity and can rarely be differentiated clinically in life Stenosis may be so slight as to remain asymptomatic or so severe as to result in congestive failure and death in infancy It may increase in severity with time

The condition may be suspected in the presence of a harsh systolic murmur and coarse thrill maximum in the first three intercostal spaces below the right clavicle transmitted to the suprasternal notch and the vessels of the neck The murmur may be heard throughout the chest in children In infancy it may resemble that of a ventricular septal defect and be heard *best in the third and fourth intercostal spaces to the left of the sternum* The second aortic sound may be weak or absent but is often normal When the stenosis is of significant degree roentgenographic and electrocardiographic evidence of left ventricular hypertrophy may be noted Marked cardiac enlargement however occurs only as a result of dilatation of the left ventricle due to failure or to associated aortic insufficiency The ascending aorta may be dilated

Although signs may be striking symptoms are often absent for many years With severe stenosis, growth and development are retarded There is a tendency to sudden death or to the early development of congestive failure The presence of symptoms such as fatigue dyspnea or dizziness on exertion or syncopal attacks indicates that stenosis is severe and compensation inadequate The presence of weak peripheral arterial pulsations

associated with low pulse pressure and the appearance of progressive changes in the electrocardiogram with increasing inversion of T waves in the left precordial leads are also ominous findings

Indirect tracings from the carotid artery will show anacrotic notching Direct proof of the presence of aortic stenosis may be established by catheterization of the left side of the heart which will reveal a gradient in systolic pressure from ventricle to aorta The absence of a pressure gradient with the patient under anesthesia may be misleading since the gradient depends not only on the size of the opening but also on the rate of flow The flow increases during exercise but may be diminished when the patient is at rest under anesthesia

Surgical procedures are now available to relieve aortic stenosis under direct vision with the aid of hypothermia or extracorporeal circulation The operation does not restore the valve to normal and if it results in aortic insufficiency the individual may be in a worse state than before Operation should be advised only after careful study and observation of the individual when signs of deterioration have begun to make their appearance

Congenital Mitral Stenosis This lesion is often associated with endothelial fibroelastosis and/or coarctation of the aorta The mitral valve is greatly modified in appearance presenting nodular thickened rigid cusps fused to form a funnel like orifice sometimes associated with a perforated shelf or membrane at the base The chordae tendineae are shortened and thickened An hypertrophied dilated left atrium is frequently associated Depending on the presence or absence of associated anomalies such as coarctation or aortic stenosis, the left ventricle in reported cases has been large normal or small Of fourteen necropsied cases reported in the literature a presystolic or diastolic apical murmur was described in five and only a systolic murmur in five All but one of these individuals died of congestive failure at a relatively early age (sixteen months to three years) The author has seen four children with coarctation who presented the typical presystolic murmur of mitral stenosis The coarctation was successfully resected in all of these children by Dr Julian Johnson Since the possibility of performing a successful valvotomy on congenitally stenotic valves seemed slim, it was deemed advisable to defer operation on the mitral valve as long as these children remained symptom free Three cases of valvotomy for congenital mitral stenosis have been reported [4]

Pulmonary Stenosis with Intact Ventricular Septum and Closed Foramen Ovale (Pure Pulmonary Stenosis) In the majority of cases the site of stenosis is at the pulmonary valve Commonly the leaflets of the valve are fused to form a dome shaped structure with a small central aperture Less frequently the cusps are thickened and deformed creating a slit shaped opening In a minority of cases the site of stenosis may be at the upper mid or lower portion of the infundibulum Valvular and infundibular stenosis may be combined The pulmonary artery is frequently dilated beyond the site of stenosis As a result of the stenosis the work of the right ventricle increases and the systolic pressure within the ventricle rises The pulmonary flow is equal to the systemic flow as long

as the right ventricle by increased work and rise in pressure can provide an adequate output against the resistance of the stenotic pulmonary valve

Cyanosis is not present when the atrial septum is intact With mild or moderate degrees of stenosis the individual may be asymptomatic well into adult life In the presence of marked stenosis fatigue and dyspnea on exertion may make their appearance in early life increasing progressively with age Bacterial endocarditis is an occasional complication Death not uncommonly is due to congestive failure

Physical examination reveals a systolic thrill in the pulmonary area a single or narrowly reduplicated second pulmonic sound often of diminished intensity a systolic murmur maximum over the pulmonary area frequently heard over the entire chest Enlargement of the right atrium and right ventricle will be noted on the *roentgenogram* There may be disproportionate enlargement of the main and left pulmonary artery as compared with the right pulmonary artery with normal or diminished vascularity in the peripheral lung fields The *electrocardiogram* may range from normal to one showing a severe degree of right ventricular preponderance depending on the severity and duration of stenosis High P waves are common In severe cases S T depression and inverted T waves may be present in leads 2 and 3 and in the precordial leads Polycythemia is absent the oxygen saturation is normal the circulation time is normal unless congestive failure is present when it may be prolonged *Catheterization* will reveal increased systolic pressure in the right ventricle which may exceed systemic pressure Pressure tracings from the right ventricle show curves with a peaked symmetrical appearance (Fig 2) The systolic pressure in the pulmonary artery will be low The site of stenosis may be determined by noting the pressure changes as the catheter is withdrawn from the pulmonary artery into the right ventricle In valvular stenosis there is an abrupt change of pressure at the valve whereas in infundibular stenosis there is a transitional zone of intermediate pressure as the catheter passes through the infundibular chamber Selective *angiocardiography* with the tip of the catheter in the outflow tract of the right ventricle may provide good visualization of the stenotic site

Valvotomy or infundibulotomy will relieve the strain on the right ventricle The creation of a shunt between the systemic and pulmonary *circulation is of no value since the arterial blood is fully saturated and the* volume of pulmonary blood is adequate Operation is not indicated in the asymptomatic individual with only slight hypertension in the right ventricle It should be recommended in the individual with marked or progressive cardiac enlargement increasing symptoms progressive changes in the electrocardiogram or a systolic pressure in the right ventricle greater than 100 mm of mercury

Lesions of Arteriovenous Shunt

Persistent Patency of the Ductus Arteriosus The ductus arteriosus may persist as a short canal or rarely as a direct orifice between the right wall of the descending arch of the aorta and the pulmonary artery or its left branch The diameter of the lumen may vary from the size of a fine

probe or bristle to 1 cm or more The ductus is often of wide diameter at its aortic end where it may appear at the bottom of a tent shaped depression Atherosclerosis or calcification of the walls of the ductus and pulmonary artery may predispose to the formation of thrombi or to rupture of these vessels The primary shunt of blood from the aorta into the pulmonary artery results in enlargement of the pulmonary artery and its branches varying in degree with the size of the lumen and the extent of the shunt It has been estimated that the leak from the aorta in the majority of patients is from 20 to 40 per cent although in severe cases it has ranged up to 70 per cent The output of the left ventricle exceeds that of the right ventricle by the amount which enters the ductus In most instances the lungs accommodate themselves to the increased

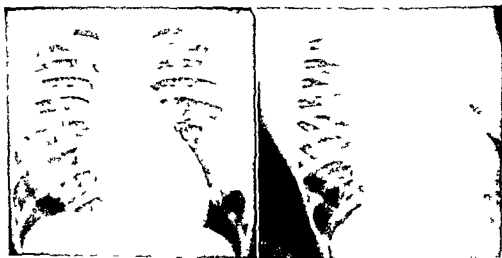


FIGURE 5 Roentgenograms from thirteen year old girl with patent ductus arteriosus (diagnosis confirmed by operation) Slight enlargement of pulmonary segment in A P and right oblique view cardiac contour otherwise within normal limits

pulmonary blood flow without significant increase in pressure If the ductus is wide and short however, a large volume of blood is shunted into the lungs under systemic pressure As a result there may be postnatal persistence of the medial hypertrophy which occurs normally in the pulmonary arterioles of the fetus Arteriolar resistance and pulmonary pressure remain high and the work of the right ventricle increases

The lesion occurs most frequently in females Except for an occasional infant who develops congestive failure there are often no symptoms in childhood Cyanosis is not present if normal pressure relations in the aorta and pulmonary artery prevail If the shunt is large there may be interference with growth and development because of the decreased blood supply to the periphery Tachypnea or dyspnea on exertion may be a prominent symptom A frequent complication is the development of bacterial endarteritis appearing first around the margins of the pulmonary end of the ductus or on the opposite wall of the pulmonary artery but

ultimately involving the aortic orifice and leading to the formation of vegetations within the heart itself Death may be due to cardiac failure usually left ventricular in infancy, often right ventricular in later life

A systolic thrill may be felt to the left of the upper sternum in seventy per cent The second pulmonic sound is accentuated unless obscured by the murmur The pathognomonic finding is a continuous murmur below the left clavicle which begins at various intervals after the first sound attains its maximum intensity late in systole and early in diastole after which it fades away Varying degrees of intensity and of transmission may occur ranging from a soft continuous humming blow localized to a small area within a single interspace to a loud, thundering machinery murmur audible over four or more interspaces The systolic component may



FIGURE 6 Patent ductus arteriosus Roentgenograms from nine year old girl with precordial bulge coarse parasternal systolic thrill thundering continuous murmur below left clavicle systolic murmur elsewhere over chest wide pulse pressure normal ECG Marked cardiac enlargement to left and downward in A P view with prominence in pulmonic region and enlarged hilar shadows Lateral view shows enlargement anteriorly (right ventricle) and posteriorly (left ventricle) Ligation of large patent ductus at the age of sixteen years by Dr Julian Johnson resulted in return of cardiac size to normal (see Fig 8) with disappearance of thrill and murmurs

be heard with lessened intensity over the precordial region and occasionally over the entire chest as well as in the carotid and axillary arteries A mid diastolic blow is often present to the right of the apex when the heart is large If the shunt is sufficiently great the fall in diastolic level of blood pressure will result in increased pulse pressure with capillary and Corrigan pulse

Roentgenogram (Figs 5 6 9) If the shunt is small the heart is of normal size and contour even though a continuous murmur is present In a review of the roentgenograms of 124 children with uncomplicated patent ductus proven by operation the heart was within normal limits of size in 32 per cent slightly or moderately enlarged in 36 per cent greatly

enlarged in 32 per cent The left ventricle was involved in all hearts in which cardiac enlargement was present Enlargement of the left atrium was noted in 20 per cent of the group and in 50 per cent of the greatly enlarged hearts Only in hearts of great size could enlargement of the right atrium and right ventricle be recognized The pulmonary segment was prominent in 70 per cent associated with increased vascularity of the lung fields in 60 per cent

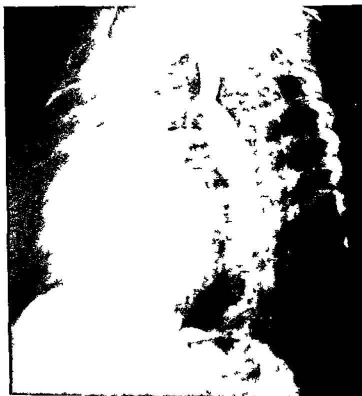


FIGURE 7 Patent ductus arteriosus *Aortogram* from three year old boy who presented a systolic murmur over the entire chest maximum third interspace left of sternum with no diastolic component marked cardiac enlargement enlarged pulmonary artery and branches Passage of contrast medium from the aorta into the pulmonary artery is visualized At operation a large ductus was severed b Dr Earl Wrenn

The *electrocardiogram* is within normal limits or shows some evidence of left ventricular enlargement in precordial leads A high R and small S in leads to the right of the precordium may be noted in the infant or small child Prolongation of P R and delayed ventricular activation in V1 suggestive of right bundle branch block occurs rarely Broad notched P waves diphasic or inverted T waves may be noted occasionally in individuals with definite cardiac enlargement

Catheterization of the heart reveals a content of oxygen in the blood from the pulmonary artery significantly greater than that in the right ventricle Pressure in the right ventricle and pulmonary artery may be normal or increased It may be possible to pass the catheter from the pulmonary artery through the ductus into the descending aorta

Angiocardiography Various indirect signs have been described which may lead one to suspect the presence of a patent ductus Except for early visualization of the descending aorta in the presence of a reverse ductus angiocardiography however is less satisfactory than aortography *Aortograms* will demonstrate the passage of contrast medium from the aorta into the pulmonary artery through the ductus (Fig 7)

The continuous murmur of a patent ductus is heard only when the pressure in the aorta is higher than the pressure in the pulmonary artery both in systole and in diastole In the presence of pulmonary hypertension shunting of blood may occur only during systole and only a systolic mur mur may be heard In rare cases no murmur may be heard presumably because of balanced pressure in the great vessels During fetal life the pressure in the pulmonary artery is relatively high while the pressure in the aorta is low *With expansion of the lungs and disappearance of medial* hypertrophy in the intrapulmonary arterioles pulmonary resistance falls At birth and for a varying period subsequently no murmur or only a systolic murmur may be associated with a patent ductus As the aortic pressure increases and the pulmonary pressure decreases the diastolic component makes its appearance Later in life the continuous murmur may disappear with the appearance of pulmonary hypertension or during congestive failure It may never be present if for any reason fetal pul monary hypertension persists into postnatal life

The following case report is of interest since it exemplifies the possi bility of death in early youth due to heart failure and also provides an example of the disappearance of a continuous murmur during congestive failure

Case Report Patent ductus arteriosus intracardiac mural thrombi recent small hemorrhagic infarct of lung Death due to cardiac failure

F fourteen years First seen at the age of six years by Dr F C Wood in April 1933 at the Children s Cardiac Clinic of the Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania The heart was enlarged and presented a rough pulmonic systolic thrill a to and fro machinery murmur in the second left intercostal space a rough systolic murmur in the third intercostal space and a softer systolic murmur at the apex The electrocardiogram was normal A diagnosis of patent ductus arteriosus was made

On her last visit to the clinic in February 1939 a loud machinery murmur and coarse continuous thrill were present in the pulmonary area A systolic murmur was audible over the lower precordium also over the left carotid and left axillary arteries The second pulmonic sound was obscured by the machinery murmur Blood pressure was 100/60 She was lost sight of until March 1940 when the writer chanced to meet her in one of the public high schools She had been attending school regularly and in the absence of symptoms had decided that attendance at the clinic was unnecessary *A thundering machinery murmur was still present*

Two months later she was admitted to the University Hospital on the service of Dr O H P Pepper One week prior to admission she had fainted while leaving church During the succeeding week she suffered from weakness and anorexia On admission the patient was markedly pale but did not appear un comfortable The apex beat was situated at the anterior axillary line *A rough*

systolic murmur and systolic thrill were present in the pulmonic area no other murmur could be detected The second pulmonic sound was accentuated. The liver was not felt Three days later her condition suddenly became critical with the development of severe abdominal pain cyanosis and marked enlargement and tenderness of the liver An electrocardiogram taken at this time was interpreted as showing occasional 2 1 right bundle branch block She died on the following day of acute right sided heart failure Some hours prior to her death she was seen by Dr Wood who seven years before had made the first notation concerning her machinery murmur He commented on the *absence of murmurs at this final examination* Necropsy performed by Dr Sheldon revealed about 100 cc clear fluid in the pericardial cavity 200 cc in each pleural cavity and 400 cc in the peritoneal cavity The liver was enlarged 6 cm below the costal margin Heart weight 460 Gm All chambers were dilated especially the left ventricle The mitral valve was somewhat thickened with small pale nodules along the free margin Loosely attached thrombi were present in the columnae carnae of the left ventricle The tip of the right auricula was filled with a clot firmly attached to the wall The foramen ovale was closed The circumference of the aortic valve was 5 cm. the pulmonic 6 cm , the mitral 10 5 cm and the tricuspid 13 cm The left ventricular wall was 0 9 to 1 2 cm. thick the right ventricle 0 3 cm A 3 mm patent ductus was present About a dozen pinhead sized nodules were attached to the thickened edges of the ductus The aorta was small Microscopically the mitral valve showed irregular thickening but no exudate The immediate cause of the terminal cardiac failure remained obscure clinically and pathologically

The value of closure of a patent ductus by ligation or division has been proven in thousands of cases Symptoms disappear and the heart returns to normal size following successful operation in early life (Fig 8) The death rate in 3433 operations in fifteen surgical centers in the United States was 1 9 per cent [r] Since the closure of a patent ductus is an extracardiac procedure relatively free from risk it should be recommended for all children provided an anesthetist experienced in the use of intra tracheal anesthesia in childhood and a skilled vascular surgeon are available If the diagnosis can be made within the first year the operation may be performed at that time If not it is wise to wait until the negativistic period is past (at about four years) so that the child may go through the procedure with minimum psychologic trauma Because of advancing sclerosis and calcification the hazard of hemorrhage increases with age

Successful ligation in the presence of bacterial vegetations has been performed with cure due to surgery alone in 61 per cent of thirty three reported operations Ligation for the treatment of bacterial endarteritis is of value only if bacterial vegetations are confined to the ductus It cannot be expected to influence vegetations which have invaded the heart itself At this early stage penicillin or other antibiotics administered in sufficiently large doses would probably produce equally good results without running the risk of rupture of the friable inflamed ductus through operative intervention Ligation in the presence of bacterial infection should probably be reserved for infections due to organisms resistant to

the known antibiotics or for individuals with heart failure After recovery closure of the ductus would be advisable

A noncyanotic individual with typical continuous murmur normal electrocardiogram or one which shows evidence of left ventricular hyper trophy, normal or increased vascularity in the lung fields may be referred for operation without further studies The existence of a septal defect or mitral disease would be no contraindication to closure of the ductus If coarctation is present the major procedure would be resection of the con

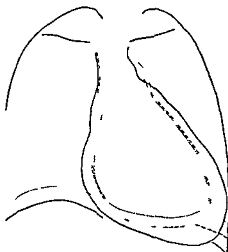


FIGURE 8 Decrease in size of heart following ligation of ductus arteriosus Solid line 7/5/40 (twelve days before operation) cardiac area 71 per cent above pre dicted normal broken line 10/1/40 cardiac area 29 per cent above predicted normal dotted line 5/25/43 cardiac area at upper normal limits Note elevation of diaphragm with decrease in size of heart (see Fig 6)

stricted segment in the aorta division of the ductus being performed incidentally Operation is contraindicated in the presence of lesions such as pulmonary atresia for which patency of the ductus is compensatory Such lesions would be associated with anoxemia inadequate pulmonary circulation and evidence of right ventricular preponderance in the electro cardiogram

In the infant with no murmur or a systolic murmur and congestive failure in whom the presence of a patent ductus is suspected aortography is the best procedure to establish the diagnosis (Fig 7) In the older individual cardiac catheterization is more valuable since it will supply information as to the degree of hypertension and extent of pulmonary flow (Fig 9) Closure of a ductus in the presence of pulmonary hyper tension with high diastolic pressure can sometimes be performed safely in the child whereas it would be a hazardous procedure in the adult In the adult progressive and irreversible intimal fibrosis may have increased the pulmonary resistance to such a degree as to make the patent ductus an essential safety valve to the right heart

Differential Diagnosis Errors in diagnosis may result from the presence of a continuous murmur arising from sources other than a patent ductus

The normal *venous hum* is often mistaken for the murmur of a patent ductus The venous hum as a rule is heard only in the erect position below the right clavicle or over the manubrium, and is accentuated by extension of the neck or by turning the head to the opposite side The murmur of a patent ductus is heard best below the left clavicle in the recumbent position and is not influenced by movement of the head Continuous murmurs due to *arteriovenous fistulas* of the thoracic wall or of the coronary arteries have been mistaken for murmurs arising from a patent



FIGURE 9 Patent ductus arteriosus Roentgenograms from eight year old girl with precordial bulge systolic murmur below left clavicle and in posterior left chest diastolic blow left of sternum, slight right axis deviation in standard limb leads blood pressure 90/50 Note prominent pulmonary arc and hilar vascular shadows biventricular enlargement *Catheterization* showed oxygen content of blood in right ventricle to be 12 0 vol per cent and in main pulmonary artery 14 7 mean pressure in right ventricle 40 mm Hg and in pulmonary artery 66 mm. Ligation of large ductus by Dr Julian Johnson was followed by disappearance of murmurs Heart of normal size six years after operation but pulmonary artery still large

ductus *Ruptured sinus of Valsalva* and *ventricular septal defect with deformed aortic valve* leading to aortic insufficiency each present some clinical features similar to those noted with a patent ductus Rarely a soft continuous murmur may be heard below the left clavicle in infants with total anomalous pulmonary venous drainage into a left vertical vein The lesion that is most difficult to differentiate is an *aortic septal defect*

An *aortic septal defect* (aortic window)[illegible] consists of a localized communication between the aorta and pulmonary artery situated just above the semilunar valves The physiologic effect is similar to that produced by

a patent ductus As a result the diagnosis has only rarely been made in advance of operation for a suspected patent ductus Pulmonary hypertension is frequently present In such cases a systolic murmur or no murmur may be noted rather than a continuous murmur Fluoroscopic examination may reveal marked dilatation and increased pulsation of the ascending aorta A retrograde arteriogram will show opacification of the main pulmonary artery A catheter passed through the defect would move up the arch of the aorta instead of down the descending aorta

If a venoarterial shunt is present the differentiation of patent ductus and aortic window could be made by angiocardiography A septal defect would show simultaneous filling of the ascending aorta and pulmonary artery A patent ductus with reverse flow would show early opacification of the descending aorta from the pulmonary artery, with later filling of the ascending aorta when the contrast medium had passed through the left ventricle In a patient with reverse ductus the arterial oxygen saturation in the right arm would be normal as compared with decreased oxygen saturation in the lower extremities whereas the oxygen saturation would be low in all four extremities in an individual with an aortic window

In a few isolated cases an aortic septal defect has been closed surgically but the procedure is technically difficult because of the location of the defect behind the pulmonary trunk in close approximation to the aortic valve and to the origin of the coronary arteries

Defects of the Ventricular Septum [78] Localized defects resulting from failure of the bulbar septum to descend to meet the ventricular septum usually lie at the base in relation to the anterior part of the membranous septum and open into the sinus of the right ventricle behind the septal cusp of the tricuspid valve or rarely into the floor of the right atrium Less frequently the defect lies in the extreme anterior part of the septum and opens into the conus of the right ventricle just below the pulmonary valve Rarely one or more perforations may be situated in the lower part of the muscular septum.

The lesion frequently runs a symptomless course consistent with a long and healthy life In extreme contrast are the infants with large defects who die of congestive failure associated with pulmonary emphysema and recurrent pulmonary edema In the absence of complications such as pneumonia heart failure or pulmonary hypertension there is no cyanosis Occasionally the defect may involve the septal cusp of the aortic valve or the median cusp of the tricuspid valve which remains rudimentary or becomes adherent to the septum (Fig 3) The resultant regurgitation may lead to early cardiac failure The major complication is the development of bacterial endocarditis about the edges of the defect or on the fibrous patch on the opposite wall of the right ventricle which results from the force of the stream shunted through the defect.

Cardiac enlargement is variable depending on the size of the orifice and the degree of the shunt A systolic thrill may be present to the left of the sternum at the level of the third and fourth intercostal spaces accompanied by a prolonged systolic murmur with maximum intensity at this same area, frequently transmitted to the apex sometimes present in the

left interscapular region or over the entire chest The second pulmonic sound is normal or moderately accentuated The cardiac contour is normal or may show varying degrees of enlargement of both the right and left ventricles, best observed in the left anterior oblique position An enlarged pulmonic arc is not common unless the shunt is very large or enters the right ventricle directly below the pulmonic valve In the uncomplicated case the *electrocardiogram* is normal or may show evidence of biventricular enlargement in the precordial leads In the presence of heart failure and marked cardiac enlargement inversion of T waves and prolongation of P R may be noted The pattern of right ventricular preponderance may appear in association with marked pulmonary hypertension The clinical association between ventricular septal defect and congenital heart block is frequently reported but has not been substantiated by necropsy findings *Catheterization* reveals an oxygen content in the blood of the right ventricle significantly higher than in the right atrium Pressure readings in the right ventricle and pulmonary artery may be normal or elevated depending on the presence of changes in the arterioles of the lung leading to increased resistance and pulmonary hypertension

An improved understanding of the hemodynamics of this lesion has been developed in recent years by Seltzer [5a] A ventricular septal defect creates a situation in which the left ventricle can pump blood through two outlets —the aorta and the defect Since the normal pressure in the right ventricle is relatively low the right ventricle provides an outlet of low resistance through which the major volume of blood might flow A small orifice would create sufficient resistance to limit the flow through the defect Seltzer estimates that in the adult defects smaller than 1 5 cm in diameter are consistent with normal pressure relations between the two ventricles and the maintenance of an adequate systemic blood flow even though the pulmonary blood flow may be greater in volume than the systemic flow With larger defects however a disproportionate amount of blood would be ejected into the right ventricle under systemic pressure To maintain an adequate systemic circulation the resistance in the lungs must be increased This is accomplished by persistence of the medial hypertrophy in the pulmonary arterioles which is normal in the fetus The systolic pressure in the two ventricles becomes equalized The shunt may be predominantly left to right or bidirectional Due to progressive fibrotic thickening of the intima pulmonary pressure continues to increase Ultimately the shunt becomes predominantly right to left with the appearance of anoxemia and cyanosis Since the upper portion of the ventricular septum anatomically runs a spiral course the aortic root may come in contact with both ventricles when the anterior part of the membranous septum is absent Such a condition morphologically and functionally resembles the Eisenmenger complex in which an anatomically dextroposed aorta overrides a ventricular septal defect

Due to the close relation of the usual subaortic defect to valve leaflets satisfactory closure of the defect can be performed only under direct vision with the aid of extracorporeal circulation Such operations are now being performed successfully

Ventricular Septal Defect and Pulmonary Stenosis [36] These may be combined and may occur in association with an arteriovenous shunt The degree of pulmonary stenosis, which may be valvular infundibular or both is not great The pressure in the right ventricle is increased but the pressure in the pulmonary artery may be normal or moderately elevated This syndrome is sometimes called an 'acyanotic tetralogy of Fallot

In association with a very large arteriovenous flow through an atrial or ventricular septal defect a gradient ranging from 10 to 40 mm of Hg presumably due to the Venturi mechanism may be present between the right ventricle and a normal pulmonary valve

Defects of the Atrial Septum [9] Probe patency of the foramen ovale exists in some 20 per cent of normal hearts and should not be considered abnormal Under conditions which raise the pressure in the right atrium such an anatomically open but functionally closed foramen may become patent and blood and emboli be transmitted into the left atrium whereas increased pressure in the left atrium favors closure due to a valve like action of the foramen ovale An anomalous atrial septal defect may be situated above the foramen ovale in the upper posterior portion of the septum (sinus venosus defect) in which case the right pulmonary veins may be displaced into the right atrium or below the foramen ovale in the lower part of the septum (persistent ostium primum) with the upper margin formed by the lower free border of the atrial septum, in which event associated cleavage of the anterior segment of the mitral valve may produce a congenital mitral insufficiency Most frequently the defect is due to congenital absence of all or part of the valve of the foramen (persistent ostium secundum) Defects may be single or multiple and of varying size

Although the pressure differential between the atria is small the size of the defect may be sufficiently great to permit a large flow of blood into the right atrium The right atrium right ventricle pulmonary artery and its branches become enlarged Sclerotic and atheromatous changes may develop in the walls of the pulmonary vessels Although the excess blood is returned to the left atrium it is again shunted through the defect into the right atrium The left atrium left ventricle and aorta remain relatively small The pulmonary flow is greater than normal but the systemic flow remains within normal range Over the course of years intimal fibrosis may develop within the pulmonary arterioles increasing the resistance sufficiently to produce pulmonary hypertension In such cases there may be a reversal of flow from right to left with the appearance of anoxemia and cyanosis

The lesion occurs most frequently in females The defect may present no clinical signs and be unrecognized in life Cyanosis is not present in the absence of heart failure or pulmonary hypertension sufficiently great to produce a reversal of flow through the defect Signs of diminished flow through the aorta—slight build frail health low blood pressure and small radial pulse—may be present if the shunt is sufficiently great The capacity for exercise is often good repeated pregnancies and surgical operations have been well borne In the past superimposed rheumatic infection has

been a frequent complication, usually resulting in mitral stenosis often with atrial fibrillation, but other valves may be attacked and adhesive pericarditis may be associated The combination of atrial septal defect and mitral stenosis (Lutembacher syndrome) leads to the most extreme degree of enlargement of the right side of the heart Bacterial endocarditis is rare Thrombosis of the pulmonary artery with embolic lesions of the lung may develop on the basis of sclerotic changes in the vessel wall The most frequent cause of death is congestive heart failure, typically right ventricular

With lesions of sufficient size left sided chest deformity may result from the marked cardiac enlargement The second pulmonic sound is accentuated and widely split Although murmurs are frequently present it is questionable whether they are ever due to the lesion itself A faint systolic thrill and low pitched systolic murmur noted over the pulmonic area are probably due to dilatation of the pulmonary artery with relative stenosis of the less distended pulmonary ring In older individuals a diastolic murmur along the left side of the sternum due to relative pulmonary insufficiency may appear A mid diastolic blow or third heart sound may be heard to the left of the lower sternum Defects at the lower part of the septum associated with extensive deformities of the atrioventricular valves may give rise to a systolic murmur best heard at the apex or tricuspid area When mitral stenosis is present the characteristic diastolic rumble may be heard to the right of the apex The *roentgenographic contour* may be normal if the shunt is small If the shunt is sufficiently great there will be evidence of dilatation of the right side of the heart In infancy, the heart may present a globular shadow in mid position due to the primary dilatation of the right atrium In later life the characteristic features in the anteroposterior view are enlargement of the cardiac shadow more pronounced to the left although due to enlargement of the right ventricle a small aortic knob, prominent rounded pulmonic arc enlarged, pulsating hilar shadows contrasting with the clear lung fields (Fig 10) In the right anterior oblique position there is no enlargement of the left atrium unless mitral stenosis is present In the left anterior oblique position the aortic window is obscured by the enlarged left branch of the pulmonary artery and the anterior surface of the heart shows increased saliency In a minority of cases with terminal failure instead of the typical configuration the heart presents a large globular shadow resembling that due to pericardial effusion or extreme acute cardiac dilatation

The *electrocardiogram* may be normal if the defect is small With large defects and definite cardiac enlargement there may be right axis deviation evidence of right ventricular enlargement in precordial leads prolonged P R delayed conduction within the right ventricle ranging from simple notching to bundle branch block and depressed ST and inversion of T waves in Leads II and III Atrial fibrillation is a late finding in rheumatic hearts or in the older individual

With ostium primum and deformity of the atrioventricular valves the electrocardiogram as well as the murmur differs from that noted with atrial defects not associated with valvular deformity Standard limb leads show prominent S waves and left axis deviation whereas precordial

leads show features characteristic of biventricular enlargement The clinical picture resembles that seen with common atrioventricular canal rather than with a simple atrial defect

Angiocardiography may demonstrate the extreme enlargement of the right heart and pulmonary artery and the presence of a small aorta With a large defect there may be continuous visualization of all chambers and the pulmonary artery when the left heart has become opacified due to the left to right shunt through the atrial defect *Catheterization* will reveal an oxygen content of blood in the right atrium significantly higher than in the vena cava Definitive proof of the diagnosis is obtained if in addition the catheter is passed directly through the defect into the left atrium where arterial blood may be obtained

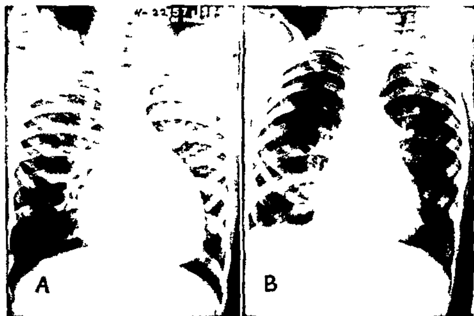


FIGURE 10 Decrease in cardiac size following closure of an atrial septal defect in a ten year old girl A Roentgenogram taken on day preceding operation Note cardiac enlargement and prominent pulmonary vascular shadows B Two weeks after closure of atrial defect (From Ash R Johnson J Koop C E Friedman S and Rashkind W Cardiovascular Surgery in a Children s Hospital I Acyanotic Lesions A Review of 241 Operations J Pediat 54 133 1959)

Closure of atrial septal defects under direct vision with the aid of hypothermia and circulatory stasis or of extracorporeal circulation is now being performed successfully The risk is minimal when the lesion is situated in the region of the foramen secundum [3] Disappearance of the murmur and decrease in the size of the heart may occur rapidly Since endocarditis rarely develops closure of an atrial septal defect is essential only when it is advisable to reduce the work of the heart Small defects need not be closed Operation should be advised when there is electrocardiographic and roentgenographic evidence of enlargement of the right side of

the heart together with a pulmonary flow at least twice the systemic flow Operation is contraindicated in the presence of pulmonary hypertension with high diastolic pressure when the pulmonary blood flow has become normal or only slightly increased In the presence of such a degree of pulmonary hypertension the atrial defect functions as a safety valve to the right side of the heart

Closure of defects situated near the atrioventricular valves (ostium primum) carries a higher operative risk and should be performed only with the aid of extracorporeal circulation

Partial Anomalous Pulmonary Venous Connection (Partial Transposition of Pulmonary Veins) One or more of the right pulmonary veins drain into the right atrium either directly or via the superior or inferior vena cava An atrial septal defect is frequently present When the veins drain into the superior vena cava the septal defect is usually situated above the foramen ovale in the region of the primitive sinus venosus When the anomalous vessel drains into the inferior vena cava a bandlike vascular shadow parallel or posterior to the right side of the heart, which disappears in the region of the right cardiodiaphragmatic angle may be visible in the conventional roentgenogram [30] Additional anomalies of bronchial distribution and accessory pulmonary arteries from the descending aorta may be present [31]

The clinical picture and catheterization findings often cannot be distinguished from those due to an uncomplicated atrial septal defect since a rise of oxygen content at the atrial level is present in both conditions Occasionally a systolic murmur may be louder in the right side of the chest than in the left High arterialization of blood obtained from a vena cava during cardiac catheterization should lead one to suspect the presence of a transposed pulmonary vein The diagnosis may be established by the passage of a catheter from a vena cava or right atrium into the aberrant vessel or by means of indicator dilution curves obtained following injection of dye into the right or left pulmonary artery Selective angiocardiography with introduction of contrast substance directly into a branch of the pulmonary artery should opacify the aberrant pulmonary veins and the right atrium in rapid sequence

If less than half the volume of blood from the lungs enters the right atrium through transposed pulmonary veins a normal duration of life is possible Ready fatigue delayed growth and poor nutrition may be noted in childhood however and death due to right sided congestive failure has been reported in adult life

The orifice of anomalously connected right pulmonary veins may be transposed into the left atrium by attaching the anterior edge of the associated atrial septal defect anteriorly and to the right of the anomalous veins thus closing the defect simultaneously When the right pulmonary veins enter the superior vena cava at some distance above the heart it is possible to use a purse string type of suture so as to cause the pulmonary veins to enter the left atrium and the superior vena cava to enter the right atrium [32]

A ventricular septal defect which opens into the right atrium or which

is associated with tricuspid regurgitation may present catheterization findings similar to those of an atrial septal defect or partial transposition of the pulmonary veins A triatrial heart with atrial septal defect will also present an arterial shunt at the atrial level but the latter lesion will be associated with increased pulmonary capillary (wedge) pressure as well as pulmonary hypertension

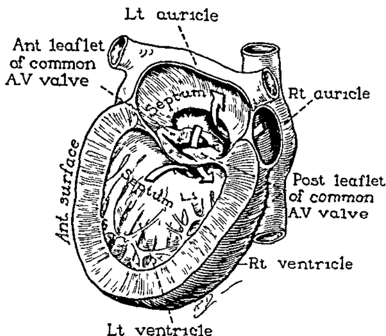


FIGURE 11 Common atrioventricular canal The lateral walls of the left atrium and ventricle have been removed The atrioventricular canal is common to both sides of the heart It is guarded by a single valve possessing large anterior and posterior cusps two right lateral cusps and a left lateral one The interatrial foramen primum is patent as is the posterior upper portion of the interventricular septum. (From Rogers H M and Edwards J E Am Heart J 36 28 1948)

Common Atrioventricular Canal[3] This lesion is due to arrest of development of the primitive anterior and posterior atrioventricular endocardial cushions which results in failure of fusion of the atrial and ventricular septa and deformities of the atrioventricular valves of varying degree A persistent ostium primum with cleft mitral and/or tricuspid valves represents the simplest form of this anomaly and has been termed partial common atrioventricular canal

The complete lesion consists of a common canal connecting the atria and ventricles A persistent ostium primum is combined with a defect in the upper portion of the ventricular septum There is thus at this region free communication between the four chambers of the heart The common orifice is usually surrounded by four or five cusps including one large anterior cusp and one large posterior cusp with two or three small lateral cusps (Fig 11) The frequency of mongolism in association with this lesion was pointed out by Abbott

Of twelve infants seen by the writer with complete common atrioventricular canal proved by necropsy, nine were Mongols All showed poor nutrition, delayed development, cardiomegaly, and respiratory distress None showed definite cyanosis except terminally, although there was a tendency to a peculiar grayish color on crying All had died before the age of two years, only three having survived the first year No murmur was noted in three the others presented precordial systolic blows best heard to the left of the sternum either at the base or lower sternal region, occasionally transmitted into the axilla but never heard well posteriorly Peripheral pulsations tended to be weak *Roentgenograms* showed enlargement of the cardiac shadow to the right of the sternum in the anteroposterior view, with posterior projection beyond the spine in the left anterior oblique view Pulmonary vascular shadows were increased The superior mediastinal shadow may be narrow The electrocardiogram (taken in six cases with precordial leads in four) showed left axis deviation and prominent S waves in the standard limb leads with a QRS pattern in the precordial leads suggestive of the presence of biventricular enlargement associated with delayed activation of the right ventricle

A ten year old girl who presented a complete common atrioventricular canal at necropsy had been followed for eight years During this period she developed increasing cyanosis and dyspnea She began to squat at five years and finally sat constantly in a squatting position She was subject to attacks of paroxysmal tachycardia Her death was due mainly to anoxia caused by diminution in blood flow resulting from progressively increasing pulmonary vascular resistance as well as by the venous arterial shunt secondary to pulmonary hypertension The diagnosis had been made in life because of the characteristic electrocardiogram and the presence of a thrill in the lower precordial region associated with a high pitched systolic blow at the apex

Partial common atrioventricular canal can be corrected surgically under direct vision with the use of extracorporeal circulation The risk although greater than that associated with closure of an ostium secundum defect is not prohibitive A prothesis is used as a rule in the closure of the ostium primum The clefts in the atrioventricular valves may be sutured together Surgical correction of the complete form of common atrioventricular canal is more difficult and associated with a high mortality rate

Triatrial Heart [34] A diaphragm divides the left atrium into an upper posterior and lower anterior portion The pulmonary veins enter the small cavity at the right upper part of the left atrium The atrial appendage leads from the main anterior chamber The anomalous septum usually carries an opening through which the blood passes from the right upper cavity into the lower part of the left atrium and thence to the mitral orifice The effect on the circulation is comparable to that which occurs with mitral stenosis

Approximately half the patients die in infancy An infant with this anomaly who died at the Children s Hospital of Philadelphia at six weeks had suffered recurrent attacks of dyspnea and cyanosis beginning at three weeks usually induced by crying and exertion No murmur or thrill was

noted There was marked hepatomegaly The roentgenogram showed fulness of the pulmonary segment and right ventricular enlargement At necropsy an accessory atrial chamber was found receiving all pulmonary veins The right side of the chamber communicated with the right atrium through a foramen one cm in diameter The left side was separated incompletely from a small left atrial cavity by a sickle shaped fold The left ventricle was small the right atrium and right ventricle extremely dilated and hypertrophied When as in this case a large atrial defect opens into the anomalous chamber the hemodynamics are essentially that of a Lutembacher complex with left to right shunt

Only a few individuals with a fairly large opening through the anomalous septum have reached adult age The clinical picture is not characteristic Paroxysmal dyspnea with cyanosis and syncope have been noted in some individuals others have been relatively asymptomatic until terminal congestive failure made its appearance Murmurs have been variable or absent Roentgenograms show right sided cardiac enlargement *and pulmonary congestion The electrocardiogram shows right ventricular* preponderance *Catheterization* will reveal pulmonary hypertension and high pulmonary capillary pressure

It would be possible surgically to remove such an anomalous septum At the time of operation direct pressure measurements should reveal hypertension in the pulmonary veins but a normal pressure in the main cavity of the left atrium Direct digital exploration preferably through a pulmonary vein should reveal the anomalous septum which is obstructing the entrance of blood into the left atrial cavity leading to the mitral valve [34a]

Lesions of the Cyanotic Group

Pulmonary Stenosis with Intact Ventricular Septum and Atrial Septal Defect [35] The site of stenosis is most frequently valvular but rarely may be infundibular The septal defect may be of anomalous origin but usually is a foramen ovale which has been forced open by the increased pressure in the right heart Venous blood is shunted from right to left through the defect The volume of blood in the lungs may be too small to permit adequate oxygenation for the needs of the body especially during exercise The duration of life depends on the degree of stenosis Since extreme narrowing to the point of atresia with a closed septum is incompatible with adequate postnatal circulation intense cyanosis and death early in infancy will occur life being maintained for a brief time through the presence of a patent foramen ovale and patent ductus With more moderate degrees of stenosis cyanosis may be delayed until after puberty and may be moderate in degree Dyspnea may be out of proportion to the degree of cyanosis Squatting is rare The course may be stationary for many years although in a minority of the group there may be a rapid progression downhill Bacterial endocarditis may develop at the site of the stenotic lesion Death is usually due to congestive failure and anoxia

A harsh systolic murmur often associated with a coarse thrill is maximum in the pulmonary area This murmur may be transmitted to the neck and posterior chest The second pulmonic sound is normal or weak

The pulse pressure is low Arterial oxygen saturation is decreased and may fall during exercise if the shunt is of significant size The circulation time is variable depending on the degree of the shunt and the presence or absence of congestive failure *Roentgenograms* will reveal a large right atrium and right ventricle When dilatation of the pulmonary artery is present the pulmonary segment will be enlarged The vascular shadows in the lungs are frequently decreased (Fig 12) The *electrocardiogram* may show high P waves, right ventricular preponderance inversion of T waves in standard Leads II and III and in the precordial leads

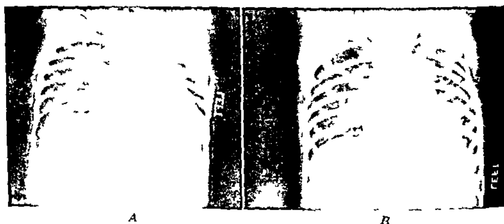


FIGURE 12 Valvular pulmonary stenosis with intact ventricular septum and atrial septal defect *A* Roentgenogram from seventeen month old cyanotic girl in congestive failure with absent P systolic murmur over entire chest maximum in pulmonary area right bundle branch block Note marked cardiac enlargement prominent pulmonary segment minimal pulmonary vascular shadows Valvotomy by Dr Julian Johnson was followed by disappearance of cyanosis and of heart failure Systolic pressure in right ventricle at time of operation was 100 mm. Hg in pulmonary artery too low for measurement After valvotomy systolic pressure in right ventricle was 60 mm and in pulmonary artery 40 mm *B* Eighteen months after operation Slight enlargement of heart and pulmonary segment adequate pulmonary vascularity

Catheterization will show high systolic pressure in the right ventricle which may exceed systemic pressure associated with low pressure in the pulmonary artery It may be possible to pass the catheter through the atrial defect *The circulation time from the right ventricle is normal* Pressure tracings from the right ventricle have a peaked symmetrical appearance (Fig 2) *Angiocardiograms* will demonstrate hypertrophy and dilatation of the right heart together with stenosis of the pulmonary artery in the region of the valve and dilatation of the artery beyond this point There may be opacification of the left atrium immediately following that of the right atrium together with early visualization of the aorta due to the venoarterial shunt (Fig 13)

Valvotomy or infundibulotomy is indicated in all cases in which cyanosis is present Following this procedure there is a fall of pressure in the right ventricle associated with a rise of pressure in the pulmonary artery increased pulmonary blood flow, disappearance of cyanosis and dyspnea and increased exercise tolerance (Fig 12)

Tetralogy of Fallot (Pulmonary Stenosis Dextroposition of the Aorta Interventricular Septal Defect Right Ventricular Hypertrophy) [36] This is the commonest abnormality in patients with cyanosis who live past puberty In the minority of cases simple valvular stenosis may exist In *the majority of cases it is the infundibulum that is stenosed*, the site of stenosis lying in the mid low or high position Valvular and infundibular stenosis may be combined Finally the developmental error may consist



FIGURE 13 Valvular pulmonary stenosis with intact ventricular septum and atrial septal defect Angiocardiogram from eleven year old boy with dyspnea on exertion *slight cyanosis systolic thrill in suprasternal* notch and second left inter space weak P systolic murmur maximum in pulmonary area right ventricular preponderance in ECG Film taken one second after injection of contrast medium visualizes a large right atrium and right ventricle dilatation of the pulmonary artery beyond a stenosed pulmonary valve passage of contrast medium from right atrium into left atrium Valvotomy by Dr Robert Glover was followed by marked symptomatic improvement and lessening of cyanosis with no change in cardiac physical findings

of hypoplasia of the entire infundibulum pulmonary valve and artery As a result of the pulmonary obstruction and increased pressure within the right ventricle venous blood is shunted through the ventricular septal defect into the aorta which thus receives mixed blood from both ventricles There is marked diminution in output of blood to the lung because of the pulmonary stenosis and the venoarterial shunt

Cyanosis sets in relatively early although it is not necessarily present at birth and becomes extreme as adult life approaches Marked clubbing of the fingers toes and often of the nose develops Feeding difficulties are

common in infancy Development may be slow and growth stunted, although a surprisingly large number of infants with tetralogy may show no impairment of nutrition Dyspnea on exertion and even at rest is common These individuals discover early in life that squatting relieves their symptoms of distress They are subject to attacks of increased cyanosis and respiratory distress sometimes terminating in syncope or convulsions In infancy these attacks are frequently initiated by feeding Polycythemia may precede cyanosis or may be slow to develop even in the presence of marked anoxemia and cyanosis Ultimately it is always present and when sufficiently great is in itself a hazard because of its tendency to produce thrombosis of the cerebral vessels with the development of hemiplegia Additional complications to be expected are bacterial endocarditis paradoxical embolus which may result in cerebral abscess if the infected embolus lands in the brain cardiac failure and functional renal insufficiency

Cardiac enlargement is slight or moderate A systolic murmur of variable characteristics may be present along the left border of the sternum often heard best in the pulmonic area A systolic thrill may accompany the murmur Both the murmur and the thrill may be absent The second pulmonic sound may be weak or absent although in many cases it is of normal or accentuated intensity As pointed out by Taussig it should never be reduplicated

Roentgenographic Appearance (Figs 14 15) The cardiac shadow is small or only moderately increased in size In 60 per cent of the cases especially in infancy the heart is transversely placed with pulmonary concavity and a blunt apex which has been likened to the tip of a wooden shoe (coeur en sabot) The hilar shadows are small because of the diminished volume of blood The peripheral lung fields are free of vascular shadows If many collateral blood vessels develop in order to supply an additional amount of blood to the lungs hilar shadows may seem prominent but if examined closely are seen to be composed of linear aggregates which show no pulsations The superior mediastinal shadow may be increased to the right by the dilated superior vena cava In the left anterior oblique position the aortic window will be unusually clear because of the narrowing of the pulmonary artery The anterior cardiac surface may show increased saliency as a result of the right ventricular hypertrophy A right aortic arch is present in 20 per cent of the cases of tetralogy of Fallot In the presence of a normal left aortic arch the trachea and esophagus are deviated to the right at the level of the aortic arch (Fig 14) whereas they are deviated to the left by a right aortic arch (Fig 15)

The *electrocardiogram* shows right ventricular preponderance frequently associated with peaked P waves *Catheterization* will reveal high systolic pressure in the right ventricle and low pressure in the pulmonary artery Since both ventricles and the aorta form an open system the pressure in the right ventricle may equal the pressure in the left ventricle and aorta but cannot exceed it In the presence of infundibular stenosis it may be possible to demonstrate an infundibular chamber in which only a slight



FIGURE 14 Tetralogy of Fallot with left aortic arch Roentgenograms from seven year old cyanotic boy with right ventricular preponderance in ECG Esophagus displaced to right and posteriorly at level of aortic arch Transversely placed heart with concave pulmonary curve and blunt apex minimal pulmonary vascular shadows dilated superior vena cava Aortic left pulmonary artery anastomosis by Dr Julian Johnson was followed by disappearance of cyanosis and dramatic improvement in exercise tolerance which has persisted for seven years



FIGURE 15 Right aortic arch with right descending aorta At the level of the aortic arch the barium filled esophagus is displaced to the left in the A P view but shows no displacement in the right oblique view From a four year old girl with tetralogy of Fallot (Diagnosis proved at operation)

Pages 73 to 140E replace forme pages 73 to 140 © 1959

rise of pressure occurs as compared with the abrupt rise when the main cavity of the ventricle is reached Pressure curves from the right ventricle are normally asymmetric with a rapid ascent and plateau top (Fig 2) The oxygen content may be increased high in the right ventricle or pulmonary artery due to a laminated flow of blood from the left ventricle through the ventricular septal defect It may be possible to pass the catheter from the right ventricle into the aorta The intracardiac shunt will be directed from right to left, the pulmonary artery flow being less than the systemic blood flow The pulmonary capillary flow however may exceed the pulmonary artery flow indicating the presence of collateral circulation directed into the lungs

Simultaneous visualization of the aorta and pulmonary artery in the *angiocardiogram* should not be interpreted to indicate the passage of venous blood from the right ventricle into the aorta if contrast medium is visible in the left atrium and left ventricle owing to a venoarterial shunt through an atrial septal defect

The first operations designed to increase the blood supply to the lungs consisted in anastomosis of an arterial vessel to a branch of the pulmonary artery In the Blalock Taussig procedure a subclavian artery is anastomosed to the corresponding pulmonary artery, in the Potts Smith procedure the descending aorta is used Subsequently, Brock introduced the procedure of valvotomy or infundibulotomy through a transventricular approach

With all of these procedures the immediate improvement following successful operation is dramatic Cyanosis disappears and exercise tolerance increases polycythemia decreases and the arterial oxygen saturation rises Children who were helpless invalids become able to play normally The possibility of development of bacterial endocarditis brain abscess and cardiac failure still exists The incidence of cerebral complications due to thrombosis and anoxemia should be lessened

The Brock procedure has fallen into disfavor since the relief of pulmonary stenosis without closure of the ventricular septal defect may flood the lungs with blood under systemic pressure and may lead to the development of pulmonary hypertension With the development of intracardiac surgery under direct vision aided by extracorporeal circulation it has become possible to attack the stenotic site directly and at the same time close the ventricular septal defect The operative death rate is high in comparison with the risk of a Blalock or Potts procedure Moreover, it is often necessary to use a prosthesis to close the ventricular septal defect and to enlarge the outflow tract of the right ventricle Time alone will give us information concerning the long term results of the incision in the myocardium and the fate of these prostheses

Tricuspid atresia associated with a hypoplastic or nonfunctioning right ventricle and with atresia or hypoplasia of the pulmonary artery is a lesion not compatible with any great length of life Blood entering the right atrium can escape only through an atrial septal defect into the left atrium The size of the right atrium is in inverse proportion to the size of the atrial defect The left ventricle is the main functioning ventricle Blood can

reach the pulmonary artery only from the aorta through a patent ductus or from a small right ventricle through a ventricular septal defect Cyanosis appears shortly after birth The second pulmonic sound is clear with no reduplication No murmur may be present or a systolic murmur may be heard to the left of the sternum If the atrial septal defect is small and peripheral venous congestion is present the liver may be enlarged Roentgenograms may show a narrow mediastinal shadow in all positions a concave pulmonary curve absence of the cardiac shadow anterior to the aorta *if the right atrium is small and projection of the posterior border* beyond the spine in the left anterior oblique view (Fig 16) If the atrial defect is small the right atrium will be unusually large Pulmonary vascularity is diminished The cardiac silhouette however cannot always be differentiated from tetralogy of Fallot A right arch and right descending



FIGURE 16 Tricuspid and pulmonary atresia Very small right atrium and right ventricle large left ventricle patent foramen ovale patent ductus arteriosus From a cyanotic infant who died at the age of one month The roentgenogram of the heart reveals a concave pulmonary curve in the A P view with minimal vascular shadows in the lung fields The left oblique view shows posterior projection of the enlarged *left ventricle* No axis deviation in the electrocardiogram

aorta are rarely present The *electrocardiogram* shows left ventricular preponderance as a rule In a minority of cases particularly in infants there may be no axis deviation *Catheterization* reveals increased pressure in the right atrium Although the overall cardiac shunt is from right to left there is sufficient left to right shunt to raise the oxygen content of the right atrium above that of the superior vena cava *Angiocardiograms* reveal visualization of the left atrium shortly after the right atrium followed by opacification of the large left ventricle In the anteroposterior view a triangular area of non opacification may be seen at the diaphragmatic surface of the heart in the region usually occupied by the right ventricle

(Fig 17) There is delayed appearance of contrast medium in the pulmonary circulation

A Blalock Taussig or Potts Smith operation should provide symptomatic relief provided an atrial defect of sufficient size is present The creation of an atrial septal defect by the Blalock Hanlon method[37] may be advisable if a small atrial septal defect is present In such a case high peaked P waves will be noted in the electrocardiogram indicative of the presence of an enlarged right atrium

Tricuspid atresia may be associated *with transposition of the great vessels* in which case pulmonary stenosis or atresia may or may not be present When pulmonary obstruction is present the malformation from the surgical standpoint is physiologically similar to tricuspid atresia without transposition Benefit can be obtained from a shunt procedure Cases



FIGURE 17 Tricuspid atresia Angiocardiogram of four year old girl with marked cyanosis and dyspnea soft systolic murmur left of sternum continuous hum below left clavicle left ventricular preponderance in ECG Contrast medium visible in right atrium left artium left ventricle and large aorta Triangular shadow near diaphragm in region of right ventricle remains unfilled Small pulmonary arteries seen after the aorta was visualized presumably filled through a small ductus Creation of an atrial septal defect and right subclavian pulmonary artery anastomosis by Dr Julian Johnson was followed by marked lessening of cyanosis and increased exercise tolerance

of tricuspid atresia and transposition without pulmonary stenosis, however, have adequate or excessive pulmonary circulation Physiologically they resemble the Eisenmenger complex in which there is a common ventricular ejectile force for the systemic and pulmonary circulations The clinical picture in infancy is characterized by pulmonary infections emphysema and congestive failure Cyanosis is relatively mild No surgical procedure is available unless it seems advisable to enlarge the atrial defect

Eisenmenger Complex (Ventricular Septal Defect, Pulmonary Hypertension Dextroposition of the Aorta Pulmonary Artery Normal or Dilated) The ventricular defect is relatively large the degree of dextroposition of the aorta may vary from a normal degree of overriding to abnormal origin from the right ventricle The right ventricle is hypertrophied both ventricles may be dilated

At birth because of the *large ventricular septal defect the systolic pressure is identical in both ventricles the aorta and the pulmonary artery* The presence of high pressure in the pulmonary vascular bed results in the persistence of medial hypertrophy in the muscular arterioles in order to maintain high pulmonary resistance Subsequently intimal thickening develops As a result flooding of the lungs is minimized and a peripheral flow adequate to maintain life can be secured

The shunt is probably bidirectional from birth and the aorta and pulmonary artery continuously receive blood from both ventricles Anoxemia would be present from birth even though not always of a degree to be visible as cyanosis early in life Since the pulmonary arterial changes are progressive there is a progressive rise in pulmonary diastolic pressure with ultimate predominant right to left shunt The oxygen saturation in the pulmonary veins is normal Cyanosis is due to venoarterial admixture and to progressive decrease in pulmonary blood flow as the resistance in the lungs increases

The infant may present the syndrome of increased pulmonary blood flow (pulmonary emphysema and edema) and die of congestive failure More commonly a life of average duration with the late appearance of *symptoms is possible The majority die in the third and fourth decade* Cyanosis is late in onset and tends to be moderate in degree with the development of slight clubbing A loud systolic murmur and thrill may be present to the left of the sternum If the pulmonary valve is dilated a diastolic blow may also be heard The second pulmonic sound is accentuated Squatting is rare Hemoptyses are not uncommon Possible complications are bacterial endocarditis and paradoxical embolus The most frequent cause of death is heart failure *Roentgenograms* show enlargement of the right ventricle and pulmonary segment and increased pulmonary vascular markings The hilar shadows may show expansile pulsations The *electrocardiogram* may be normal or may show right ventricular preponderance *Catheterization* may reveal identical systolic pressure *in the right ventricle pulmonary artery left ventricle and aorta and* progressively elevated diastolic pressure in the pulmonary artery The oxygen content in the right ventricle and/or pulmonary artery may be increased It may be possible to pass the catheter from the right ventricle into the aorta *Angiocardiograms* reveal the simultaneous entrance of blood into the aorta and pulmonary artery The left ventricle may be faintly opacified at the same time The pulmonary artery is usually dilated

Operation could only be performed under direct vision with the aid of extracorporeal circulation Closure of the ventricular septal defect would

be possible only in early life when the pulmonary arteriolar changes may still be reversible

Transposition of the Great Vessels[38] In this condition the relations of the aorta and pulmonary artery to each other are altered at their origin from the ventricles All degrees of this changed relationship may occur The ventricular septum normally curves to the right in its upper portion As a result if the anterior segment of the membranous septum is absent the normal aorta will override the ventricular septal defect (*dextroposition* Spitzer, Type 1) Abnormally the origin of the aorta may be so dextroposed that it arises entirely from the right ventricle which receives blood from the left ventricle through an associated ventricular septal defect The pulmonary artery arises from its normal position (simple transposition' of Spitzer Type 2) Three forms were described by Rokitansky (1) *complete transposition* (crossed transposition" of Spitzer, Type 3) in which each great vessel arises from the opposite ventricle (2) partial transposition in which the aorta and pulmonary artery arise from the same ventricle but in reversed relationship to each other (3) *corrected transposition* in which the great trunks rise in reverse relationship to each other but the ventricle from which the aorta arises receives aerated blood from the pulmonary veins whereas the ventricle from which the pulmonary artery arises receives venous blood The foramen ovale in the right atrium is normally formed but the right A V valve usually resembles a normal mitral valve and the left A V valve resembles a normal tricuspid valve Under the term mixed transposition' (Type 4) Spitzer describes that form of trilocular heart in which a diminutive chamber situated in the right upper portion of the common ventricle gives off the aorta in transposed position According to Spitzer[38a] transposition is due to a lack of the normal clock wise torsion of the arterial tube resulting in a reopening of the channel of the reptilian right aorta with obliteration of the left aortic trunk Saphir and Lev believe that the developmental error is the result of abnormality in the absorption of the bulbus in the stage at which torsion of the arterial trunks takes place Whatever the embryologic explanation there is fair agreement that the primary anomaly affects the great vessels and that the association of ventricular septal defect pulmonary stenosis etc is secondary

Complete Transposition of Great Vessels The two great vessels arise in transposed position at their origin from the ventricles Two independent circulations exist the aorta transporting venous blood from the right ventricle to the body and the pulmonary artery arterial blood from the left ventricle to the lung Life must be maintained through one or more associated defects which permit oxygenated blood to reach the systemic circulation The age of onset of cyanosis its intensity as well as the duration of life vary in accordance with the size of the shunt The pulmonary artery is often dilated and the pulmonary branches may be prominent In a minority of cases pulmonary stenosis may be present

Seventy per cent die in the first year the majority in the first six months Cyanosis and polycythemia appear shortly after birth although they are not always apparent in the neonatal period Dyspnea, feeding

difficulties delayed growth and development are common The heart size is normal at birth but cardiac enlargement may become marked within a few weeks Heart sounds may be loud and clanging Murmurs may be absent or a systolic blow may be present to the left of the sternum if a septal defect exists

Fanconi[38b] was the first to describe a narrow superior mediastinal shadow in the anteroposterior *roentgenogram* due to the fact that the vessels do not as usual cross over each other but may be superimposed Taussig pointed out that in the left anterior position the mediastinal shadow in

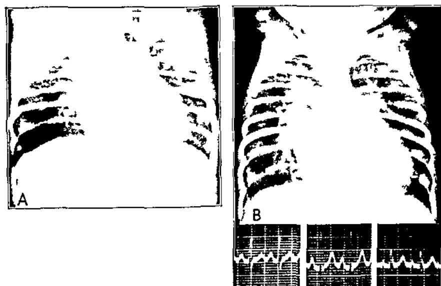


FIGURE 18 Complete transposition of aorta and pulmonary artery in two cyanotic infants each of whom died of pneumonia at age of nine months *A* Large right atrium and right ventricle multiple fenestrations in valve of foramen ovale *B* Large left ventricle ventricular septal defect Note cardiac enlargement upward short superior mediastinal shadow oblique downward curve to the left in each case (From Bromer J A M A 120 251 1942 Previously reported by Ash Wolman and Bromer Am J Dis Child 58 8 1939 A=Case 21 B=Case 26)

creases in width The superior mediastinal shadow however may be wide when the vessels lie lateral to each other rather than superimposed in the presence of a large thymus or when the dilated right atrial appendage projects upward into the superior mediastinum More characteristic in infancy is the general contour of the cardiac shadow (Fig 18) The heart enlarges upward so that the superior mediastinal shadow is shortened and displaced upward There is an oblique downward and outward curve of the left border Enlargement is due to hypertrophy and dilatation of either the right or left ventricle or both Intrapulmonary shadows may be prominent if the pulmonary artery is large In later life the contour may resemble that of tetralogy (Fig 19) If pulmonary stenosis is associated transposition of great vessels may be difficult to differentiate from

tetralogy except by angiocardiograms A right arch and right descending aorta occur rarely

The *electrocardiogram* usually shows right axis deviation and right ventricular preponderance Occasionally no axis deviation or left axis deviation may be present

Results obtained by *cardiac catheterization* are often confusing The catheter may enter the aorta and cannot be inserted into the pulmonary artery, but this situation may occur in tetralogy The oxygen content of the aorta is usually similar to that in the right ventricle It may be

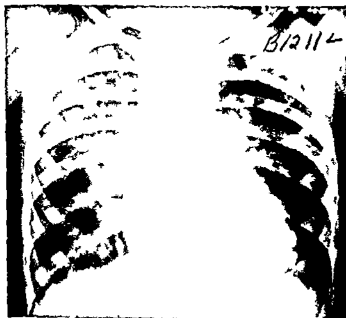


FIGURE 19 Complete transposition of great vessels with large atrial septal defect dilated pulmonary artery and branches Roentgenogram of cyanotic eight year old girl who died of chronic glomerulonephritis and congestive failure Note vertical heart with contour similar to that noted in tetralogy of Fallot. Excessive vascularity of lung fields

possible to pass the catheter through an atrial defect into the left atrium and compare the pressure in both sides of the heart or through a ventricular defect into the pulmonary artery The oxygen content in the pulmonary artery should be higher than in the aorta

Angiocardiograms (best taken in lateral or left anterior oblique view) show successive opacification of the right atrium the right ventricle and aorta before the pulmonary artery is visualized The aorta is seen to rise anteriorly from the right ventricle (Fig 20) There is poor opacification of the left heart and pulmonary artery

Surgical treatment is still in the experimental stage Attempts to transfer the great vessels have failed Moderate symptomatic improvement may be obtained by the creation of an atrial septal defect by the Blalock Hanlon method [39] If pulmonary stenosis exists anastomosis of a pulmonary artery and arterial vessel may be of value Baffes has obtained

favorable results by anastomosis of the inferior vena cava to the left atrium with the interposition of an aortic graft followed by anastomosis of the right pulmonary veins to the right atrium [38c]

Complete Transposition of Aorta Levoposition of Pulmonary Artery (Taussig Bing Malformation) [39] A large pulmonary artery arises mainly from the right ventricle but partly overrides a ventricular septal defect This malformation produces a syndrome clinically similar to the Eisen menger complex both great vessels being subjected to pressure at the systemic level

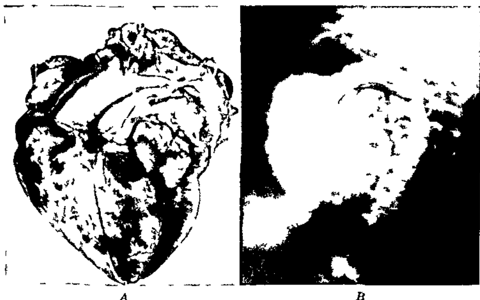


FIGURE 20 Complete transposition of great vessels with patent ductus *A* Cardiac specimen of cyanotic infant who died at two months of anoxia (left anterior oblique position) Aorta arises anteriorly from right ventricle pulmonary artery posteriorly from left ventricle ductus arteriosus patent *B* *Angiocardio gram* (retouched) Opacification of right atrium right ventricle and aorta which rises anteriorly fainter opacification of pulmonary artery which rises posteriorly

A fair duration of life is possible Cyanosis is present from birth associ ated with clubbing and polycythemia Squatting is rare A systolic mur mur may be present to the left of the sternum *Roentgenograms* show moderate cardiac enlargement a large pulmonary segment and prominent pulmonary vascular shadows including many circular shadows of blood vessels standing on end The *electrocardiogram* shows right axis deviation and right ventricular preponderance *Catheterization* It is frequently possible to enter both the aorta and pulmonary artery without difficulty Similar systolic pressure will be found in the right ventricle aorta and pulmonary artery There is higher oxygen content in the pulmonary artery than in the right ventricle aorta or peripheral artery The *angio cardiogram* (best taken in the lateral view) shows rapid opacification of the right atrium right ventricle and aorta together with early opacifica

tion of the pulmonary artery The aorta rises anteriorly from the right ventricle

Symptomatic improvement may be obtained by the creation of an atrial septal defect by the Blalock Hanlon method[3] There have been reports of the association of pulmonary stenosis rather than a normal pulmonary artery with this malformation The clinical differentiation of such a combination from tetralogy of Fallot with marked overriding of the aorta would be difficult if not impossible Both would probably benefit from creation of an atrial defect plus a subclavian pulmonary artery anastomosis

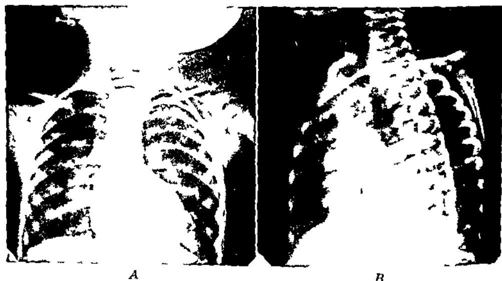


FIGURE 21 Single ventricle with diminutive outlet chamber and transposed great vessels Aorta arising from outlet chamber pulmonary artery from main ventricle Roentgenogram from three year old mildly cyanotic girl with accentuated P mid systolic click to left of sternum no murmur who died at seven years of brain abscess Note convex pulmonary segment in A P view no cardiac projection anterior to aorta in left oblique view prominent vascular shadows

Single Ventricle (Cor Trilocurare Biatriatum)[40] In the great majority of cases the great vessels are transposed A rudimentary outflow chamber from which either the aorta or pulmonary artery rises occurs in only one third of the cases In the remaining cases the common ventricle is divided into subaortic and subpulmonary channels of equal diameter or is not subdivided The two atrioventricular orifices communicate with the main body of the ventricle

In approximately half of the reported cases death occurred within the first year Various individuals with single ventricle and transposed great vessels however have lived well into adult life Abbott has pointed out that in such cases the condition is analogous to that obtaining in the turtle s heart in which streams of blood are directed within the ventricles into their proper channels with relatively little intermingling

Cyanosis is not always present at birth and tends to be mild when a normal pulmonary artery arises from the main ventricle In such a case,

however the lungs are exposed to systemic pressure and pulmonary hypertension must exist When pulmonary stenosis is present, cyanosis is more severe and the condition clinically is often difficult to differentiate from tetralogy of Fallot A systolic murmur is usually present to the left of the sternum occasionally associated with a diastolic blow The *electrocardiogram* usually shows right axis deviation occasionally left axis deviation The *roentgenogram* shows cardiac enlargement often of non characteristic contour Taussig has described a typical contour for a single ventricle with diminutive outflow chamber which shows a conspicuous bulge in the region of the outflow chamber in the anteroposterior view but no projection anterior to the aorta in the left anterior oblique view (Fig 21) Pulmonary vascular shadows will be prominent if the pulmonary artery rises from the main ventricular cavity but diminished if pulmonary stenosis is associated or if the artery arises from a small outlet chamber *The angiocardiogram shows simultaneous opacification of the* area corresponding to the right and left ventricles with reappearance of contrast medium in the common ventricle after having traversed the pulmonary circulation and the left atrium Usually a left aortic arch is present *Catheterization* It may rarely be possible to pass the catheter from the right atrium through the tricuspid valve into the single ventricle thence through the mitral valve into the left atrium The oxygen content of blood from the ventricle and pulmonary artery will be higher than that of blood from the right atrium The arterial oxygen saturation is decreased

Persistent Common Truncus Arteriosus [41] A single large arterial trunk provided with three or four cusps arises from both ventricles above a septal defect and gives off not only coronary and systemic arteries but also branches to the lungs If the *pulmonary arteries* arise *from the common trunk* and the lungs are adequately supplied with blood cyanosis may be slight The duration of life will vary inversely with the volume of blood shunted into the lungs If an excessive volume of blood is shunted into the lungs under systemic pressure death may occur in early infancy due to congestive failure emphysema and pulmonary edema If the blood is shunted into the lungs through vessels of moderate size a fair duration of life is possible The second pulmonic sound is a single clanging sound No murmur or a variable soft systolic murmur may be present *Roentgenograms* will reveal lung fields adequately supplied with blood This lesion cannot be helped by surgical treatment

If the right and left pulmonary branches which arise from the sixth branchial arch fail to join the common arterial trunk (*absent pulmonary arteries*) the circulation to the lungs can be maintained only by collateral vessels—usually the bronchial and posterior mediastinal arteries Clinically this malformation cannot be differentiated from pulmonary atresia with marked overriding of the aorta (pseudotruncus arteriosus) Cyanosis appears early The degree of incapacity varies inversely with the extent of collateral circulation If many collateral vessels are present an active life is possible even though cyanosis may be marked If few collateral vessels develop sudden death may occur early in infancy The second

pulmonic sound is sharp not reduplicated Murmurs are often absent but a soft systolic murmur may be audible to the left of the sternum A continuous hum is often present over some portion of one or both lungs due to the flow of blood through enlarged collateral vessels *Roentgenograms* show cardiac enlargement with absence of fulness in the pulmonary segment Taussig has emphasized the abrupt lateral and anterior shelving of the cardiac shadow in infancy (Fig 22) In later life the contour resembles that of tetralogy The aortic shadow is large often rising high in the chest A right aortic arch and right descending aorta may be present The peripheral lung fields are abnormally clear, fine linear shadows

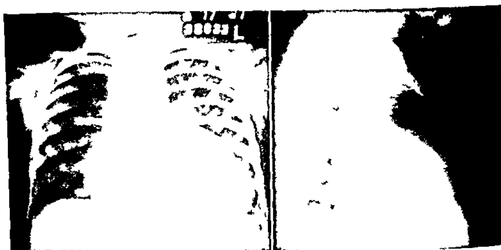


FIGURE 22 Truncus arteriosus Note the horizontal shelving to the left in the A P view and the anterior shelving in the lateral view From a three year old girl with cyanosis who presented a suprasternal thrill a systolic murmur to the left of the lower sternum a soft continuous murmur in the right chest and right axis deviation in the electrocardiogram Died at the age of nine years (terminal illness reported by Solis Cohen M Zaslow J and Rabnick M H Am Heart J 28 115 1944) Necropsy showed an interventricular septal defect 3 cm in diameter a markedly dilated aorta communicating with both ventricles no pulmonary artery a bicuspid right A V valve with superimposed bacterial vegetations

of collateral vessels may be seen along the borders of the mediastinal shadow The *electrocardiogram* shows right axis deviation and right ventricular preponderance Isolated cases with left axis deviation have been reported

If a pulmonary artery branch of adequate size is present it may be possible to perform a shunt procedure to obtain symptomatic relief Especial precautions must be taken at the time of operation to make certain that adequate circulation can be maintained in the opposite lung before an incision is made in the pulmonary artery on the operative side

When no pulmonary arteries are available for anastomosis some improvement may be obtained by pleurectomy followed by the instillation of finely powdered asbestos into the chest with the purpose of producing adhesions which may be penetrated by blood vessels passing from the chest wall into the lung (Fig 38)

Downward Displacement of Tricuspid Valve (Ebstein s malformation) [4] The leaflets of the tricuspid valve are displaced toward the apex of the heart and usually malformed The right ventricle is divided into a large thin walled portion continuous with the right atrium and a small func tioning ventricle In the few reported cases in which cyanosis has been absent the foramen ovale was closed In the majority of cases the foramen ovale is patent The primary effect of the anomaly is to reduce the efficiency of the right heart As the upper chamber cannot empty itself completely it enlarges progressively If the foramen ovale is patent

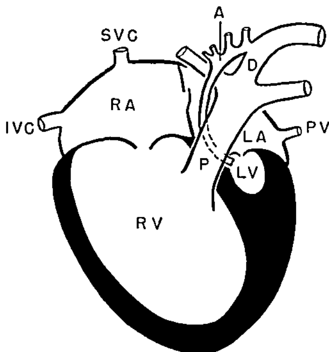


FIGURE 23 Aortic atresia and hypoplasia of left arch *A* Hypoplastic aortic arch *D* patent ductus arteriosus The aorta may arise from the left ventricle as pictured or may terminate blindly within the muscle mass above and to the right of the left ventricular cavity (From Friedman S Murphy L and Ash R J Pediat. 38 351 1948)

venous blood is shunted into the left atrium The lower chamber which receives less than the normal volume of blood delivers an inadequate amount of blood to the lungs for oxygenation

Of the first twenty eight cases reported in the literature twelve had died below the age of seventeen years three in infancy Cyanosis was present in all Of ten individuals who lived past the age of twenty (maximum sixty one average forty years) cyanosis was absent in seven The absence of a patent foramen ovale and of cyanosis would seem to be a good prognostic sign and would influence the roentgenographic findings since pulmonary vascular shadows would be normal and the heart relatively small

Cyanosis is occasionally present at birth but is usually delayed and of insidious onset, out of proportion to the relatively mild dyspnea Cardiac enlargement is progressive A variable systolic murmur may be present to the left of the sternum A mid diastolic murmur or gallop may be heard over the lower precordium When cyanosis is present, the *roentgenograms* show a large right heart concave pulmonary segment, clear lung fields with minimal hilar shadows and a large aorta The *electrocardiogram* may show right bundle branch block, prolonged PR arrhythmias, occasional Wolff Parkinson White syndrome



FIGURE 24 Atresia of mitral valve aortic stenosis small undeveloped left ventricle and aorta small left atrium patent foramen ovale 4 mm in diameter markedly dilated and hypertrophied right atrium and right ventricle The roentgenogram shows a greatly enlarged globular heart with fulness in the pulmonic region The lateral view revealed no posterior (left ventricular) enlargement Left axis deviation in the electrocardiogram From a ten day old infant with a history of dyspnea and cyanosis of two days duration Liver enlarged to level of umbilicus Died on the eleventh day

Cardiac catheterization is often difficult and potentially dangerous Pressure is normal in the right ventricle and the pulmonary artery It may be possible to pass the catheter through the atrial defect *Angiocardiograms* show a greatly dilated right atrium which retains contrast medium for a long period, poor visualization of the functioning right ventricle delayed filling of the pulmonary artery and inadequate opacification of lungs Contrast medium may be seen to pass through the atrial defect Occasionally it is possible to visualize displacement of the tricuspid valve to the left

Since clinically this malformation may resemble pulmonary stenosis with intact ventricular septum and atrial defect the differential diagnosis is important in order to avoid the error of advising pulmonary valvotomy for individuals with the Ebstein malformation The electrocardiogram never presents the pattern of right ventricular preponderance characteristic of pulmonary stenosis In selected cases closure of the foramen ovale for

correction of the right to left shunt may provide symptomatic relief [4b] Reconstruction under direct vision has been proposed [4c]

Marked Stenosis or Atresia of the Aortic and/or Mitral Valve with Hypoplasia of the Left Heart [13] Circulation is maintained by a widely patent ductus through the pulmonary artery which becomes continuous with the descending aorta and thus supplies the systemic circulation with mixed venous and arterial blood or by a ventricular septal defect The aortic arch and its vessels may be supplied by retrograde flow (Fig 23) In addition some patency of the foramen ovale must be present to permit passage of blood from the left side of the heart These infants may seem normal at birth, but rapidly develop dyspnea with pallor or grayish cyanosis greatly enlarged heart and liver and marked pulmonary engorgement A systolic murmur may or may not be present Peripheral pulsations are weak Death occurs in early infancy *Roentgenograms* show marked cardiac enlargement with fulness of the pulmonary segment due to hypertrophy and dilatation of the right atrium right ventricle and pulmonary artery the left ventricle remaining atrophic (Fig 24) The *electrocardiogram* usually shows right axis deviation and right ventricular preponderance Isolated cases have been reported which show no axis deviation or left axis deviation

When mitral atresia is associated with transposition of the great vessels arising from the right ventricle the prognosis is more favorable

Vascular Anomalies within the Thorax

Anomalies of Coronary Arteries (1) *Variation in number and distribution* Small *accessory arteries* may exist The supernumerary vessel found most commonly arises by a separate ostium behind the right aortic cusp and sends branches to the area of the conus of the right ventricle It may serve as a source of blood supply from the aorta when other vessels to the heart are occluded The myocardium may be supplied by a *single coronary artery* In the commonest type the vessel arises from a single ostium and divides into branches which follow the normal course of the right and left coronary arteries Less commonly a true single coronary artery follows the course of only one coronary artery usually the left (absent right coronary artery) Finally the distribution of a single coronary artery may be entirely atypical Usually such an atypical vessel is found in association with severe cardiac malformations The main branches of the left coronary artery may arise from separate ostia instead of from a common trunk There have been isolated reports of *arteriovenous fistulae* connecting a coronary artery and vein and of *aneurysm* of a coronary artery sometimes associated with an arteriovenous communication Rarely a coronary artery may communicate directly with the right atrium or right ventricle (2) *Variations in origin* One or more of the coronary ostia may be situated higher in the aorta than usual Of more serious significance is anomalous origin from the pulmonary artery *Origin of both coronary arteries from the pulmonary* artery is rare and results in death shortly after birth Equally rare although compatible with a long life is *origin of the right coronary artery from the pulmonary*

artery The myocardium receives an adequate supply of blood from the left coronary artery *Origin of the left coronary artery from the pulmonary artery* however frequently is associated with serious myocardial disturbance

Origin of the Left Coronary Artery from the Pulmonary Artery [44] If adequate collateral circulation from the right coronary artery is present individuals with this anomaly may attain adult life In the majority of cases however death occurs in early infancy At necropsy the heart shows marked enlargement due to hypertrophy and dilatation of the left ventricle Myocardial degeneration and fibrosis are most marked in the anterior wall of the left ventricle which may develop aneurysmal pouching at the apex Marked fibroelastic thickening of the endocardium is associated Pressure of the enlarged heart on the left bronchus results in atelectasis Infants born with this anomaly are often symptomless for the first weeks of life after which they may show persistent respiratory distress or transient attacks of sweating dyspnea pallor or cyanosis often precipitated by feeding Death may occur suddenly without preceding symptoms Murmurs are rarely present

Inversion of T waves in one or more standard leads of the *electrocardiogram* is a fairly constant finding but cannot be differentiated from T wave changes which may occur in other conditions associated with anoxia of the left ventricle The presence of a prominent Q wave in Lead I would favor the diagnosis of anomalous pulmonary artery The cardiac type of glycogen storage disease which may be associated with inverted T waves in the electrocardiogram may be differentiated clinically by the associated progressive muscular weakness and retardation of development Glycogen accumulates in striate and smooth muscle as well as in the heart and may be detected by muscle biopsy

It has been speculated that the absence of symptoms in the early weeks of life in infants with left coronary artery arising from the pulmonary artery is due to some degree of patency of the ductus arteriosus which may have permitted the mixture of arterial and venous blood within the pulmonary artery Another suggested explanation is that the blood supply of the myocardium becomes inadequate as the activity of the infant increases This inadequacy would be accentuated by the increasing hypertrophy of the muscle

Various operative procedures have been proposed It has been suggested that anastomosis of the pulmonary artery to the aorta will supply more highly oxygenated blood under increased pressure to the myocardium Such a procedure would almost certainly result in early death from pulmonary edema Evidence has been presented which seemed to indicate that flow in the anomalous vessel is from the aorta into the pulmonary artery creating an arteriovenous fistula that fails to supply the myocardium with blood It has been suggested that ligation of the left coronary artery at its origin from the pulmonary artery would convert the lesion into a single coronary artery supplying both ventricles [44] Talner et al [44b] however, have succeeded in demonstrating the passage of contrast substance from the pulmonary artery into the anomalous coronary vessel by angiocardiog

raphy The operation of choice would be transplantation of the anomalous vessel to the aorta with the use of extracorporeal circulation [44]

Anomalies of the Aortic Arch [45] These need not be associated with anomalies of the heart itself although cardiac defects are often present There may be no symptoms In such cases treatment is not indicated Symptoms may be absent in childhood to make their appearance in later life when the vessels become sclerotic Dysphagia and persistent cough are the most frequent symptoms in adult life with hoarseness or hemorrhage as rare possibilities It is possible for a vascular ring to exert pres-



FIGURE 25 Double aortic arch Roentgenograms in A P and right oblique views show bilateral esophageal constriction at the level of the third and fourth thoracic vertebrae From an eight month old infant with stridor dysphagia and respiratory distress Double aortic arch each of equal size with right descending aorta found at operation Disappearance of symptoms followed severance of anterior arch and of ligamentum arteriosum by Dr Julian Johnson.

sure on the trachea and esophagus in infancy of a degree sufficient to produce early death Stridor the presence of respiratory distress and cyanosis during feeding dysphagia and head retraction should lead one to suspect the existence of a vascular ring in an infant

Double Aortic Arch The right or posterior arch usually is larger the left or anterior smaller Both arches however may be of equal size or the left may be the larger The trachea and esophagus are enclosed in a vascular ring formed by the junction of the two arches which unite posteriorly to descend either on the left or right side of the chest Rarely one arch is obliterated in whole or in part represented only by a cord Bilateral constriction of the trachea and esophagus can be demonstrated by roentgenologic studies made with the aid of barium in the esophagus (Fig 25) A constricting vascular ring can be severed surgically with relief from symptoms

Right Aortic Arch The arch of the aorta passes over the right bronchus instead of the left and lies to the right of the trachea and esophagus The innominate artery lies to the left and gives off the left common carotid and left subclavian arteries A rudimentary left arch may persist as a dorsal or ventral diverticulum from which the left subclavian artery and ductus arteriosus may arise

The presence of a right aortic arch may be diagnosed by roentgenographic means A pulsating aortic knob or widened superior mediastinal shadow may be visible to the right of the upper sternum The aortic knob



FIGURE 26 Right aortic arch with retroesophageal and left descending aorta At the level of the aortic arch the barium filled esophagus is displaced to the left in the A P view and anteriorly in the right oblique view From a four year old boy with a normal heart

will be absent in the usual left position except in the presence of a diverticulum representing the rudimentary left arch when a small left sided knob may also be visible The trachea and barium filled esophagus will be displaced to the left in the region of the aortic arch (Fig 15 27A)

A right aortic arch may be associated with either a left or a right descending aorta A left descending aorta passes behind the trachea and esophagus Roentgenographic examination in the right anterior oblique position therefore will reveal anterior deviation of the trachea and esophagus (Fig 26) The aorta then descends to the left of the spine somewhat more to the right than the normal descending aorta The heart is usually normal in the presence of a right aortic arch and left descending aorta A right aortic arch with right descending aorta however seems to occur predominantly in association with a cardiac anomaly Approximately 20 per cent of all cases of tetralogy of Fallot are associated with a right aortic arch and right descending aorta The aorta passes over the right bronchus and descends to the right of the esophagus usually not crossing over to the left side until it reaches the lower region of the thorax

It passes through the diaphragm in the normal position Roentgenograms taken in the right anterior oblique position will show no deviation of the trachea and esophagus either anteriorly or posteriorly (Fig 15)

Anterior deviation of the trachea and esophagus may occur in associa tion with a right descending aorta provided a retroesophageal left aortic diverticulum is present

When a right aortic arch is present the fibrosed remnant of the ductus arteriosus on the left may form a ring together with the right arch and pulmonary artery capable of producing constriction of the trachea and esophagus This is particularly the case if the ductus arises from an aortic diverticulum All such constricting rings may be severed surgically

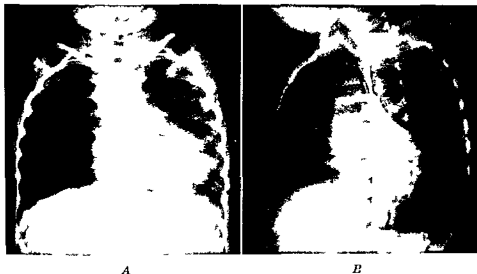


FIGURE 27 Right aortic arch with left subclavian artery arising from right arch and passing retroesophageally Roentgenograms from three year old cyanotic girl in whom a right pulmonary artery aortic anastomosis was performed *A* (*re touched*) Deviation of trachea to left above carina *B* Posterior compression of esophagus by retroesophageal vessel

Left Aortic Arch with Right Descending Aorta [4 1] The arch of the aorta takes its normal course over the left bronchus after which the aorta passes retroesophageally and descends to the right of its usual position In the A P roentgenogram the barium filled esophagus shows the usual normal indentation on its left margin produced by the arch of the aorta The esophagus descends far to the left of the midline In oblique views there is anterior deviation of the esophagus in the region of the aortic arch

Anomalies of the Vessels of the Aortic Arch The right subclavian artery may arise from the left aortic arch crossing to the right behind the esophagus or in front of the trachea An anomalous left subclavian artery may pass in a similar manner from a right aortic arch (Fig 27) or from a dorsal diverticulum associated with a right arch A left common carotid artery may arise from a right ascending arch to pass anterior to the trachea Either the innominate or the left subclavian artery may leave

the arch at a point further toward the opposite side than usual The trachea is compressed anteriorly as the anomalous vessel courses upward to reach the apex of the chest Only in rare instances do such vessels exert sufficient pressure on the trachea or esophagus to produce symptoms If necessary they can be divided or displaced surgically to relieve pressure

Coarctation of the Aorta[46] The *infantile type* is due to a persistence or exaggeration of the fetal narrowing of that region of the aortic arch which lies between the subclavian artery and the ductus arteriosus (aortic isthmus) If of slight degree the condition is often of no clinical significance



FIGURE 28 Coarctation of aorta Note deviation of coarcted segment medially dilatation of ascending aorta and brachiocephalic vessels poststenotic dilatation of descending aorta From a fourteen month old boy with congestive failure

If extreme in degree or if associated with other serious anomalies death may occur in early infancy The *adult type* consists of an abrupt localized narrowing of the descending arch of the aorta at or near the entrance of the ductus The area of stricture is drawn medially and anteriorly by the ductus (Fig 28) The degree of stenosis cannot be determined from the external appearance since a diaphragm projecting into the lumen of the aorta may contain only a minute eccentric opening or may be completely closed Both the infantile and adult type of lesion may be present The aorta is frequently dilated just beyond the site of stricture Anomalous origin of the vessels of the aortic arch bicuspid aortic valves aortic stenosis patent ductus arteriosus or mitral stenosis are not infrequently associated Aortic insufficiency may develop secondary to dilatation of the aortic arch Occasional instances of stenosis of the aorta proximal to the

left subclavian artery or more rarely in the lower thoracic or abdominal aorta have been reported

A more recent classification is based on the relation of the coarctation to the ductus, i e preductal or postductal and on the patency of the ductus

With extreme coarctation the entire circulation to the lower part of the body must pass through the subclavian artery by means of anastomoses between the deep arteries of the neck and the aortic intercostal arteries the internal mammary and the deep epigastric arteries the spinal branches

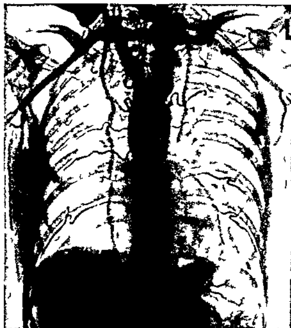


FIGURE 29 Postmortem roentgenogram of chest of a woman with coarctation of the aorta The vascular system has been injected with barium paste The intercostal arteries are very tortuous Notching of the ribs by the arterial loops is obvious The internal mammary arteries are enlarged and the extensive diaphragmatic anastomosis formed by their musculophrenic branches and the phrenic branches of the aorta is well seen on the left side The tortuous enlarged subscapular artery is visible on the right border of the chest its dorsalis scapular branch encircles the neck of the scapula (From Bramwell and Jones Brit Heart J 3 205 1941)

of the vertebral artery and the spinal branches of the aortic intercostal arteries etc

The distinctive clinical characteristics which are of vascular rather than of cardiac origin may readily be recognized during life The individual with coarctation is most commonly a virile male of athletic build Increased pulsations systolic thrill and murmurs may reveal the presence of dilated vessels of the collateral circulation in the neck or on the surface of the thorax These may be especially prominent in the interscapular area Hypertension of the arms (or more rarely in the right arm only if con

striction or obstruction of the left subclavian artery is present) will be associated with diminution of the blood pressure in the lower extremities An occasional individual with coarctation may present asymmetry of blood pressure between arms and legs although the pressure in the arms is within normal limits Absent or weak pulsations of the abdominal aorta femoral, and dorsalis pedis arteries will be noted The heart itself may be normal in size or enlarged to the left In the absence of aortic insufficiency especially in childhood there may be no murmur or only a soft



FIGURE 30 Roentgenographic signs in coarctation of the aorta Note indentation of the aorta to the right above the level of the left pulmonary artery with convexity of the aorta distal to the indentation (3 sign) and corresponding deviation of the esophagus to the right at and below the level of the aortic arch (the ε sign) (From Ash R Johnson J Koop C E Friedman S and Rashkind W Cardiovascular Surgery in a Children s Hospital I Acyanotic Lesions A Review of 241 Operations J Pediat 54 133 1959)

systolic murmur immediately below the left clavicle often heard with maximum intensity posteriorly Later systolic murmurs over dilated collateral vessels may be heard over each side of the chest posteriorly and anteriorly extending down on to the abdominal wall A mid diastolic blow may be present to the right of the apex The second aortic sound may be increased

Roentgenographic Appearance Scalloping of the inferior surface of the posterior ribs due to erosion produced by the dilated intercostal arteries is a pathognomonic sign but is not always present even in adult life (Fig 29) It is absent in the first two ribs which are supplied from intercostal

arteries arising above the site of coarctation If the constricted area lies proximal to the left subclavian artery or involves the orifice of this vessel notching may be noted only in the right hemithorax The cardiac shadow may be normal or present some degree of left ventricular enlargement The ascending aorta may be dilated The dilated left subclavian artery may be visible as a curved outline on the upper left border of the superior mediastinum It is sometimes mistaken for the aortic knob which is usually absent It may be possible to note a discrepancy between the increased



FIGURE 31 Coarctation of aorta saccular aneurysm distal to site of coarctation Angiocardiogram (retouched) and esophagram The arrow points to the site of constriction A=aneurysm E=esophagus From a nine year old boy in whom the stenosed segment of aorta and the aneurysm were resected by Dr Julian Johnson (Courtesy Dr Eugene Pendergrass)

pulsations in the left subclavian artery and decreased pulsations in the adjacent descending aortic arch The descending aortic arch may be traced with difficulty in the left anterior oblique position Only rarely can the actual narrowing or break in continuity be visualized on the standard roentgenogram When the coarctation lies in the descending arch an indentation or concavity of the aorta to the right may be visible above the level of the left pulmonary artery with abnormal convexity of the aorta distal to the indentation due to poststenotic dilatation (the 3 sign) There is corresponding deviation of the barium filled esophagus to the right below the level of the aortic arch with indentation to the left (the ε sign) (Fig 30) [46b] In isolated instances all findings may be negative In such cases roentgenographic diagnosis is possible only through direct visualization of

the lesion with the aid of contrast substance injected intravenously (Fig 31) or through the left carotid or brachial artery (Fig 32)

The *electrocardiogram* may be normal or may show some degree of left ventricular preponderance Radial and femoral *pulse tracings* will reveal delay in the pulse wave over the femoral artery *Oscillograms* from the arms show a higher amplitude than those taken over the legs, the reverse of normal Short or absent K waves may be noted in the *ballistocardiogram*



FIGURE 32 Coarctation of aorta Arteriogram from eight month old infant one half second after injection of contrast medium into left brachial artery (Courtesy Dr John Hope)

The course in early life is usually symptomless Characteristic symptoms that may make their appearance in later life are headaches vertigo epistaxis, flushing of the face, annoying pain in the chest and shoulders cramping and intermittent claudication of the legs The temperature of the skin surface may be higher in the upper than in the lower parts of the body The most frequent complications are rupture of the aorta bacterial infection at the site of coarctation or on the basis of associated lesions cerebral hemorrhage due to rupture of aneurysmal dilatations of the cerebral vessels and congestive failure the initial myocardial weakness being frequently induced by intercurrent infection Only about 25 per cent of the group are destined to live a life of normal duration with death due to unrelated causes

The coarctation may be resected surgically followed by end to end suturing of the aorta If the area of stricture is unduly long an aortic graft may

be inserted in adults Since there is experimental evidence to indicate that an aortic graft will not grow plastic procedures to enlarge the proximal aortic segment before anastomosis are preferable to the use of a graft in a child It is important also that interrupted sutures be used in childhood since a continuous suture will not permit future growth of the aorta at the site of the anastomosis

Surgical treatment should be performed in youth first because of the relatively early death in at least half the individuals with coarctation second because of the increased hazard of hemorrhage in the presence of marked sclerosis and calcification of the aortic arch Technically the operation is possible in infancy and if intractable failure marked hypertension or untoward symptoms exist the operation may be performed very early in life Immediately after operation normal pulsations may be felt in the femoral artery The fall of pressure in the arms and rise of pressure in the legs may occur more gradually over a period of weeks or months The apical mid diastolic blow disappears Systolic murmurs over the collateral vessels may persist for a long period of time

Coarctation with Congestive Failure in Infancy Such failure seems related *to the absence of adequate collateral circulation at birth If the site* of coarctation lies distal to the ductus (postductal) the fetus must develop collateral circulation in order to survive and the newborn infant will have no difficulty adjusting to postnatal life If however the coarctation lies proximal to the ductus (preductal) there is no stimulus for the development of collateral circulation in fetal life since the blood takes the usual fetal course from the pulmonary artery through the patent ductus into the descending aorta Following closure of the ductus after birth sudden strain may be placed on the left ventricle resulting in failure If the ductus fails to close the right ventricle persists as the main functioning ventricle and right ventricular failure may result Many infants with congestive failure due to coarctation respond well to digitalization and might better be operated on after months or years during which adequate collateral circulation may develop If they fail to respond to medical treatment recourse to operation should not be delayed unduly

Anomalous Pulmonary Venous Drainage [47] Partial anomalous pulmonary venous connection has been discussed with the lesions associated with an arteriovenous shunt

If *all pulmonary veins empty into the right atrium* the foramen ovale must remain patent Anoxemia will be present although cyanosis may be slight or not evident The systemic circulation is supplied entirely by mixed venoarterial blood through the atrial defect The left atrium and ventricle are hypoplastic Arrhythmias (atrial fibrillation or atrial premature contractions) are fairly common A systolic murmur and thrill may be present along the left sternal border Progressive cardiac enlargement terminates in right sided failure When all pulmonary veins empty into a *common vessel which empties into the right superior vena cava* by way of the innominate vein the cardiac silhouette bears a characteristic appearance likened to a figure 8 This common vessel has been termed the left superior vena cava or left vertical vein (Fig 33) The upper loop

of the figure 8 is formed by the dilated right superior vena cava and left vertical vein, the lower loop by the heart *Angiocardiograms* will reveal the abnormal course of blood *Catheterization* shows a significant rise in oxygen content in the blood from the right atrium as compared with the inferior vena cava The blood from the right superior vena cava may be highly oxygenated The oxygen saturation of blood from the right atrium will be identical with that in the femoral artery

This lesion may be corrected by operation under direct vision with the aid of extracorporeal circulation [47b] An anastomosis is made between the left atrium and the anomalous pulmonary venous channel situated pos

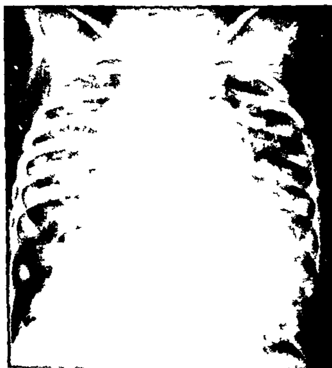


FIGURE 33 Complete anomalous pulmonary venous drainage into the right atrium through a left vertical vein Diagnosis proved by necropsy Note widening of superior mediastinal shadow due to dilated superior vena cava on right and left vertical vein on left The superior mediastinal shadow and the cardiac shadow form the contour of a figure 8

teriorly The atrial defect is then closed and the vertical vein ligated If the left atrium seems unduly small it may be enlarged by displacing the atrial septum into the right atrium

Anomalous Blood Supply to the Lungs [48] Anomalous arterial vessels may arise from the thoracic or abdominal descending aorta from a brachiocephalic artery usually the innominate or left subclavian or from the ascending aorta to pass into a pulmonary lobe or into the hilum of the lungs Vessels which arise from the descending aorta are more likely to be associated with abnormality of the lung (aberrant pulmonary lobe, congenital cyst bronchiectasis), whereas anomalous vessels arising above

the root of the lung are more likely to be associated with serious cardiac abnormalities especially absence atresia or hypoplasia of the main pul monary artery or absence of one or both pulmonary branches

Congenital Absence of a Pulmonary Artery Branch [49] This condition is not too rare in clinics that see many congenital cardiac cases Associated major or minor cardiac anomalies have been present in practically all cases There is a tendency for the aortic arch to be on the side opposite the absent pulmonary artery The lungs are normal Anomalous blood vessels from the aorta or from a brachiocephalic vessel may penetrate the hilum of the lung which is deprived of its pulmonary artery Extensive

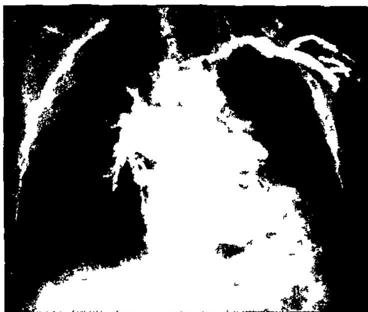


FIGURE 34 Absent left pulmonary artery coarctation of right pulmonary artery Angiocardiogram taken two seconds after injection of contrast medium shows absence of left pulmonary artery constriction of right pulmonary artery shortly after its origin with dilatation beyond the constriction Early visualization of aorta due to right left shunt From a cyanotic five year old girl (Courtesy Dr John Hope)

anastomosis of the bronchopulmonary vessels may develop The hemi thorax on the normal side may be smaller than its opposite half Roent genograms reveal normal vascularization of one lung whereas the opposite lung is small and relatively avascular *Angiocardiograms* reveal contrast medium passing normally through the right heart and main pulmonary artery into a large normal right or left branch with no visualization of the opposite branch (Fig 34) Later when the aorta is opacified a fine network of vessels may appear in the opposite hilar region due to the presence of enlarged bronchial arteries Occasionally a large anomalous vessel may be seen

Due to the absence of pulmonary arterial circulation normal oxygen exchange does not occur in the involved lung This may be of significance

surgically if the single pulmonary artery is clamped to perform a shunt procedure Unless adequate collateral circulation has developed on the opposite side irreversible cardiac arrest may occur

Bronchial Obstruction Due to Anomalous Course of Left Pulmonary Artery [3] This syndrome has only recently been described The left pulmonary artery arises extrapericardially from an elongated pulmonary trunk It circles anteriorly around the right bronchus and lower part of the trachea then posteriorly and to the left behind the trachea and in front of the esophagus and aorta Roentgenograms will show anterior indentation of the esophagus near the level of the carina, constriction of the right bronchus near its origin and deviation of the trachea to the left Stridor and emphysema of the right chest are associated clinical symptoms

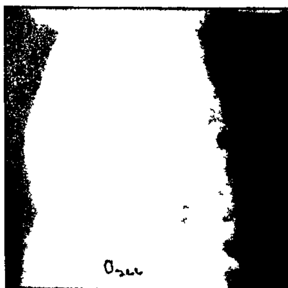


FIGURE 35 Anomalous (absent) inferior vena cava with azygous drainage Angiocardiogram (retouched) taken during the injection of contrast medium through a catheter in the saphenous vein shows passage of contrast medium into a vessel which passes upward to enter the azygous vein From a two year old cyanotic girl with situs inversus (Courtesy Dr John Hope)

Anomalous Inferior Vena Cava with Azygous Drainage (Absent Inferior Vena Cava) [30] This lesion is being found with increasing frequency as an angiocardiographic finding in the diagnostic study of patients with cardiac defects Contrast medium injected into a saphenous vein enters a vessel which passes upward to empty into the azygous vein (Fig 35) The hepatic veins enter the right atrium directly The majority of cases have been associated with partial or complete situs inversus and with serious cardiac lesions A persistent left superior vena cava has been present in more than half of the recorded cases The most prevalent lesion in the cyanotic individual has been a biloculate heart with pulmonary stenosis or atresia

Downing [0b] has described a diagnostic roentgenographic sign consisting of the presence of a rounded density in the right superior mediastinal

shadow which represents the dilated azygous vein as it courses anteriorly to enter the right atrium or superior vena cava

Pulmonary Arteriovenous Fistula[21] A congenital pulmonary arterio venous fistula consists of a network of distended vessels which provide a direct communication between an afferent thin walled arterial trunk and large efferent veins within the lungs (Fig 36) Such a fistula may be



FIGURE 36 Pulmonary arteriovenous fistula Angiocardiogram taken one second after injection of contrast medium shows opacification of right atrium right ven tricle pulmonary artery and dilated vascular spaces in lower right lung Faint visualization of aorta due to early return of dye from left lung From a three year old cyanotic girl with no murmurs Disappearance of cyanosis followed right lower lobectomy by Dr Julian Johnson. (Courtesy Dr John Hope)

single or multiple and is usually not associated with cardiac disease Polycythemia clubbing and dyspnea develop as secondary manifestations of anoxemia Death may result from massive pulmonary hemorrhage A soft continuous murmur may be heard over the chest wall in the region of the lesion Roentgenograms will reveal one or more circular shadows within the lung fields which are seen to pulsate on fluoroscopic examina tion Eradication may be accomplished surgically

Dextrocardia

In the broad sense the term dextrocardia [2] is often used to designate all instances in which the heart is found on the right side of the thorax, whether of acquired or congenital origin The preferable term for displacement of the heart to the right as a result of extrinsic causes is dextroversion Such displacement may occur in fetal life due to agenesis of the right lung eventration of the left diaphragm, or congenital cystic disease of the left lung The heart is normally formed with apex pointed to the left The term dextrocardia should be reserved for those cases in which

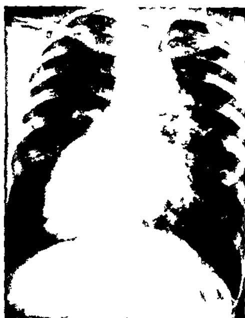


FIGURE 37 Roentgenogram of a child with isolated dextrocardia The heart lies in the right chest with apex to the right the aortic knob is situated in the usual position to the left of the sternum The shadow of an anomalous structure (vascular diverticulum?) is visible in the left chest Patient died at fifteen years of meningococcus meningitis No necropsy

the heart developmentally assumes a position on the right side of the thorax with apex pointing to the right The perfect example is the mirror image of the normal heart as it is found in complete transposition of the viscera (complete situs inversus) The anteroposterior relations of the cardiac chambers to each other remain unchanged, but the right to left positions are reversed A right sided aortic arch and a left superior vena cava are present In roentgenograms the apex is seen to the right and the right and left anterior oblique positions replace each other The electrocardiogram is pathognomonic All complexes in Lead I are inverted and Leads II and III are interchanged The frequency of cardiac anomalies in situs inversus is probably similar to that in the population at large

Isolated dextrocardia due to an arrest of development in an early developmental stage may occur without situs inversus or with incomplete trans

position of other organs Grave anomalies of the heart such as pulmonary stenosis transposition of the great vessels and single ventricle are frequently present, associated with an incomplete degree of mirror image inversion The apex is usually directed to the right (Fig 37) The aortic arch may be found on either the right or left side The right leaf of the diaphragm is depressed in dextrocardia indicating that the heart rather than the liver determines the difference in height of the two sides of the diaphragm The electrocardiogram is often atypical because of the association of cardiac malformation with partial mirror image position If the



FIGURE 38 Dextrorotation of heart truncus arteriosus absent pulmonary artery left pulmonary branch fed by small ductus (diagnosis proven by operation) Note absence of apex which lies substernally large aortic shadow fine linear shadows of collateral vessels bordering the mediastinal shadow anterior deflection of esophagus by large collateral vessel From a markedly cyanotic three year-old girl in whom a left aortic pulmonary anastomosis failed to remain patent. Bilateral pleurectomy performed subsequently to create additional collateral circulation produced marked improvement in exercise tolerance Triple operation by Dr Julian Johnson

right ventricle is hypertrophied a seeming left axis deviation may be present. Inversion of P waves should be present in Lead I but upright P waves may be found if the atrial cavities are not in the mirror image position but retain their usual right to left relationship

Isolated dextrocardia should not be confused with dextrorotation or incomplete rotation of the heart on its axis (dextrotorsion) In dextro rotation the apex of the heart lies anteriorly within the cardiac shadow usually close to the sternum (Fig 38) The heart itself may be otherwise normal but more frequently other anomalies are present ranging from slight to severe The electrocardiogram may be modified by the anomaly

but is otherwise normal except that axis deviation may be modified by changes in the relation of the heart to surrounding structures independent of the effect of ventricular hypertrophy

Both dextrocardia and dextrorotation of the heart may be associated with anomalies resulting in cyanosis Among these will be cases of pulmonary stenosis and inadequate pulmonary flow which may benefit from a Blalock Taussig or Potts Smith procedure

Management of the Individual with a Cardiovascular Lesion

The majority of babies with cardiovascular anomalies are asymptomatic and not cyanotic They should be treated as normal infants and should receive routine immunizing injections although in the delicate infant vaccination against smallpox may be postponed Because of the great susceptibility to respiratory infection mothers should be cautioned against the danger of exposing these children to individuals suffering from colds Immediate medical aid should be sought upon the appearance of any infection, however slight

The cyanotic infant with inadequate pulmonary circulation warrants special consideration Attacks of paroxysmal dyspnea may be relieved by placing the child in the knee chest position and providing access to fresh air or oxygen Severe attacks respond to injections of morphine sulfate in doses of 0 5 to 1 0 mg per ten pounds body weight An adequate intake of fluid is important to prevent dehydration and lessen the possibility of cerebral thrombosis If the hemoglobin is low in proportion to the erythrocyte count iron should be administered orally Cyanotic infants with low hemoglobin who cannot take oral preparations of iron will profit from the intramuscular administration of Imferon Surgical treatment is not indicated as long as the infant is able to grow and develop even though at a slower than average rate Young children with tetralogy of Fallot should not be referred for operation merely because of cyanosis and an operable lesion but only if they are definitely incapacitated

The special liability to the development of bacterial endocarditis and of brain abscess in individuals with cardiovascular anomalies makes it imperative that penicillin be given preceding and following the extraction of teeth tonsillectomy, etc All febrile illnesses due to infections should be treated with adequate doses of antibiotics to be continued for one week after symptoms have disappeared The aim should be to eradicate organisms not merely to treat symptoms Endocarditis should always be kept in mind as a possible cause for any febrile illness so that the diagnosis may be made early enough to permit adequate trial of the newer therapeutic measures If it seems probable that a patent ductus is the site of infection ligation or severance of the ductus should be performed after treatment with penicillin or other antibiotics unless the infection is due to a resistant organism or unless heart failure is present in which case operation should be performed early Cerebral symptoms especially severe headache in a cyanotic individual should arouse suspicion of the existence of a brain abscess due to an infected paradoxical embolus The combined use of antibiotics and surgical intervention may result in cure

Since operative procedures of all sorts are well borne there should be no hesitancy in recommending operations for conditions in which surgery seems indicated

In early life because of the tendency to malnutrition and susceptibility to infection careful attention should be paid to the regulation of the daily activity so as to assure proper diet sufficient rest and avoidance of fatigue There is no indication however for restriction of exercise beyond the limiting capacity of the heart itself Patients with congenital cardiac anomalies may be permitted to find their own level of physical activity In spite of startling murmurs and cardiac enlargement the functional capacity is often normal An objective attitude on the part of the parents with avoidance of manifestations of sympathy will aid the child to face his difficulties frankly and to recognize both his limitations and his powers With proper psychologic handling in childhood and definite training toward an income producing occupation most congenital cardiacs who attain adult life will be able to lead a normal self supporting existence The largest proportion of these will be noncyanotic but cyanotic individuals also have been known to lead long and useful lives Cyanotic children therefore should by no means be deprived of schooling

In adult life complications must be treated as they arise Digitalis should not be used except in the presence of congestive failure Venesection is sometimes of value in the treatment of hemoptysis such as may occur in association with pulmonary hypertension It is to be remembered that in individuals with lesions associated with an arteriovenous shunt tachypnea may be an indication of the increased volume of blood within the pulmonary circulation due to the arteriovenous shunt and not the result of heart failure

The appearance of an increasing number of procedures directed to the surgical treatment of congenital heart disease has made it imperative that individuals with cardiac anomalies be evaluated to determine whether they need receive the benefit of surgical correction Cardiac catheterization and angiocardiography are by no means necessary in all cases In many individuals the diagnosis is obvious without such studies In others the anomaly is of little or no clinical significance and elaborate diagnostic tests or surgical procedures are not warranted The use of such procedures should be reserved for patients with definite cardiac enlargement or symptoms which suggest the advisability of early operation and in whom the diagnosis cannot be made by routine clinical methods

Selection of patients for surgical treatment is no simple problem The clinical status of the patient and the potential hazards of the lesion must be balanced against the risk of operation There are all degrees of severity of the various cardiovascular anomalies An individual with a slight degree of pulmonary stenosis or a small ventricular septal defect may be asymptomatic and never require surgical intervention whereas the presence of a tight pulmonary stenosis or a very large ventricular septal defect may necessitate operation in infancy as a lifesaving procedure Due consideration should be given to the experience of the available cardiovascular surgical clinic and the facilities for postoperative care An asymptomatic indi

vidual capable of living an active life for many years should not be referred for an operation that has not been perfected and carries a high risk

Finally psychologic factors should be considered It is wise not to refer a negativistic child for an elective operation but rather to wait until the child has matured sufficiently to go through the experience without undue psychologic trauma Time should be taken to discuss the situation fully and honestly with patients or parents so as to make certain that they understand and are willing to accept the risk of operation

REFERENCES

1 (a) Ash R and Harshaw E Jr Am Heart J 18 80 1939
(b) McIntosh R Merritt K K Richards M R Samuels M H and Bellows M T Pediatrics 14 505 1954
2 (a) Nelson M M Monie I W and Evans H M Circulation Res 4 511 1956
(b) Conference on Tetralogy Pediatrics 19 725 1957
3 Abbott M D Atlas of Congenital Cardiac Disease New York Heart Association New York 1936 Reprinted 1954
4 Lundsgaard C and Van Slyke D D Medicine 2 1 1923
5 Taussig H B Congenital Malformations of the Heart. The Commonwealth Fund New York 1947
6 Talbott J H Coombs F S Castleman B Chamberlain F L. Consalazio W W and White P D Am. Heart J 22 754 1941
7 Morse M and Cassels D E J Clin Invest 32 837 1953
8 Holling H E Clin Sc 11 283 1952
9 (a) Swan H J C Zapata Diez J Burchell H B and Wood E H Am J Med 16 12 1954
(b) Edwards J E Circulation 15 164 1957
(c) Evans W and Short D S Brit. Heart J 20 529 1958
10 Sodi Pallares D and Marsico F Am Heart J 49 202 1955
11 Wittenberg M H and Neuhauser E B D Circulation 11 462 1955
12 McAfee J C Am J M Sc 229 549 1955
13 Bouchard F and Cornu C Arch d mal du coeur 47 417 1954
14 Rashkind W D Personal communication
15 Sones F Mason Circulation 18 784 1958
16 Montgomery G E Wood E H Burchell H B Dry T J Parker R L and Helmholtz H F Jr Am. Heart J 36 668 1948
17 Broadbent, J C and Wood E H Circulation 9 890 1954
18 Gilmore H R Hamilton M Kopelman H and Sommer L S Brit. Heart J 16 301 1954
19 (a) Major J W J Thoracic Surg 26 309 1953
(b) Scott G W Guy s Hosp Rep 104 55 1955
20 (a) Dennis J L Hansen A E and Carpening T N Pediatrics 12 130 1953
(b) Linde L M Adams F H and O Laughlin B J Circulation 17 40 1958
21 Paul M H Rudolph A M and Nadas A S Circulation 18 183 1958
22 Turner L. B Am Heart J 34 426 1947
23 (a) Marquis R M and Logan A Brit. Heart J 17 373 1955
(b) Swan H Wilkinson R H and Blount S G Jr J Thoracic Surg 35 139 1958
24 (a) Bower G D Abren R L. Gerrard J W and Parsons C G Arch Dis. Childhood 28 91 1953
(b) Maxwell G M and Young W F Am. Heart J 48 416 1954
25 Ash R and Fischer D Pediatrics 16 695 1955

26 Gibson S Panel Discussion at Second World Congress of Cardiology Washington D C September 1954
27 Cooley D A McNamara D G and Latson J R Surgery 42 101 1957
28 (a) Selzer A J A M A 154 129 1954
(b) Becu L M Fontana S F DuShane J W Kirklin J W Burchell H B and Edwards J E Circulation 14 349 1956
(c) Brotmacher L and Campbell M Brit Heart J 20 97 1958
29 (a) Dexter L Brit Heart J 18 209 1956
(b) Varco R L and Niazi S Ann Surg 142 401 1955
30 Ward J C Conrad M E Jr and Morrow A G Am Heart J 54 422 1957
31 Halsey N A Halloran K H and Liebow A A Circulation 14 826 1956
32 Swan H Kortz A B Davies D H and Blount S G Jr J Thoracic Surg 37 52 1959
33 (a) Friedman S and Ash R A M A Am J Dis Child 93 619 1957
(b) Paul M A Pediat Clin North America 5 1011 (Nov) 1958
34 (a) Pedersen A and Therkelsen F Am Heart J 47 676 1954
(b) Seavey P W and Dorney E R Am Heart J 55 272 1958
35 Callahan J A Brandenburg R O and Swan H J C Am J Med 19 189 1955
36 McCord M C Van Elk J and Blount S G Jr Circulation 16 736 1957
37 Blalock A and Hanlon C E Surg Gynec & Obst 90 1 1950
38 (a) Spitzer A Lev M and Vass A The Architecture of Normal and Malformed Hearts Charles C Thomas Springfield Ill 1951
(b) Fanconi G Arch f Kinderh 95 202 1932
(c) Baffes T G J Thoracic Surg 34 469 1957
39 Taussig H B and Bing R J Am Heart J 37 551 1949
40 (a) Rogers H M and Edwards J E Am Heart J 46 299 1951
(b) Campbell M Reynolds G and Trounce J R Guy s Hosp Rep 102 99 1953
41 Moragues V Am J Clin Path 20 842 1950
42 (a) Gotzsche H and Falholt W Am Heart J 47 587 1954
(b) Kelly R DuShane J W Wood E H and Burchell H Medicine 35 161 1956
(c) Hunter S W and Lillehei C W Dis Chest 33 297 1958
43 Friedman S Murphy L and Ash R (a) J Pediat 38 354 1951 (b) A M A Am J Dis Child 90 176 1955
44 (a) Case R B Morrow A G Stainsby W and Nestor J O Circulation 17 1063 1958
(b) Talner N S Stern A M and Figley M M Circulation 18 (Part 2) 788 1958
(c) Kuzman W J Yuskis A S and Carmichael D B Am Heart J 57 36 1959
45 (a) Gross R D Circulation 11 124 1955
(b) Paul R N J Pediat 32 19 1948
46 (a) Edwards J E Am J Clin Path 23 1240 1953
(b) Figley M M Radiology 62 671 1954
47 (a) Mustard W T Arch Dis Childhood 32 1 1957
(b) Cooley D A and Collins H A Circulation 19 486 1959
48 Findlay C W Jr and Maier H C Surgery 29 604 1951
49 (a) Wyman S W Radiology 62 321 1954
(b) McKim J S and Wiglesworth F W Am Heart J 47 845 1954
50 (a) Anderson R D Herlig W Novick R and Jarvis C Am Heart J 49 318 1955
(b) Downing D F Pediatrics 12 675 1953
51 Stringer C J Stanley A L Bates R C and Summers J E Am J Surg 89 1054 1955
52 (a) Lichtman S S Arch Int Med 48 683 866 1931
(b) Gubbay E R Am Heart J 50 356 1955
53 (a) Contro S Miller R A White H and Potts W S Circulation 17 418 1958
(b) Sherman F E J Pediat 54 93 1959

)

JOHN R PAUL, M D

6

Epidemiology of Rheumatic Fever

Modern epidemiology concerns the *natural history* of a given disease and the way it seems to behave —as a mass phenomenon For purposes of orientation one can approach this aspect of any disease by first attempting to identify and measure the varieties of *circumstances under which it occurs*—whether they be hereditary environmental (social geographical) or of many other kinds So our discussion here of epidemiology will not be limited to considerations of the infectious aspects or to epidemics of rheumatic fever but rather to its prevalence its etiology its ecology and its geographical social and familial pathology

General Prevalence The true incidence of rheumatic fever in any given community the degree of crippling morbidity it inflicts or the mortality rate justly attributable to this disease is unknown, for its manifestations have not been reflected accurately in mortality statistics and it is a reportable disease only in a relatively few countries and communities It is therefore not easy to compare its actual prevalence with that of tuberculosis or poliomyelitis Nevertheless experience shows that in certain regions it is still among the most important of diseases although it is becoming less so

None of the methods which deal with its incidence prevalence and general importance is above criticism but they are the best methods at our disposal From them we find that in the Scandinavian countries, where rheumatic fever is a reportable disease the incidence per annum has ranged from about 1 to 3 per 1000 population From *mortality* statistics we find in this country that there are great variations in time and place which are influenced by such factors as age and race of the patient Particularly are the differences striking in the white and non white groups *in which as Wolff*[17] *has shown the non whites suffer more severely than* the whites From *hospital admission* figures—which is a rough index of the general importance of a given disease within a given community —we find that active cases of rheumatic fever make up from 0 1 to 5 per cent of the admissions to the medical services of general hospitals in this country It is estimated that about twice this figure may apply to children s hospitals From school surveys we find that rheumatic heart disease has been detected among school children at a rate of from 0 3 to 6 per cent and among North American college students from 0 6 to 1 per cent These figures are rough indications as to the general frequency and importance of the disease in this country On the other hand the mortality rate

of rheumatic fever is declining both in the United States and England, and so the figures quoted above which were largely gathered in the 1930's can only be said to apply to that period

Pathogenesis It has become customary to consider the epidemiology of a given disease from the standpoint of three well known epidemiological similes the *seed*, the *soil* and the *climate* We need not dwell on the first of these three items for it is today generally agreed that the seed here is the original bacterial incitant *i e* group A *streptococcus hemolyticus*, and more will be said about this later As to the soil, (or human susceptibility) it is on this question that the pathogenesis of rheumatic fever and its very nature hinges Apparently sensitization phenomena appear to be at the basis of the problem Thus it has been a working hypothesis that it is a 'conditioning of the human soil' to a special state of *susceptibility* to group A hemolytic streptococci which seems to be responsible in large part for the development of the syndrome known as rheumatic fever [14]

From the standpoint of the epidemiological *climate* it is here that recognition is made of conditions peculiarly favorable for the spread of streptococci and for their seeding and growth on "fertile soil" within susceptible hosts such as rheumatic families or new recruits in the barracks of a naval training station or other sites where high rates of rheumatic fever have been observed

The Seed or Group A Streptococci Since the primary observations of Coburn Sheldon,[1] Glover and Griffith,[4] and others in the early 1930 s, evidence has continued to accumulate that rheumatic fever is one of the sequellae of the infections caused by Group A *hemolytic streptococci*, which include streptococcal sore throat acute follicular tonsillitis scarlet fever erysipelas and puerperal fever Of these acute streptococcal sore throat and tonsillitis are undoubtedly the commonest forms This evidence can be drawn from *clinical* and *serological observations*,[12] and from the striking effects which antibiotics exert in reducing the incidence of rheumatic fever when the preceding streptococcal infection receives early treatment [11] Rheumatic fever follows hemolytic streptococcal infections, particularly of the respiratory tract as a nonsuppurative complication Thus it has been noted that the initial acute illness is usually followed by a latent or quiescent period which terminates in the more or less explosive appearance of arthritis or carditis (see Figure 1) Recrudescences of rheumatic activity frequently appear when infection by hemolytic streptococci occurs in persons who have previously undergone attacks of rheumatic fever Immunologic investigations have indicated that high titers of various antistreptococcal antibodies to products and fractions of hemolytic streptococci are usually demonstrable in persons suffering from acute rheumatic fever or from recurrences of this disease

In many ways then this family of hemolytic streptococci represents *the* seed and can be regarded as *the* etiological agent of rheumatic fever, but to say it is the only etiologic factor is inadequate The conditioning factor is another aspect of etiology which indicates that children are either born with the capacity for reacting unfavorably with a special "rheumatic"

response, to streptococcal infections or that children develop this capacity as an unfavorable response because they are conditioned perhaps, as one theory suggests, by acquiring multiple infections with heterologous types

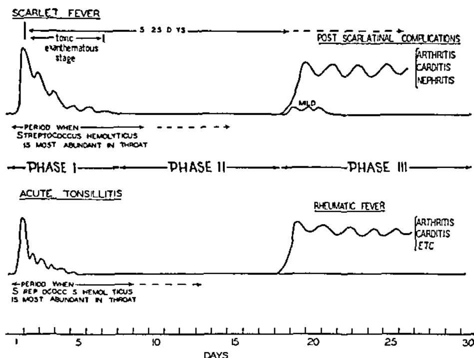


FIGURE 1 Diagram modified from Escherich and Schick to illustrate possible forms which the nonsuppurative complications of scarlet fever and of acute tonsillitis may assume The division of this process into three phases is also shown From Paul [6]

of streptococci early in life This latter is the direct result of exposure to many *new strains* of streptococci one after the other or to *crowding* within the home or bed which facilitates the spread of these organisms and helps to bring about what Coburn has called the rheumatic state

These streptococcal infections which are acquired especially between the ages of one and twenty years but most frequently in the school age period are transmitted mainly through human association and through the medium of droplet infection and to a lesser extent through the medium of contaminated objects food or milk Large numbers of healthy carriers exist in the population and are especially numerous among children who play a special part in spreading these infections Nearly all of these carriers represent actual infections and it is believed that most streptococcal infection is of the latter inapparent type Immunologic investigation has revealed that in almost eighty per cent of one *group of children five to fifteen years of age there was definite evidence of* past and recent infection with hemolytic streptococci as measured serologically by the antistreptolysin (ASLO) test

About three per cent of overt streptococcal infections of the respiratory tract in young adults are complicated by frank rheumatic fever, and consequently wherever a high prevalence of streptococcal infections exists, there is an increased opportunity for a high prevalence of cases of rheumatic fever

Few more striking demonstrations of the relationship of rheumatic fever to acute hemolytic streptococcal infections can be found than in the programs carried out for the reduction of recurrent rheumatic attacks within cardiac homes for children through the daily prophylactic use of antibiotics or through the demonstration that a local reduction in the incidence of rheumatic fever can be brought about by the prompt and early treatment of all acute streptococcal infections in a military population as has been done by Rammelkamp and his co workers at the Francis E Warren Air Base in Wyoming These demonstrations prove convincingly that if the trigger mechanism can be prevented from occurring or stopped in time by these drugs then the local incidence of rheumatic fever can be sharply reduced

The Soil or Host Susceptibility However as previously mentioned, it takes factors other than the seed *i e* other than streptococci, to produce a case of rheumatic fever and even though group A streptococci may be present in a community and conditions are favorable for their spread very few cases of rheumatic fever will result unless susceptible hosts are also present in adequate numbers On this point hinge many questions which concern the nature of rheumatic fever, the crucial one being What is it that makes one group of individuals (roughly about three per cent) of those infected with *beta hemolytic streptococci* develop rheumatic fever while another group fails to develop such complications? This leads on to an inquiry as to whether the potential rheumatic patient is so conditioned because of an *inherent* susceptibility, manifest through racial predispositions anthropological or familial groups or an *acquired* susceptibility associated perhaps with conditions which favor repeated infection [1]- or other largely unknown, factors It is difficult to assay the relative importance of each

Racial Susceptibility As to racial susceptibility or resistance there is uncertainty because the data on this point are generally unreliable but Irish people living in and in the vicinity of New York City seem to acquire rheumatic fever somewhat more readily than do representatives of other "races Negroes do not seem to acquire the disease more readily than Whites in this country but their mortality rate from rheumatic fever is higher [1]

Anthropological Types Many investigators believe that certain human types are peculiarly susceptible to the development of rheumatic fever but here again data regarding these views are somewhat conflicting

Familial Incidence A voluminous literature bears witness to the fact that the prevalence of rheumatic fever and rheumatic heart disease is high in certain families It has been shown for instance that in families in which the parents have suffered from rheumatic fever the prevalence of this disease is more than twice as high as in other families and also

that in so called rheumatic families eight to ten per cent of exposed per sons are infected as against 2 9 per cent in the families of healthy controls A cogent observation with reference to its familial incidence calls attention to its similarity with that of tuberculosis

Favoring the importance of *hereditary* factors Wilson and Schweitzer[1] have corroborated their previous conclusion that susceptibility to rheu matic fever is inherited as a simple recessive trait However they also point out that the demonstration of hereditary susceptibility does not exclude the operation of environmental factors It is essentially this same conclu sion that was reached in the study of Gray, Quinn and Quinn Others have agreed that inheritance played a major role in determining familial aggregation of cases but that a mendelian mechanism could not be established This is a situation which calls loudly for more study in the field of human genetics and the domiciliary aspects of rheumatic fever

A very important point in consideration of susceptibility to rheumatic fever is the factor of age In its familiar forms *first attacks* of clinically recognizable rheumatic fever occur largely during school age Suscepti bility to both first and recurrent attacks decline in the years after puberty But rheumatic fever cannot be regarded solely as a disease of childhood for as primary attacks predispose to recurrent attacks active rheumatic carditis and polyarthritis are common enough during adolescence and young adult life Nevertheless from a clinical standpoint the acute forms are uncommon after forty or forty five years of age It is also rare in infants under two years and uncommon under four years This empha sizes how age conditions susceptibility The infant apparently must grow up to become rheumatic and regardless of close exposure he or she usually succeeds in reaching the age of six or more before the disease is acquired in recognizable clinical forms This does not mean that the ground work of the sensitization phenomenon is not being laid in the years preceding six years of age which may indeed be one of the most important age periods for conditioning the potential patient for the sub sequent acquisition of this disease

A general statement about the age prevalence of rheumatic fever is that the active disease finds its greatest prevalence in childhood but that as *primary attacks predispose to recurrent attacks* the disease continues to be common during adolescence and young adult life The differing symp tomatology exhibited by juvenile and adult patients has also served to give the not altogether true impression that there are two or more dis tinct forms of the disease and these features together with the difficulty of differentiating between *first* and *recurrent* attacks have been responsible for divergent views about its age incidence We refer for instance to the child of twelve years of age who comes to the hospital with her first clear cut manifestation of active rheumatic fever and in whom there is a vague history of growing pains at the age of seven Which is the first attack? As another example there is the child of twelve in whom old rheumatic heart disease is discovered for the first time and in whom no history of antecedent rheumatic fever is obtainable

Slight differences are also apparent in the age of onset, depending upon what the initial clinical manifestations happen to be (Figure 2) Thus, Wilson[16] found in her pediatric group that when the initial manifestation was *polyarthritis* or *carditis* the mode occurred at the age of five When a *cardiac murmur* or *growing* or *joint* pains were initial manifestations the mode occurred at age six with *chorea* the mode occurred at eight years

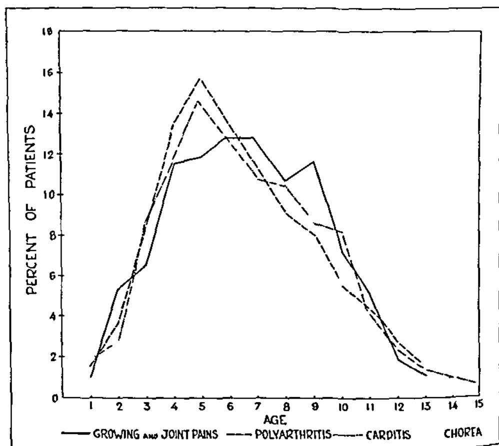


FIGURE 2 Distribution of 674 patients by age at onset and by the type of the initial clinical manifestation From Wilson s series seen in New York City[15]

Sex Except in the case of chorea the influence of sex on rheumatic fever is not profound One finds certain interesting points however, which have long been recorded in the literature namely, that in the childhood groups (below age thirteen) rheumatic fever is more likely to develop in girls than in boys due perhaps to the fact that chorea is commoner in girls In Wilson s series[16] of 696 patients from a pediatric clinic in New York City girls represented fifty six per cent In adolescent and adult life active rheumatic fever is said to be more apt to develop in males than in females but this does not hold for Negroes where females seem to be particularly vulnerable during the child bearing period not only to severe rheumatic fever with an increased death rate but also to an actual increase in age specific sex incidence

The Climate or Environmental Influences A fundamental question which has long captured the imagination of students of rheumatic fever is its tendency to flourish in high altitudes, in cold damp climates and in the slums of London or New York There are apparently few fourth year medical students who are unwilling to discourse on these subjects But what is known about them? This depends on differential measurements

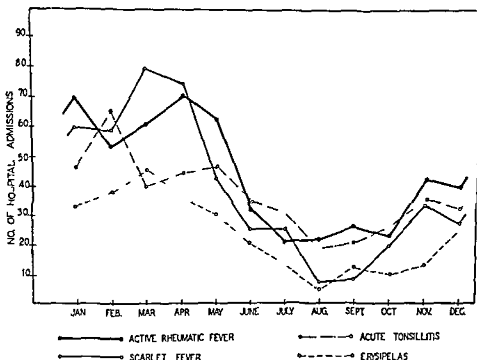


FIGURE 3 Seasonal occurrence of the onset of hospitalized cases of rheumatic fever and of three streptococcal diseases in New Haven County covering the period 1929 to 1938 The rheumatic fever series consists of 526 cases the scarlet fever series of 458 the acute tonsillitis of 443 and the erysipelas of 285 From Paul[6]

of the incidence of rheumatic fever Actually such measurements are not easily made and many divergent opinions have been gained in the past and continue to be gained through clinical impressions rather than accurate measurements As the methods of measuring prevalence all have their failings but some are adequate enough to allow us to indicate that mortality rates of rheumatic fever and rheumatic heart disease differ in different places and have declined in more recent years in England and in some parts of the United States[10] Considerable speculation exists as to causative factors which have played a part in this decline Those suggested include an improvement in living conditions improved public and personal hygiene the increased use of antibiotics and other features It remains to be seen how real the decline actually is and how long the reduced incidence will be maintained In any event we can start with the following premises Rheumatic fever is common and widespread throughout the world and in keeping with the behavior of acute streptococcal diseases

it flourishes best in cold damp climates as opposed to tropical climates In the United States there are wide ranges in prevalence reflecting in general a higher incidence in colder and wetter areas in high altitudes *

The effect of climate is closely linked to seasonal changes and the correlation of streptococcal infections is further borne out here by the fact that the acute stages of illness i e streptococcal infections and rheumatic fever both follow a parallel *seasonal* trend (see Figure 3) This trend seems to differ in different localities, but the greater number of acute attacks of rheumatic fever in the eastern parts of the United States reach a maximum incidence during the late winter and early spring months and, although great variations in incidence occur from year to year in general a good' year for streptococcal disease is a good' year for rheumatic fever

There have been many attempts to explain the influence of cold and damp weather on this disease or group of diseases, caused not only by streptococci but by other agents responsible for causing respiratory disease Cold weather in itself would not seem to be a dominant factor but cold coupled with dampness and also high altitudes are climatic and geographic conditions which favor the spread of various respiratory infectious disease particularly under situations which promote crowding within doors This latter feature *crowding* introduces another factor which further complicates the picture but it may be a fundamental one It may be the explanation why rheumatic fever has been branded originally in England as a social disease in that it found its highest incidence among the poorer children of industrial towns [3] This implicated various other factors exposure to cold and dampness through poor housing and malnutrition These observations date from the 1920 s and 1930 s but have not received the same emphasis today as they did then perhaps due to the fact that urban living conditions have improved mightily both in England and in the United States during the past two decades Nevertheless the effect of socioeconomic conditions on the prevalence of rheumatic heart disease in the United States can still be demonstrated [6]

The factor of crowding is one to be considered at some length and it has been since the early and convincing observations of Perry and Roberts in England[7] who established a direct relationship between the degree of crowding and the incidence of rheumatic fever Rheumatic heart disease furthermore is still acquired in the United States at a higher rate in school children living in urban than those living in rural areas [8] In support of the unfavorable effect of crowding are the long term observations on a group of forty rheumatic and thirty nonrheumatic families by Gray *et al* It is believed that crowding in the home and bedrooms allowing as it does more intimate contact among younger members of the family group may be conducive to the spread and maintenance within the family circle of various respiratory infections but particularly those due to hemo

* The practical significance of the differing rates became manifest during World War II when the experience within Army and Navy installations in various parts of The U S i e north and south sea level and Rocky Mountain areas These revealed different rates for the acquisition of rheumatic fever and in this respect a correlation with acute streptococcal infection in such areas was established

lytic streptococci of various types According to one theory it is this kind of *repeated* infections due to different types of streptococci within a little cosmos of susceptible hosts with one infection coming fast upon the heels of another at an age when the child is ill fitted to handle the situation that this may promote the occurrence of the rheumatic state Here is another field which also calls loudly for more investigation

Conclusion Essentially, the epidemiology of rheumatic fever bears a close relationship to the epidemiology of streptococcal infections for it is a disease that often follows close upon the heels of a *Streptococcus hemolyticus* infection It is commoner in cold damp climates and high altitudes It has found its highest incidence among the poorer classes of urban and industrial populations it often has a high familial incidence the period of greatest susceptibility seems to lie between the ages of five and fourteen However in view of the fact that the percentage of children or adults who acquire streptococcal infections is large whereas the percentage who acquire rheumatic fever following streptococcal infection is very small it becomes a major problem of the epidemiologist to continue to seek the explanation of this obscure and basic problem about rheumatic fever

REFERENCES

1 Aikawa J K Ann Int Med 41 576 1954

2 Coburn A F *Factor of Infection in the Rheumatic State* Baltimore Williams & Wilkins Co 1931

3 Glover J A Incidence of acute rheumatism Lancet 1 499 1930

4 Glover J A and Griffith F Brit Med J 2 521 1931

5 Gray F G Quinn R W and Quinn J P A long term survey of rheumatic and nonrheumatic families with particular reference to environment and heredity Am J Med 13 400 1952

6 In *Epidemiology of Rheumatic Fever* edited by J R Paul 2nd Edit New York Metropolitan Life Insurance Co 1943

7 Perry C B and Roberts J A F Study on the variability in the incidence of rheumatic heart disease within the city of Bristol Suppl Brit Med J 2 154 1937

8 Quinn R W Liao S J and Quinn J P Am J Pub Health 40 1285 1950

9 Quinn R W and Quinn J P Mortality due to rheumatic heart disease in the socioeconomic districts of New Haven Conn Yale J Biol & Med 24 15 1951

10 Quinn R W and Quinn J P Decline in mortality in acute rheumatic fever in New Haven Conn 1920 1948 New England J Med 245 211 1951

11 Rammelkamp C H Wannamaker L W and Denny F W Bull N Y Acad Med 28 321 1952 see also Denny F W Chapter 13 in *Streptococcal Infections* edited by M McCarty Columbia Univ Press 1954

12 Rantz L A Boisvert P J and Spink W Arch Int Med 76 131 1945 see also Stetson C A Chapter 15 in *Streptococcal Infections* edited by M McCarty New York Columbia Univ Press 1954

13 Sheldon W Lancet 1 1337 1931

14 Swift H F Ann Int Med 31 715 1949

15 Wilson M G and Schweitzer M Pattern of hereditary susceptibility in rheumatic fever Circulation 10 699 1954 see also previous paper by these authors

16 Wilson M G *Rheumatic Fever* The Commonwealth Fund New York Humphrey Milford Oxford University Press London 1940

17 Wolff G (a) *Childhood Mortality from Rheumatic Fever and Heart Diseases* U S Federal Security Agency Social Security Adm Children s Bureau Pub 322 1948 See also (b) Ibid Death toll from rheumatic fever in childhood J Amer Med Assn 145 719 1951

7

Rheumatic Heart Disease

Etiology Rheumatic heart disease is part of rheumatic fever, the etiology of which is not yet fully known

Many different microorganisms have been considered responsible for the disease including filterable viruses and even the tubercle bacillus At present however all evidence points to hemolytic streptococci of group A as the responsible agents [1 3] although it is not clear why some individuals infected with these microorganisms develop rheumatic fever while others do not

The mechanism by which hemolytic streptococcal infections lead to rheumatic fever is also unknown There are currently several theories which may be mentioned According to one the underlying mechanism is that of delayed hypersensitivity to streptococci or their products According to a second the disease results from auto antibodies to the patient s own tissue proteins which have been altered by streptococcal action A third theory invokes the action either direct or through the mechanism of delayed hypersensitivity of a hypothetical specific toxin or enzyme common to ' rheumatogenic hemolytic streptococci According to a fourth theory the disease is due to direct invasion of tissues by hemolytic streptococci Finally a modification of the last theory assumes that valvular damage results from direct action of hemolytic streptococci lodged in the cardiac tissues but that the manifestations of the acute stage of disease are dependent on a separate mechanism such as one of those noted in the first three theories cited above

There are certain *predisposing causes* Rheumatic fever is known to occur more frequently in temperate climates Like measles and scarlet fever it occurs in cycles but this is related to the cyclic incidence of group A hemolytic streptococcal infections *There is a seasonal variation the* greatest incidence in America being in the late winter and spring while in England the incidence is somewhat greater in autumn It has been frequently pointed out that the family incidence of the disease is high To what extent this is due to cross infection to inherited susceptibility or to environmental factors is not definitely known but it is probable that all three play a part While the disease is seen moderately frequently among well to do patients living in good hygienic surroundings it occurs much more frequently among the poor who live in want and under crowded conditions The age of the patient is also a factor In childhood and in early adolescence the heart is more apt to be affected than later in life Adults

Pages 151 to 166B replace former pages 151 to 166 © 1959

with first attacks of rheumatic fever also sustain cardiac damage but less frequently and less seriously than children [4]

Structural Changes Rheumatic heart lesions are spoken of as being active or inactive depending on whether inflammation is present or merely scar tissue resulting from previous inflammation They may be in the pericardium endocardium, or myocardium

Pericarditis The pericardium loses its glistening appearance becomes congested coated with fibrin and roughened Endothelial cells swell, new blood vessels are formed Probably in all cases there is some serous exudate If the amount is great enough to cause physical signs or x ray changes the patient is said to have pericarditis with effusion

During either the fibrinous or the effusive state resolution may take place This may result simply in a cicatricial thickening of the pericardium without adhesion or in the process of healing, adhesions may occur between the visceral and parietal layers of the pericardium, or between the parietal layer of the pericardium and the pleura mediastinal structures or diaphragm

Endocarditis The term endocarditis is generally used in a loose sense to mean inflammation not only of the endocardial lining of the valve but of the entire valve structure—a meaning which is much more accurately expressed by the term valvulitis True endocarditis does occur however as part of valvulitis and as localized inflammation of the mural endocardium especially of the left auricle The earliest change in rheumatic valvulitis appears to be localized edema in the depth of the valve, with cellular infiltration and proliferation following rapidly On the surface, usually at the line of apposition of the valves, small areas of necrosis appear on top of which thrombi are laid down composed of fibrin and platelets These can be seen grossly as small pinkish yellow vegetations on the valves and chordae tendineae As the process increases, cellular proliferation and new capillary formation occurs particularly at the base of the valve so that much of the valve becomes the seat of a chronic granulomatous inflammation Healing takes place by organization and scar formation with the result that the valves become thickened shortened and distorted These changes prevent the proper closure of the valve and cause regurgitation The same deformities plus fusion of the valve margins and sometimes calcarious deposition interfere with the normal passage of blood through the orifice and cause stenosis

Myocarditis Probably the earliest lesion is a biochemical or physical chemical change in the mesenchymal ground substance between connective tissue fibrils particularly in the walls of the smaller blood vessels Other early changes consist of focal areas of edema and cellular infiltration This exudative stage is followed by that of proliferation characterized by the formation of Aschoff bodies These focal collections of cells are found most frequently in the basal portion of the ventricular wall, are usually perivascular and located in the subendocardium but may be anywhere in the atrial or ventricular myocardium The Aschoff bodies are characterized by large basophilic often multinucleated cells the nature of which has received much study [5,6] After the active inflammation has subsided the nodules

gradually become small foci of fibrous tissue but study of atrial biopsy specimens obtained at operations has shown that Aschoff bodies may persist years after all clinical evidence of disease activity has subsided [6] Although these characteristic lesions are focal in distribution the myocardium is diffusely weakened and dilatation occurs Contrary to what is often thought the course of rheumatic heart disease clearly indicates that the myocardial damage and not that in the valves is chiefly responsible for the appearance of heart failure in the active stages of this disease especially in early attacks

Symptomatology From this brief description of the morphological changes it will be seen that there are two stages of rheumatic heart disease the active and inactive Active rheumatic heart disease or carditis is the stage of active inflammation Inactive rheumatic heart disease is the stage of purely mechanical damage resulting from the scarring left as a consequence of the earlier inflammation Any discussion of symptomatology of rheumatic heart disease must consider these two stages separately and since the inactive stage can be covered more briefly it will be considered first

Inactive Rheumatic Heart Disease Although there are very distinct physical signs of inactive rheumatic heart disease strictly speaking there are no symptoms for when symptoms occur they are those resulting either from a cardiac arrhythmia or from heart failure Many patients with inactive rheumatic heart disease have no symptoms at all, while others experience various degrees of cardiac insufficiency ranging from mild dyspnea on exertion to severe congestive heart failure even at rest In view of the permanent valvular deformities pericardial adhesions and myocardial scarring it is to be expected that symptoms of heart failure would occur and one of the most striking features of inactive rheumatic heart disease is the paucity of such symptoms so long as the functional capacity of the myocardium remains good Symptoms and signs of heart failure promptly appear however when the myocardium is weakened by a new attack of carditis or by the degenerative changes of advancing years Among the arrhythmias which may appear in inactive rheumatic heart disease auricular and ventricular premature contractions are the most common Next in frequency is auricular fibrillation but in this connection it should be pointed out that the appearance of this arrhythmia in a rheumatic patient under forty years of age is presumptive evidence of a return of the active inflammation

Although the common type of pain which occurs in rheumatic heart disease is that of carditis there is a less common type which can occur also in inactive rheumatic heart disease This pain is anginal in type often excruciating and often radiates to the left shoulder and arm It frequently is associated with sudden elevation of blood pressure and is relieved by amyl nitrite It occurs in patients with aortic insufficiency and aortic stenosis and probably is caused by myocardial anoxemia resulting from inadequate coronary filling

The physical signs of inactive rheumatic heart disease are those of the various valvular defects and of cardiac enlargement (*q v*)

Active Rheumatic Heart Disease (Carditis) As this is merely one manifestation of rheumatic fever, other evidences of that disease usually make their appearance, such as fever, polyarthritis, subcutaneous nodules chorea pleuritis and erythema marginatum When these are obvious, the nature of the disease is easily recognized Even without the presence of other manifestations the diagnosis of rheumatic carditis usually is readily made if it is severe for attention is drawn to the heart by such symptoms as dyspnea and precordial pain In some patients on the other hand carditis may be insidious and other rheumatic manifestations either lacking or consisting merely of such vague complaints as aching joints fatigability or loss of appetite The diagnosis in such cases is easily missed and the patient must be watched with great care for the appearance of definitive signs or symptoms This is particularly true in children in whom rheumatic carditis is prone to develop insidiously

In discussing active rheumatic heart disease, the term *carditis* is especially appropriate because it connotes the important fact that all parts of the heart—myocardium, valves endocardium and pericardium—are involved Nevertheless involvement of the various parts of the heart tends to be associated with particular symptoms and signs and in describing the symptoms of carditis it is useful to take up those caused by lesions of the myocardium valves, and pericardium separately, although it must always be borne in mind that all occur together in most cases

Myocarditis Because the murmurs which accompany rheumatic valvular damage are so striking and because they persist into the inactive stage of rheumatic heart disease early writers tended to stress the valvular lesions and to underestimate the importance of the myocardial damage It is now well appreciated, however that the myocardial involvement is much the more important so far as the functional capacity of the heart is concerned during the course of carditis This is apparent when one considers the many patients with severe congestive heart failure during the course of carditis who later have excellent cardiac reserve when the carditis has subsided in spite of the persistence of the valvular defects Thus, *heart failure* developing during the course of rheumatic fever is, in itself an important indication of myocardial involvement Other signs and symptoms of myocarditis are the rapid development of *cardiac enlargement precordial pain* and *tenderness* the development of an apical protodiastolic *gallop tachycardia* out of proportion to the degree of fever and various *electrocardiographic changes* Furthermore since rheumatic pericarditis and valvulitis rarely, if ever, occur without myocarditis, any evidence of cardiac involvement during rheumatic fever suggests the presence of myocarditis

Valvulitis Although the term 'endocarditis' is used to designate involvement of the mural endocardium which is so common in rheumatic carditis it has been largely replaced by the term "valvulitis' in speaking of rheumatic inflammation of the cardiac valves As was pointed out in the discussion of structural changes this designation is a more accurate one for the entire valve substance is involved Mitral insufficiency is the commonest valvular lesion clinically Second in frequency is mitral stenosis

which is the most characteristic valvular lesion of rheumatic heart disease Aortic insufficiency and stenosis are also common and damage to the tri cuspid and pulmonic valves is demonstrable pathologically but is diffi cult to diagnose during life These various valvular lesions usually are permanent once they appear but they may be transient if the valvulitis subsides before too great proliferative changes have taken place Murmurs early in the course of carditis probably are due to relative dilatation of a chamber or of a valve ring and to edema of the valve leaflets Probably true stenotic deformities do not occur until after weeks or months of valvulitis Other signs associated with mitral valvulitis are an accentuation of the second pulmonic sound and the so called opening snap but these also appear only after the valve has been diseased for some time

Systolic Murmurs appearing during the course of rheumatic fever should lead one to suspect the presence of valvulitis but do not pro vide definite evidence unless distinctly organic in character because they are so common in other infectional diseases unassociated with cardiac damage The appearance of *new diastolic murmurs,* on the other hand is conclusive evidence of valvulitis

Pericarditis While pathological studies show that some degree of peri carditis occurs in most cases of active rheumatic heart disease clinically important or diagnosable pericarditis is less common than myocarditis and valvulitis It is more frequent in children than adults Because of the danger of cardiac tamponade patients with pericarditis must be watched with particular care

The most conclusive evidence of pericarditis is the appearance of the typical *pericardial friction rub* This is usually heard first in the region of the apex and along the left sternal border but is sometimes loudest at the base of the heart In its most characteristic form it is a to and fro grating sound not quite synchronous with the heart sounds It may be heard for only an hour or two or may persist for days Conclusive evidence of pericarditis is provided also by certain *electrocardiographic changes* described under Electrocardiography

Of merely presumptive significance are precordial pain and signs sug gesting effusion *Pain* may vary from precordial soreness to a sharp stab bing pleurisy like pain

Pericardial effusion is suggested by the following (*a*) Radiographic demonstration of an enlarged pyriform cardiac shadow extending up to the first and second ribs to both the left and right of the sternum with obliter ation of the cardiovascular angle (*b*) increase in areas of cardiac dulness particularly at the base of the heart in the first and second interspaces (*c*) diminution in intensity of the heart sounds (*d*) displacement of apex beat upward and to the left (*e*) signs of consolidation (*Ewart s sign*) at the base of the left chest posteriorly The latter are caused by pressure of the enlarged pericardial sac on the left lung Aspiration of pericardial fluid of course makes the diagnosis definite

Signs and Symptoms of Carditis Probably the most important single factor in the management of a patient with rheumatic heart disease is the determination whether the disease is in the active or inactive stage Be

cause of this importance the various signs and symptoms of carditis are summarized below Among the *conclusive evidences* are (*a*) The appearance of heart failure during the course of rheumatic fever (*b*) the development of new diastolic murmurs (*c*) the appearance of a pericardial friction rub, and (*d*) significant increase in the size of the heart—all if they occur during an attack of rheumatic fever Among the *presumptive evidences* are (*a*) Tachycardia out of proportion to fever, (*b*) gallop, (*c*) precordial pain and tenderness (*d*) the presence of subcutaneous nodules (*e*) significant increase in the atrioventricular conduction time, (*f*) the development of auricular fibrillation or congestive failure in any patient with physical signs of rheumatic valvular defects, especially in patients under forty (*g*) fever, leukocytosis or increased erythrocyte sedimentation rate in any rheumatic patient in whom there is not some other clear explanation for their presence and (*h*) the appearance of any manifestation of rheumatic fever in any patient for the heart must always be assumed to be involved until it has been shown not to be Of course some of these presumptive signs and symptoms should make one merely suspect the presence of carditis whereas others and especially combinations of them, are practically conclusive

Electrocardiographic Findings These have been referred to in discussing myocarditis and pericarditis They are considered more fully in a later section

Course of the Disease The stage of active carditis varies in length from a few weeks to several years and in severity from episodes which escape the notice of even a careful physician to attacks which are fulminating and cause death in a few days In the great majority of patients, however the disease gradually passes into the stage of inactivity symptoms of inflammation disappear, temperature leukocyte count, and erythrocyte sedimentation rate become normal, anemia improves, and symptoms of heart failure clear

During the inactive stage of the disease a diminished cardiac reserve may or may not be present Many patients for years show no such diminution and when frank failure occurs it usually means that active carditis has reappeared or that the patient has reached the age group in which degenerative changes in the heart contribute to cardiac insufficiency

It will be seen that rheumatic heart disease may be associated with cardiac insufficiency in either its active or inactive stages During the period of activity such diminution may be due to inflammation of the myocardium, causing inefficiency of the muscle or to the changes brought about by the increased pressure in the pericardium in pericarditis with effusion It is probable that the endocardial lesions play a comparatively small part in the loss of cardiac efficiency during the early active phase of rheumatic inflammation

During the inactive stage of the disease the changes which contribute to diminished cardiac reserve and congestive heart failure are pericardial adhesions binding the heart to the adjacent structures fibrotic changes in the myocardium and most important scarring of the chordae tendineae and the various valves resulting in valvular incompetence or stenosis and

thus affecting the dynamics of circulation During either of these stages changes in the various functions of the heart muscle may result in one or another of the arrhythmias and they in turn may become a factor in further producing heart failure

From the foregoing, it is clear that active rheumatic heart disease (carditis) is vastly more important than the inactive form for the latter occurs only as the result of the former and is made progressively worse by repeated attacks Thus the course and prognosis in any given case depend mainly upon three factors The severity of the attacks of carditis how long they last and how often they are repeated On the basis of these factors four clinical types of course may be described

Acute Fulminating In this type the disease runs a rapid course with high temperature high leukocytosis marked signs of heart failure and death within a few days to a few months Fortunately it is rare especially in adults In an analysis of seventy children admitted to Bellevue Hospital in their first attacks of rheumatic fever prior to 1943 three cases (or 4 3 per cent) ran this type of course whereas there were no such cases among sixty seven adults [4] More recent experience has been even more favorable

Chronic Active In this type the patient develops active rheumatic carditis the evidences of which diminish but never entirely disappear Such patients usually have diminished cardiac reserve more or less anemia fatigue and low grade fever but active inflammation may be so low grade that it is not recognized Carditis of this type may continue for years and end in death without ever subsiding or the disease may eventually become inactive

Recurring This is the most frequent clinical type Periods of activity occur every few years separated by longer or shorter periods of inactivity During the periods of inactivity, particularly early in the course of the disease there is usually no diminution in the cardiac reserve

Persistently Inactive In this clinical type carditis heals with or without residual damage after a few weeks or months and does not return In the past such fortunate outcomes were not common and occurred in adults more often than in children Today however it is the aim of continuous prophylaxis to make all attacks of this type

Diagnosis In typical cases of active rheumatic heart disease especially *when polyarthritis or other rheumatic manifestations are present* the diagnosis is obvious from the start Often however the diagnosis is obscure and a correct conclusion can be reached only after careful observation of the patient over a period of days or weeks

In general there are four types of diagnostic questions which arise First in a case of definite rheumatic fever one must decide whether or not the heart is involved This is done by looking carefully for the various presumptive and conclusive evidences of carditis meanwhile keeping the patient in bed

A second type of problem is that of the child with vague symptoms that might be rheumatic but are not clearly defined Again one must watch for the development of distinct signs or symptoms

A somewhat similar problem is posed by the patient known to have inactive rheumatic heart disease who begins to have vague symptoms It may be difficult to determine whether a new attack of carditis has occurred or whether the patient merely has some incidental illness Once more, the only solution is to keep the patient at rest while searching carefully for the various signs and symptoms of rheumatic fever and carditis

A final and common question is that presented by the patient with old valvular disease of which one must decide the underlying etiology Usually this is not difficult because the combination of a past history of rheumatic fever and the physical signs of mitral stenosis point to a rheumatic basis Even in the absence of a rheumatic history the presence of a characteristic apical diastolic murmur usually is diagnostic although there are some exceptions as noted under Differential Diagnosis

Differential Diagnosis The question of differential diagnosis usually is not a difficult one However carditis can be simulated by a number of diseases including bacterial endocarditis, sickle cell anemia leukemia brucellosis and hyperthyroidism Other types of pericarditis can also cause difficulty as can congenital heart disease

Bacterial Endocarditis is apt to be especially confusing because it is so often implanted on valves previously damaged by rheumatic fever Usually however the appearance of embolic phenomena and positive blood cultures make the correct diagnosis clear

Sickle Cell Anemia and Leukemia may lead to confusion because of the aching which may occur in muscles and joints, and the anemia murmurs and cardiac enlargement which often accompany it The true nature of disease is of course readily shown by suitable examination of the blood

Brucellosis and other low grade chronic infections may simulate rheumatic fever with carditis and only prolonged observation may reveal the correct diagnosis

Hyperthyroidism without obvious thyroid enlargement or exophthalmos sometimes is mistaken for rheumatic carditis because of its accompanying tachycardia forceful heart action and low grade fever Occasionally there may even be a slurring of the heart sounds at the apex which can be mistaken for a rumbling diastolic murmur This sound and the other symptoms disappear however under suitable antithyroid therapy

Pericarditis due to tuberculous infection can usually be differentiated by other evidence of tuberculosis Non specific pericarditis usually is diagnosed only by excluding the tuberculous pyogenic and rheumatic types, unless a specific virus is isolated from the pericardial exudate

Postscarletinal Carditis used to be considered a distinct entity, but today it is accepted that it is true rheumatic carditis following a hemolytic streptococcal infection in the form of scarlet fever [8]

In *inactive rheumatic heart disease* the commonest differential problem is that presented by the patient with a negative rheumatic history and with aortic insufficiency and a rumbling diastolic murmur at the apex It is sometimes impossible to determine whether such a patient has inactive rheumatic heart disease with aortic insufficiency and mitral stenosis or syphilitic heart disease with aortic insufficiency and an Austin Flint mur

mur at the apex In such cases it is helpful to compare the intensity of the aortic diastolic murmur at the second right interspace and along the left sternal border with the patient upright and recumbent In syphilitic aortic insufficiency the murmur tends to be louder at the second right interspace with the patient upright than at the left sternal border with the patient flat whereas in rheumatic aortic insufficiency the reverse is true [9] Occasionally, also, congenital lesions are difficult to differentiate from rheumatic ones and in a patient with a vague incidental infection may even lead to a suspicion of rheumatic carditis

Complications The principal complications of rheumatic heart disease are (*a*) abnormalities of rhythm of which auricular fibrillation is most important, (*b*) embolism (*c*) bacterial endocarditis and (*d*) heart failure

Especially in patients under forty years of age the onset of *auricular fibrillation* is apt to mean that a new attack of carditis has begun but it occurs frequently also in inactive rheumatic heart disease Early in the course of rheumatic heart disease auricular fibrillation may be transient but when it occurs in hearts already seriously damaged it usually is permanent

Embolism usually from mural thrombi in the left atrium can occur at any stage of the disease but especially in long established cases It can result in merely mild symptoms or in such serious accidents as cerebral embolism or saddle embolism with thrombosis of the iliac arteries Among 3129 patients with rheumatic heart disease followed up to the time of death death was attributed to embolism in 2 6 per cent [10] Cerebral accidents caused death in another 2 9 per cent and some of these undoubtedly were due to cerebral embolism These figures are very incomplete however for they do not include instances of nonfatal embolism

Bacterial endocarditis may be implanted on rheumatic valves as it may on valves abnormal from other causes It occurred in approximately 9 per cent of 3129 patients with rheumatic heart disease [10]

Heart failure of the congestive type is so much a part of the disease picture that it is scarcely thought of as a complication Heart failure of the anginal type occurs also though less commonly and paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea is occasionally a major therapeutic problem These are discussed elsewhere

Treatment ***Treatment of Carditis*** It is essential in the treatment of active rheumatic heart disease to appreciate that one is dealing with an inflammatory process and with one which results from an infection Various symptoms require treatment but much more important are measures directed toward helping the patient overcome the infection and toward combating the inflammation Happily the *antibiotics* provide us today with powerful means of overcoming the inciting hemolytic streptococcal infection but the problem of overcoming the rheumatic inflammatory process in the heart remains one which has not been solved To be sure the powerful antirheumatic action of *salicylates* and of *corticosteroids* and *corticotropin* on the inflammation in the joints and on the fever and general toxicity of rheumatic fever is thoroughly established Unfortunately however the effect of these drugs and hormones on the

rheumatic inflammatory process in the heart is much less convincingly beneficial The use of these agents and of other measures in the treatment of rheumatic heart disease is discussed in the paragraphs which follow

Eradication of the Hemolytic Streptococcal Carrier State In any patient with active carditis—or any other manifestation of rheumatic fever —an initial aim is to eliminate any viable hemolytic streptococci which the patient may carry It has not yet been proved whether antibiotics can benefit rheumatic fever directly, but it is certain that they can eliminate the hemolytic streptococci which incite the disease and keep it active For this purpose *penicillin* is the drug of choice It may be given in several ways (1) Intramuscularly in the form of *benzathine penicillin G* as a single injection of 1 200 000 units (2) intramuscularly in the form of *procaine penicillin in oil* with 2 per cent *aluminum monostearate* in doses of 600,000 units every third day for three doses (3) orally in doses of 500 000 units daily in two divided doses for a period of ten days Any one of these methods is adequate to eliminate the carrier state in the great majority of cases

Recently Rammelkamp and his collaborators[11] have hypothesized that the late valvular damage of rheumatic fever results from the persistence of viable hemolytic streptococci in the cardiac tissues for prolonged periods of time and on the theoretical assumption that these microorganisms at that site may be more difficult to eradicate than they are in the pharynx, have suggested that much larger doses of penicillin should be used for a longer period than recommended above Unless further studies indicate the contrary however it is probable that the dosage schedules given above are adequate

Prevention of Recurrences of Hemolytic Streptococcal Infection Once having eliminated any hemolytic streptococci which may have been present it is essential to prevent their return and for this also several methods are available (1) *Benzathine penicillin G* may be given intramuscularly in doses of 1,200,000 units every four weeks (2) *sulfadiazine* may be administered once daily by mouth in doses of 0 5 Gm for small children and 1 0 Gm for children and adults weighing 45 4 kg (100 pounds) or more or (3) oral *penicillin* may be used in doses of 250 000 units twice daily preferably a half hour before breakfast and supper In this connection it must be borne in mind that whereas sulfadiazine is quite effective in preventing hemolytic streptococcal infections it is a bacteriostatic and not a bactericidal agent and hence is not to be relied on to eliminate hemolytic streptococci already present Opinion varies as to which of the various methods is preferable but all are entirely satisfactory provided the patient can be relied upon to take the medication every day without fail If the latter is not the case the use of benzathine penicillin G has the great advantage that it can be given by the physician himself at four week intervals with assurance of protection during the intervening periods whether or not the patient is dependable These procedures will be considered again in the discussion of the prevention of rheumatic fever

Antirheumatic Agents The various antirheumatic drugs (*salicylic acid sodium salicylate, acetyl salicylic acid neocinchophen phenacetin amino-*

pyrine phenylbutazone etc) are powerful antipyretic and analgesic agents which in adequate doses effectively reduce the fever and discomfort of a wide variety of diseases In addition they have an anti inflammatory action which is especially marked in the polyarthritis of rheumatic fever but in contrast to the dramatic benefit to the inflammation about the joints opinion in the United States has been almost unanimous that the antirheumatic drugs are of little benefit to the inflammation of carditis During recent years however the careful evaluations which have been made of cortisone and corticotropin have led also to reappraisal of the salicylates as possibly useful in rheumatic carditis because in controlled therapeutic trials[7] patients receiving acetyl salicylic acid have shown responses similar to those receiving the hormones Some investigators including the author[1, 13] have hoped since 1952 that these results meant that all three agents might be exerting an important beneficial effect on carditis Further experience however makes it probable that the reverse explanation is the correct one and that none is very effective[14]

Corticosteroids and *corticotropin* as noted earlier in this chapter are now considered to be merely extremely powerful anti inflammatory agents so far as their beneficial effects in rheumatic fever are concerned Nevertheless because of the particular interest in them they warrant separate consideration in this discussion Unfortunately the early hope that these agents could control carditis as well as polyarthritis and pyrexia in rheumatic fever has greatly dimmed although opinions vary as to the extent of their usefulness Many authors[15–18] have reported promising results in controlling the valvular damage caused by rheumatic fever Others on the contrary found little evidence of superiority over aspirin Included in the latter category is the exhaustive and rigidly controlled cooperative clinical trial of ACTH, cortisone and aspirin previously referred to which was carried out jointly by the Rheumatic Fever Working Party of the Medical Research Council of Great Britain and the Subcommittee of Principal Investigators of the American Council on Rheumatic Fever and Congenital Heart Disease American Heart Association[7] In this study of 497 children it was concluded that there was no evidence that any of the three agents used resulted in uniform termination of the disease and on all treatments some patients developed fresh manifestations during treatment and 'at the end of one year there was no significant difference between the three treatment groups in the status of the heart' In that study, cortisone had been given over a six week period in doses gradually diminishing from 300 mg to 50 mg daily Because of the possibility that the dosage schedule and period of treatment were too small the study was repeated on a lesser scale using prednisone in doses three to four times the equivalent of those used in the cooperative clinical trial for a period twice as long A control group received aspirin in doses sufficient to give a blood level of 25 to 35 mg per 100 ml for an equal period of time Only *children with clinically definite carditis in whom treatment was started* within three weeks of onset of their first attack of rheumatic fever were included in the study The results in twenty four children receiving prednisone and twenty three children receiving aspirin gave no support to the

view that corticosteroids in large doses over a twelve week period have any superiority over aspirin in terms of the incidence of residual valvular damage at the end of one year of follow up

That there should be differences of opinion regarding the value of corticosteroids in rheumatic carditis is scarcely surprising in view of the similar differences as regards effects on such easily observed and measurable lesions as subcutaneous nodules Some authors have reported rather rapid disappearance of nodules in patients given corticosteroids and corticotropin whereas in the cooperative clinical trial " new nodules were observed *to appear and the rate of disappearance was about the same, in each of* the three treatment groups There was no completely untreated group of patients in that study but previous experience indicating that salicylates do not affect rheumatic subcutaneous nodules is so well documented that the results of the cooperative trial leave little reason to expect any very *significant effects from the more powerful antirheumatic agents* either

How then is one to explain the differences between the dramatic benefit from salicylates and corticosteroids in rheumatic polyarthritis and the questionable effects in carditis? The answer probably lies in the predominant type of inflammation in each of those manifestations In polyarthritis the inflammatory reaction is of the acute exudative type which is extremely responsive to all the antirheumatic agents In carditis and in the subcutaneous nodule on the other hand the acute exudative phase usually is minor and transient and the predominant lesion is a granulomatous one on which those agents exert less influence Nevertheless both corticosteroids and salicylates may be of special value in pericarditis where the role of acute exudative inflammation is greater, and one may hope that they are of some benefit in most patients with carditis if used early

The possible value of giving corticosteroids and salicylates together is a question of some practical importance Some investigators believe that salicylates act by stimulating the adrenals to put out more intrinsic hydrocortisone *Obviously if this view is correct there would be no point in* administering both corticosteroids and salicylates simultaneously The best evidence however indicates that salicylates do not act through adrenal cortical stimulation, hence, there is logic in using both agents at the same time

Plan of Treatment with Antirheumatic Agents In view of the many gaps in knowledge it is not possible to make dogmatic statements as to treatment but on the basis of the best current information it is possible to suggest the following regimen as a reasonable approach These measures should be started coincidentally with intensive penicillin therapy as outlined earlier

1 In polyarthritis without evidence of carditis salicylate alone probably is preferable Ideally, doses sufficient to give a blood level of 25 to 35 mg per 100 ml should be given It is seldom necessary however, to control dosage by checking the blood level and rule of thumb schedules are sufficient A useful formula is to give a total daily dose of 60 mg (1 grain) *per pound of body weight or 10 Gm (150 grains) whichever is less,* for the first two days 40 mg (⅔ grain) per pound on the next five days and

then 30 mg (½ grain) per pound as long as may be required These daily amounts may be given in divided doses every four hours for the first two days and every six hours thereafter

2 In the presence of carditis it is suggested that prednisone (or other corticosteroid in equivalent amounts) be given in addition to the salicylate Doses of 10 mg of prednisone four times daily may be given for ten days after which the total daily dose may be reduced at the rate of 2 5 mg daily It is recommended that salicylate be continued after the cessation of corticosteroids as long as fever symptoms erythrocyte sedimentation rate and C reactive protein (or other acute phase reactants) indicate persistence of active carditis Furthermore because of the theoretical possibility that corticosteroid therapy might enhance latent hemolytic streptococcal infection it is suggested that penicillin be given in the usual doses (as described under Prevention) but twice as often so long as the corticostero d is being administered

Not infrequently a transient flurry of increased disease activity as manifested by fever and increased erythrocyte sedimentation rate sometimes accompanied by mild symptoms the so called rebound phenomenon is experienced as the corticosteroid dosage reaches a low level or is stopped This phenomenon may occur after withdrawal of salicylate also but less often If ins ead of being merely transient the evidences of rheumatic activity continue or increase longer than a week many authors recommend a second or a third course of corticosteroid It must be emphasized however that current data do not indicate that such a procedure prevents ultimate cardiac damage

This discussion of corticosteroids may be closed with a brief statement regarding the undesirable effects of corticosteroid and salicylate therapy The very real hazards of long continued large doses of corticosteroids and corticotropin are well known However in the doses which have been recommended it is unlikely that anything more disturbing than transient mooning of the face is apt to occur Salicylates in the doses recommended may rarely give rise to nausea tinnitus or in young children hyperventilation If these should occur two or more doses should be *omitted* depending on severity of symptoms after which therapy should be resumed at a lower dosage level

Rest Physical and mental rest are of the greatest importance but may be interfered with by pain dyspnea and anxiety Much can be accomplished by skilled nursing care and by reassurance Cardiac pain occurring in carditis often is helped by an *ice cap applied to the precordium* but if this is not adequate *codeine* should be given in doses large enough to give relief If smaller doses are insufficient 0 03 Gm (½ grain) of codeine sulfate can be given every three or four hours even to a child of five or six years of age It is rare that morphine is needed

Digitalis and Other Cardiac Drugs In the presence of auricular fibrilla t on or congestive heart failure digitalis is indicated in carditis just as it is in the treatment of those disorders under any other circumstances The drug does not help the carditis itself however A satisfactory method is to give an initial dose of 4 U S P units (0 4 Gm or 6 grains) and then 2 U S P

units (0 2 Gm or 3 grains) morning and night until a therapeutic effect or the earliest symptoms of digitalis toxicity appear Thereafter, 1 unit daily will usually suffice as a maintenance dose

Mercurial diuretics may be needed also if heart failure is severe Their use and dosage are discussed on page 309

Diet There is no particular diet of value in the treatment of carditis During the acute phase the patient is often too sick to care much about food and should not be forced to eat Light foods especially in liquid form will suffice during the first few days, by the end of which time the patient s appetite usually demands more In the presence of edema from heart failure fluid and salt intake should be limited

Pericarditis The treatment of pericarditis deserves special comment because of the danger of cardiac tamponade if the pressure from the accumulating effusion becomes too great Usually no special treatment is required but *pericardial paracentesis should be done* if dyspnea becomes severe and especially if there is a sudden fall in blood pressure In adults the anterior approach may be required but in children paracentesis can be more easily done by the posterior approach

Treatment of Subacute and Chronic Carditis In general the treatment of subacute and chronic carditis is the same as that of acute carditis There are however certain features which warrant special mention *If the* possibility of the hemolytic streptococcal carrier state has not already been eliminated by appropriate treatment *penicillin* should be administered in sufficient amount to do so as already described Similarly, prophylactic *penicillin* or *sulfadiazine* should then be started to prevent the return of such infection *Salicylate* should by all means be given although present evidence indicates that damage already sustained will not be reversed and there is little evidence that the granulomatous type of inflammation present during these stages will be appreciably influenced by antirheumatic therapy It is probable that any benefits that might result from corticosteroids or corticotropin at these stages of the disease are too doubtful to warrant their use *in view of their potential hazards when given over long periods*

Rest remains the most important part of treatment although the doctrines of early ambulation and rehabilitation have questioned the advisability of maintaining complete bed rest until all signs of active carditis have subsided which has been insisted upon in the past One should strive for the greatest possible rest for the patient as long as evidences of *carditis persist short of having the patient develop an anxiety state,* and bearing in mind that some patients will obtain greater rest if permitted to sit in a chair a few hours a day than they will fretting in bed As a guide in helping decide when graded ambulation may be started one may rely on certain criteria These are (*a*) normal temperature pulse, and leukocyte count for ten consecutive days in the absence of antirheumatic drugs (*b*) freedom from all manifestations of active rheumatic fever such as joint pains, erythema marginatum and subcutaneous nodules (*c*) normal atrioventricular conduction time, (*d*) erythrocyte sedimentation rate close to normal limits (*e*) a satisfactory weight curve and (*f*) good general condition When recovery has advanced to this point the patient

should be allowed an increasing amount of physical activity daily until more or less normal life has been resumed

The importance of doing everything possible through occupational therapy and the principles of rehabilitation to prevent the patient from becoming too concerned about his heart must be emphasized Also the physician must consider the patient s future capacity for work School programs for children and retraining for a more suitable occupation in the case of some adults with severe cardiac damage can begin while the patient is still in bed

Diet also plays an important role in treatment of subacute and chronic carditis as part of the general supportive care of the patient A varied diet rich in protein is indicated and on largely empirical grounds supplements of vitamins A and C are often advised During a long period of comparative inactivity in convalescence it frequently is necessary to limit caloric intake to prevent too great a gain in weight

Supplementary medication is indicated as in any other diseases for the treatment of individual symptoms and complaints Constipation resulting from the prolonged inactivity may need attention More important is the anemia which so commonly accompanies persistent low grade rheumatic inflammation *Ferrous sulfate* 0 3 Gm (5 grains) t i d after meals may be given Very rarely if anemia is severe and the patient s general condition poor it may be helpful to give one or two small *transfusions* of whole blood

Specific Therapy In the past various antiserums and vaccines and convalescent serum have been tried but without success Today *antibiotics* constitute specific therapy against the causative hemolytic streptococcal infections

Eradication of Foci of Infection The removal of tonsils and other possible foci of infection has been widely used although the best evidence has indicated that once rheumatic fever has made its appearance tonsillectomy does not lessen the likelihood or severity of cardiac damage Certainly in the light of modern knowledge *penicillin* provides a far surer and safer means of eradicating foci of hemolytic streptococcal infection although theoretically there may still be a place in rare instances for tonsillectomy if deep seated hemolytic streptococcal infections cannot be eliminated by very intensive administration of penicillin

Treatment of Inactive Rheumatic Heart Disease As has already been said patients with rheumatic heart disease in the inactive stage may have no symptoms at all or varying degrees of diminished cardiac reserve up to frank failure at rest Those without symptoms require no treatment even in spite of obvious physical signs of valvular damage They should return to the physician for periodic examinations however every six to twelve months and every possible measure should be taken to help them avoid reinfection with hemolytic streptococci (see under Prevention page 166) If there is no diminution of cardiac reserve physical activity should not be limited with the exception of the heaviest labor and the most strenuous sports Particular care must be taken in the case of introspective patients at the periodic examinations to prevent the development of anxiety states

On the appearance of signs of congestive heart failure or gross arrhythmias treatment is like that of heart failure or similar arrhythmias from any other cause (*q v*) In addition, the patient must be closely observed for evidence that a new attack of carditis has occurred and in the event that it has, treatment is that of carditis

Prevention The all important aim in the prophylaxis of rheumatic fever is the prevention or prompt eradication of the hemolytic streptococcal infections which are the inciting factor of the disease Rheumatic patients must be made to understand the serious significance of these infections to them and on the positive side the protection given by faithful adherence to the prophylactic regimen There are two important parts to this regimen (1) The prevention of hemolytic streptococcal infections and (2) the rapid elimination of such an infection if it should occur

Prevention of Hemolytic Streptococcal Infections This has already been outlined in the discussion of treatment As noted there *penicillin* or *sulfadiazine* daily by mouth or long acting depot penicillin (*benzathine penicillin G*) intramuscularly every four weeks is effective The essential factor in determination of which of the two methods to employ is the dependability of the patient for with the methods based on oral administration protection can be lost if the medication is missed for a few days

The length of time the preventive regimen should be continued is the subject of some debate Statistical analyses indicate that the longer a patient goes without a new attack the less likely he is to have one It is true also that attacks are apt to be less common and less serious after the age of twenty For these reasons some authors have suggested that prophylaxis need be continued only for five years or up to the age of eighteen or twenty However the appearance of new attacks following cessation of prophylaxis in patients who have been successfully protected for years has occurred so frequently that it is no longer justifiable to follow such a schedule and the only safe plan is to continue prophylaxis more or less indefinitely until such time as new knowledge may permit a more definitive answer to this question

Rapid Elimination of Hemolytic Streptococcal Infections More recently[19] it has been shown that intensive therapy with penicillin sufficient to eliminate the carrier state can effectively prevent rheumatic attacks following a hemolytic streptococcal infection provided treatment is started within a few days Indeed such measures are worthwhile even up to ten days after the onset of infection[20] The methods of administering the penicillin are outlined under the discussion of eradication of the hemolytic streptococcal carrier state (see page 160)

In spite of the effectiveness of this means of preventing rheumatic fever it cannot be relied on alone because of the frequency with which hemolytic streptococcal infections can occur in rheumatic subjects without the knowledge of the patient It must be emphasized therefore that chief reliance must be placed on continuous prophylaxis throughout the year, and that this additional safeguard be thought of as a second line of defense to be employed if, in spite of continuous prophylaxis or due to a break in it a hemolytic streptococcal infection should occur

Other Preventive Measures In the past various other measures such as tonsillectomy, climatotherapy and vaccines have been attempted Tonsillectomy and removal to warm dry climates have some value but probably only through lessening the likelihood of hemolytic streptococcal infections Now *penicillin* and *sulfadiazine* provide much surer protection and therefore these other measures are of chiefly historical interest

It is theoretically possible that effective protection by means of vaccines against hemolytic streptococci can be afforded and efforts are being made to prepare suitable antigens As yet no effective vaccine is available

Finally the value of good general hygienic conditions in the prevention of rheumatic fever must be mentioned The relative infrequency of rheumatic fever among the well to do compared with its incidence among the indigent points to the role that poor housing overcrowding and malnutrition play in this disease Hence slum clearance projects and similar sociological advances can be expected to do much to reduce the attack rate of this serious disease

Prognosis The prognosis of rheumatic heart disease must be considered separately for the immediate attack and the ultimate outcome

The Immediate Attack Fortunately mortality in rheumatic heart disease is low for the first attack and has been variously reported as from 1 to 4 per cent[4] In the past a hyperpyrexic type of rheumatic fever was described as an important cause of death but this type is now rare and death when it occurs is due primarily to carditis In general subcutaneous nodules and pericarditis indicate a serious type of disease On the other hand this is not invariably so for occasional patients with these manifestations recover without any residual signs of cardiac damage[4]

Ultimate Outcome It is because of the tendency for a patient who has once had rheumatic fever to have repeated attacks that the ultimate prognosis has been so poor in the past Fortunately many patients with rheumatic fever recover completely Thus among 683 children with rheumatic fever 30 per cent either showed no evidence of cardiac disease at any time or developed signs which subsequently disappeared"[1] On the other hand the prognosis is less favorable once rheumatic heart disease has become established In a group of 3129 patients with rheumatic heart disease observed until death the mean duration of disease was thirteen years and 50 per cent died within nine years of the onset Twenty five per cent however lived more than seventeen years and 10 per cent more than thirty years[1]

The reason why some patients suffer serious and repeated attacks of rheumatic fever while others escape with little or no damage is hidden in the same obscurity which surrounds the pathogenesis of the disease in general Certain factors warrant brief discussion

Age The age at onset of rheumatic fever has been shown to be important for the disease tends to lead to more serious cardiac damage in children than adults[4, 2]

Sex There is no appreciable difference in life expectancy between the two sexes

Type of Manifestation It has already been noted that subcutaneous nodules and pericarditis presage a serious type of disease Chorea on the other hand, is least apt to be associated with serious carditis[20] In a group of children followed six years or more, the incidence of permanent cardiac damage was 18 6 per cent in those with chorea compared with 72 per cent among children with other manifestations of rheumatic fever

Auricular Fibrillation This arrhythmia is of serious significance in its permanent, although not in its paroxysmal, form It has been claimed that 34 per cent of rheumatic cardiac patients die within one year of the onset of permanent auricular fibrillation and 75 per cent within three years Some patients, however live many years

Severity and Frequency of Attacks As would be expected, life expectancy is shorter for patients with severe and repeated attacks of carditis On the other hand it must be realized that severe cardiac damage can occur in patients whose symptoms are so mild that they scarcely realize they are sick until the heart disease is far advanced

Happily one may close a discussion of rheumatic heart disease on an optimistic note for the modern measures to prevent attacks in subjects of known susceptibility bid fair to change the figures on ultimate prognosis given above Since the outcome of the first attack of rheumatic fever usually is not serious the present means of preventing future attacks have entirely changed the previous serious prognosis One may conclude with considerable confidence that if modern preventive measures are faithfully adhered to the life expectancy of the great majority of rheumatic cardiac patients who have not already suffered severe heart damage should be close to normal

REFERENCES

1 McCarty M Circulation 14 1138 1956
2 Coburn A F Am J Dis Child 70 339 348 1945
3 Stollerman G H Lewis A J Schulz I and Taranta A Am J Med 20 163 1956
4 DeLiee E M Dodge K G and McEwen C Am Heart J 26 681 1943
5 McEwen C J Exper Med 55 745 May 1932
6 Gross L Ehrlich J P Am J Path 10 467 489 1934
7 Rheumatic Fever Working Party et al Circulation 11 343 1955
8 Watson R F Rothbard S and Swift H F J A M A 128 1145 1945
9 McEwen C Unpublished observations
10 Cohn A E and Lingg C Am Heart A Vol XI No 7 1942 and unpublished data of the Research Committee of the New York Heart Association
11 Mortimer E A et al New England J Med 260 101 1959
12 McEwen C Am. J Med 17 794 1954
13 Fischel E E Frank C W and Ragan C Medicine 31 331 1952
14 McEwen C J A M A 170 1056 1959
15 Massell B F M Clin North America 42 1343 (Sept) 1958
16 Markowitz M and Kuttner A G Pediatrics 16 325 1955
17 Greenmen L Weigand F A and Danowski T S Ann Rheumat Dis 12 342, 1953
18 Wilson M G Helper H N Lubschez R Hain K and Epstein N Am J Dis Child 86 131 1953
19 Massell B F Dow J W and Jones T D J A M A 138 1030 1948
20 Morris A I J Cantazaro F J Chamovitz R Stetson C A and Rammelkamp C H Jr Clin Research Proc 2 75 1954
21 Cohn A E and Lingg C J A M A 121 1 1943
22 Cohn A E and Lingg C J A M A 121 113 1943

WILLIAM DOCK, M D



Bacterial Endocarditis

Prior to 1944, of the patients who grew up with congenital heart defects or with valves scarred by rheumatic fever nearly one out of four died with bacterial endocarditis Under this term are included a variety of clinical manifestations and nearly a score of etiological entities which have as a common feature thrombotic vegetations and ulcerations of the endocardium and valves of the heart In addition to such clinical cases there were many lesions demonstrable at autopsy which were of no clinical importance for the bacterial invasion of the heart was merely a terminal event either an acute endocarditis complicating overwhelming sepsis and pyemia or a subacute lesion developing in the final phase of a wasting disease such as cancer uremia or tuberculosis Cases in which the endocardial lesions determine the clinical manifestations are grouped into acute or subacute forms, the former causing a severe febrile illness measured only in days or a few weeks the latter smouldering on for months and perhaps afebrile for much of the time These subdivisions are arbitrary and the course of subacute cases may be cut short by embolic accidents or congestive heart failure

Historical Note *The history of endocardial vegetations goes back to the* days of the early anatomists when even postmortem clots were thought of as interesting polyps The relation of rheumatic fever to endocardial damage was clear to English and French clinician dissectors by the dawn of the nineteenth century and bacterial endocarditis was recognized in the first years of the era of bacteriology By 1900 all of the commoner forms and their complications were well known to pathologists and internists although as with infarct of the myocardium the diagnosis was not often made in clinical circles especially in the milder and subacute forms Schottmuller and Libman were largely responsible for emphasizing and making clear the nature of subacute bacterial endocarditis and Lohlein and Baehr for recognizing the high incidence and specific character of the accompanying glomerulonephritis Libman also brought to attention cases of febrile subacute endocarditis which are bacteria free throughout their course While the study of therapy has been continually and energetically pursued both in the clinic and in the experimental animal until 1944 it had not produced a satisfactory management for a disease which now is correctly recognized in more than 80 per cent of our hospital cases by the student clinical clerk who first takes the history and examines the patient Since 1944 the mortality has been reduced from nearly 100 per cent to less than 15 per cent thanks to penicillin and streptomycin

Pages 167 to 181 replace former pages 167 to 182 © 1959

Etiology About twenty varieties of microbes have been isolated from lesions of the endocardium Streptococci of many types predominate, other cocci of all sorts are not infrequent, while the bacilli range from tubercle and influenza to diphtheroids virulent diphtheria organisms, brucella, Eberthella Salmonella, Klebsiella Pseudomonas, and others With most of the rare types, implantation on the heart valves or the endocardium of the walls is merely an unusual complication of the illness usually caused by the specific bacterium A case of pneumonia is complicated by or followed by pneumococcus endocarditis or a gonorrheal urethritis is followed by gonococcal lesions on the heart valves, and the new disease thus established overshadows that from which it developed In a few cases due to nearly all these organisms and in most of those due to the nonhemolytic streptococci no febrile illness precedes the manifestations of bacterial endocarditis, which seems to strike 'out of the blue"

The infections with gonococcus and meningococcus rarely run a slow subacute course, those due to nonhemolytic streptococci and the influenza bacillus only occasionally are acute but it is incorrect to consider subacute or slow endocarditis as synonymous with Streptococcus viridans endocarditis The sharp lines drawn on the basis of etiology cut across the vague and arbitrary borders of acute or subacute types of disease Various types of the Streptococcus viridans (that is aerobic streptococci which cause minimal hemolysis but some change in color of hemoglobin, alpha type streptococcus) dominate the bacteriology of this disease because they occur in two thirds of the clinical cases and because they were present in most untreated cases in blood cultures taken over months Per week of clinical endocarditis the nonhemolytic streptococcus is probably ten times as frequent as any other organism or even all others together Occasionally nonhemolytic (gamma type) streptococci which cause no discoloration of hemoglobin and may be anaerobes are the infecting agent These are considered as enterogenous infections since such organisms are normally present in the bowel

Acute lesions due to pyogenic cocci affect less than 3 per cent of patients whose hearts or great vessels are the seat of congenital or rheumatic disease On the other hand, such lesions cause the dominant clinical features of the final illness of 0 2 to 0 4 per cent of patients coming to autopsy without congenital or rheumatic heart disease and in such cases the right side of the heart is not infrequently involved Thus acute bacterial endocarditis is clinically most often seen in patients who have had no previous heart disease, it is favored by fibrotic lesions but virulent organisms are by no means dependent on such chronic disorders for the opportunity to invade the heart

Quite different is the situation with regard to the subacute cases, most of which involve the left side of the heart and are due to nonhemolytic streptococci About one third of the cases of congenital heart disease surviving into childhood [1] and one fifth of the cases of chronic rheumatic valvular disease will have this complication eventually Chronic lesions on which the subacute bacterial disease is engrafted are grossly demonstrable in four out of five cases, and careful histologic study proves that fused

aortic cusps or unimposing rheumatic scars are present in most of the others Those with normal valves are more likely to have acute than streptococcal endocarditis Thus in subacute lesions the soil is the most important consideration etiologically and the organisms which flourish in this altered tissue are the streptococci which are commonly present in the mouth and gut They probably enter the blood stream of normal people in showers associated with such frequent incidents as colds acute gastro enteritis tooth extractions tonsillectomies [2] pelvic infections in both sexes and even with no clinical symptoms of any sort The toothbrush probably scratches these organisms into the gingival veins and lymphatics and not all of them are disposed of before reaching the left ventricle In acute endocarditis, the virulence of the organisms and the effects of their toxins in injuring the endocardium are more important than the soil which may or may not have been prepared by previous disease

While infected emboli lodging in the vessels which are present in scarred valves or beneath the endocardium are a potential cause for these lesions it seems certain that the valvular lesions at least are due to lodgement of bacteria in the minute platelet thrombi which occur along the lines of closure of the valves or at places where defects cause unusual stream or soft tissue friction Such bland thrombi are most frequently found on valves altered by sclerotic or fibrotic lesions and where there are such con genital defects as fused aortic cusps patent interventricular septa or a ductus arteriosus Similar vegetations may occur in arteriovenous fistulae These bland thrombi are more likely to form when the endocardium is injured by nutritional defects toxemia or wasting disease Such thrombi are usually only of microscopic dimensions, but they may form fine vegetations and such small sterile warty lesions are far more common in wasting diseases than terminal subacute bacterial endocarditis The sites where these sterile and minute thrombi form are also the favored sites for bacterial endocarditis

Once the latter disease is established the blood stream constantly con tains organisms and small thrombi and if valves were normally vascularized intravalvular emboli would soon set up progressive lesions of all four valves As a matter of fact the disease is usually found on all scarred valves in the old rheumatic cases and only on one if the others are free of fibrotic change Kissing lesions at points where two leaflets touch and spread along lines of closure are common findings but evidence for em bolic invasion of valves is absent even when embolic lesions are numerous in skin viscera, the brain and as mycotic aneurysms in the walls of ar teries While the lesions are occasionally confined to the walls of the heart (parietal as contrasted with valvular endocarditis) it is remarkable that the large mural thrombi which follow myocardial infarcts rarely become infected Cases in which syphilitic lesions have prepared the soil for bac terial endocarditis are also uncommon [11] In elderly patients ulcerated sclerotic lesions occasionally become the seat of bacterial endocarditis but many of the cases are not clinically significant being terminal infections of patients severely ill from other causes

Etiology About twenty varieties of microbes have been isolated from lesions of the endocardium Streptococci of many types predominate other cocci of all sorts are not infrequent while the bacilli range from tubercle and influenza, to diphtheroids, virulent diphtheria organisms, Brucella, Eberthella Salmonella Klebsiella, Pseudomonas, and others With most of the rare types, implantation on the heart valves or the endocardium of the walls is merely an unusual complication of the illness usually caused by the specific bacterium A case of pneumonia is complicated by or followed by pneumococcus endocarditis or a gonorrheal urethritis is followed by gonococcal lesions on the heart valves, and the new disease thus established overshadows that from which it developed In a few cases due to nearly all these organisms, and in most of those due to the nonhemolytic streptococci, no febrile illness precedes the manifestations of bacterial endocarditis which seems to strike 'out of the blue'

The infections with gonococcus and meningococcus rarely run a slow subacute course those due to nonhemolytic streptococci and the influenza bacillus only occasionally are acute, but it is incorrect to consider subacute or slow endocarditis as synonymous with Streptococcus viridans endocarditis The sharp lines drawn on the basis of etiology cut across the vague and arbitrary borders of acute or subacute types of disease Various types of the Streptococcus viridans (that is, aerobic streptococci which cause minimal hemolysis, but some change in color of hemoglobin alpha type streptococcus) dominate the bacteriology of this disease because they occur in two thirds of the clinical cases, and because they were present in most untreated cases in blood cultures taken over months Per week of clinical endocarditis the nonhemolytic streptococcus is probably ten times as frequent as any other organism or even all others together Occasionally, nonhemolytic (gamma type) streptococci which cause no discoloration of hemoglobin and may be anaerobes are the infecting agent These are considered as enterogenous infections since such organisms are normally present in the bowel

Acute lesions due to pyogenic cocci affect less than 3 per cent of patients whose hearts or great vessels are the seat of congenital or rheumatic disease On the other hand such lesions cause the dominant clinical features of the final illness of 0 2 to 0 4 per cent of patients coming to autopsy without congenital or rheumatic heart disease, and in such cases the right side of the heart is not infrequently involved Thus, acute bacterial endocarditis is clinically most often seen in patients who have had no previous heart disease, it is favored by fibrotic lesions but virulent organisms are by no means dependent on such chronic disorders for the opportunity to invade the heart

Quite different is the situation with regard to the subacute cases most of which involve the left side of the heart and are due to nonhemolytic streptococci About one third of the cases of congenital heart disease surviving into childhood [1] and one fifth of the cases of chronic rheumatic valvular disease will have this complication eventually Chronic lesions, on which the subacute bacterial disease is engrafted, are grossly demonstrable in four out of five cases, and careful histologic study proves that fused

coccal endocarditis They had many organisms in the vegetations demonstrable by culture as well as on direct examination after death These organisms were often close to the surface or on the surface of the vegetations and not simply buried in its depths Their failure to grow from the blood merely shows what high bacteriostatic properties the blood possessed, and how ineffective this was in arresting the disease or acting on organisms in the thrombi Nevertheless a few untreated patients with acute and subacute endocarditis occasionally became free of bacteria and completely healed scars were found at autopsy, often with no history of an illness recognizable as bacterial endocarditis

Incidence Clinically recognizable cases occur from childhood to senility, but there is a sharp peak in incidence between puberty and the early forties In older people the anatomical incidence is still high into the sixties but many of these either are terminal lesions in other fatal illnesses or are of brief clinical duration, dominated by embolic phenomena which can scarcely be distinguished from the vascular accidents due to degenerative disease Bacterial endocarditis singles out the well compensated cases of healed rheumatic heart disease, and the functionally unimportant congenital lesions When patients with heart disease decompensate they often have marked malnutrition and obvious damage to the respiratory and digestive tracts Yet such patients even when in miserable physical condition retain a remarkable resistance to bacterial invasion of the heart Even in cases of auricular fibrillation without congestive failure bacterial endocarditis is uncommon [1] probably because of the lessened trauma to the mitral valves when with the abolishment of presystolic auricular contraction the closure of the mitral valve takes place more gently and the loud snapping first sound becomes much softer Severe congestive failure in cases of endocarditis may be precipitated by bacterial destruction of valve leaflets without arresting the progress of the endocardial infection but congestive failure plays some role in preventing bacterial endocarditis even though powerless to arrest its progress

While there are some who believe this disease is more frequent than formerly a comparison of Harbitz s report (Norway 1886 96 1700 autopsies) with that of Ophuls (California 1900 1923 3000 autopsies) and with our own records for California (1934 38 2300 autopsies) indicates no striking change in relation to total autopsies or to chronic rheumatic heart lesions over a period of fifty years and from 36 to 60 north latitude Clinical recognition is more frequent and each case is probably seen by a larger number of physicians than in the early decades of the history of the disease Marked variations in annual incidence may have occurred in some localities as suggested by Musser [12]

Recognition Few diseases assume so varied a clinical course or conceal their true nature more completely behind some sequel appearing to be an unrelated disorder Yet the untreated disease followed this pattern A young or middle aged person gradually notices a constant disinclination for food, work and play and may be aware of fever irregular or occurring in the afternoon He (or she since the disease is almost as frequent in women) may be unaware of any heart lesion or may have almost forgotten

the diagnosis made on some prior occasion, at any rate, cardiac symptoms do not obtrude on his consciousness Tenderness or clubbing of finger tips, or petechial lesions may be noted by the patient He may finally take to bed on his physician s orders rather than because he feels quite unable to be up Thus begins a steady failure not unlike that of phthisis or neoplastic disease, but complicated toward the end by embolic accidents—palsies abdominal pain, acute bowel obstruction, pain and loss of function in arm or leg There is usually anemia a normal or moderately elevated white blood count, rapid sedimentation of blood, slight proteinuria, rarely purpura due to thrombocytopenia

The distinctive features which suggest the diagnosis are the auscultatory abnormalities in the heart a slight splenic enlargement, clubbed fingers petechiae and red cell casts or an abnormally large number of red cells in the urine The latter may be demonstrable only when timed urine specimens are examined under constant conditions, and the auscultatory findings may not be very striking—merely a systolic murmur somewhat harsher than is to be expected of a functional murmur due to fever If there are definite diastolic murmurs or a basal systolic thrill the existence of an organic lesion and its probable relation to the febrile illness are at once apparent

In some cases where only an apical systolic murmur is first evident, one must have the patient lie supine and *a little on the left side while listening at the apex and about the apical region, in order to hear a diastolic or presystolic murmur* Or it may be revealed when the pulse is slowed by pressure on the carotid bulb The murmur of mitral stenosis, especially in this group of patients often is difficult to detect but repeated search under various conditions serves to prove that some of the harsh systolic murmurs or very sharp loud first sounds have a diastolic element associated with them Repeated search for conjunctival and buccal petechiae as well as for those on the skin and the observation of clubbing of the fingers must also be stressed in the physical examination

Normal heart size and normal roentgen contours do not rule out bacterial endocarditis but slight cardiac enlargement and abnormal contour like a harsh systolic murmur may suggest or confirm the diagnosis of organic heart disease on which bacterial infection might be superimposed The constant search for petechiae the repeated and painstaking examination of urine for red cells, and of the abdomen for splenomegaly are of particular importance *when the blood cultures are negative as is true in about one of eight cases carefully studied over long periods of time* and in a larger proportion of cases when casual use of antibiotics has preceded the blood cultures When the cultures are negative embolic phenomena petechiae, glomerulonephritis and splenomegaly in various combinations sooner or later serve to confirm the diagnosis suggested by fever and auscultatory abnormality

While these classical cases, with or without positive culture are usually suspected on first examination and proved within a few days the others may for weeks escape detection even by the experienced diagnostician and the patients die before the condition is recognized Some of the pitfalls are best

emphasized by contrasting cases of bacterial endocarditis with other types of disease with which they may be confused The following cases were seen before the era of penicillin, and show the natural course of the disease

Severe Gonococcal Arthritis Bacterial Endocarditis Erroneous Diagnosis of Coronary Thrombosis A widow of fifty two developed polyarthritis with fever at times After several months she suddenly had substernal distress and congestive heart failure with pulmonary edema and hepatic tenderness The heart sounds were muffled and the rate about 150 when she was brought to the hospital no definite murmur was recognized She died within three days of the cardiac accident and at autopsy was found to have a mild endocervicitis and gonococcal endocarditis with destruction of one entire aortic leaflet

Comment A genteel social position and the relatively benign course of the polyarthritis clouded the recognition of gonococcal infection the stormy onset of cardiac symptoms suggested myocardial infarction in severe heart failure with rapid rate and gallop sounds the diagnosis of valve lesions is particularly difficult

Pneumococcal Endocarditis Mistaken for Empyema A man of fifty six had a severe and prolonged bout of pneumonia probably bronchopneumonia although rather extensive in the right upper and middle lobes The tempera ture never fell to normal but began to fluctuate in the second week after a few days in which it rose only to 37 5 C (99 6 F) The roentgen examination still showed haziness on the right and though there were no definite physical signs thoracentesis was repeatedly attempted A systolic murmur heard throughout his illness became more harsh the heart shadow larger Blood culture positive for pneumococcus was obtained on the day of death the mitral valve was the seat of many cauliflower like vegetations and many chordae tendinae were broken

These examples taken from cases of rapidly progressive endocarditis due to other organisms than Streptococcus viridans illustrate certain diagnostic difficulties The following case due to Streptococcus viridans shows that rapid progress or acute endocarditis may be due to that organism as well as to those usually considered far more virulent

Onset of Endocarditis Simulating Typhoid Fever A man of thirty two was on his vacation in the country and at the end of three weeks began to have headache anorexia and prostration Fever was noted on two evenings and he returned to his home city entered a hospital He was apathetic had a fever which ran between 39 and 39 8 C (102 to 103 5 F) but a pulse rate of 100 There was a rather harsh systolic murmur in the pulmonic area which the patient knew had been noted many years before The white count was 6800 blood culture and Widal negative The spleen was palpable two days later but on the fifth day a second culture yielded many colonies of Streptococcus viridans The patient was taken to his home died in less than a month of the onset of symptoms There was no autopsy The diagnosis was patent ductus arteriosus bacterial endocarditis

In this case toxemia was more marked and the clinical duration shorter than in many cases of meningococcus or gonococcus endocarditis Today, such a case would be treated by ligation of the ductus and with penicillin

Undiagnosed Endocarditis Hemiplegia In a girl aged eighteen latent glomerulonephritis with slowly rising blood pressure was followed for three

years at twenty one the pressure was 140/100 blood urea 50 The patient had a tooth extracted and next day had nausea headache blurred vision She felt achy and ate poorly three weeks after the extraction she suddenly developed left hemiplegia On entry two days later there was a spastic paralysis a loud systolic apical murmur scattered retinal hemorrhages blood pressure 140/80 temperature 39 8° C (103 5 F) There was a leukocytosis of 42 000 secondary anemia with hemoglobin 55 per cent (Sahli) Blood urea 70 mg per cent She died four weeks after the tooth extraction presumably of a cerebrovascular accident On the mitral valve there were two small vegetations with one ulceration through the leaflet and there were infarcts in brain spleen and kidney Smears of the vegetations showed streptococci in short chains

Undiagnosed Endocarditis Uremia Mistaken Diagnosis of Gastric Carcinoma or Visceral Purpura A printer forty four years old had had rheumatic fever at seventeen and later had been refused insurance because of heart trouble He came to the surgeons because of hemorrhoids but he also was very thin and had bleeding gums as well as classical signs of mitral stenosis However the hemorrhoids were excised on March 11th and he was seen every few weeks to June 6th because of rectal discomfort On July 20th a friend arranged to have him enter the hospital and then it was learned he had begun to have mid epigastric pain one hour after meals soon after the hemorrhoidectomy For a month he had been vomiting once or more daily the vomitus was sometimes blood streaked He was very weak at times disoriented The temperature during the six days between entry and death varied between 35 8 and 37 C (96 6 and 98 6 F) the pulse was 70 to 80 on entry rising to 140 on the day of his death His blood pressure, which was 160/90 at the time of his entry in March was now only 110/70 There were many bruises purpuric spots and petechiae on the skin purpuric spots on conjunctivae and in the mouth bleeding gums a red count of only 2 8 M hemoglobin 43 per cent white count 13 000 platelets 60 000 Several examiners at this time could detect only a systolic apical murmur and discounted the surgeons diagnosis of mitral stenosis The liver and spleen were palpable the liver tender and the urine contained much protein many red cells and white cells By x ray a 40 per cent six hour gastric residue and some irregularity of the first part of the duodenum were noted The heart was not enlarged the left auricle a little prominent Transfusions failed to help and he was comatose for a day before his death The blood urea reported after death was 480 mg per cent At autopsy there was a healed and calcified rheumatic mitral endocarditis with very little stenosis vegetations containing streptococci on one leaflet embolism of the left coronary artery with a myocardial infarct severe diffuse acute glomerulonephritis

It is possible that in some of these cases correct diagnosis would not have altered the outcome although it would in one case have prevented repeated thoracentesis in another wearisome gastrointestinal x ray studies and hematological investigations for purpura

Among the conditions with which bacterial endocarditis is likely to be confused are Hodgkin s disease, bone abscess undulant fever pyelitis cardiac or pulmonary infarction, meningococcemia and many others Rheumatic carditis and disseminated lupus erythematosus are the two conditions most often confused with subacute bacterial endocarditis The latter may be complicated by uremia by a cardiac infarct or cerebral acci

dent which overshadows the real cause of trouble it may run an afebrile course with anemia and hepatosplenomegaly simulating cirrhosis or lymphoma *Positive blood cultures may lead to an incorrect diagnosis* of bacterial endocarditis in cases of meningococcemia pylephlebitis sinus thrombosis, infected arteriovenous fistula suppurative arthritis and even pyelitis or pelvic vein infections

Less common than failure to recognize an endocardial infection is an erroneous diagnosis of bacterial endocarditis when the septic focus is not in the heart but the latter error is extremely serious since it prevents the use of therapy which might successfully combat the actual cause of the fever and bacteremia It is not enough to be on the lookout for bacterial endocarditis and take blood cultures in all patients having fever not clearly due to some other disease only a painstaking history and physical examination with indicated laboratory studies will bring to light the other causes of bacteremia in which antibiotic therapy may fail if a suppurative focus is not attacked directly And such a study and careful analysis of evidence are necessary to confirm the diagnosis of endocarditis in the bacteria free stage Patients with bacteria free endocarditis if untreated face the same unhappy outcome as those with constantly positive cultures[37] and the endocarditis may be arrested by therapy

Disseminated Lupus Erythematosus Recognition of lupus disseminatus has been made more precise by discovery of the phenomenon of nucleoprotein engorged leukocytes (L E cells) in bone marrow and in preparations of shed blood The Snapper ring preparation and other technics have greatly increased the sensitivity and dependability of this method of laboratory diagnosis The butterfly lesion of the face formerly an important clue to the diagnosis of lupus erythematosus is now known to be transient or entirely missing in patients having the classical renal glomerular lesion polyserositis and the curious endocardial vegetations on the ventricular rather than the atrial side of the mitral leaflets These lesions with peculiar arteritis myocarditis and necroses in lymph nodes are found in various combinations in disseminated lupus

Such patients are treated as cardiac patients because of pericarditis or as patients having renal disease because they have marked proteinuria hematuria and cylindruria with rising blood urea levels Most often however their affection simulates rheumatoid or rheumatic fever with joint pains and swellings Leukopenia is a very common finding and systolic murmurs at the apex pericardial rubs and myocardial failure are not uncommon The disease has spontaneous remissions and exacerbations skin lesions and fever may flare up after exposure to the sun and subside on treatment with salicylate Occasionally even the most sensitive L E preparations give negative response in the early phases of a disease the reaction becoming positive after weeks or many months False positive serologic reactions for syphilis may precede appearance of L E positivity The disease is controlled by adequate prednisone or cortisone therapy and usually flares up as the dose is decreased or cut Some patients however have experienced long remissions after two to four years of control by corticoid compounds remaining in good health with no therapy Since the

disease is uninfluenced by antibiotic therapy, it is of great importance to exclude the possibility of disseminated lupus erythematosus when studying patients suspected of having subacute bacterial endocarditis

Rheumatoid Arthritis with Valvular Disease or Aortitis In rheumatoid arthritis, and especially in the patients with spondylitis (Marie Strumpell disease), either aortitis with aortic insufficiency, or actual valvulitis leading to aortic or mitral murmurs occurs not infrequently Usually these patients are chronically ill and sometimes afebrile when cardiac features appear but occasionally fever vague joint pains, leukocytosis, rapid sedimentation rate, and cardiac signs have led to the suspicion of bacterial endocarditis and even to treatment in the absence of positive blood cultures Films of the spine may reveal no abnormality even when backache is severe, the earliest roentgen evidence is found in the sacroiliac synchondrosis which becomes altered and even ankylosed before the vertebral bodies show roentgen changes In this disorder also corticoid therapy controls the clinical features and must be sustained for months or years

Rheumatic Fever Although acute rheumatic fever may occur in patients with active bacterial endocarditis and acute pyogenic invasion of valves during acute rheumatic carditis, these are extremely rare combinations and the usual problem is to distinguish active rheumatic fever from subacute bacterial endocarditis In active rheumatic fever the antistreptolysin titer is high and reactions to skin tests with streptococcal antigens are positive in bacterial endocarditis reactions to these tests are usually negative[10] Spleens are rarely palpable in acute rheumatic fever frequently in sub acute endocarditis The temperature charts leukocytosis sedimentation rates, C reactive proteins and responses to salicylate or corticoids may be the same in both diseases and in both there may be anemia cardiac mur murs and roentgen changes and latent heart failure may occur The electrocardiogram may show abnormality in both diseases, but A V heart block is not unusual in rheumatic carditis and is seen in bacterial endo carditis only when aortic inflammation extends into the septum Embolic phenomena are very rare in rheumatic carditis, but purpuric lesions can occur and be mistaken for embolic lesions of mucous membranes Clear cut embolic phenomena or hemorrhagic Bright s disease usually mean that the condition is not rheumatic fever and restrict the diagnostic possibilities to bacterial endocarditis and periarteritis In the latter, eosinophilia may occur this is very rare in bacterial endocarditis

Types of Endocarditis In acute bacterial endocarditis high fever and leukocytosis multiple hemorrhagic lesions of nail beds skin and mucous membranes are frequent and sudden change in murmurs with onset of heart failure follows ulcerative destruction of leaflets The initial culture is usually positive for pyogenic organisms, and since delay in treatment is fatal, intensive penicillin treatment by vein is started after blood for two separate cultures has been drawn In the subacute disease clubbed fingers tender spots on fingers and palpable spleen may appear as well as petechiae on skin or mucous membranes but repeated complete examina tions are essential in order to detect these transient lesions While most cases are due to streptococci cultures may reveal such organisms as Hemo-

philus influenzae coagulase negative staphylococci or coliform organisms The type of endocarditis seen by a physician depends on what sort of patients he has in his wards In private practice the alpha streptococcal infections exceed the usually quoted figure of 85 per cent in municipal wards one sees more than 15 per cent of acute staphylococcal and other pyogenic invaders Among narcotic addicts using intravenous injections involvement of the *right side of the heart* and unusual organisms of low virulence cause special problems in diagnosis and management

Treatment of Patients with Positive Blood Cultures Penicillin in the dosage originally tested under Federal auspices—200 000 units daily for fifteen days—cured almost half of the patients having alpha streptococcal infections but courses of ten to fourteen days now are limited to those with organisms sensitive to less than 0 5 unit per ml The recommended course[17] is 600 000 units each six hours with 1 gm streptomycin or dihydro streptomycin each twelve hours for five days 1 gm each day thereafter Relapse rates in patients on this regimen barely exceed 5 per cent but many physicians prefer three to four week courses even for these The adjuvant action of streptomycin helpful in such cases is essential with more resistant strains and especially with enterococci the heat resistant Lancefield D strains

When resistance of streptococci to penicillin is in the range of 5 to 40 units per ml the courses are lengthened to six weeks usually from the time fever drops under therapy and the penicillin dose best given by continuous intravenous infusion is 20 million units daily Dosage up to 100 million units daily has been effectively given in cases with high resistance If 0 5 gm probenecid is given every six hours by mouth blood levels are about doubled and dosage can be halved Two grams of streptomycin or dihydro streptomycin divided in four daily doses is given for two or three weeks half that dose for the rest of the course A total of 100 mg heparin per twenty four hours in the infusion reduces trouble due to thrombosis about indwelling plastic catheters but anticoagulant levels of heparin are not desirable and are dangerous should cerebral or splenic infarction occur

A special problem occurs in penicillin sensitive patients seen more frequently each year Desensitization as with horse serum sensitive patients with diphtheria or tetanus is usually preferable to use of less effective antibiotics Desensitization can be accomplished by starting with 10 units intravenously and increasing five or tenfold every twenty minutes Epinephrine is kept on hand for use if serious reactions occur Pyribenzamine priming and continued dosage reduce skin reactions and corticoids also may be useful or necessary at the start of such a course Even in patients not showing any other sensitivity to penicillin low grade fever is not unusual but fortunately it comes on after the initial fall when therapy is effective and is rarely associated with any clinical symptoms—the patients feel well and have good appetites and the fever falls when the treatment is ended at the determined time for the type of infection Raising dosage usually increases the fever which must not be confused with persistent infection

Staphylococci occur in about 10 per cent of cases of endocarditis, and only occasionally are these organisms highly sensitive to penicillin and treatment is effective with six week courses of 40 million units a day if resistance is 0 5 to 2 u /ml 3 million units a day if under 0 5 u /ml[8] Tests for sensitivity to tetracycline (Aureomycin, Terramycin and Tetracyn being regarded as entirely similar antibiotics), chloramphenicol, erythromycin, novobiocin and vancomycin must be run on strains resistant to over 2 u /ml When the organism is sensitive to less than 2 gamma of tetracycline per ml , the average dose is 500 mg every six hours by mouth, for six weeks after a good clinical response to 10 mg /kg , given intravenously every eight hours has been obtained With chloramphenicol sensitivity to 4 gamma per ml or less the same schedule may be followed but good results are reported from giving 6 gm by mouth, followed by 1 gm every four hours until a good clinical response is evident then 1 gm every six hours for six weeks Dosage schedules for the other antibiotics mentioned should be carefully planned (vancomycin can only be given intravenously) and all these agents are given in four to six week courses, with maximal tolerated daily dose Bacitracin has marked and, to some extent, irreversible nephrotoxic action and is used only with great caution when no other agent is effective Combining heavy penicillin dosage with the bacteriostatic agents—tetracycline chloramphenicol erythromycin or novobiocin —is not advisable theoretically but may prove effective in some resistant cases Bacitracin is effective with penicillin and combinations of two bacteriostatic agents are effective

About 5 per cent of cases of bacterial endocarditis are due to all other pyogens Pneumococcal and meningococcal endocarditis both often accompanied by meningitis can be controlled by penicillin, but valvular damage quickly becomes irreversible, so that swift institution of massive therapy (4 million units/day for first week, 2 million/day for two to four weeks more) is imperative No sensitivity tests are needed and in suspected cases treatment should be started as soon as blood for two separate blood cultures has been drawn In meningococcal sepsis Dowling recommends 10 million units of penicillin intravenously the first day, with full dosage of sulfadiazine to control meningeal invasion [8] Beta streptococcal infections also are acute and rapidly destructive and demand similar therapy Sensitivity must be checked as rare enterococci are hemolytic and require streptomycin in addition Gonococcal endocarditis responds well to the aforementioned dosage schedule but here too, prompt institution of therapy is necessary Even with the best treatment valvular damage in all these acute endocarditides is rapid and heart failure occurs in almost one half the patients whose lesions are sterilized

In Brucella endocarditis, sensitivity need not be tested Two grams of tetracycline daily for four weeks with 1 gm streptomycin for two weeks, half that for the next two weeks is the standard and very effective treatment

With other infections the following sensitivity tests are in order treatment being given for six weeks with the maximal tolerated dosage during the first days to secure clinical remission Escherichia coli Aerobacter and

Salmonella—tetracycline chloramphenicol and streptomycin Proteus—tetracycline chloramphenicol, novobiocin and penicillin Pseudomonas—tetracycline chloramphenicol and polymyxin

In alpha streptococcal infections, the death rate from heart failure embolic accidents and other causes may be as high as 10 per cent before a course of therapy is completed, and over 15 per cent from heart failure in the first year In the other types of infection the initial and delayed death rates are two to three times as high as in subacute streptococcal endo carditis Because each 10 million units of penicillin has the equivalent of 1 gm NaCl or KCl, sodium penicillin must be avoided in heart failure and potassium penicillin must be avoided in renal failure suitable diets should be used in all such cases

Management of Suspected Endocarditis with Negative Blood Cultures

When blood cultures are negative in patients with persistent unexplained fever with known valvular heart disease or with systolic murmurs and a history of recent tooth extraction or respiratory infection the possibility of streptococcal endocarditis with negative cultures must be conceded If some antibiotic therapy has been given before blood cultures are prepared the probability is increased but even before antibiotics were used nearly 10 per cent of patients with proved streptococcal endocarditis were bac teria free for long periods of active febrile disease

When blood for half a dozen cultures has been drawn other causes for fever have been excluded and a good temperature curve has been estab lished therapy may be started I consider this wise even when petechiae and embolic lesions are absent and the differential diagnosis suggests the possibility of Hodgkin s disease or lymphoma The latter is incurable and does not respond to penicillin streptomycin therapy so it is better to start treatment on doubtful cases in the hope that the presence of the curable disease will be proved by the response to treatment

The treatment schedule may be that recommended earlier in this sec tion for alpha streptococci or enterococci of low sensitivity but I prefer to start the therapy with 2 gm of mixed streptomycin daily, and 200 000 units of procaine penicillin every six hours If there is a prompt clinical remission the dose is raised to one million units every six hours and the treatment ended in three weeks In such cases a relatively sensitive organism *presumably is present When no clinical response is seen by the* fourth day the dose schedule of 40 million units a day is started, and if there is then a clinical remission the course is continued for six weeks with 1 gm streptomycin daily after the end of two weeks treatment with 2 gm daily

When there is no response to massive therapy of this sort the chance of subacute disease due to Brucella or other organisms is very small but a trial of tetracycline and streptomycin for Brucella or of chloramphenicol therapy in full dosage is justifiable for at least one week If that fails and other signs of endocardial infection particularly embolic lesions are occurring bacitracin may be tried Since alpha streptococci cause more than 90 per cent of the bacteria free subacute cases the need for testing

other antibiotics rarely arises in the patients whose palpable spleen and embolic lesions leave no doubt about the nature of the disease

Relapse, Recurrence, Reinfection A cause for great concern is the problem of new manifestations of disease in a patient who has responded well to therapy Only when the same organism but with higher drug resistance is recovered during or soon after the initial course of treatment can one regard this as a relapse due to inadequate dosage and development of resistance In all such cases a new course, usually longer as well as more intense must be started

When the patient remains well for three months or more, and a similar organism with similar sensitivity is isolated one can speak of recurrence or reinfection If a different organism is isolated, there can be no question of anything but reinfection, even if this occurs during therapy Thus, staphylococcal infection may supervene in viridans endocarditis as a result of skin infections at injection sites One of our patients had a relapse about one month after only three weeks of treatment with 800 000 units of penicillin daily recovered completely with longer, more intensive treatment but a year later had a new infection with a different and far less sensitive strain Two years later the patient returned with an acute endocarditis due to beta streptococcus, sensitive to 0 02 units per ml Thus one relapse and two reinfections were observed, all successfully controlled

Prophylaxis In all recovered patients and in many well compensated people with valvular heart lesions prevention of bacterial endocarditis must be advised This centers on care of the teeth and use of penicillin whenever extensive dental work is undertaken The usual regimen is half a million units of procaine penicillin twelve to twenty four hours before extraction or treatment likely to cause extensive bleeding of gums and similar doses daily until four days after all bleeding has subsided After operations for hemorrhoids bowel resection or prostatectomy, infection with enterococci is to be feared and in such cases a million units of procaine penicillin and 1 gm of streptomycin should be given every twelve hours preceding the operation and until three days after all catheters packs or dressings have been removed and discharge has ceased

It is wise for such patients never to use stiff bristled tooth brushes and if they have extensive caries and a progressive series of extractions seems probable, it may be wisest to extract all teeth at one time with full prophylactic control There is evidence that endocarditis lenta develops less frequently in the edentulous [6] but routine extraction of all teeth is unwise During effective therapy of an attack of streptococcal endocarditis it is our custom to have all imminent dental or prostatic surgery completed during the second or third week of the six week course rather than have the patient's convalescence interrupted by further interventions

One curious result of our attention to clearing up lesions apt to cause trouble, or already causing symptoms has been to raise the morale of patient and family More than any reassurance as to effectiveness of modern therapy, the physician s concern about future well being impresses on the family and patient the fact that recovery is expected after a good initial response to therapy In all patients doing well, however meticulous

attention to salt restriction or depletion adequate and appetizing meals, examination of the sites of intramuscular injections and care for the patient s general well being are absolutely essential if one is to restore the maximum percentage to full recovery Confinement to bed should be limited only to those patients who are prostrated by fever and to the proper alternation of bed and chair in those who are afebrile so as to promote comfort and rest Patients who sit up for meals and even stroll a short distance to the bathroom usually do much better than those forcibly kept on ' complete bed rest "

REFERENCES

1 Abbott M E Ann Clin Med 4 189 (Sept) 1925
2 Feldman L and Trace I M Ann Int Med 11 2124 (June) 1938
3 Friedberg C K Gross L and Wallach K Arch Int Med 58 662 (Oct) 1936
4 Friedman M Katz L N and Howell K Arch Int Med 61 95 (Jan) 1938
5 Harbitz Francis Om Endokardit, dens pathologiske anatomi og Aetiologie Steen Kristiania 1897
6 Hobson F G and Juel Jensen B E Brit Med J 2 1501 1956
7 Keefer C S Ann Int Med 11 714 (Nov) 1937
8 Kellow W F and Dowling H F Arch Int Med 100 322 1957
9 Kinsella R A and Muether R O Arch Int Med 62 247 (Aug) 1938
10 Levine S A Clinical Heart Disease pp 184 and 194 W B Saunders Co Philadelphia 1936
11 Martin H E and Adams W L Jr Am Heart J 16 714 (Dec) 1938
12 Musser J H Ann Int Med 7 715 (Dec) 1933
13 Sampson J J Kerr W and Simpson M Arch Int Med 31 830 (June) 1923
14 Saphir O Am J Path 11 143 (Jan) 1935
15 Segal M S Am Heart J 11 309 (March) 1936
16 VonGlahn W C and Pappenheimer A M Arch Int Med 55 173 (Feb) 1935
17 Wydrin A Wien Arch f inn Med 25 231 1934

other antibiotics rarely arises in the patients whose palpable spleen and embolic lesions leave no doubt about the nature of the disease

Relapse, Recurrence Reinfection A cause for great concern is the problem of new manifestations of disease in a patient who has responded well to therapy Only when the same organism but with higher drug resistance, is recovered during or soon after the initial course of treatment can one regard this as a relapse due to inadequate dosage and development of resistance In all such cases, a new course, usually longer as well as more intense must be started

When the patient remains well for three months or more, and a similar organism with similar sensitivity is isolated, one can speak of recurrence or reinfection If a different organism is isolated, there can be no question of anything but reinfection even if this occurs during therapy Thus, staphylococcal infection may supervene in viridans endocarditis as a result of skin infections at injection sites One of our patients had a relapse about one month after only three weeks of treatment with 800 000 units of penicillin daily recovered completely with longer more intensive treatment but a year later had a new infection with a different and far less sensitive strain Two years later, the patient returned with an acute endocarditis due to beta streptococcus sensitive to 0 02 units per ml Thus one relapse and two reinfections were observed, all successfully controlled

Prophylaxis In all recovered patients and in many well compensated people with valvular heart lesions, prevention of bacterial endocarditis must be advised This centers on care of the teeth and use of penicillin whenever extensive dental work is undertaken The usual regimen is half a million units of procaine penicillin twelve to twenty four hours before extraction or treatment likely to cause extensive bleeding of gums and similar doses daily until four days after all bleeding has subsided After operations for hemorrhoids bowel resection or prostatectomy infection with enterococci is to be feared and in such cases a million units of pro caine penicillin and 1 gm of streptomycin should be given every twelve hours preceding the operation and until three days after all catheters packs or dressings have been removed and discharge has ceased

It is wise for such patients never to use stiff bristled tooth brushes and if they have extensive caries and a progressive series of extractions seems probable it may be wisest to extract all teeth at one time with full pro phylactic control There is evidence that endocarditis lenta develops less frequently in the edentulous,[6] but routine extraction of all teeth is unwise During effective therapy of an attack of streptococcal endocarditis, it is our custom to have all imminent dental or prostatic surgery completed during the second or third week of the six week course rather than have the patient s convalescence interrupted by further interventions

One curious result of our attention to clearing up lesions apt to cause trouble, or already causing symptoms has been to raise the morale of patient and family More than any reassurance as to effectiveness of modern therapy, the physician s concern about future well being impresses on the family and patient the fact that recovery is expected after a good initial response to therapy In all patients doing well, however, meticulous

WILLIAM R MINNICH, M D
AND
WILLIAM L PAULLIN, JR M D

9

Cardiovascular Syphilis

Introduction Syphilitic heart disease is a term which means primarily syphilis involving the aorta There are other parts of the cardiovascular system involved in this disease but the aorta is the portion which is most frequently damaged and which shows the earliest manifestations of syphilitic invasion

As early as 1728 Lancisi[8] and in 1761 Morgagni suspected the relationship existing between syphilis and aortic aneurysm but the real story of syphilitic aortitis was not written until 1876 when Francis H Welch of England described the gross and histological lesions found in this condition Dohle a pupil of Heller s, in 1885 wrote rather comprehensively on the subject and in 1907 Reuter[1] and Schmorl demonstrated the *Treponema pallidum* in lesions of syphilitic aortitis Since that time much confirmatory evidence has been produced showing the close relationship existing between syphilis and a certain type of pathological lesion occurring in the aorta Additional evidence of the part played by syphilis in this condition has been strengthened by the presence of a positive VDRL reaction occurring in the blood of so many patients with aortic involvement

Etiology The *Treponema pallidum* is the causative organism of syphilis At the time of primary infection the treponema enters the blood stream and is distributed generally throughout the body Curiously enough and for an equally unexplained reason the entire thoracic aorta seems to be an excellent site of invasion for these organisms they collect in the adventitia and the media and may lie seemingly dormant in this location for varying periods of time before producing signs or symptoms which would lead to their discovery The following case history represents a rather graphic illustration of an early and disastrous lesion

A Negro single male nineteen years of age was admitted to the hospital in great respiratory distress While dressing for work he suddenly developed marked shortness of breath and though he started to work he was unable to continue and returned home where he remained until twelve days after the onset of symptoms when he began to notice swelling of the face and one month afterward he was brought to the emergency clinic and admitted to the hospital in a rather severe state of shock There was a past history of sore throat at the age of seven without joint pains Seven months prior to the onset of his illness he had gonorrhea and a penile lesion At this time the *Treponema pallidum* was found in the exudate from this lesion

On physical examination the pulse rate was 100 blood pressure 140 over 56 He was a well developed Negro male propped up in bed in noticeable respiratory distress He was cyanotic and there was definite neck vein distention numerous moist rales were heard throughout both lungs and the heart was enlarged to the



Galen although ignorant of the circulation of the blood did not fail to recognize aneurysm and described two forms—the traumatic and the spontaneous The former no doubt represented the commoner type before the widespread appearance of syphilitic aortic aneurysm in 1495



Pare one of the greatest surgeons of all time noted and in 1582 wrote a detailed treatise upon the vital problem of his day—syphilis and its association with aneurysm



Vesalius about 1557 diagnosed both thoracic (and for the first time) abdominal aneurysms



Fernel first recognized internal aneurysms and suspected their relationship to syphilis as early as 1542 Later Lancisi (1728) emphasized this relationship and published a treatise on both aortic and cardiac aneurysms

left At the apex there was a pronounced diastolic thrill the first heart sound was loud and booming and was followed by a blowing systolic murmur transmitted upward and to the left The second sound was clear and snapping and was followed by a loud low pitched rumbling diastolic murmur Over the base of the heart there was a loud to and fro murmur the latter being the diastolic which was best heard in the second interspace to the right of the sternum The

systolic murmur at this area was loud rough and of a lower pitch than the diastolic murmur The first sound was completely replaced by the systolic murmur which was transmitted to the vessels of the neck The radial pulses were full and of the Corrigan type There was a distinct capillary pulse and pistol shot sounds were heard over both femoral arteries The liver was enlarged



FIGURE 1 Extensive syphilitic aortitis showing a marked treebark appearance of the aorta thickening with deformity of the commissures of the aortic valves producing aortic insufficiency Localized small areas of aortic dilatation

extending 5 cm below the costal border There was a scar on the shaft of the penis The VDRL was positive His course was rapidly downhill and he died three days after admission to the hospital

An autopsy was performed sixteen hours after death The heart was considerably enlarged dilated and very flabby The tricuspid mitral and pulmonic valves were normal The posterior leaflet of the aortic valve presented a perforation measuring approximately 0 8 cm in diameter It was thickened and firm The edges of the fenestration were friable and slightly injected At the attachment of the valve there was a small nodule which was swollen hard and firm Examination of the aorta just posterior to the leaflet showed a distinct swelling and tendency toward corrugation. Sections made through this area showed extensive involvement of the aorta from the intima through the media to the adventitia The intima was thick swollen and contained numerous round cells and fibroblasts The media was heavily scarred with fibrous tissue numerous small round cells and plasma cells showing their greatest collection about the blood vessels In the adventitia there were numerous fibroblasts lymphocytes

and plasma cells indicating a rather acute fulminating process probably syphilitic The interesting facts are that this patient received his primary infection with a positive dark field examination seven months prior to admission to the hospital He developed an acute aortic syphilis which involved only a small area in the aorta and also the posterior leaflet of the aortic valve causing gummatous degeneration of the valve with perforation and death

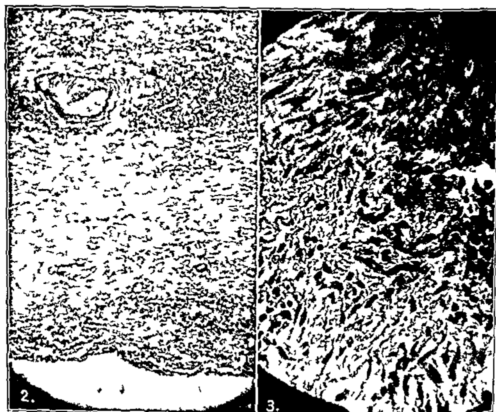


FIGURE 2 Low magnification of a section through the aorta showing infiltration of the adventitia with small round cells destruction of the elastic fibers of the media thickening of the walls of the vasa vasorum marked thickening and infiltration of the intima with small round cells

FIGURE 3 Higher magnification of degenerative changes occurring in the media

Prevalence and Distribution In the present day it is gratifying to see the incidence of this disease decreasing due largely to the efforts of private physicians and the Public Health Service who in addition to widely disseminating knowledge of syphilis have also established an acceptable method of treatment of the disease with adequate penicillin therapy Since 1949 the rate per 100,000 population has dropped from 197 3 to 87 5 in 1954 which in the light of past experience is a most noteworthy achievement Statistical data vary considerably as to the prevalence of the early involvement of those who have had syphilis Warthin[17] from postmortem experience is of the opinion that ninety per cent of those with syphilis showed definite aortitis Langer,[9] from the Virchow Krankenhaus found among 23,105 autopsies on syphilitic persons from seventy to eighty

per cent with cardiovascular involvement It is true that many of these lesions were minimal and could have been detected only at autopsy White[21] in 1933 found 2 8 per cent of syphilitic aortitis in 2100 autopsies at the Massachusetts General Hospital Cowan[7] and Faulds in 1929 report six per cent in 100 autopsies at Glasgow



FIGURE 4 Teleoroentgenogram of the heart showing marked saccular aneurysm of the aorta The heart is normal in size

The clinical recognition of syphilitic aortitis has not kept pace with the incidence discovered at autopsy despite the fact of a greater increase in the efficiency of diagnosis This, however, is easily explained when a large amount of autopsy material is studied, it is readily seen that it is an impossibility to detect from physical or other examination the minimal lesions of this infection Cochems[4] and Kemp found among 1000 individuals

with syphilis 12 7 per cent who had cardiovascular syphilis Turner among 6000 patients was able to recognize 10 1 per cent with cardiovascular involvement In 15 000 autopsies at the Philadelphia General Hospital, Welty[19] found cardiovascular syphilis in 6 93 per cent Maher,[24] Sittler, and Elliott discovered syphilitic heart disease in 9 7 per cent of 1000 patients seen in private practice In the cooperative[6] clinical studies among a group with late syphilis, there was an incidence of ten per cent in 6263 patients Congenital syphilis can produce cardiovascular degenerative changes affecting chiefly the myocardium, as was shown by numerous case reports These cases are of more academic than clinical interest since very few so infected survive for any length of time

Age and Race Cardiovascular syphilis is much more frequent in the South than in other parts of the United States largely because of the Negro population The factor of age in acquired cardiovascular syphilis is of some importance, as the manifestations usually occur from ten to twenty years after the primary lesion This places the greatest age incidence between thirty and fifty years, which is between the age groups of patients with rheumatic heart disease on the one hand and the group of those with arteriosclerotic or hypertensive heart disease on the other

The majority of cases are found in the fourth decade, with the fifth and third following closely There are of course, cases occurring in much younger and much older individuals In the Negro race either because of the lack of inherent racial immunity, or due to acquiring the disease earlier in life we find cardiovascular involvement occurring at a much younger period

Among the Whites as well as among the Negroes there will be approximately four males to one female This discrepancy is usually explained by the fact that men perform much more arduous work than women causing a more severe strain on the aorta However, one must not lose sight of the fact that the promiscuity of the male is much more than that of the female which makes him decidedly more liable to contract the disease

Social status is definitely related to the occurrence of syphilitic infection It is well known that the uneducated and ignorant races are much more prone to have the infection than people of higher intelligence It is of importance to recall that among the ignorant there is frequently no treatment for this infection, and adequate treatment is very rare Time and close observation alone will tell the effect which intensive penicillin therapy will have on the percentage of involvement of the cardiovascular system in syphilis

Pathology Involvement of the aorta is almost the universal lesion in latent syphilis The pathological picture of syphilitic aortitis is quite characteristc and very seldom mistaken for any other lesion It is one of marked cellular infiltration, involving as a rule all three layers of the aorta and along with this there is hyaline destruction of tissue with evidence of healing and replacement by fibrous tissue and formation of new blood vessels with resulting scarification

There are many different ideas advanced by various authorities as to the mode of infection Some think the Treponema is carried directly to the

aorta from the primary lesion and there sets up a chronic inflammatory lesion In support of their claims they cite the frequent findings of the Treponema in the aorta of patients who have died from other causes during early syphilitic infection

Klotz advanced the idea, with considerable evidence to support his view, that the Treponema passed to the aorta through the lymphatics of the mediastinum after having been trapped in the mediastinal lymph nodes where they produce a mediastinitis Saphir and Scott[13] and Backhaus are of the opinion that the end result, which is medial degeneration, is due to an endarteritis of the vasa vasorum produced by a proliferation of the cellular elements within these small blood vessels which interferes with the nutrition of the media

Gross examination of the aorta reveals well outlined elevated gray translucent patches which may be discrete or may coalesce to form larger areas These streaks or patches run lengthwise of the aorta and usually begin just above or at the aortic sinuses and proceed upward to the arch *involving it and occasionally the abdominal aorta, although in most cases* of syphilitic aortitis the process usually stops where the aorta passes through the diaphragm This is not always true for occasionally the abdominal aorta alone may be the only part involved Very rarely do these typical lesions degenerate and form ulcers The latter condition is more commonly found in atheromatous degeneration which may also be associated with syphilitic aortitis

If the inflammatory process involves the aorta around the ostia of the coronary arteries as it frequently does serious difficulties may arise It is of interest that the ostia of the coronary arteries may show extensive disease, yet very rarely will the disease progress further into the arteries themselves The microscopical picture is very characteristic In the adventitia and about the vasa vasorum in the media one finds a collection of small round singly nucleated cells with plasma cells and fibroblasts The infiltration beginning in the adventitia proceeds into the media where the blood vessels gradually become narrowed and almost completely obliterated The round cells the plasma cells and the fibroblasts so infiltrate the connective tissue and the elastic tissue that hyaline degenerative changes are most marked One can frequently see strands of elastic tissue that are broken and widely separated from each other and between these fibers there is evidenced an attempt at healing by replacement with connective tissue The cells of the intima increase in number and frequently form distinct ridges which project in the lumen of the aorta

In the media there occurs very frequently areas of necrosis with complete destruction of all formed elements These areas resemble small gummata As this destructive process continues the vessel wall becomes weakened and depending on the extent there may develop either a small or a large aneurysm Sometimes the media is completely replaced by fibrous tissue Should the destructive change proceed downward and involve the commissures of the aortic valve or should it involve the valve itself we find marked retraction scarification and shortening of the aortic cusps or dilatation of the aortic ring resulting in aortic insufficiency If the infection

is extensive and progresses more or less simultaneously, there is generalized thinning of the entire thoracic aorta, resulting in a general dilatation of the blood vessel, and a resultant aneurysmal dilatation The commonest complication of syphilitic aortitis is aortic insufficiency which is present in approximately fifty per cent of the patients who have been correctly diagnosed Very rarely is it seen early in the disease

With thickening of the intima a narrowing or partial obstruction of the branches of the aorta may occur This has been mentioned as occurring at the ostia of the coronary arteries the innominate the subclavian, the intercostal, and the carotid arteries may likewise be involved

Symptoms A striking feature of syphilitic aortitis is its latency As a rule, there are no symptoms early in the disease, and even later, there may be no manifestations The early diagnosis of cardiovascular syphilis resolves itself therefore, into the early recognition of latent infection of the aorta, which would seldom be necessary if every patient with primary syphilis received early and adequate treatment When it is possible to make a clinical diagnosis of aortitis, we have seen from the discussion of the pathology of the disease that much irreparable damage has been done

Symptoms generally speaking result from involvement of the aorta in one of three ways (1) The aortic valve or its commissures becomes diseased resulting in incompetency which leads to cardiac hypertrophy, dilatation, and finally congestive failure (2) dilatation of the aorta either diffuse or saccular with or without symptoms, due to pressure on adjacent organs (3) involvement of the ostia of the coronary arteries, resulting in myocardial ischemia The two outstanding symptoms for which the majority of patients seek relief are substernal oppression and pain, or paroxysmal attacks of dyspnea

In the early cases pain is not severe, and is usually noticed only after strenuous exertion It seldom radiates and is localized beneath the upper part of the sternum it is not an agonizing pain but more a pressure or burning sensation which lasts for a short time and which, as soon as there is a period of rest completely disappears The pain frequently is associated with mild dyspnea or a slight nonproductive cough In an otherwise healthy individual who has been free from substernal discomfort the onset of pain, in the absence of hypertension with a positive VDRL should make one suspicious of luetic aortic involvement When the ostia of the coronary arteries are involved there may occur the typical symptoms of coronary insufficiency

Physical Signs Because of the latency of the manifestations of cardiovascular syphilis there may be no physical signs whatsoever and only too frequently is the evidence discovered at postmortem examination On the other hand with involvement of the aorta one may occasionally find rather obvious signs of the disease These physical signs are those of arotic dilatation, which were described so clearly and distinctly by McCrae [3] in 1910 These consist very briefly in (1) An increase in the percussed area of dulness over the upper part of the sternum The heart in practically every uncomplicated case of syphilitic aortitis is normal in size and there is no hypertension (2) In a number of cases there may be seen pulsation

in the first and second interspaces to the right of the sternum or in the suprasternal notch with this there may be observed a slight thrusting forward of the upper part of the sternum (3) Over the aortic area one frequently hears a soft systolic murmur which is transmitted to the vessels of the neck (4) Of greatest importance is the loud amphoric tambour like aortic second sound heard best to the right of the sternum in the second interspace When obtained this is an extremely characteristic and valuable sign, perhaps the most valuable and differs in quality from that heard in patients with hypertension It is generally stated that this is present in practically all patients with aortic insufficiency

Additional information may be obtained by a fluoroscopic examination of the heart and aorta An experienced observer can easily detect widening of the aorta with an increase of aortic pulsation In a patient with an aneurysm the roentgen ray furnishes the deciding evidence in the diagnosis and by its employment one can frequently detect not only one but several saccular dilatations

The electrocardiogram gives very little additional aid in making a diagnosis Smith[1] and Blackford studied tracings made from 128 patients with *syphilitic aortic incompetency and in comparing these with 900 tracings* made from patients with other types of heart disease found that the following changes occurred with significantly greater frequency in the syphilitic group (a) Intraventricular conduction defects (b) left axis deviation (c) low voltage T wave (d) S T segment deviation Arrhythmia was rare Transient auricular fibrillation occurred in only 3 1 per cent of the syphilitic group

Blood tests are of considerable value in establishing the presence or absence of syphilis One must realize however that these tests are positive in approximately only eighty per cent of patients with syphilitic aortitis and that if the blood reaction is negative one should not entirely dismiss the diagnosis of syphilitic aortitis

Complications It is unfortunately too true that a great number of patients with cardiovascular syphilis are undiagnosed until some of the three complications arise The diagnosis then is quite evident but the patient has reached that stage of the disease when all chances of a cure have gone and when all one can hope for is to salvage as much as possible from the wreckage by prolonging life with adequate treatment directed toward the care of the patient his heart and his syphilis

AORTIC INSUFFICIENCY

This is the commonest complication observed and occurs with a variable degree of frequency in different hospitals, depending greatly on the clientele During a four year period among 224 patients with cardiovascular syphilis admitted to the Emory University Division of Grady Hospital 142 or sixty three per cent had aortic incompetency

Pure *aortic insufficiency occurring between the ages of thirty and sixty* years among Whites and at an earlier age in Negroes in the absence of a history of rheumatic fever arteriosclerosis or hypertension is practically always due to syphilis

ANEURYSM

This is the next most frequent complication of cardiovascular syphilis To understand the significance of this complication, one must bear in mind that an aneurysmal dilatation may occur at any place in the aorta and be of any size On the medical service of the Emory University Division of Grady Hospital, there is practically no place in the aorta where we have not seen an aneurysm and these have varied in size from 1 to 2 cm , to 15 to 20 cm in diameter They occur most frequently in the ascending portion of the aorta and the aortic arch Next in frequency is the descending and abdominal aorta Aneurysms are accompanied in about ten per cent of cases with aortic insufficiency Depending on their size and location, they may be with or without symptoms and are frequently discovered only at postmortem examination

Among our group of 224 patients with cardiovascular syphilis, there were 54 or twenty four per cent, with aneurysms

ANEURYSM OF THE ASCENDING AORTA

These are usually small and occur intrapericardially The aneurysms originate most frequently in the aortic sinuses but may occur in any portion of the aorta There are usually no associated symptoms or physical signs unless the aneurysm ruptures with a resulting hemopericardium or increases sufficiently in size to compress surrounding structures such as the pulmonary artery On rare occasions these aneurysms may become so large that the heart is displaced downward and to the left

The following case history illustrates the devastating effect of the rupture of a small aneurysm producing sudden death in an otherwise healthy active colored male

This forty-one year old waiter was admitted to the hospital in obvious shock and complaining of pain in his chest He had always been well with the exception of six injections in his arm for bad blood several years previously On the morning of admission he had noted a vague pain in the upper part of his right chest He ate a hearty breakfast and reported for work at 1 00 o clock At 2 00 o clock he developed a sudden intense pain in the midline of his chest just beneath the manubrium radiating downward toward the abdomen and finally becoming very intense in the lower anterior chest and upper abdomen.

Physical examination revealed a normally nourished male in profound shock with an unobtainable blood pressure cyanosis distant heart sounds feeble but equal peripheral pulses and right upper abdominal tenderness and rigidity Urinalysis revealed a three-plus albumen The leukocyte count was normal The Wassermann reaction was strongly positive

Morphine and local measures were of no benefit and the patient died twelve hours after the onset of pain

Autopsy revealed a diffusely dilated ascending aorta and aortic arch Two centimeters above the beginning of the aorta there was a bulging of the aorta one centimeter in diameter and depth At the tip of this small aneurysm there was a small perforation from which a large quantity of blood had escaped into the pericardial sac There was some thickening about the coronary ostia The aortic valves were competent The aorta showed a diffuse syphilitic aortitis for a distance of five centimeters from its beginning to a short distance beyond the left subclavian artery

The following record illustrates the effect of an aneurysm originating in the region of the aortic sinuses which increased sufficiently in size to almost completely occlude the pulmonary artery

A thirty two year old colored male laborer was admitted to the hospital with the complaints of short breath pain around the heart, weakness and swelling He had always been in good health Two years prior to admission he noted an exertional non-disabling palpitation For two months prior to admission there had been a progressive development of dyspnea on exertion orthopnea and paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea For three weeks the patient had chest pain with burning primarily in the left chest and generalized edema

Physical examination revealed a normally developed edematous male in great respiratory distress Respirations were thirty to the minute and the blood pressure in both arms was 140/20 There was a striking generalized edema dilatation of the neck veins and visible carotid pulsations Numerous fine rales were audible over both lung bases The entire precordium was thrust forward with each systole The point of maximum impulse was in the sixth interspace twelve centimeters from the midline The percussed area of dulness was increased to the right five centimeters from the midline in the fourth right interspace A systolic thrill could be felt over the apex and pulmonic area On auscultation at the apex there was a very loud systolic murmur which increased in intensity and was loudest over the pulmonic area A diastolic murmur was heard best over the aortic area but both murmurs were easily heard over the entire precordium The pulses were regular and equal of the Corrigan type The Wassermann reaction was positive The patient died the second day after admission At autopsy there was an aneurysm originating near the aortic sinuses pressing against the pulmonary artery almost completely occluding it Syphilitic aortitis and involvement of the aortic valve was also noted

ANEURYSM OF THE AORTIC ARCH

It is difficult clinically to separate aneurysmal dilatations of the aortic arch into those involving the various portions of the arch Only occasionally are these dilatations localized in one section

Symptoms and Physical Signs These depend on the point of origin of the aneurysm the size and the structures that are compressed or destroyed by the aneurysmal growth and movement A large number of aneurysms cause no symptoms

Pain This is the commonest complaint and varies in intensity severity, and location In the beginning it is a mild but more or less constant discomfort which is not increased by exercise or excitement but may be aggravated by change of position It frequently is referred to the anterior chest wall the neck the back and occasionally the arm It usually does not come in paroxysms but is described as neuralgic in type This neuralgic type pain is frequently followed later in the course of the disease by a constant boring type pain that is usually associated with destruction of bone The milder type pain is related to pressure on nerve roots or other structures adjacent to the aorta

Cough This is usually nonproductive and frequently only an irritative hack As pressure on the trachea or bronchus increases the cough usually increases in severity Hemoptysis occurs with sufficient irritation or rup

ture of the aneurysm There is very frequently a so called "goose cough" associated with paralysis of the left vocal cord

Shortness of Breath This is usually the result of displacement of the lung in the thoracic cage by the tumor mass or due to pressure on the trachea or bronchi

Hoarseness This is due to enlargement of the aortic arch and the resulting paralysis of the left recurrent laryngeal nerve

Dysphagia This is not a common symptom and is due to pressure of the aneurysm on the esophagus

Physical Signs ***Inspection*** Engorgement of the veins of the neck, arms, or chest due to pressure of the tumor on the superior vena cava is sometimes found At times the tumor erodes the ribs or the sternum and may be seen as a large pulsating mass extending five or six centimeters above the chest wall and covered only by the tightly stretched glistening skin

Palpation Deviation of the trachea from the midline and demonstration of the tracheal tug is of great importance There is occasionally noted a difference in the radial pulses and a marked difference in the blood pressure in the arms The expansile quality of the pulsation is best determined by placing one hand over the suspected area and the other hand at an opposite point on the back This sign varies with the thickness of the clot that fills the aneurysmal sac A systolic thrill is frequently palpable over the pulsating mass

Percussion The heart is of normal size unless the aneurysm is associated with aortic incompetence There is increased retromanubrial dulness and occasionally increased dulness to the right of the sternum In aneurysms of the descending aorta there is a definite impairment of the percussion note on the left posteriorly if the tumor mass is near the spine

Auscultation This procedure is of little value A systolic murmur can be heard over the tumor if the clot is not too thick It should be remembered that the pressure of the aneurysm will occasionally produce the signs of aortic incompetency without involvement of the valve

A rather typical patient was admitted to the hospital complaining of pain in the left chest and shortness of breath He was perfectly well until one year previously when an upper respiratory infection left him with hoarseness and pain in his upper left chest shoulder and back Six months before admission he was awakened with very severe pain in the interscapular region In the following six months this pain increased and became more constant and was accompanied by a cough productive of blood tinged sputum The patient had untreated syphilis six years previously

Physical examination revealed an orthopneic male The left pupil was larger than the right both reacted There was a distinct tracheal tug and paralysis of the vocal cord Respiratory movements were limited on the left The upper left chest was flat on percussion and breath sounds and whispered voice were inaudible There was a visible and expansile pulsation over the manubrium with marked increase in retromanubrial dulness to percussion At the apex there was a soft systolic murmur followed by a loud rumbling diastolic murmur heard less distinctly at the base

The patient remained in the hospital for one month and died suddenly after a paroxysm of coughing productive of a large amount of blood

At autopsy the whole upper mediastinum was filled with a large aneurysmal sac extending to the left and backward eroding the first and second thoracic vertebrae pressing on the trachea and completely obstructing the left bronchus Rupture of the aneurysm occurred into the left bronchus Microscopic examination showed the pathological picture of syphilitic aortitis

ANEURYSM OF THE ABDOMINAL AORTA

This is the rarest type of aortic aneurysm It usually occurs near the celiac axis and the symptoms when they occur are produced by pressure on spinal nerves erosion of the vertebrae, or pressure on neighboring structures Diagnosis is oftentimes difficult unless a pulsating mass can be felt In recent years aortograms have been of great value diagnostically

REFERENCES

1 Blackford L M and Smith C Am J Syph Gonor and Ven Dis 22 146 1938
2 Burnett C T and Rymer C A Ann Int Med 8 327 (Sept) 1934
3 Cochems K D and Kemp J E Am J Syph Gonor and Ven Dis 21 282 (May) 1937
4 Cochems K D and Kemp J E Am J Syph Gonor and Ven Dis 21 408 (July) 1937
5 Cole H N J A M A 108 1861 (May 29) 1937
6 Cooperative Clinical Group Ven Dis Inf 91 118 1936
7 Cowan J and Faulds J S Brit M J 2 285 (Aug 17) 1929
8 Lancisi G M De motu cordis et Aneurysmatibus J M Salvioni Rome 1728
9 Langer E Munchen med Wchnschr 73 1782 (Oct 22) 1926
10 Moore J E Danglade J H and Reisinger J C Arch Int Med 49 753 (May) 1932
11 Paullin J E J A M A 109 1123 (Oct 2) 1937
12 Reutter K Ztschr f Hyg u Infektionskr 54 49 1907
13 Saphir O and Scott R W Am J Path 3 527 (Sept) 1927
14 Saphir O Arch Path 33 88 1942
15 Smith C and Blackford L M Am J Syph Gonor and Ven Dis 22 168 (March) 1938
16 Stokes J H and Anderson L E M Clin North America 21 1013 (July) 1937
17 Warthin A S The Lesions of Latent Syphilis South M J 24 273 (April) 1931
18 Warthin A S J A M A 58 409 1912
19 Welty J W Am J M Sc 197 782 1939
20 White P D Heart Disease The Macmillan Co New York 1931
21 White P D and Wise N B New England J Med 217 988 (Dec 16) 1937
22 Mass Gen Hosp Case 32131 New England J Med 234 449 451 (March 28) 1946
23 McCrae Thomas Am J M Sc 140 469 1910
24 Maher C C Sittler W W and Elliott R A J A M A 105 263 1935
25 Klotz S D and Crede R H Am Heart J 30 551 557 (Dec) 1945

ture of the aneurysm There is very frequently a so called "goose cough" associated with paralysis of the left vocal cord

Shortness of Breath This is usually the result of displacement of the lung in the thoracic cage by the tumor mass or due to pressure on the trachea or bronchi

Hoarseness This is due to enlargement of the aortic arch and the resulting paralysis of the left recurrent laryngeal nerve

Dysphagia This is not a common symptom and is due to pressure of the aneurysm on the esophagus

Physical Signs ***Inspection*** Engorgement of the veins of the neck arms, or chest due to pressure of the tumor on the superior vena cava is sometimes found At times the tumor erodes the ribs or the sternum and may be seen as a large pulsating mass extending five or six centimeters above the chest wall and covered only by the tightly stretched glistening skin

Palpation Deviation of the trachea from the midline and demonstration of the tracheal tug is of great importance There is occasionally noted a difference in the radial pulses and a marked difference in the blood pressure in the arms The expansile quality of the pulsation is best determined by placing one hand over the suspected area and the other hand at an opposite point on the back This sign varies with the thickness of the clot that fills the aneurysmal sac A systolic thrill is frequently palpable over the pulsating mass

Percussion The heart is of normal size unless the aneurysm is associated with aortic incompetence There is increased retromanubrial dulness and occasionally increased dulness to the right of the sternum In aneurysms of the descending aorta there is a definite impairment of the percussion note on the left posteriorly if the tumor mass is near the spine

Auscultation This procedure is of little value A systolic murmur can be heard over the tumor if the clot is not too thick It should be remembered that the pressure of the aneurysm will occasionally produce the signs of aortic incompetency without involvement of the valve

A rather typical patient was admitted to the hospital complaining of pain in the left chest and shortness of breath He was perfectly well until one year previously when an upper respiratory infection left him with hoarseness and pain in his upper left chest shoulder and back Six months before admission he was awakened with very severe pain in the interscapular region In the following six months this pain increased and became more constant and was accompanied by a cough productive of blood tinged sputum The patient had untreated syphilis six years previously

Physical examination revealed an orthopneic male The left pupil was larger than the right both reacted There was a distinct tracheal tug and paralysis of the vocal cord Respiratory movements were limited on the left The upper left chest was flat on percussion and breath sounds and whispered voice were in audible There was a visible and expansile pulsation over the manubrium with marked increase in retromanubrial dulness to percussion At the apex there was a soft systolic murmur followed by a loud rumbling diastolic murmur heard less distinctly at the base

The patient remained in the hospital for one month and died suddenly after a paroxysm of coughing productive of a large amount of blood

MORTIMER S FALK, M D
AND
JOHN H STOKES M D

10

Treatment of Cardiovascular Syphilis

Historical Note Syphilis had been recognized as a cause of cardiovascular disease in the sixteenth century, but it was not accorded due prominence as an important etiologic factor in affections of the heart and blood vessels until the second half of the nineteenth century As was to be expected the most obvious form of cardiovascular syphilis, *i e* aortic aneurysm was the first to attract attention

Although aneurysm of the external arteries was described in antiquity by Galen it was Andreas Vesalius[1] (1514 1564) who in the sixteenth century first recognized aneurysm of the aorta without mentioning however its association with syphilis Ambroise Paré[2] (1510 1590) one of the contemporaries of Vesalius, first suggested this relationship but appeared uncertain whether the syphilis itself or the accompanying mercurial cachexia was the responsible factor The distinguished Roman physician Giovanni Mario Lancisi[3] (1654 1720) was convinced by his anatomic studies that syphilis played the etiologic role and referred to venereal aneurysms (aneurysma gallicum) in his superb monograph published posthumously

Among the writers of the eighteenth century Morgagni made numerous and important contributions to the literature of the subject but for the next three quarters of a century nothing was added, and the earlier teachings seemed practically forgotten The modern views on cardiovascular syphilis date from the latter half of the nineteenth century with the appearance of the studies of Helmsteder[4] Welch[5] Heiberg[6] Malmsten[7] and Dohle[8] and others from Heller s pathologic institute in Kiel The importance of syphilis as a cause of cardiovascular disease is now well established Although in very recent years there appears to have been a decrease in its incidence it still accounts for a significant percentage of deaths due to cardiovascular diseases in adults

Fundamental Principles The fact that syphilis of the heart and great vessels is thought of less as syphilis than as heart disease is the source of many blunders in treatment In evaluating the patient with late syphilis it must be remembered that the disease attacks many systems either singularly or concurrently It is necessary therefore at the outset to recall certain fundamental principles of the treatment of syphilis as a disease which govern the treatment of syphilis as applied to its lesions in the cardiovascular system First let it be recalled that syphilis contributes un

favorably to practically all pathologic processes and, accordingly, treatment for syphilis is indicated in cardiovascular disease whether the syphilis seems causative or merely coincidental The weight of this dictum in cardiac disease is gradually achieving recognition It should be remembered even in the management of the decompensated heart where rest, sedatives, digitalis, and diuretic measures are prescribed but antisyphilitic treatment may be omitted The possible failure of such general measures to restore a heart until appropriate treatment for the syphilitic infection has been instituted is demonstrable [9]

The second therapeutic consideration in treating cardiovascular syphilis is that of *therapeutic shock* (Jarisch Herxheimer reaction) In the arsenical and heavy metal era of syphilis therapy it was held that fast acting treatment such as is afforded by the arsphenamines and bismuth especially in large doses could cause focal flare ups of the syphilitic process If such flare ups with accompanying edema occur in a partially occluded cononary artery the wall of an artery weakened by aneurysm or an infiltrated myocardium or conduction mechanism the gravest results may follow the first or even the first several treatments with these drugs Accordingly it was generally accepted as axiomatic that flare up at active foci in the affected tissues in syphilitic cardiovascular disease should be carefully prevented by a choice of slower acting nonshock producing drugs as preparation for any more intensive subsequent treatment, and by a reduced dosage whatever the preparation used

In the last decade penicillin and to a much lesser extent the other antibiotics have replaced the arsenicals and heavy metals as the treatment of choice for all stages of active syphilis Penicillin is as potently spirocheticidal as the arsphenamines, if not more so and produces Herxheimer reactions, even in relatively small dosage in fifty to seventy five per cent of patients with early syphilis [10,11] Paradoxically, reports on penicillin in cardiovascular syphilis have minimized the dangers of therapeutic shock [12,13,14,15] This holds true for patients in congestive failure [16,17] While isolated case reports of severe untoward reactions [18] interpreted to be possible instances of therapeutic shock have appeared in the literature, those papers which summarize experiences with relatively large groups of cardiovascular syphilis patients have almost without exception, emphasized the tolerance demonstrated to this form of treatment When one considers the widespread and at times indiscriminate use of penicillin in recent years for relatively minor ailments it becomes apparent that many undiagnosed cases of previously untreated cardiovascular syphilis have received the antibiotic without experiencing severe reactions of therapeutic shock

The now extensive experience with penicillin indicates that it is the safest of all potent spirillicidal agents which have been used in the treatment of cardiovascular syphilis Nevertheless it should be pointed out that there are investigators who still state that "preparation * with bismuth and iodides [19,20] or mercuric cyanide [1] should precede penicillin therapy We must temper our advocation of penicillin only slightly by em

* There is some evidence that preparation with less potent spirillicidal agents will not prevent the occurrence of the Jarisch Herxheimer reaction [14]

phasizing careful work up of all patients and hesitancy where there is evidence that therapeutic shock might be severe This is applicable principally in patients who have evidence of coronary ostial involvement

The third consideration concerns the induction of so called *therapeutic paradox*[22] By this term is meant the exaggeration of symptoms and the unfavorable outcome which may follow the rapid and fibrotic type of healing induced especially by the arsphenamines It was held as a fact that rapid symptomatic response in syphilitic cardiovascular disease could be postively dangerous, and that a patient who was up and about or who had returned to work in six weeks might be unnecessarily dead in six months as a result of his therapeutic miracle This entire concept is now controversial If it does occur it is extremely rare following penicillin therapy[1-3,4]

A fourth group of considerations in the treatment of cardiovascular syphilis is the preventive aspect In the arsenical and heavy metal era inadequate treatment of early syphilis was the rule rather than the exception and progression to late symptomatic cardiovascular syphilis such as aortic insufficiency or aneurysm was inevitable in a relatively high proportion of patients Penicillin has changed this We now have an agent which *is apparently capable in the majority of cases of eradicating every focus* of *Treponema pallidum* in a relatively short treatment period From the aspect of preventive medicine this has already reduced the incidence of cardiovascular syphilis However it must be remembered that relatively small amounts of penicillin such as are used to treat gonorrhea respiratory infections and many other infections are capable of masking early symptoms of syphilis without curing the disease This widespread practice could leave a reservoir of undiagnosed 'latent syphilis which will later manifest symptoms of tertiary syphilis such as cardiovascular involvement This is pointed out because it is one of the reasons why routine serologic tests for syphilis premaritally and as part of hospital admission studies and complete *physical examinations should be encouraged*

The importance of early diagnosis and treatment of syphilis cannot be overemphasized Barring this a high index of suspicion in persons presenting the earliest suggestive indications of aortic disease will uncover cases at a period when comparatively greater myocardial reserve and better condition of the coronary vessels provide an opportunity for arresting syphilitic cardiovascular disease before irreparable damage has occurred With present day diagnostic measures such as the treponema immobilizing antibody test cases which were formerly equivocal or borderline can now be diagnosed with more certainty

In line with the principle of therapeutic paradox there may be noted in the response of a syphilitic aortic lesion the so called paradoxical exaggeration of signs with improvement of the patient s condition For example a diastolic murmur and transient slight dilatation with edema and dyspnea followed by hypertrophy and restoration of compensation may result *from the initiation of treatment in a patient who at the outset* presented only a systolic murmur in the aortic distribution This paradoxical healing effect is not to be interpreted as a treatment failure but probably as a treatment success

The Appraisal The first step, to precede all treatment for syphilis of the cardiovascular system must be an appraisal of the patient's condition and resources—mental, physical material The weak spots in the treatment of cardiovascular syphilis are the myocardium and the coronaries In appraising the myocardial situation, electrocardiographic studies are essential in addition to the experienced appraisal of the functional capacity of the heart muscle There is no such thing as a distinctive syphilitic electrocardiogram but there is important information to be gained as to the status of the syphilitic patient's heart from this examination It was believed that patients with inverted T waves in Lead I, and with markedly aberrant Q R S complexes could be hastened to their deaths by the arsphenamines It was accepted good practice that slower acting drugs be given by nonintensive methods in such cases Experience with penicillin has in the main tended to minimize the dangers of this powerful spirocheticidal agent in patients with marked electrocardiographic changes [5]

The myocardial reserve of the syphilitic cardiovascular patient must be carefully appraised Arteriosclerotic changes in general, hypertension, and the cardiorenal status must be considered important influencing factors in the prognosis Age while not infallible, may be a helpful guide in the consideration of treatment approaches The patient who finally in his fifties goes to the wall with a decompensated syphilitic heart has very little recuperative power Much less can be expected of him in the way of treatment response than of the younger patient whose aortic murmur and evidence of syphilis is discovered while his heart muscle is perhaps still far from exhaustion

The not uncommon coincident occurrence of neurosyphilis and cardiovascular syphilis as well as occasional visceral lesions such as gummata or syphilitic hepatitis indicates that a complete pretreatment evaluation of each patient is essential This should include a cerebrospinal fluid study in almost all cases and visceral function' tests when indicated Without baseline pretreatment studies the patient's posttreatment progress is difficult to evaluate

Therapeutic Agents Previous editions of this text included a discussion of the more commonly used chemotherapeutic agents such as arsphenamine neoarsphenamine the arsenoxides bismuth arsphenamine sulfate (Bismarsen [R]) the mercurial salts, the bismuth salts, and the iodides Since most of these are no longer advocated in the treatment of syphilis this discussion will be limited to penicillin with brief mention of bismuth the iodides and mercury for those who choose to "prepare the occasional patient who might seem to be a candidate for severe therapeutic shock

Consider first penicillin There is little doubt that this spirocheticidal antibiotic is a useful therapeutic tool It has a distinct advantage over old forms of chemotherapy in that its toxicity in low However, an increasing number of allergic reactions ranging from various degrees of urticaria to anaphylactic shock (sometimes fatal) and periarteritis nodosa have been occurring The literature on penicillin in cardiovascular syphilis has with few exceptions emphasized principally the paucity of reactions of the therapeutic shock and therapeutic paradox type On the positive side,

direct persumptive evidence of penicillin s effect is presented in Sinclaire and Webster s interesting histologic study of autopsy material from a small (ten) group of patients with aortitis aneurysm or aortic insuffi ciency [26] They observed that the syphilitic inflammation (lymphocytic and plasma cell infiltration) was almost or completely absent in patients who had received penicillin more than ten weeks before death but marked in those who had been treated more recently

Optimum time and dosage schedules for penicillin if they can be deter mined are still unknown The observations which have been reported have included wide variations in total dosage and length of treatment time The largest series are based on patients treated with five to twelve million units given in divided doses over periods ranging from ten days to three weeks Earlier reports indicated the use of crystalline penicillin G in aqueous solu tion given in doses approximating 40 000 to 80 000 units every 2 to 3 hours around the clock More recently results with procaine peni cillin G (300 000 to 600 000 daily) have been published The tendency has been toward an increasing dosage Breutsch concluded from histopath *ologic studies of the aorta, that the syphilitic inflammation is resistant* to treatment and the total dosage of penicillin should therefore be 25 mil lion units divided into daily doses of 400 000 to 600 000 units While such large amounts may be unnecessary for the present it is best to err on the side of overdosage

The broad spectrum antibiotics (chlortetracycline oxytetracycline and chloramphenicol) are known to have pronounced antispirochetal activity They have not yet been sufficiently evaluated to advocate their routine use in cardiovascular syphilis However it might be well to keep these an tibiotics in mind for possible use when the patient with severe allergic pen icillin sensitivity requires treatment There is no basis for advocating a specific dosage schedule but using favorable results observed in neuro syphilis as a precedent one could give two to four grams daily to a total of sixty grams

For the most part, the chemotherapeutic agents have become syphilo *therapeutic history We shall allude to a few briefly for those who fear* penicillin in a difficult situation where severe therapeutic shock might have been expected in the arsenical era Mercury it was believed practically never produce significant therapeutic shock effects for its actions on the disease are slow and indirect probably by allowing the host s cellular de fense mechanism to cope with the infection The soluble salts such as mercuric succinimide or mercuric cyanide given intramuscularly in dosage of 0 01 Gm daily are used Considering its negligible antispirochetal effect and its relatively high toxicity there would appear to be very little justifi cation for the use of mercury

Bismuth is more rapid in action and more shock producing than mer cury and less so than the arsenicals Most cardiovascular patients will undoubtedly tolerate it in full therapeutic dosage from the start Insoluble bismuth salts such as bismuth subsalicylate are given intramuscularly at four to seven day intervals in doses of 0 1 to 0 2 Gm

Neither bismuth nor mercury should be given intravenously to patients with cardiovascular disease The toxic dose is too near the therapeutically effective dose by this route, and the need for time saving can be met satisfactorily by the use of a soluble salt intramuscularly

The iodides although still used on occasion in all forms of cardiovascular syphilis, are also for the most part therapeutic history Doses of 0 3 to 2 Gm of sodium or potassium iodide three times a day, may be employed alone or more commonly along with the heavy metals The digestive disturbance coryza and rash are rarely disturbing factors if the drug is given just before meals in water, not milk, in a concentration of 240 cc (8 ounces) of water to each 3 3 Gm (50 grains) or less, and if the larger doses are begun from the outset and not reached by way of a minute initial dose and subsequent 0 064 Gm (1 grain) accretions The writers have seen no clinical evidence of increased toxicity of potassium as compared with sodium iodide in syphilitic cardiovascular disease

General Treatment Measures It is, of course as important to emphasize to the practitioner and the syphilologist that the syphilitic with a heart complication must be managed as a heart case as to remind the cardiologist and internist that the syphilitic cardiovascular patient has syphilis The digitalization and the management of decompensation of the syphilitic heart should be supervised by one familiar with the general principles Rest should not only be employed in the advanced case, but it should also be made available, or activity should at least be curtailed, in the patient with aortitis with valvular involvement while the adjustments in heart load, due to shrinkage of healing valves are taking place

The great importance of integrity of the aortic valve in the future of the patient is very apparent in comparing the behavior under treatment of aneurysm and aortic regurgitation To secure rest for the syphilitic heart is sometimes rendered difficult by the wreckage of the patient s morale on the familial social, and stigmatic aspects of his condition *Time spent therefore, in adjusting the patient s viewpoint may be as important as drug therapy* Occupational therapy and progressive relaxation are very helpful There are no incompatibilities between the sedatives usually employed and any form of antisyphilitic medication The tonic effect of penicillin sometimes encourages undesirable gains in weight that must be watched

Relief of pain in patients with repeated anginal seizures sometimes becomes a critical matter, and the use of various methods of nerve block and resection upon the cervical sympathetic are sometimes justified for the control of this particular phase of the problem There is no more inveterate relapser than the once decompensated aortic regurgitant patient, and preventive measures should be taken if possible before rather than after the first breach of compensation has developed It cannot be overemphasized that it is extremely important to avoid decompensation by every means *i e* restriction of activity at the outset even to the point of strict bed rest if necessary and permanent adjustments of the future mode of life of the patient The importance of this is reemphasized by data of the Cooperative Clinical Group[28] which show that of 281

patients with syphilitic aortic regurgitation or aneurysm, forty two per cent of those in whom congestive heart failure was present before treatment died and their average duration of life was thirty months only twenty four per cent of those in whom heart failure was absent before treatment died and their average life duration was forty seven months In water logged cases the diuretic effect of mercuhydrin mercupurin salyrgan neohydrin and the cation exchange resins should be kept in mind

Special Considerations Aortitis Aortic Regurgitation and Aortic Aneurysm In the arsenical heavy metal era it was held that the keynote for successful treatment of the various manifestations of cardiovascular syphilis lay in the clinicians ability to individualize the type and intensity of therapy to suit the needs of each patient Preparatory treatment with iodides and bismuth or mercury were recommended even in *uncomplicated aortitis* because of the possibility of severe or even fatal therapeutic shock effect of arsenicals on clinically undetectable coronary artery involvement In patients with aneurysm or aortic regurgitation the approach was often even more conservative It was held that if sufficient cardiac reserve could not be established by the preparatory treatment it might not be possible to use an arsenical at all except perhaps in the form of small doses of bismuth arsphenamine sulfonate (Bismarsen®) In retrospect it must be remembered that the dangers probably lay not only in the possibility of producing severe therapeutic shock but also in the vasculotoxic properties of the arsenicals

Today although every consideration must be given to the cardiac and general physical status of the patient one can generalize about penicillin dosage in all forms and stages of syphilitic cardiovascular disease Except in an equivocal situation where coronary ostial involvement or extremely thin walled aneurysm is known to exist penicillin may be started in full dosage from the start Many will argue that even these exceptions do not exist Penicillin is given as the prolonged action procaine penicillin in dosage of 600 000 units daily to a total of ten to fifteen million or more units

Reversal of the Serologic Tests for Syphilis The blood serologic test for syphilis should not be used as a gauge of arrest or progression in cardiovascular syphilis While it is desirable to reverse the blood serologic test for syphilis especially in the earlier cases it is not justifiable to overtreat the patient in the effort to secure an often unattainable negative serologic test for syphilis

Surgical Procedures for the Treatment of Aneurysm Recent improvements and innovations in cardiovascular surgery have included technics for reducing or eliminating vascular aneurysms Wiring of well defined aneurysms of the aorta and larger vessels is a palliative procedure which may afford the patient considerable relief from pain and provide protection from imminent rupture [29] A pack method of intrasaccular wiring in which 100 to 500 feet of stainless steel wire is inserted in aneurysms of the aortic arch will result in thrombosis and often prevent further dilatation [30] In suitable cases excision of aneurysms and restoration of

continuity by means of aortic hemografts have been successfully performed When possible this may be the procedure of choice [31]

Syphilitic Myocarditis Recent studies have demonstrated clear cut electrocardiographic evidence of myocardial invasion in approximately fifty per cent of patients with primary and secondary syphilis The great majority of these respond completely to routine penicillin therapy [3]

Peripheral Vascular Disease Accompanying Syphilis It is out of the ordinary to see peripheral vascular disease in patients with syphilis exhibit more than equivocal therapeutic results It is true however, that hypertension in the syphilitic patient sometimes undergoes marked and apparently lasting reductions under treatment Since the nature of essential hypertension is so much in dispute, and apparently so rarely syphilitic, the source of these good effects must remain in question In general it may be said that the hypertensive patients tolerate treatment with penicillin quite well

Endarteritic processes with gangrene and examples of thromboangiitis obliterans, accompanied by positive blood serologic tests for syphilis do not furnish a very satisfying field for syphilotherapy Almost any form of treatment may produce a transient improvement perhaps nonspecific in origin, only to be followed by relapse and progression on which further treatment for syphilis has little or no influence There are however no actual contraindications to an intelligently directed therapeutic test if the serologic test for syphilis is positive

Effects of Treatment A valid statistical appraisal of the value of antisyphilitic treatment in the various stages and degrees of cardiovascular syphilis has always been extremely difficult There are so many variables including among others the problem of making the diagnosis of uncomplicated syphilitic aortitis the difficulty of defining adequate treatment in the prepenicillin era the compilation of reliable data on a significant number of untreated or very little treated control series of patients, the coincidence of other forms of tertiary syphilis such as neurosyphilis, and the lack of patient cooperation for prolonged periods of observation, that available statistics are subject to criticism on these and other bases It is hoped that more reliable information on the effect of penicillin in this form of syphilis may be compiled in the future

The Cooperative Clinical Group's statistical survey[28] of cardiovascular syphilis comparing treated *vs* nontreated patients is quoted from, primarily because it is based on a large series (619 patients)

In uncomplicated syphilitic aortitis the average duration of life was increased from thirty four to eighty five months in patients who had received thirteen or more injections of an arsenical plus interim heavy metal after the diagnosis was made sixty three per cent of patients who received adequate treatment were living and symptom free with no progression of the cardiovascular condition at the time of study as compared to forty nine per cent of those who received inadequate treatment

In patients with syphilitic aortic regurgitation the average duration of life was increased from forty to fifty five months with adequate treatment after diagnosis was made symptomatic relief was obtained in sixty

per cent of patients who received adequate treatment In the group with saccular aneurysm the average duration of life after detection of the aneurysm was thirty seven months in patients who had inadequate treatment and this was increased to seventy five months in patients who received adequate treatment

Barnett and Small in a careful statistical analysis[33] of 334 patients with syphilitic aortic regurgitation or saccular aneurysm concluded that the effectiveness of specific treatment definitely declines as the disease advances They also found that the mortality was seventeen per cent higher in their poorly treated patients than in a comparable group who received much' treatment

Preventive Aspects The treatment of cardiovascular syphilis like that of neurosyphilis is undertaken years too late Unfortunately the diagnosis of early cardiovascular syphilis is not easy to make and many cases go unrecognized until they have progressed to the stage of aortic regurgitation or aneurysm One aid to the prevention of serious cardiovascular syphilis is recognition of early uncomplicated syphilitic aortitis by maintaining a high index of suspicion and critically evaluating each patient by means of diagnostic criteria such as outlined by Moore Danglade and Reisinger[34] There is no certainty that modern treatment pushed to its utmost can prevent the progress of the disease even at this early stage for examples of progression were seen in the prepenicillin era in spite of treatment

The hope is cherished that identification of a syphilitic infection in the early or even the latent stage and its treatment with an adequate course of penicillin will protect the patient from syphilitic cardiovascular disease It is now within the province of the practicing physician who sees the patient when he presents himself with a chancre or secondary eruption to prevent the relatively discouraging situation with respect to cardiovascular syphilis from ever arising That adequate treatment of the patient with early syphilis is in fact a protection in later life is shown by the fact that in the Cooperative Clinical Group material [5] of 333 patients who received adequate and regular treatment during the early stages and who were followed for from three to twenty years not one developed any of the graver forms of cardiovascular syphilis By the intelligent use of penicillin during the early infectious stages and adequate posttreatment follow up examinations of the patient the practitioner may attack cardiovascular syphilis at its root The rational approach to cardiovascular syphilis today is the intensive and thorough going treatment of primary and secondary syphilis

REFERENCES

1 Garrison F H An Introduction to the History of Medicine W B Saunders Co Philadelphia 1917 p 205

2 Quoted by Sir William Osler Brit M J 2 1509 1909

3 Lancisi G M De motu cordis et aneurysmatibus J M Salvioni Rome 1728

4 Helmsteder Du mode de formation des aneurysmes spontanes Inaug Dissert Strassbourg 1873

5 Welch Francis H Med Chir Tr London 59 59 1876

6 Heiberg Norsk mag f laegevidensk 6 55 1876
7 Malmsten Studien over Aorta Aneurysmens Etiologi Stockholm 1888
8 Dohle P Ein Fall von eigentumlicher Aortenerkrankung bei einem Syphilitischen Inaug Dissert Kiel 1885
9 Stokes J H Beerman H and Ingraham N R Jr Modern Clinical Syphilology W B Saunders Co Philadelphia 1945
10 Olansky S J J Ven Dis Inform 28 26 (Feb) 1947
11 Tucker H A and Farmer T W J A M A 138 480 (Oct 16) 1948
12 Stokes J H Wolferth C C Edeiken J Falk M S and Ford W T J A M A 147 944 (Nov 3) 1951
13 Breutsch W Am J Syph 35 252 (May) 1951
14 Sinclaire H A and Webster B Am J Syph 35 312 (July) 1951
15 Eisenberg H and Brandfonbrener M Am J Syph 37 442 (Sept) 1953
16 Edeiken J Ford W T Falk M S and Stokes J H Circulation 1 1355 (June) 1950
17 Forsey R R Canad M A J 62 339 (April) 1950
18 Butterly J M and Fishman L J A M A 148 370 (Feb 2) 1952
19 Kampmeier R H and Morgan H J Circulation 5 771 (May) 1952
20 Ellegast H Gumpesberger G and Wewalka F Wein klin Wchnschr 64 549 (Aug 1) 1952
21 Linn C Nedey R and Cassematis A Presse Med 59 1321 (Oct. 13) 1951
22 Wile U J Am J M Sc 164 415 1922
23 Calloway J L Noojin R O Flower A H Jr Kuhn B H and Riley K A Am J Syph Gonor and Ven Dis 30 110 1946
24 Mohr C F and Hahn R D Am J Syph 36 82 (Jan) 1952
25 Edeiken J Falk M S and Steiger H P Am J M Sc 217 475 (May) 1949
26 Sinclaire H A and Webster B Am J Syph 38 54 (Jan) 1954
27 Breutsch W L Am J Syph 35 252 (May) 1951
28 Cole H N and Associates Ven Dis Inform 17 91 (April) 1936
29 Penick R M S Clin North America 33 1049 (Aug) 1953
30 Linton R R and Hardy I B Jr New England J Med 246 847 (May 29) 1952
31 Cooley D A and De Bakey M E Surgery 34 1005 (Dec) 1953
32 Steiger H P and Edeiken J Am Heart J 34 674 (Nov) 1947
33 Barnett C W and Small A A Am J Syph 34 301 (July) 1950
34 Moore J E Danglade J H and Reisinger J C Arch Int Med 49 793 (May) 1932

11

The Heart in Diseases of the Endocrine Glands

DISEASES OF THE PITUITARY GLAND

Pituitary Insufficiency (Simmonds' Disease, Pituitary Dwarfism)

Destruction, removal, or functional insufficiency of the pituitary gland is followed by generalized atrophy of all organs and especially of the thyroid suprarenals and sex glands While the heart participates in this wasting process clinical evidence of cardiac weakness is not usually apparent Blood pressure may be low, normal, or high Tendency to hypotension is in general less than in primary adrenal insufficiency [1,2] Patients with pituitary insufficiency are however subject to attacks of extreme weakness and low blood pressure This is attributable to inadequate function of the adrenals resembles the crisis of Addison s disease and may be corrected by administration of sodium chloride and adrenal hormone Such attacks may be precipitated by unwise attempts to correct too rapidly the concomitant hypothyroidism by administration of thyroid

Acromegaly and Gigantism

Eosinophile tumors of the anterior lobe of the hypophysis are usually if not always responsible for the development of the clinical syndrome of acromegaly and preadolescent pituitary gigantism They produce somatic changes with general overgrowth of all structures most obvious in bones but affecting practically all tissues The heart may be enormously enlarged While this is perhaps chiefly attributable to the participation of the heart in a generalized hypertrophy there are many cases in which the enlargement is out of proportion to that observed in other structures One contributory factor may be hyperthyroidism which has been noted in approximately 50 per cent of acromegalics Diabetes a frequent concomitant may predispose to coronary disease Changes in the vascular system may be evident early Blood pressure is variable in some cases being as low as 100 or less while in others it has exceeded 200 mm Hg

Size of some acromegalic hearts is impressive Zondek[3] observed radiograms of the heart with transverse diameters from 15 to 17 6 cm In Lewis patient[4] a man 1 88 meters (6 feet 2 inches) in height weighing 113 4 kg (250 pounds) the heart weighed 620 Gm Kraus[5] studied a man 1 78 meters (5 feet 10 inches) in height whose heart weighed 950 Gm

Pages 207 to 226 replace former pages 207 to 225 © 1959

The largest heart in an acromegalic weighed 1295 Gm and was reported by Humphry and Dixon[6] Most remarkable of all reported cases was a man studied by Osborne[7] over a period of approximately six years At the time of his death he was forty eight years of age His height was 1 75 meters (5 feet 9 inches), and it was estimated that he weighed approximately 136 08 kg (300 pounds) He died of syncope in a manner described by Marie as typical of death in acromegaly The heart was enormous It weighed 1163 Gm (2 pounds 9 ounces) and measured 0 38 meters (15 inches) in its greatest circumference The wall of the right ventricle was 9 mm (3/8 inch) in thickness, while that of the left ventricle measured 21 mm (7/8 inch) Valves were normal except for slight thickening at the edges of the aortic cusps The wall of the aorta was not diseased The coronaries, although nowhere occluded, were so enlarged as to admit an ordinary lead pencil to their mouths It could not be stated with certainty whether hyperthyroidism had contributed to the enormous cardiac hypertrophy The thyroid gland, however was enlarged and there was in the upper mediastinum an accessory thyroid which was thought to be hyperplastic That the enlargement of the heart was not due entirely to secondary factors such as hyperthyroidism is indicated by the fact that the weight of the liver and of the kidneys was more than twice the average normal

Heart failure is not infrequent in acromegaly It was noted in eighteen of twenty four cases collected by Mason,[8] six of his patients died from this cause In twenty one cases reviewed by Hejtmancik and his associates,[9] thirteen had clinical evidence of heart disease, five were frankly decompensated, two had episodes of left ventricular failure nine of fifteen had abnormal electrocardiographic tracings, and impaired intraventricular conduction was found in six Literature concerning the heart in acromegaly has been reviewed by Houssay and Houssay[10]

In the early stages of preadolescent pituitary gigantism there may be extraordinary strength and vigor Later most giants become pitifully weak with edema of the extremities and other evidences of circulatory insufficiency[11 12] The exact status of these cases has been inadequately analyzed The enlargement of the heart bears a normal relationship to body size[13] When one considers the enormous food requirement of some of the larger giants it seems not unlikely that vitamin B deficiency may at times contribute to circulatory failure

Pituitary Basophilism (Cushing's Syndrome)

Cushing[14] was responsible for the discovery that tumors of the basophile cells of the pituitary gland are not infrequently accompanied by symptoms which include obesity of face, neck and trunk hirsutism wasting of muscles decalcification of bones polycythemia, hypertension impotence in men, amenorrhea in women, and not infrequently glycosuria or even frank diabetes Later studies have shown that while in these cases the pituitary gland is usually structurally abnormal the syndrome is chiefly attributable to disease of the adrenal cortex with disturbance to be regarded as secondary in pituitary, hypothalamus thymus and gonads Circulatory disturb

ances referable to Cushing s syndrome will be discussed under the section devoted to diseases of the suprarenal glands

DISEASES OF THE PARATHYROID GLANDS

General Considerations Diseases of the parathyroid glands present problems of great interest because of accompanying variation in calcium content of serum and because of the known physiologic effect of calcium concentration upon contractility of cardiac muscle

Under normal conditions calcium is maintained in serum with con stancy at a concentration of approximately 10 0 to 11 0 mg per 100 ml In hypoparathyroidism following the removal or destruction of the gland the serum calcium may be reduced to a level as low as 4 0 mg per 100 ml the reduction being chiefly if not entirely in the fraction which may be con sidered physiologically active On the other hand in hyperparathyroidism which accompanies hyperplasia or adenomas of the gland the calcium level has been recorded as high as 29 4 mg per 100 ml of serum Again this extraordinary increase cannot be ascribed to a greater concentration of protein or of other factors binding calcium in an inactive form but must be attributed to an increase in the physiologically active fraction

The effect of varying calcium concentrations upon cardiac function has been extensively studied In perfusion experiments it has been found that the presence of calcium in the circulating medium is necessary for the contraction of cardiac muscle A frog s heart perfused with sodium chlo ride solution soon ceases to beat but can be restored by the addition of calcium and potassium to the perfusion fluid On the other hand calcium salts themselves are toxic when their concentration is unduly increased or when they are not properly counterbalanced by sodium and potassium Within certain ranges the isolated heart of the frog is extremely sensitive to relatively small changes in calcium content of the nutrient fluid In deed the response is so delicate that the frog heart preparation has been used as a means of estimating physiological variations in the ionized cal cium of serum and other body fluids [15] In the perfused rabbit heart it has been shown that slight variations in the calcium concentration of the per fused fluid produce notable changes in the force and duration of systole

Hypoparathyroidism

From these experimental observations it might be anticipated that the heart would be notably affected by the reduction in serum calcium which accompanies hypoparathyroid tetany Actually the clinical manifestations of functional cardiac changes have not been obtrusive During the fre quently long course of the disease pulse blood pressure and circulation are usually maintained at essentially normal levels The electrocardio gram however has revealed changes which are worthy of note and which are in general similar to those which have been observed in experimental animals [16 17] Particularly notable has been the prolongation of systole [18] which in some cases may be extreme Skouge s[19] case a patient with thyrotoxicosis had a Q T interval of 0 37 before thyroidectomy Tetany developed immediately after the operation and was persistent There was

a progressive prolongation of the Q T interval, which three months after the onset of tetany was 0 62 seconds Marzahn[20 21] observed a patient with postoperative tetany in whom the systole was prolonged to 0 48 seconds Restoration of normal serum calcium by means of dihydrotachysterol resulted in systoles of normal duration [22]

During severer attacks of tetany the circulatory changes may be considered a consequence of muscular exertion and do not differ materially from those observed in other spasmodic or convulsive states In children, however, sudden death has rarely occurred during sustained paroxysm and has been attributed to spasm of the cardiac muscle

Hyperparathyroidism

Shortly after the introduction of parathormone its effect on the heart and circulation was thoroughly studied by Edwards and Page [23] To dogs they administered from twenty to fifty Collip units at intervals of two to four hours The total amount injected varied between thirteen and forty units per kg of body weight and resulted in an elevation of serum calcium from normal to values between 15 and 22 mg per 100 ml During the early stages of the experiment the heart rate was increased slightly Later there was slowing and usually a marked arrhythmia with premature beats and shifting of the pacemaker function There were, however no constant changes in the electrocardiogram In some records the P waves underwent progressive increase in height during the period of treatment Direct observations on the heart displayed dilatation of the right auricle and it was thought that the change in P waves might have resulted from a greater activity of a slightly stretched auricle There were also changes in the amplitude and direction of the T waves The changes in cardiac function following overdosage with parathyroid extract were compared with those found after injection of large amounts of calcium salts with the conclusion that the effects produced were similar if not identical

In clinical hyperparathyroidism there are usually no signs or symptoms of heart disease Hypercalcemia manifests itself in the electrocardiogram by a shortening of the Q T interval and a consequent shortening of ventricular systole although the length may still be within normal limits

Many cases of hyperparathyroidism are complicated by bilateral nephrolithiasis which may eventually lead to pyelonephritis hypertension and circulatory insufficiency [16 17]

HYPOTHYROIDISM (MYXEDEMA HEART)

Active interest in the heart in myxedema started with the report of Zondek in 1918 [24] In a study of four advanced cases he demonstrated that both the right and left chambers of the heart might be greatly dilated, that the cardiac action was slow and indolent with normal blood pressure and that the electrocardiograph revealed characteristic and striking changes He showed further that these evidences of cardiac involvement could be modified or even reversed by effective treatment with thyroid To designate this clinical condition he introduced the term 'myxedema heart "

Zondek s observations were repeatedly confirmed[25, 26, 27] and led to clinical and experimental studies which established the significant effects of prolonged hypothyroidism upon the heart and circulation

Pathology At autopsy some degree of dilatation or hypertrophy of the heart has usually been demonstrable Of the twenty autopsied cases collected by the Clinical Society of London[28] one third revealed thickening of the *muscle of the left side of the heart In nine autopsies studied by Means*[9] a pseudohypertrophy possibly due to swelling of muscle fibers was grossly evident in several It has been suggested by many observers that the changes in the heart may be attributed to an edematous condition of the cardiac muscle similar to that seen in other tissues of myxedematous patients Microscopically however a variety of pathological changes has been described[30] Among these are destruction of muscle fibers thicken ing of the leaflets of the aortic valve and accumulations of a homogeneous material which has an affinity for hematoxylin but which does not display the staining characteristics of the myxedematous infiltration found in the skin[31]

In thyroidectomized animals hearts have been shown to be dilated *pale and flabby Microscopically there has been a decrease in the number* of muscle fibers with degeneration and disappearance of perinuclear sar coplasm in some of those which remain[3] Simpson[3] found that early thyroidectomy in sheep presented abnormal development of the sarco plasm Edema has been shown not only by the gross appearance of the muscle itself but also by measurements of actual water content[34]

Our knowledge of the exact pathologic change in the heart in myxedema and of the true nature of Zondek s so called myxedema heart has been greatly handicapped by paucity of autopsy examinations of completely untreated subjects Brewer[34] recently reported an autopsy of a man of middle age who had never received treatment for an advanced myxedema There was some fluid in the pericardium The left ventricle was moderately enlarged Patchy atherosclerosis was seen in the coronary arteries and throughout the course of the aorta and its main branches Microscopically there was some fibrosis as well as amorphous basophilic infiltration of muscle fibers

Effusion into the pericardium has been found both in autopsied cases of myxedema *and in experimental hypothyroidism*[3, 34, 35] *This may be* accompanied by ascites and by pleural effusion Means[9] states that in his experience the serous cavities of untreated cases invariably contained fluid In one of the autopsied cases of the Massachusetts General Hospital there were 3000 cc of serous fluid in the peritoneal cavity 1500 cc in the two pleural spaces and 1000 cc in the pericardial sac

The question has often been asked whether Zondek s diffusely enlarged heart that attained normal size so readily after thyroid therapy might in reality represent massive pericardial effusion The cases in which this hypothesis has been tested have not been numerous

Kern *and his associates*[35] *in 1949 were able to collect twenty one cases* in which great enlargement of the heart shadow had been noted and myxedema heart of Zondek had been suspected In all the subjects peri

cardial tap revealed massive effusion Kern himself was able to demonstrate pericardial effusion in four consecutive patients having myxedema even when roentgenologic findings were not suggestive of the presence of cardiac enlargement and in the absence of any signs of congestive failure He and his associates expressed the belief that pericardial effusion is an early and constant factor in myxedema and a major factor in the explanation of the so called myxedema heart They think also that the electrocardiographic changes formerly explained as due to myocardial weakness can better be attributed to a blanketing effect of the fluid in the pericardial sac

Lesions of the arteries have been frequently demonstrated Atheroma was apparent in more than half of the twenty autopsied cases of the Clinical Society of London [28] although in only rare instances was the condition advanced Sclerosis of aorta, coronaries and other arteries was shown in the early studies of von Eiselberg [36] Pick and Pineles[37] found similar changes following thyroidectomy in young goats The idea that hypothyroidism should contribute to premature and extensive arteriosclerosis derives support from the hypercholesterolemia, which is a frequent accompaniment and from an apparently greater incidence of angina pectoris Autopsy examinations on untreated cases have been insufficient to establish such a relationship Blumgart and his associates[38] reported their experiences with patients seen at intervals after therapeutic thyroidectomies or other measures intended to produce complete hypothyroidism they were not impressed that the tendency to atherosclerosis had been exaggerated In five patients surviving from three to eleven years in the hypothyroid state careful studies revealed minimal or no coronary atheroma

As early as 1908 Saltykow[39] suggested that the arterial lesion of myxedema resembled medial necrosis This idea has received support from the demonstrations by Kountz and Hemplemann[40] of spontaneous aortic rupture in three cases in which complete thyroidectomy had been performed during the course of malignant hypertension Examination revealed aortic lesions apparently identical to the cystic medial necrosis of Erdheim [41] Exactly similar lesions have been noted in a severely myxedematous patient who had during life no evidence of hypertension [42]

Clinical Manifestations Functional Disturbances In the myxedematous state, it has been shown that the velocity of blood flow is diminished and that the cardiac output per minute and per beat is decreased Studies of arteriovenous oxygen differences have revealed that the circulation rate is less than could be accounted for by the lower oxygen requirements of the tissues

Enlargement of the Heart The size of the heart shadow in the teleoroentgenogram is increased in most myxedematous patients Of forty eight cases studied by Lerman Clark and Means [44 45] thirty four showed a transverse diameter of the heart which exceeded by 1 cm or more, one half the diameter of the chest in twenty two the transverse measurement was 5 cm or more in excess of half the chest diameter

The cause of the enlargement is still a subject of dispute That it is

not due to hypertrophy of the cardiac musculature is clearly indicated by the rapidity with which the size of the heart decreases during treatment The most obvious explanation would be that the heart, like other tissues contains an increased amount of interstitial fluid Pathologically, however the extent of demonstrable edema of cardiac muscle does not readily account for the clinical observations Dilatation of some degree has usually been assumed and has been demonstrated in many autopsied cases and in the hearts of thyroidectomized animals [26] Gordon[40] has suggested that the supposed enlargement of the heart is attributable to accumulation of fluid in the pericardium He emphasized that the appearance of the roentgenographic shadow of the myxedema heart of Zondek closely resembles that of pericardial effusion also that fluoroscopically the heart borders move sluggishly in both conditions Fahr has stressed as possibly the only point in differential diagnosis that the diameter at the base of the heart is much narrower in myxedema than it is in the presence of massive pericardial effusion Unfortunately in some cases[46] of myxedema with excessive accumulation of fluid in the pericardium this differentiating sign has been absent In considering the available evidence certain facts must be emphasized (1) That pericardial fluid has been demonstrated clinically in a number of cases of advanced hypothyroidism [46,47,48,49] (2) that some degree of accumulation of fluid in the pericardium of autopsied cases has been an extremely common finding and (3) that in most of the clinical cases of gross enlargement of the heart in myxedema the possibility of pericardial fluid has not been entirely excluded

Clinical evidence indicates that great enlargement of the cardiac shadow is encountered only after a patient has been in a hypothyroid state for several years The degree of physical activity and of other factors of strain such as hypertension are no doubt contributory Zondek s [0] German officer was shot through the thyroid gland in 1914 Three years elapsed after the destruction of the gland before severe signs of cardiac involvement developed Fahr[51] observed a patient who had been successfully treated for myxedema but who had discontinued therapy Eight months were required before an enlargement of 3 cm in the transverse diameter of the heart could be demonstrated

Cardiac Decompensation In the literature there is no agreement as to the incidence of congestive heart failure Of 162 cases of myxedema studied by Willius and Haines [52] 91 per cent were said to be free of subjective or objective signs of organic cardiovascular disease In the remaining 9 per cent the lesions were accounted for by etiological factors other than myxedema On the other hand Fahr [45] in a study of seventeen cases found five with evidence of serious heart failure while eight others showed dyspnea, pitting edema reduction in vital capacity rales at the pulmonary bases and some degree of dilatation of the heart It is difficult indeed to explain such varied experience Most observers agree that extreme degrees of decompensation are uncommon except when other organic heart disease is present as a complication White [3] states that he has never seen congestive failure as a cause of death in myxedema

Angina Pectoris The association of precordial pain with myxedema was noted as early as 1914 by Hertoghe[54] and was mentioned by Zondek[50] in his original account of the myxedema heart in 1918 Characteristic angina pectoris was reported by Laubry[55] in 1924 Although complaint of precordial aching is not uncommon the incidence of severe pain appears to be quite rare Willius and Haines [2] in their 162 cases of high grade myxedema mention only one in whom twinges of pain followed the full use of thyroid Lerman, Means and Clark[44] saw one case of angina in eighteen patients while others[56, 57, 58] make no mention of the symptom

Hypertension Zondek in his original description of the myxedema heart specifically mentions the normal blood pressure accompanying the cardiac enlargement Actually hypertension is by no means rare Among ninety cases studied by Froment and Jeune [59] twenty two showed pressures above normal fifty nine were within normal limits and only nine revealed hypotension In Means [9] forty eight patients the blood pressure before treatment varied from 88/64 to 190/130 In the fatal case of Lenegre and Fleurot[60] the blood pressure was 220/110 Thompson and his coworkers[61] have presented evidence that the incidence of hypertension is greater in successfully treated myxedematous patients than it is in the general population

Cardiac Irregularities Sluggish heart action with slow pulse is apparent in most well advanced cases of hypothyroidism In some patients with low metabolism however, the heart rate may be accelerated Auricular fibrillation is rare [6, 63, 64] Gardner[65] in a single case noted periods of auricular flutter with arborization block Nodal paroxysmal tachycardia alternating with sinus bradycardia was reported by Lisser and Anderson [66] Paroxysmal auricular tachycardia has also been noted [62] Increased auricular ventricular conduction time is not very uncommon [62, 67] A high degree of partial heart block was reported by Luten [68]

Electrocardiographic Changes Some degree of abnormality in the electrocardiogram is extremely common in myxedema and in cretinism Froment and Jeune [9] found pathological changes in 106 of 163 cases, Ohler and Abramson[6] in thirteen of twenty one cases while Lerman Clark, and Means[43] found abnormalities in all of their patients with well developed myxedema The most constant feature is a flattening or inversion of the T waves particularly in Lead II This may be accompanied by abnormal axis deviation by a diminution in the amplitude of the QRS complexes and by small P waves Such changes are observed in many cases of hypothyroidism in which thorough clinical and radiographic examination reveals no cardiac abnormality The exact cause of the electrocardiographic changes is not clear The suggestion that they might be due to the altered resistance of myxedematous skin has not been substantiated That they are not attributable directly to the decreased rate of oxidation is shown by the work of Reid and Kenway [69] who found no abnormalities in the electrocardiograms of persons having low metabolism without myxedema

Treatment If a patient has not been too long neglected and if there are no serious complicating arterial lesions, treatment may be extremely

satisfactory Digitalis has been notably unsuccessful in relieving failure of myxedematous hearts Thyroid on the other hand accomplishes in most cases prompt and often dramatic improvement

Following thyroid medication the sounds of the heart gradually become more audible and the pulse rate increases As the basal metabolism returns to normal the output of the heart per beat and per minute is increased and the velocity of blood flow is augmented [43]

The size of the heart shadow diminishes The degree of change varies but may be very great In one of Fahr's cases there was a shrinkage of 6 3 cm in the transverse diameter over a period of seven weeks Ten of Lerman s[44] twelve patients exhibited progressive decrease in cardiac measurements, reaching a maximum in periods varying from three weeks to six months

Diminution in the abnormalities of the electrocardiogram is apparent in almost all treated cases and may develop rapidly Flat or inverted T waves become normal in appearance the amplitude of the QRS complex is increased and the P waves become normal or in some cases unusually prominent

The effect of thyroid medication on the level of blood pressure cannot be predicted Changes were noted in thirty seven of Means [29] forty eight cases In twenty of them the systolic pressure dropped 10 mm or more while in eleven cases it rose 10 mm or more Variable changes were also noted in the level of diastolic pressure In most of the patients there was slight increase in pulse pressure A gratifying result of treatment has been noted in some of the cases in which hypertension has been a feature [70] In Means series fourteen patients had high blood pressure before the institution of therapy In five of these the blood pressure returned to normal while in six others the level of blood pressure was lowered

Thyroid therapy has at times affected the rare cardiac irregularities of myxedema In two[6, 64] of three cases of auricular fibrillation the use of thyroid without other drugs was followed by a return to normal sinus rhythm Gardner s[64] auricular flutter with arborization block the nodal tachycardia of Lisser and Anderson [66] and the paroxysmal auricular tachycardia of Ohler and Abramson[6] disappeared following thyroid medication

It should be emphasized that there is usually no compelling reason for rapid administration of thyroid in cases of myxedema Changes consequent to the hypothyroidism have progressed over a period of months or years Rapid return to a normal state may be accompanied by discomfort and in patients who present evidence of cardiac decompensation or signs of arteriosclerosis of the coronaries or other vessels may be extremely hazardous

In the rare case of cardiac failure thyroid medication by increasing the metabolism and thereby increasing the work of the heart may precipitate *an acute decompensation* A more imminent danger presents itself in patients whose coronary vessels are extensively diseased In 1925 Christian [1] reported a case of a woman of fifty years who died of coronary infarction sixteen days after thyroid medication was begun Since that

time a number of accidents have been reported[72,73] These have been recently collected by Smyth[74] It is notable that the accidents have occurred in patients past middle life with ages running from forty nine to sixty three In these cases the coronary attacks have occurred under circumstances which suggest a causal relationship rather than mere coincidence

In the treatment of most cases of myxedema and especially of those discovered in later life or exhibiting signs of cardiac involvement or arteriosclerosis the initial dose of thyroid should not be greater than 0 06 Gm (1 grain) per day Correction of hypothyroidism results in increased oxidative rate and greater work of the heart The possible deleterious effect of this change should be minimized by restriction of the patient's activity during the early period of treatment This may be cautiously increased as the tolerance and requirements of the patient become apparent When myxedema is accompanied by cardiac disease the patient should be resting and under constant and detailed observation If during the period of readjustment there is any evidence of cardiac difficulty, the medication should be withdrawn for several days and then resumed in smaller dosage

DISEASES OF THE SUPRARENAL GLANDS

Addison's Disease

A small heart and a small aorta have frequently been described in Addison s disease and have been regarded as due to an atrophy secondary to the hypotension and the inactivity enforced by the persistent weakness and debility caused by the disease The condition of the heart was carefully studied by Barker,[75] who was able to assemble twenty one cases in which the heart had been weighed Using the table of average normal weight with upper and lower limits as devised by Smith from total body weights Barker found that the weight of the heart was less than the average normal in fifteen cases and greater than the average in six This would seem to indicate that there is actually a specific diminution in the size of the heart as an accompaniment of Addison's disease The deduction, however, is rendered somewhat invalid by the fact that most patients with Addison s disease particularly those in whom there is an accompanying tuberculosis tend to lose large amounts of weight and that a certain amount of atrophy of the heart may be expected from loss of weight due to any cause

Significant abnormalities in the electrocardiogram were encountered in 60 per cent of Thorn s[76] sixty four cases and in approximately half of these, were suggestive of myocardial disease The fact that over 50 per cent of the abnormalities appeared in patients under the age of forty and that twenty of thirty five were seen in women indicates a specific effect of adrenal insufficiency upon the heart muscle In one of our cases of addisonian crisis acute but reversible changes characteristic of myocardial infarction were encountered In Thorn s series no electrocardiographic pattern could be regarded as specific for Addison's disease The changes were extremely variable including prolonged PR and QT intervals, low QRS voltage and low or inverted T waves Other less frequent changes included absence of

the initial upward QRS deflection in the chest lead, small initial upward QRS deflection in the chest lead sinus bradycardia with a cardiac rate of less than fifty per minute, premature ventricular contractions and ST segment depression of less than 1 mm

In spite of *their small hearts, their electrocardiographic abnormalities* and the dyspnea and palpitation they experience after slight exertion untreated patients with Addison s disease seldom if ever develop cardiac decompensation Since the introduction of adrenal hormones however and particularly after excessive doses of desoxycorticosterone acetate or cortisone myocardial failure has been frequently encountered The circulatory weakness of the chronic adrenal insufficiency may have been a significant factor in its development

Optimal hormonal treatment restores normal blood pressure and normal plasma concentrations of sodium chloride and nonprotein nitrogen Excessive doses may cause sudden increases in blood volume and blood pressure as well as abnormally high sodium and chloride contents of serum and interstitial fluids It may result in cardiac dilatation pulmonary edema peripheral edema or even sudden death McGavack[7] has suggested measurement of heart size as a means of checking whether optimal dosage of hormone has been exceeded

Other than mechanical factors may contribute to the circulatory difficulty Excessive doses of adrenal hormone may be followed by abnormally low concentrations of potassium at times so extreme as to lead to transient peripheral motor paralysis The hypokalemia itself may result in widespread myocardial fibrosis with areas of focal necrosis in heart muscle Similar changes have been seen following potassium deficient diets[7,7a,7b] and after injection of desoxycorticosterone acetate[7c] and have been demonstrated clinically in the case reported by Goodof and MacBryde [7d]

Serious cardiac decompensation may result and may be accompanied by electrocardiographic changes which perhaps in part reflect variations in the concentration of potassium [8] Treatment with the hormone is successful in correcting the electrocardiographic changes of Addison s disease in only a few cases Seven of forty one patients in Thorn s series showed significant improvement in the electrocardiogram during therapy while fourteen exhibited an increase in the number and extent of the abnormalities Changes attributable to the therapy include low voltage of QRS waves prolongation of the PR interval prolongation of the QT interval and T wave inversion which may resemble that of myocardial damage or coronary insufficiency

Aldosterone in Congestive Heart Failure

It is now known that the adrenal cortex is responsible for the production of an antidiuretic hormone which may play an important role in producing edema of cardiac decompensation [8a] The mechanism by which production of this hormone is stimulated during heart failure is complex and as yet not completely understood Level of aldosterone in the blood during early decompensation is not high but as the heart failure develops the mechanism for its production is gradually established With increasing

venous blood volume and pressure there is a gradual simultaneous diminution in effective cardiac output with decreased volume and pressure or blood flow in all or in portions of the arterial circulation This stimulates reflexly through a hypothalamic center the production of aldosterone-stimulating hormone, which in turn stimulates the adrenal cortex to produce the antidiuretic hormone, aldosterone

In circulatory failure the kidney is already handicapped in its elimination of water by a decreasing glomerular filtration rate This factor may be, however, of less importance in the production of edema than aldosterone which augments reabsorption of sodium by the renal tubules

Cortical Tumors and Hyperplasia of the Suprarenals

Increased function of the suprarenal cortex appears now to be essential to the development of Cushing's syndrome Anatomically, hyperactivity of the gland may result from the formation of benign or malignant tumors or from a simple hyperplasia of the cortical cells The syndrome probably results from the effect of continued excessive secretion of adrenal cortical carbohydrate regulating hormones[-9] Stimulation of the adrenal cortex by the adrenal corticotrophic hormone of the pituitary (ACTH) may stimulate activity of the adrenal cortex but there is general agreement that the physiologic changes encountered in Cushing s disease are the result of abnormal adrenal cortical hormone secretion and are not due to the action of ACTH as such

Several factors in the Cushing s syndrome contribute to circulatory disturbance Hypertension both systolic and diastolic is usually a prominent feature of the disease In Raab s[80] series high blood pressure was evident in twenty four of twenty six cases in which blood pressure readings were mentioned Readings of systolic above 200 mm Hg are frequent In autopsied cases in which the heart has been described, hypertrophy, sometimes quite gross has been a feature Arteriolar sclerosis of vessels in many parts of the body may be extreme Death has occurred from apoplexy[81] Presence of diabetes probably contributes to the development of atherosclerosis although comparative studies of the precocity and degree of atheromatous lesions in Cushing's disease and appropriate controls are not available Some cases have been reported with elevated basal metabolic rates but thyrotoxicosis is by no means a constant feature, and hypertrophy of the heart cannot usually be attributed to associated hyperthyroidism

Another factor that may contribute to circulatory disturbance in Cushing s syndrome is disturbance in electrolyte equilibrium with tendency to accumulation of sodium and consequent overhydration increases in blood volume and added strain upon the heart This is evident also when cortical hormones are given therapeutically in other conditions

Chromaffin Cell Tumors

In 1922 Labbé Tinel and Doumer[8-] reported a case of a married woman of twenty eight years who suffered from frequent paroxysmal attacks of high blood pressure during one of which she developed a fatal pulmonary

edema Autopsy revealed a tumor of the left adrenal gland Five years later C H Mayo[83] successfully removed an adrenal tumor from a young woman with similar symptoms which were completely and permanently relieved by the operation Pincoffs[84] in 1929 reported the first case in which preoperative diagnosis was made

Sudden and wide fluctuations in arterial pressure are not unusual in essential hypertension and have been noted in association with a number of pathologic conditions When however fluctuations are marked and particularly when they are paroxysmal in character, presence of a pheochromocytoma or tumor of adult chromaffin cells of adrenal medulla or of some part of the sympathetic chain must be suspected [85 86]

Pheochromocytoma is not so rare a tumor as was formerly thought In 1940 [87] 103 cases could be collected but by 1950 the number was increased to 270 [88] It has been estimated that pheochromocytoma may be responsible for 1000 deaths in the United States each year [89] Because of its usually benign character and because its surgical removal may result in complete clinical cure early recognition is of consummate importance

Paroxysms may occur spontaneously or may be induced by change in position or temperature or by emotional stress hyperventilation physical exertion operative procedures massage or blows to the abdomen or pain In many cases systolic pressure has exceeded 300 and in one patient was recorded at 340 mm Hg [90] Diastolic pressure is more variable and even with excessive systolic pressure may be only moderately elevated It has however, been recorded as high as 240

In the same patient paroxysms may display great variability they may last for minutes or hours Some milder attacks pass almost unnoticed while others are accompanied by alarming symptoms Palpitation due to a rapid and vigorous action of the heart is an almost constant accompaniment Extremities usually become blanched cold mottled and sometimes painful There may be nausea and vomiting violent headache and drenching sweats Pain in lumbar or other muscles may be distressing

Precordial pain with radiation to the neck and down the arm has been frequently noticed If the attacks are severe or prolonged there may be signs of cardiac incompetence with sudden engorgement of the veins of neck enlargement of liver and pulmonary edema

The electrocardiographic changes during paroxysms have been variable and are not sufficiently characteristic to aid in diagnosis Very high T waves have been reported In one case there were cardiac irregularities at the end of attacks with short runs of auricular tachycardia ventricular extrasystoles and ventricular tachycardia Diphasic T waves have been observed in the first lead In another case a shift of the pacemaker from the sinoauricular to the auriculoventricular nodes was noted

Between attacks there may be no symptoms In the early stages of the disease the blood pressure is usually if not always normal When the condition lasts long enough however the pressure tends to become permanently elevated At times the permanent changes have been seen to develop rather rapidly as in the case of Rabin [91] in which in six months

the blood pressure between attacks had risen from 140/80 to 210/130 Electrocardiograms which have been studied between attacks in about one half of the cases are usually normal, in others, evidence of left preponderance, notching of the T waves and large T waves have been reported

Recognition of pheochromocytoma depends in part upon pharmacologic tests which may be classified into two groups provocative agents that induce paroxysm of hypertension during normotensive interval, and adrenergic blocking agents that cause fall in blood pressure from its paroxysmal or sustained high level Provocative agents have included histamine, tetraethylammonium chloride, tetraethylammonium bromide, and methacholine Adrenergic blocking agents have included benzodioxane Regitine (phentolamine), and dibenamine Successful use of these tests requires many precautions and no one of them can be as yet regarded as infallible

A method of diagnosis from estimation of urinary catechols was introduced by Engel and von Euler [92, 93] Epinephrine and other catechol derivatives are normally excreted in urine in conjugated form Normal daily output of the two substances amounts to only twenty to forty micrograms In pheochromocytoma excretion may be increased ten to fifty times

Surgery on patients with pheochromocytomas has in many instances resulted in dramatic relief of symptoms and restoration of health It is accompanied, however, by considerable risk Uncontrollable hypertension during operation has not infrequently caused death [94] This can be prevented by prompt use of benzodioxane or Regitine or possibly by administration of dibenamine prior to surgery Following removal of a tumor administration of dilute solutions of norepinephrine epinephrine or Neo synephrine may be necessary to control severe hypotension

DISEASES OF THE PANCREAS

Diabetes Mellitus

While diabetes is not known to affect the heart directly, it predisposes to atherosclerosis, narrowing of coronary vessels hypertension, arteriolar sclerosis, and severe nephritis[9] that may indirectly lead to severe heart disease High blood pressure may precede by several years the onset of diabetes or in some cases develop during its course Angina pectoris is frequent [96, 97, 98] Coronary occlusion is a common complication and may occur at an early age It was the cause of death in approximately 11 per cent of 139 cases at the Mayo Clinic [99] In Warren's[100] series of 484 cases in which necropsy was performed 16 7 per cent of 395 over the age of forty died of coronary occlusion Such statistics do not reveal the frequency of recent or healed infarctions myocardial fibrosis, or other evidence of coronary artery disease There is a significantly large proportion of females in cases in which diabetes is associated with severe coronary sclerosis Combination of the statistics of Dry and Tessmer's [91] 130 cases and Warren's 440 cases in which sex of patients was reported indicated that severe coronary sclerosis was found in eighty males and fifty eight females a ratio of 1 4 1 This may be compared with sex incidence of nondiabetics over the age of forty in which the ratio was 3 3 for women to 1 for men

Marked atheroma of the aorta with some dilatation occurs particularly when diabetes is associated with hypertension Occlusion of arteries of the legs also occurs with unusual frequency in cases of diabetes At the Mayo Clinic a series of 130 necropsies on diabetic patients more than forty years of age occlusion sufficient in degree to be symptomatic before death was present in 39 per cent Forty or fifty one such patients also exhibited severe sclerosis of coronary arteries[99] Again the proportion of females was greater than is usually found among nondiabetic patients A ratio of nondiabetic men to women was 7 7 1[100] while in the diabetics it was only 2 7 1

It also appears that diabetic patients with occlusive disease of arteries of the legs have a greater incidence of gangrene and trophic ulcer than a comparable nondiabetic group Hines[10] found 68 per cent of such lesions in diabetics as compared to 48 per cent of nondiabetics suffering from occlusive disease

In diabetes death may occur from congestive heart failure but is more frequently due to coronary occlusion

During diabetic acidosis and its subsequent treatment with insulin great reduction in concentration of serum potassium has been noted This has been accompanied by electrocardiographic changes characteristic of potassium deficiency[103,104]

Hyperinsulinism

Benign or malignant tumors or hyperplasia of the islands of Langerhans may give rise to hypoglycemia which may be accompanied by symptoms of weakness profuse sweating anxiety, faintness syncope or convulsions[105,106] In this syndrome the heart does not appear to be primarily or obviously involved Theoretically however a continued hypoglycemia might tend to deplete the glycogen content of the heart muscle and thus lead to cardiac weakness and circulatory collapse particularly in patients who are already subject to serious heart disease

In electrocardiograms Middleton and Oatway[107] found a depression of the T wave in all of the cases of insulin shock which they studied In animals with insulin hypoglycemia Soskin Katz and Frisch[108] demonstrated inversion of T waves which did not always return to normal after the injection of glucose solutions Experimentally it has been shown that while the isolated normal heart is capable of storing glycogen during insulin administration the diabetic heart does not store it unless the blood sugar is maintained well above the normal level[109] Death from cardiac infarction has been reported after a rapid fall in blood sugar from the administration of insulin[110] Because of this evidence there has been some apprehension concerning the use of insulin in patients whose hearts are decompensated and particularly in those who suffer from angina pectoris or present symptoms of coronary sclerosis Strouse and his associates[111] found that some of their patients with coronary disease experienced increasing precordial distress as the diabetic state was corrected by insulin Joslin[95] has emphasized however that many diabetic patients with incompetent hearts have been benefited with the cautious use of insulin All

observers agree that *in cardiacs, great care must be exercised to avoid hypoglycemia The diet should be regulated gradually and insulin should be given at first in very small doses*

DISEASES OF THE THYMUS

Status Thymicolymphaticus (Lymphatism)

In 1889 Paltauf[112] introduced the concept of a lymphatic constitution characterized anatomically by prominence of the thymus gland and of the lymphoid tissue and at times by hypoplasia of the aorta, clinically by sudden death either spontaneously or from trivial causes Since that time there has been much discussion concerning the nature of the condition and more recently concerning its existence The undoubtedly important medicolegal aspects of the concept finally led the Medical Research Council in conjunction with the Pathological Society of Great Britain and Ireland to appoint a committee for its thorough investigation Their studies were published in 1931 by Young and Turnbull [113] The commission found little if any association between the weight of the thymus and the amount of lymphoid tissue in various parts of the body They could discover no evidence of an association between arterial hypoplasia and an abnormally large thymus nor could they establish any valid relation of sudden death to the size of the thymus They concluded that the so called status thymicolymphaticus has no existence as a pathological entity An interesting sidelight upon the original contention of Paltauf comes from studies of Hammar [114] Boyd[115] and others who have shown that the thymus with malnutrition or disease tends to undergo rapid diminution in weight and that its normal size can only be ascertained in persons who die suddenly or after a short illness

DISEASES OF THE SEX GLANDS

Atrophy destruction or removal of the sex glands either in men or women may be followed by neurocirculatory symptoms In female castrates and in women at the time of the menopause recurrent sensations of flushing or of suffocation palpitation and tachycardia may result in serious incapacity [116] There is no evidence that the heart itself is affected Instability is typical of the menopausal syndrome and is reflected in fluctuations of blood pressure which may vary greatly from hour to hour There has been much dispute concerning a possible etiological relation between the menopause and hypertension [117] Maranon[118] believes that more than 50 per cent of women at the climacteric exhibit some elevation of blood pressure Many others have noticed a high incidence of hypertension It must be remembered, however, that the age of the normal menopause is also the age when arteriolar changes tend to become evident and that moderate or advanced hypertension is relatively frequent both in men and women during the fifth decade

Women before the age of menopause are relatively free from cardiac complications of atherosclerosis Statistics indicate that in people under the age of forty myocardial infarction is twenty five times as frequent in men as in women [119 120] although the reason for this is not known Recent

work[1 1] has indicated significant differences in lipoprotein concentration and distribution in young men and women In older men and women no sex difference can be demonstrated, and the constitution of lipids in plasma is altered from that seen in youth In patients who have survived myocardial infarction the distribution of lipoproteins is extremely abnormal in an exaggeration of the picture found in older men and women[1-2] It has been shown that this abnormal pattern of lipid concentration and distribution can be restored partially or completely to normal by the administration of estrogens[1?3 124 1 5]

Attention has been directed to a possible effect of testosterone propionate upon peripheral circulation and upon angina pectoris[1 6 1-7] Several reports have indicated that following its use anginal attacks have become less frequent less severe and of shorter duration[1 8 1 9] The studies of Lesser[130 131] concerned forty six patients, all of whom were said to be improved In four cases this impression was substantiated by exercise tolerance tests Injections of sesame oil used as controls were without effect The response to testosterone propionate has been neither instantaneous *nor dramatic and has become apparent only after several intra*muscular injections The mechanism by which its possibly beneficial effects might be accomplished has not been established Larger series of cases[13? 133] have permitted no conclusion concerning the benefit of the treatment

Considerable doubt is thrown upon this observation by a study of lipid concentration and distribution following the administration of testosterone[134] which in patients who have suffered one or more myocardial infarctions exaggerates the pathologic picture and in normal individuals produces pathologic changes that were previously not evident

REFERENCES

1 Escamilla R E and Lisser H J Clin Endocrin 2 65 1942
2 Perkins R F and Rynearson E H J Clin Endocrin 12 574 1952.
3 Zondek H Diseases of the Endocrine Glands translated by C Prausnitz p 314 William Wood and Co Baltimore 1936
4 Bassoe E Acromegaly Endocrinology and Metabolism 1 817 D Appleton Century Co New York 1922
5 *Kraus E J Deutsche med Wchnschr p 93? 1926*
6 Humphry L. and Dixon W B Brit Med J 2 1047 1910
7 Osborne O T Am J M Sc 103 617 1892
Yale Med J 4 1 1897
Tr A Am Physicians 1897
8 Mason V R Trans Assoc Am Physicians 51 220 1936
9 Hejtmancik M R Bradfield J Y Jr and Herrmann G R Ann Int Med 34 1445 1951
10 Houssay B A and Houssay H E J Cardiologia 21 259 1952
11 Cushing H The Pituitary Body and Its Disorders p 162 Lippincott Phila 1912
12 Behrens L H and Barr D P Endocrin 16 120 1932
13 Zondek H Herzbefunde bei endokrinen Erkrankungen Deutsch med Wchnschr 46 1239 1920
14 Cushing H Am J Path. 10 145 1934

Pages 207 to 2?6 replace former pages 207 to 2-5 © 1959

15 McLean F C and Hastings A D J Biol Chem 107 337 1934
16 Kellogg F and Kerr W J Am. Heart J 12 346 1936
17 Graybiel A and White P D Electrocardiography in Practice p 106 W B Saunders Co Phila 1941
18 Mandelstamm M Ztschr f d ges exper Med 51 633 1926
19 Skouge E Acta med Scandinav 90 305 1936
20 Marzahn H Ztschr f klin Med 127 182 1934
21 Marzahn H Ztschr f klin Med 127 367 1934
22 Ibraham J Jahrb f Kinderh 72 346 1910
23 Edwards D P and Page I H Am J Physiol 78 235 1926
24 Zondek H Das Myxodemherz Munch med Wchnschr 65 1180 1918
25 Assmann H Das Myxodemherz Munch med Wchnschr 66 9 1918
26 Meissner R Zur Klinik des Myxodemherzens Munch med Wchnschr 67 1316 1920
27 Fahr G Myxedema Heart J A M A 84 345 1925
28 Report of a Committee of the Clinical Society of London nominated December 19 1883 to investigate the subject of myxedema Trans Clin Soc London Supplement to Vol 21 London 1888
29 Means J H The Thyroid and Its Diseases J B Lippincott Phila 1937
30 Wegelin C Henke F and Lubarsch O Handbuch der speziellen pathologischen Anatomie und Histologie 8 350 J Springer Berlin 1926
31 Schultz A Virchow s Arch 232 302 1921
32 Goldberg S A Quart J Exp Physiol 17 15 1927
33 Simpson E D Quart J Exper Physiol 17 31 1927
34 Webster B and Cooke C Arch Int Med 58 269 1936
(a) Brewer D B J Path and Bact 63 503 1951
35 Tatum A L J Exp Med 17 636 1913
(a) Kern R A Soloff L A Snape W J and Bello C T Am J M Sc 217 609 1949
36 von Eiselsberg A Arch f klin Chir 49 207 1894
37 Pick E and Pineles F Ztschr f exp Path u Therap 7 518 1909
38 Blumgart H L Freedberg A S and Kurland G S Am. J Med 14 665 1953
39 Saltykow S Zentralbl f Path u path Anat 19 321 369 1908
40 Kountz W B and Hempelmann L H Am Heart J 20 599 1940
41 Erdheim J Virch Arch f path. Anat 276 187 1930
42 Foster M and Barr D P J Clin Endocrin 4 417 1944
43 *Stewart H J Deitrick J E and Crane N E J Clin Invest* 17 237 1938
44 Lerman J Clark R J and Means J H Ann Int Med 6 1251 1933
45 Lerman J Clark R J and Means J H Ann Int Med 8 82 1934
46 Gordon A H Trans Assoc Am Phys 50 272 1935
47 Freeman E B Ann Int. Med 7 1070 1934
48 Hurxthal L M New England J Med 213 264 1935
49 Marzallo E R and Franco S Am Heart J 17 368 1939
50 Zondek H Munch med Wchnschr 66 681 1919
51 Fahr G Am Heart J 8 91 1932
52 Willius F A and Haines S F Am Heart J 1 67 1925
53 White P D Heart Disease 4th Edition Macmillan N Y 1951
54 Hertoghe E Med Rec 86 489 1914
55 Laubry C Mussio Fournier and Walser J Bull et mém. Soc med d hop de Paris 48 1592 1924
56 Case C E Clifton Med Bull 11 112 1925
57 Lawrence C H and Row A W Endocrinology 12 377 1928
58 Riecker H H Michigan State Med Soc 30 831 1931

59 Froment R and Jeune M Bull et mem. d hop de Paris 53 1406 1937
60 Lenegre and Fleurot Arch de mal de coeur 31 856 1938
61 Thompson W O Dickie L F N Morris A E and Hilkevitch B H Endocrinology 15 265 1931
62 Ohler W R and Abramson J Arch Int. Med 53 165 1934
63 Walker J E J A M A 100 1025 1933
64 Gant J C New England J Med 213 918 1935
65 Gardner E L Quoted by Ohler and Abramson (62)
66 Lisser H and Anderson E M Endocrinology 15 5 1931
67 Ziskin T U S Vet Bureau Med Bull 6 24 1930
68 Luten D J Missouri Med Assn 26 73 1930
69 Reid W D and Kenway F L Endocrinology 20 149 1936
70 Duden C J Missouri Med Assn 26 25 1929
71 Christian H A Rhode Island Med J 8 109 1925
72. Fahr G Am. Heart J 3 14 1927
73 Higgins W H Am. J Med Sc 191 80 1936
74 Smyth C J Am. Heart J 15 652 1938
75 Barker N W Arch Path 8 43? 1929
76 Thorn G W Dorrance S S and Day E Ann Int Med 16 1053 1942
77 McGavack T H Am Heart J 24 99 1942
(a) Thomas K. M Mylan E and Winternitz M C Yale J Biol & Med 12 345 1940
(b) Follis R H Jr Orent Keiles E and McCollum E V Am. J Path 18 29 1942.
(c) Darrow D C and Miller H C J Clin Invest 21 60 1942
(d) Goodof I I and MacBryde C M J Clin Endocrinol 4 30 1944
78 Currens J and White P D Am Heart J 28 611 1944
(a) Johnson R D and Conn J W Mod Concepts Cardiovas Dis 27(1) 431 1958
79 Albright F Cushing s Syndrome Harvey Lectures 38 123 1942 43
80 Raab W Wien klin Wchnschr 47 1034 1934
81 Gouley B A Ann Int Med 8 1294 1935
82. Labbe M Tinel J and Doumer Bull et mém soc med hop de Par 46 982, 1922
83 Mayo C H J A M A 89 1047 1927
84 Pincoffs M C A Case of Paroxysmal Hypertension Associated with Suprarenal Tumors Trans A Am Physicians 44 295 1929
85 Wingo C F Williams J P and Wade F A Ann Int. Med. 42 856 1955
86 Editorial The Diagnosis of Pheochromocytoma Ann Int Med 39 1333 1953
87 Brunschwig A and Humphries E J A M A 115 335 1940
88 Smithwick R H Greer W E R Robertson C W and Wilkins R W New England J Med 242 252 1950
89 DeCourcy J L and DeCourcy C B Pheochromocytoma and the General Practitioner DeCourcy Clinic Cincinnati 1952
90 LeRiche R Guérison Lyon Chir 31 355 1934
91 Rabin C B Arch Path 7 228 1929
92 Engel A and Von Euler U S Lancet 2 387 1950
93 Von Euler U S Ann Surg 134 929 1951
94 Hatch F N Richards V and Spiegl R J Am. J Med 6 633 1949
95 Joslin E P The Treatment of Diabetes Mellitus Lea and Febiger Phila 1935.
96 Root H F and Graybiel A J A M A 96 925 1931
97 Cullinan E R and Graham G J Path and Bact 38 167 1934
98 Root H F Bland E F Gordon W H and White P D J A M A 113 27 1939

99 Wilder R M Clinical Diabetes Mellitus and Hyperinsulinism W B Saunders Co Phila Pa 1940
100 Warren S The Pathology of Diabetes Mellitus Ed 2 Lea and Febiger Phila Pa 1938
101 Dry T J and Tessmer C F Unpublished data
102 Hines E A Jr Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clinic 13 694 1938
103 Holler J W J A M A 131 1186 1946
104 Martin N E and Werlman M J Clin Invest 26 217 1947
105 Wilder R M Allan F N Power M H and Robertson H E J A M A 89 348 1927
106 Womack N A Gnagi W B Jr and Graham E A J A M A 97 831 1931
107 Middleton W S and Oatway W H Jr Am J Med Sc 181 39 1931
108 Soskin S Katz L N and Frisch R Ann Int Med 8 900 1935
109 Cruickshank E W H New England J Med 201 600 1919
110 Blotner H New England J Med 203 709 1930
111 Strouse S Soskin S Katz L N and Rubinfeld S H J A M A 98 1703 1932
112 Paltauf A Wien klin Wchnschr 2 877 1889 3 172 1890
113 Young M and Turnbull H M J Path and Bact 34 213 1931
114 Hammar J A Endocrinology 5 543 731 1921
115 Boyd E Am Dis Child 51 313 1936
116 Mazer C and Israel S L M Clin North America 19 205 1935
117 Nielson A L Am. J Obst and Gyn 15 212 1928
118 Maranon Quoted by Nielson
119 Glendy R E Levine S A and White P D J A M A 109 1775 1937
120 Gertler M M Garn S M and White P D J A M A 147 621 1951
121 Russ E M Eder H A and Barr D P Am. J Med 11 468 1951
122 Barr D P Russ E M and Eder H A Am J Med 11 480 1951
123 Barr D P Russ E M and Eder H A Tr A Am. Physicians 65 102 1952
124 Oliver M F and Boyd C S Am Heart J 47 348 1954
125 Marett W C and Vivas J R U S Armed Forces M J 4 1439 1953
126 Arndt H Wien Med Wchnschr 89 222 1939
127 Edwards E A Hamilton J B and Duntley S Q New England J Med. 220 865 1939
128 Hamm L J Clin Endocrin 2 325 1942
129 Walker T C J Clin Endocrin. 2 560 1942.
130 Lesser M A New England J Med 226 51 1942
131 Lesser M A New England J Med 228 185 1943
132 Levine S A and Likoff W B New England J Med 229 770 1943
133 Strong G F and Wallace A W Can M A J 50 30 1944
134 Russ E M Eder H. A and Barr D P Am J Med 19 4 1955

12

The Heart in Hyperthyroidism

Introduction Thyrotoxicosis is conspicuous because of its influence on the rate of the heart and many of its most distressing symptoms originate in that organ Death when it occurs may be due to heart failure and Moebius[1] said *Die Basedow Kranken leiden und sterben durch das Herz'* For this and many other reasons the heart in hyperthyroidism deserves a most careful consideration

It is a fact that as early as 1786 Parry realized the connection between cardiac symptomatology and goiter, but to his mind, the heart disease was the primary condition His notes published posthumously in 1825 include a series of eight cardiac cases in which goiter and exophthalmos were outstanding He considered the thyroid and eye changes secondary to the heart disease itself

Adlemann [3] in 1829 spoke of Kropfherz' but Graves [4] Stokes [5] Marsh [6] and McDonnel [7] four English observers discussing separately the same group of cases between 1840 and 1855 were still convinced that the enlargement of the thyroid and the exophthalmos developed as a result of the heart trouble Markham [8] in 1858 reported "affection of the heart with enlarged thyroid and thymus glands and prominence of the eyes

The Zurich surgeon Rose [9] wrote a long paper in 1877 pointing out the importance of considering the heart in operations on the thyroid gland Forced respiration produced by compression of the trachea by the enlarged thyroid gland, he thought weakened the heart and finally caused it to fail His method of treatment was to perform a preliminary tracheotomy to relieve the heart of this particular form of burden The classical goiter heart of Rose was thus interpreted as a heart which had become enlarged and weakened purely through mechanical obstruction

Moebius and practically simultaneously Horsley [10] and Kocher[11] (*vide* struma cardiopathica) and F Muller [12] recognized the part played in this syndrome by the thyroid secretion but at the time no adequate theory was produced to explain the circulatory changes Many other writers mentioned cardiac decompensation in patients with large goiters and most of these observations were made in the goiter regions of Switzerland Bavaria and the Tyrol by such men as Wolfer [13] Wette [14] Thomas Schranz [15] and others

Finally in 1899 Kraus[16] brought forth his conception of the so called neurotic or thyrotoxic heart which is now the accepted one in spite of a residue of confusion as to those cases which occur in patients with obvi

ously nontoxic goiters Lack of exact knowledge of the function of the thyroid gland caused him to attempt to include abnormalities of the heart seen in cases of cretinism and hypothyroidism It is likely that authors from goiter districts have continued to confuse cases of myxedema heart with the heart in hyperthyroidism Even as late as 1926, European writers[17] have thought of the cardiac disturbances in goiter as due to pressure on the trachea, the great vessels or the vagus and sympathetic nerves of the neck Interest, in America, is focused so emphatically on those thyrotoxic cases in which pressure phenomena play little or no part, that the writer proposes to omit, as irrelevant, any mechanical aspects of the enlargement of the gland, and proceed to a description of the "thyrotoxic heart"

Tachycardia Tachycardia is the outstanding cardiac sign With the patient at rest the heart rate often is as rapid as 120 to the minute and not infrequently 180 to 200 The tachycardia varies according to the patient s activities although it continues even during sleep The degree of tachycardia parallels in most cases the severity of the disease and a fairly accurate guess as to the amount of elevation of the basal metabolic rate can be made from the resting pulse rate It must be remembered that the resting pulse rate varies in different normal people from a rate of fifty to one of eighty beats to the minute, and this same proportionate variation may exist if hyperthyroidism develops so that the pulse rate of the first, when doubled will be 100 while the second will rise to 160 under the influence of the same degree of thyrotoxicosis

Murmurs In the early stages of hyperthyroidism the tachycardia is not associated with cardiac enlargement, murmurs, or any evidence of decompensation although extrasystolic arrhythmia does occur quite frequently Later there is enlargement which is due to dilatation with very little hypertrophy With the dilatation come murmurs which are usually characteristic of mitral regurgitation (apical systolic murmurs), but which may even simulate mitral stenosis* (apical presystolic murmur and thrill) The heart sounds are loud and snapping the second sound increased and the apex beat is forceful and abrupt At times a systolic murmur[19] over the second and third left interspace may have a suggestive rubbing quality and be increased in intensity by pressure with the bell of the stethoscope This type of murmur disappears after relief of thyroid toxicity The strong possibility exists that this murmur may be related to dilatation of the pulmonary conus which frequently is seen in fluoroscopic and x ray examinations of these patients The systolic blood pressure is slightly raised and the diastolic pressure lowered giving an increased pulse pressure with a bounding pulse and a visible increase in the systolic excursion of the carotid arteries Pulsation of the liver and even of the spleen has been reported Dilatation of the retinal veins and pulsation of the retinal arteries occasionally may be seen on ophthalmoscopic examination

* This latter variety of murmur was shown to me at the Mayo Clinic by Dr Boothby[18] but several similar cases seen in the Johns Hopkins Hospital have proven on subsequent postoperative follow up examinations actually to be suffering from rheumatic mitral stenosis

Auricular Fibrillation Finally, in the still later stage there appears auricular fibrillation with myocardial insufficiency, orthopnea edema enlarged liver, anasarca and cardiac pain Auricular flutter heartblock and bundle branch block* are forms of arrhythmia which also are seen occasionally Electrocardiographic studies show the presence of the arrhythmias just mentioned and in earlier cases increase in the height of the T wave A direct relationship between the height of the T wave and the elevation of the basal metabolic rate has been traced in individual cases [1] but this offers no particular help to the clinician There may be electrocardiographic evidence of preponderance of one or the other ventricle usually the left

Among the cases which develop auricular fibrillation some show signs of congestive heart failure and others do not Hamilton[2] has stressed this point and carefully described the clinical picture of those with congestive failure He points out that in his series of fifty cases exophthalmos was usually absent, the thyroid gland was often normal in size, and tremor and nervousness almost never occurred In recognizing this form of congestive heart failure he stresses (a) Tachycardia which does not respond as well as should be expected to complete rest and digitalization (b) history of unexplained loss of about 13 6 kg (30 pounds) (c) history of a surprisingly long duration of complete disability associated with gross signs of heart failure, (d) elevated B M R ** (he states that nonthyrotoxic congestive heart failure cases may have a B M R of +63 which will return to normal when the heart failure is relieved)

It was pointed out in 1928 [3] that nodular goiter with hyperthyroidism made itself apparent predominantly in individuals past the age of forty five In these individuals early degenerative changes in the myocardium coupled with deterioration in muscle tone from lack of active physical training provided an organism which was thought to be increasingly sensitive to thyroid secretion Similarly the average age of this series of Hamilton s cases was fifty years and most of them were female patients Thus slight hyperthyroidism (so slight that the characteristic clinical signs of exophthalmos, goiter tremor and restlessness are hardly noticeable) could cause myocardial insufficiency in this group also Whatever theories may be held about these cases the fact remains that the best therapeutic solution lies in treating the hyperthyroidism For this if for no other reason an element of latent thyrotoxicosis should always be suspected in an elderly individual who is suffering from congestive heart failure In the nineteenth century it was fashionable to discuss these cases under the heading of Formes Frustes and more recently cases have been described with normal metabolic rates who obtain symptomatic improvement from iodine medication or from subtotal thyroidectomy

If thyrotoxicosis is brought to an end successfully the heart returns to the condition it presented before hyperthyroidism occurred if the condi

* Only one case has been reported[10] in which the bundle branch block was abolished by the relief of hyperthyroidism.

** The diagnosis of hyperthyroidism can never be made solely on an elevation of the basal metabolic rate as false high readings also are often obtained when patients are emotionally disturbed by worry anger fright or suffer from leukemia or malignant tumor

tion runs on, death may eventuate, and in former days frequently resulted from heart failure *

In cases of hyperthyroidism showing simple tachycardia the operation for removal of part of the thyroid gland is followed in some cases by paroxysmal auricular fibrillation, which may last an hour or two or may go on for a day or two Such a paroxysm usually stops spontaneously with out harm but the writer has seen cases in which emboli arose apparently from the fibrillating auricles Previously it was thought that handling of the thyroid gland at operation might express an unusual amount of secre tion into the general circulation, but the surgical methods in use today practically exclude this possibility As the irritability of the heart muscle subsides after removal of the source of excess thyroxin the auricles usually revert spontaneously to normal contractions

In his study of cases treated at the Johns Hopkins Hospital, Andrus [4] noted that auricular fibrillation in hyperthyroidism occurred only in patients over forty years of age or patients in whom the heart had suffered previous damage such as rheumatic valvular disease The hearts of these patients like those with nodular goiter with hyperthyroidism previously described were less able to stand the overwork put upon the circulation in hyperthyroidism than are normal young hearts trained to compensate for constant excesses of physical exertion It would appear then that one factor in the production of auricular fibrillation in hyperthyroidism is overwork just as in cases of hypertension or mitral stenosis

If auricular fibrillation in hyperthyroidism were purely a manifestation of the toxic effect of thyroxin on the heart muscle one would expect to encounter it more often in the fulminating severe cases of exophthalmic goiter of the young rather than in the relatively mild cases seen in the old As a matter of experience the reverse is the case In an effort to explain this fact certain writers have hypothesized gradual myocardial damage occurring from long existing mild hyperthyroidism or even from nodular goiter without hyperthyroidism The writer believes, rather, that a previ ously weakened or out of training heart by fibrillating brings to light a slight hyperthyroidism which otherwise would pass as symptomless Pre viously weakened hearts may fibrillate from the effect of mild or moderately severe thyrotoxicosis Stroud speaks of coronary insufficiency in individ uals past the third decade as playing a contributing part in the production of auricular fibrillation in patients with long standing rheumatic valvular and myocardial damage This change in the efficiency of the coronary cir culation surely is an important factor in the development of auricular fibrillation in older patients with hyperthyroidism

Nahum and Hoff [5] produced transient auricular fibrillation in four hyperthyroid patients with injections of acetyl B methylcholine chloride They postulated that during the action of a predisposing factor (E factor) fibrillation of the auricles may be produced by superimposed vagal stimu lation Anoxemia[26] or anemia [7] and auricular distention[8] also may act as predisposing factors On the other hand Surtshin and Rucknagel [9]

* Dr J Schranz 1887 'Um das Herz dreht sich im der Regel bis zuletzt das Geschick des Kranken beim Kropf das degenerierte Herz bringt ihm den Tod

failed to produce fibrillation with large intravenous doses of acetylcholine or methacholine in fourteen of fifteen experiments on dogs rendered hyperthyroid by feeding thyroid extract or injecting thyroxin intramuscularly They state The findings are interpreted as indicating that no increased cardiac sensitivity to vagus substance is present in canine experimental hyperthyroidism Since, (a) the relation of age and sex to the incidence of auricular fibrillation in clinical hyperthyroidism resembles that of age and sex to the incidence of coronary atherosclerosis, (b) a large percentage of patients with hyperthyroidism and auricular fibrillation show evidence of organic heart disease (c) no correlation exists between the height of the basal metabolic rate and incidence of auricular fibrillation in thyrotoxicosis and in view of the experimental findings presented it is suggested that the induction of auricular fibrillation in thyrotoxicosis is influenced by increased vagal activity in the presence of some state independent of the thyrotoxicosis It is speculated that auricular ischemia may be conducive to the development of fibrillation and that coronary vascular disease not necessarily progressive may be present and favorable to initiation of the arrhythmia in a large fraction of the thyrotoxic patients with fibrillation but no other evidence of organic heart disease '

The early stages of hyperthyroidism are quite indefinite and for this reason the resulting tachycardia may be indistinguishable from effort syndrome' or neurocirculatory asthenia Estimation of the protein bound iodine in conjunction with the radioactive iodine uptake test usually dispells this confusion In the later stages the thyroid factor in the cardiac derangement is quite obvious although it is frequently difficult or impossible to estimate accurately the degree of underlying cardiac disease which may exist in addition

Since 1933 Levine[30] has been interested in the occurrence of angina pectoris in patients with thyrotoxicosis In 1950 he reported the association of these two conditions in twenty four cases (eighteen men and six women) In this series angina pectoris decubitus was unusually frequent (seventy five per cent) and the attacks of pain ceased promptly after the use of iodine preparatory to subtotal thyroidectomy In this group clear cut symptoms of thyrotoxicosis were fewer and less prominent than in patients with thyrotoxicosis without angina They did well on treatment and one patient remained free from attacks of heart pain for as long as seventeen years In this group the average age was fifty four years and in almost all cases the thyrotoxicosis had been overlooked because the two most obvious manifestations (enlarged thyroid gland and exophthalmos) were either absent or inconspicuous He concluded that when coronary arteriosclerosis is present with thyrotoxicosis angina pectoris may be brought to light or aggravated by the increased demands on the heart

From the foregoing description of the thyroid heart it will be seen that its chief characteristic is *tachycardia* which may progress sooner or later to auricular fibrillation The mechanism producing the rapid heart rate still is not perfectly understood The older theories of cardiac embarrassment from mechanical pressure causing constriction of the trachea or impaired blood flow through the cervical vessels or irritation of the cardiac

nerves (vagus and accelerator) today have few advocates. What might be thought of as *subsidiary circulatory changes* that develop in hyperthyroidism have been measured by clinical and laboratory experiments. The blood volume is increased in hyperthyroidism and diminished in hypothyroidism;[31,32] the minute output of the heart is increased in hyperthyroidism,[33,34] and the blood flow is accelerated in hyperthyroidism and slowed in hypothyroidism.[35] The capillaries in the skin are constantly more dilated than in normal controls,[36] and Stewart and Evans[37] in confirming these various findings in eighteen hyperthyroid patients, pointed out a lineal relationship between the rates of blood flow and basal metabolism. The blood flow changes in the skin provide for increased heat dissipation in hyperthyroidism and heat conservation in myxedema.[38] There is a marked similarity of circulatory change between the so called beriberi heart and the thyroid heart and Means[39] believes that a relative vitamin B deficiency may develop in hyperthyroidism in the presence of the increase in metabolic demands.

Newer methods of studying cardiac output, blood flow, and other dynamics of circulation have been applied to hyper- and hypothyroid conditions.[40] Earlier observations that cardiac output is increased in hyperthyroidism even after congestive failure has developed have been confirmed by cardiac catheterization, and it has even been found that in some instances not only minute output but output per beat is increased. Usually, however, cardiac output increases proportionately with pulse rate and pulse rate with metabolic rate. Studies made in sixteen hyperthyroid patients[41] and two treated hyperthyroid patients to measure rate of removal from the blood stream by the liver of bromsulfalein by catheterization of the hepatic vein gave results, by applying the Fick principle, indicating that the hepatic blood flow is increased very slightly in hyperthyroidism and in some cases not at all, whereas the oxygen consumption of the liver is increased disproportionately.* The authors speculate as to whether this increased oxygen consumption with a normal blood flow might lead to anoxemia of the liver cells in the central portion of the lobule, ultimately producing cellular damage. This would not, of course, account for the periportal fibrosis seen in some cases. Bromsulfalein retention was increased in some cases. In these same observations the systolic and mean blood pressures, but not the diastolic pressures, in the right ventricle and pulmonary artery were elevated, associated with an elevated pulmonary blood flow (cardiac output) and a normal pulmonary peripheral vascular resistance. Thus a patient with thyrotoxicosis differs under conditions of exercise from the normal individual in whom the pulmonary blood flow can be doubled or trebled without any significant rise in pulmonary arterial pressure.

Other studies[43] made on nine patients with hyperthyroidism indicate that none of the cerebral metabolic functions varies significantly from the normal in this disease. Cerebral blood flow and oxygen utilization remain

* Further studies using improved technics which should give more accurate measurements may change these figures, but it seems probable that the basic facts will find confirmation.[42]

unchanged in hyperthyroidism, although cerebral blood flow and oxygen utilization had previously been shown to be lowered in myxedema The renal blood flow is somewhat increased in hyperthyroidism and somewhat diminished in hypothyroidism[44] Blood flow to the skin and muscles is greatly increased although oxygen utilization in skin and muscle is only moderately increased Thus the total arteriovenous oxygen difference actually represents an average of excessive rate of O_2 withdrawal in some tissues (splanchnic) and a reduced rate in others (muscles and skin)

Formerly it was believed that blood flow to an organ was regulated to adjust for the changing metabolic demands of that organ This theory no longer is tenable We see for instance that in hyperthyroidism the metabolic level in the liver is much higher than in other organs yet the blood flow is roughly within normal limits On the other hand the metabolic rate in the brain is not increased nor is the blood flow altered Peripheral blood flow is greatly increased and is out of proportion to increase in metabolism and renal blood flow is moderately increased although there is no evidence of increase in renal cell metabolic rate The increase in cardiac output is greater proportionately than the total metabolic rate and one important function thus accomplished is to provide additionally blood flow for transport of body heat to the skin surface Heat regulation depends in large measure on neurocirculatory reflexes

From these observations one must assume that a major function of the increased blood flow in hyperthyroidism which goes predominantly to the skin and skeletal muscles, is to provide for heat loss through the skin Increased oxygen requirement may be satisfied in the splanchnic organs for instance if not also in muscle by more complete oxygen removal from the blood in passage

Whether increased blood flow to the skeletal muscles is a merely necessary by product of increase to the skin or whether as seems more likely it serves a useful function is not clear Muscular weakness has long been recognized as part of the clinical picture of hyperthyroidism and Thorn[45] showed that creatinuria is a constant finding in these cases It has been thought[46] that this abnormal loss of creatine may constitute a step in lowering the labile phosphate supply and of the storage of the high energy phosphate compounds creatine phosphate and adenosine triphosphate Although the intimate action of thyroid hormone on cellular metabolism is not established current concepts hold that it may act by uncoupling oxidative phosphorylation leading to inefficient oxygen consumption and impaired use of energy sources important for contractile processes Thus it is postulated that some such metabolic defect in the myocardium may contribute significantly to the development of heart failure when it occurs in thyrotoxicosis

Although no final explanation of these circulatory changes is at hand they all afford proof of the increased load borne by the heart in hyperthyroidism The constant maintenance of a more rapid flow of an increased volume of blood by a heart whose muscle cell action is impaired and whose rapid rate robs it of most of its usual rest period during diastole constitutes a strain which challenges the underlying normality of the myocardium

As throwing different light on thyroid tachycardia it is interesting to consider the effect of thyroid extract medication on cases of heartblock Willius,[47] and Aub and Stern[48] have reported such observations and a similar case has been studied at the Johns Hopkins Hospital Briefly the ventricular rate is unaffected by large doses (1 8 Gm [28 grains] a day) of thyroid extract although the body metabolism becomes elevated and the auricular rate increases as much as from 70 to 120 One must conclude that in the human organism either ventricular heart muscle is less sensitive to the direct action of thyroid extract than is auricular heart muscle with its delicate pacemaker or that in the intact human being tachycardia is brought about through some indirect mechanism possibly mitigated through cerebral nuclei and the vagus and accelerator nerves The later mechanism would fit more naturally into a homeostatic device than the former

Conversely experiments with isolated hearts from animals which have been rendered hyperthyroid by feeding with thyroid extract show that these heart muscle preparations maintain a rapid rate of contraction, 26 to 144 beats per minute faster than normal preparations under the same conditions for as long as ten hours after isolation [49]

In an editorial discussion Andrus[50] in reviewing the literature says 'Tachycardia and increased cardiac output at rest, exaggerated by exertion or excitement regularly follow thyroid feeding or the injection of thyroxin in animals but only after a latent period of seven to twenty four hours Moreover this effect may be produced in the embryo before the heart has been innervated or in the heart of one animal transplanted into the neck of another when the typical effects of thyroxin are produced in the host Thyroxin has been shown to increase the rate of beating of explanted cardiac muscle cells from two day old chick embryos but only after twelve hours contact with the tissue Tachycardia once provoked in the intact animal by thyroid feeding or thyroxin injection, persists in the isolated perfused heart and increases far more than normal on addition of adrenalin to the perfusate The denervated heart *in situ* in a hyperthyroid animal displays an exaggerated response to exercise or injected adrenalin

'The oxygen consumption of the heart lung preparation from thyroxinized animals is measurably increased as is the oxygen uptake of the isolated auricles from thyroxinized guinea pigs It has been debated whether the increased rate of oxygen consumption can be accounted for by the increased heart rate In the heart lung preparation it seems that this may be so but the oxygen consumption of the isolated auricle is measurably increased even though it fails to contract In a few instances the oxygen consumption of that portion of the human heart drained by the coronary sinus (left ventricle) has been estimated by catheterization in the presence of hyperthyroidism and found not to be notably abnormal * In experi

* When repeated by other investigators however the coronary blood flow in eight cases of hyperthyroidism was found significantly increased while the arteriovenous oxygen difference remained constant Following effective treatment of the hyperthyroidism with I^{131} the cardiac output, cardiac work coronary blood flow and myocardial oxygen consumption returned to normal [68]

mental hyperthyroidism however, it seems certain that the cardiac tissue shares in the metabolic effect of the thyroid hormone perhaps metabolic in nature upon the heart itself In contrast dinitrophenol which notably stimulates metabolism, has much less influence on heart rate or none at all'

Although the exact mechanism by which these changes are brought about is still far from clear the tachycardia which is persistent and con tinues during sleep and is excessive after exercise seems to be brought about by at least two mechanisms, (a) the homeostatic neurocirculatory mechanism thrown into action possibly by the increased heat production from elevated metabolic rate and (b) the direct effect of thyroid secretion on the heart muscle cells

Dilatation and Hypertrophy Whether or not dilatation and hypertro phy occur in an uncomplicated thyroid heart is still a disputed question Those who think that hypertrophy of the ventricles occurs can find con firmation in the experiments on laboratory animals Cameron and Car michael [1] in 1921 clearly produced hypertrophy of the heart in rats by feeding thyroid extract In 1930 Simonds and Brandes reported their work using dogs They found that the hypertrophy involved all the cham bers of the heart with a slightly greater proportional increase in the left ventricle Also most accounts of the postmortem findings of the thyroid heart describe hypertrophy in a large number of cases and of twenty seven thyroid hearts studied in the Pathological Department of the Johns Hopkins Hospital by McEachern and Rake [3] sixteen had definite hyper trophy Lewis [4] reports twelve cases in all but three of which the heart weighed over 300 Gm (10 ounces) Means and Richardson[39] also report the necropsy findings in twelve cases Their series showed but little hyper trophy and no important pathological changes were found at autopsy in a series of 18 dogs reported on by Rasmussen in circulatory failure with extreme tachycardia with diminished blood pressure and low cardiac out put as a result of chronic thyroid intoxication

The clinical evidence is not clear cut Hurxthal[6] made careful cardiac measurements on thyroid patients before operation and again three months after operation He found no contraction in the size of the heart from which he inferred that there had been no previous enlargement He fur ther compared 100 cases of toxic goiter with 100 cases of the nontoxic type and after making correction for the transverse diameter of the chest and body weight he concluded that the average transverse diameter of the heart in the toxic group exceeded that of the nontoxic group by only 0 49 cm Friedberg and Sohval [7] (1937) reviewed the subject of cardiac hyper trophy in Graves disease In twenty seven fatal cases of hyperthyroidism studied at the Mt Sinai Hospital hypertrophy was found in fourteen but twelve of these suffered also from hypertension or severe coronary sclerosis or established auricular fibrillation The remaining two cases showed hyper trophy of very slight degree independent of the various pathological states just mentioned They believe that tachycardia compensates for increase in minute output of blood by the heart in hyperthyroidism and that the output per beat is not increased and therefore dilatation does not

occur ın uncomplıcated cases Cardıac work ıs dırectly proportıonal, ac cordıng to Starr,[6-8] to the pulse pressure In hyperthyroıdısm thıs ıs ıncreased One would thınk thıs ıncreased cardıac work would lead to hypertrophy, but sınce such ıs not the case there must be some addıtıonal necessary factor whıch ıs lackıng ın uncomplıcated hyperthyroıdısm

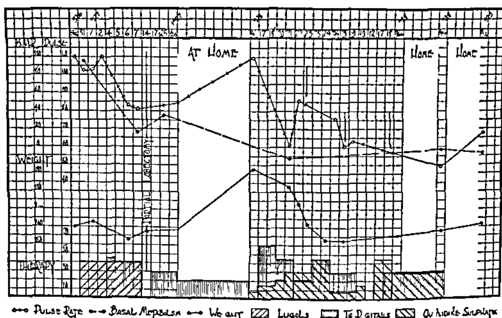


FIGURE 1 Case 1 Followıng the partıal lobectomy the patıent ınsısted on returnıng home before the aurıcular fibrıllatıon had been ınterrupted Durıng the thırteen months at home on dıgıtalıs under the dırectıon of hıs local physıcıan he contınued to fibrıllate and gradually went downhıll Durıng hıs second stay at the hospıtal on rest dıgıtalıs and quınıdıne he excreted 15 kg (33 pounds) of fluıd ın eıght days and reverted to normal rhythm on the eıghth day Sınce September 12 1928 he has done full manual labor as a track man on the raılroad wıthout the loss of a sıngle day from sıckness and wıthout takıng eıther dıgıtalıs or quınıdıne (Thomas Bull Johns Hopkıns Hosp)

When congestıve faılure exısts, from whatever combınatıon of causes, dılatatıon of the ventrıcles occurs and thıs dılatatıon may dısappear en tırely when the hyperthyroıdısm has been allayed The followıng case ıllus trates thıs statement

CASE 1 Mr G aged forty four years Occupatıon Raılway track laborer Admıtted to the Church Home and Infırmary December 30 1926

Nervousness and promınence of the eyes had been first notıced about four teen months before admıssıon Fıve months prevıous to admıssıon (March 1926) a local physıcıan had dıagnosed hıs case as exophthalmıc goıter but he was gıven no treatment In Aprıl he suddenly lost hıs voıce and thıs condıtıon lasted three months after whıch ıt gradually dısappeared Durıng the summer months the nervousness ıncreased and he had several attacks of dıarrhea Hıs wıfe notıced that hıs appetıte was abnormally good but that he was becomıng tremulous About seven weeks before admıssıon dyspnea orthopnea and palpıtatıon became very marked and there was some cough and slıght swellıng of the ankles There was no past hıstory of tonsıllıtıs chorea rheumatısm or

symptoms suggesting syphilis the only previous illness being typhoid fever in 1916

Physical examination A well-developed man of forty four years weighing 72 7 kg (160 pounds) He was very restless although not apprehensive His skin was flushed and moist There was an extreme degree of exophthalmos of both eyes which had resulted in an inflammatory condition of the conjunctivae The thyroid was diffusely enlarged rather soft in consistence with no thrills or bruits Cardiac dulness measured 5 cm. to the right of the midline and about 9 cm to the left. The sounds at the apex were quite irregular (108 to the minute) and a systolic murmur was heard The sounds at the base were irregular no murmurs There was a pulse deficit of seventeen beats to the minute Blood pressure 150/70 Lungs clear no rales at the bases Liver not felt. Marked tremor of the extended fingers Slight edema of the ankles

Basal metabolic rate ninety five per cent above the average normal for his size age and sex (December 31 1926) Urine Acid 1 020 Alb + Sug 0 Micro Normal Hemoglobin ninety five per cent

Course in hospital Digitalis therapy was instituted and Lugol s solution 0 6 cc. (10 minims) t i d was given. Marked symptomatic improvement took place with a corresponding fall in the basal metabolic rate to +32 on January 6 (weight 70 kg [154 pounds]) and to +14 on January 11 (weight 71 8 kg [158 pounds]) On January 14 a subtotal thyroidectomy was performed by Dr W F Rienhoff Jr without altering the patient s condition to any extent The Lugol s solution was discontinued (as is our usual procedure) and eleven days after the operation the B M R was +35 per cent. Auricular fibrillation persisted but the patient was forced to return to his home in West Virginia on January 26 From the history of his symptoms during the next twelve and one-half months it seems evident that auricular fibrillation persisted uninterruptedly He took tincture of digitalis under the direction of his local physician In May he resumed his work but he could not do more than pump the handcar out to work and he often became short of breath He was somewhat better during July but in August he began to get nervous and run-down and could not walk 300 yards without breathlessness He rested during September and improved slightly but could only perform an occasional day s work during October November and December Some time about the middle of December his condition began to go downhill and in February he noticed a good deal of swelling of the legs

On his return to the hospital February 15 1928 he presented the picture of severe cardiac decompensation with auricular fibrillation cardiac dulness 4 cm to the right and 19 cm. to the left in the sixth intercostal space Blood pressure 112/85 As the time the patient could stay in the hospital was extremely limited digitalis and quinidine therapy were started simultaneously and eight days later during which time he had lost 15 kg (33 pounds) the liver had become normal in size and the pulse regular in force and rhythm During the following week he continued to excrete the edematous fluid until at the end of fourteen days admission he had lost 19 kg (42 pounds) Auricular fibrillation reappeared when the dose of quinidine was reduced but normal rhythm was permanently restored by adding a dose of quinidine at midnight. The patient was discharged on March 24 1928

He returned to Baltimore on June 7 1928 for examination. He said that he had taken tincture of digitalis 0 6 cc. (10 minims) t i d and quinidine sulfate 0 3 Gm. (5 grains) t i d and at 11 P M regularly and had had no return of the irregular pulse His strength had gradually increased so that he

felt he was ready to resume work He looked quiet and strong There was no edema liver not palpable no rales at the lung bases Heart dulness 2 cm to the right and 13 cm to the left with a short soft systolic murmur heard at the apex Sounds regular and of fair quality although the first sound was somewhat muffled at the apex B M R —1 per cent Weight 71 3 kg (157 pounds)

Electrocardiograph June 7 1928 Rate 67, rhythm sinoauricular P R interval 0 23 second T I II and III inverted The first degree heart block as well as inversion of T I and II and the sinus arrhythmia are almost certainly due to the amount of digitalis he has taken

Teleoroentgenogram MR 5 ML 9 T 30 Aorta slightly dilated

The effect of exercise does not pass off as rapidly as is usual (pulse rate of 90 to 95 fifteen minutes after hopping fifty times)

The patient returned home discontinued all medication and three weeks later began work in the garden He gradually increased his daily work until on September 12 1928 he returned to his full work as a track man on the railroad Since that time he has done full manual labor without the loss of a single day from sickness He arises at 5 A M makes the fire milks a cow breakfast at 6 walks a mile to work which begins at 7 30 and lasts until 5 has a half hour for lunch During this time the work is fairly constant with a pick or shovel He usually returns home in a machine and retires at 8 P M He has noticed no swelling of the feet no shortness of breath or irregularity of heart action his appetite has been very good but not excessive and his weight has remained constant At my request the patient returned for examination

Physical examination March 2 1929—1 8 meters (5 feet 11 inches) 73 6 kg (162 pounds) There is quite definite exophthalmos not as marked as on the previous examination but still very evident The sclera of the left eye is injected conjunctivae not inflamed

Thyroidectomy scar barely perceptible No thyroid tissue felt

Lungs clear to percussion and auscultation no rales at the apices or bases

Heart The apex is not clearly seen or felt Dulness extends 8 cm to the left of the midsternal line 2 cm to the right No increase in dulness at the base At the apex the sounds are clear of good quality no murmurs No murmurs at the base

Pulses are equal and synchronous and regular in force and rhythm 17 to the quarter The vessel wall is not thickened brachials not tortuous Blood pressure 120/80

Liver not felt nor enlarged to percussion Spleen not felt

Extemities No edema of the ankles no fine tremor of the fingers

B M R —7 per cent

Urine Negative

Electrocardiograph March 2 1929 Rate 76 Rhythm sinoauricular P R interval 0 30 second Remarks T waves all upright P II diphasic Diagnosis Normal sinus rhythm

Summary A forty four year old man suffering from diffuse goiter with hyperthyroidism complicated by auricular fibrillation and severe congestive heart failure was treated by iodine with reduction of the B M R from +95 per cent to +32 per cent followed by subtotal thyroidectomy He insisted on returning home on the eleventh postoperative day before auricular fibrillation was relieved Congestive failure and fibrillation treated with digitalis persisted for over a year when sinus rhythm was involved by quinidine Following this

he gradually regained his strength and seven months later returned to hard manual labor The heart had returned to normal size and functionally seemed normal

Pathological Changes The first account to be given of the pathological changes in the heart of a patient who died of thyroid disease was by Sir Henry Marsh[6] in a report before the Pathological Society of Dublin in 1841 Before death this patient had suffered from irregular heart action and anasarca The heart was greatly dilated particularly on the right side showed some hypertrophy and granular fat along the margin of the mitral valve Since then various reports have been made noting changes in the heart muscle and these reached their high point with Goodpasture s [9] account of two cases which showed degeneration and fragmentation of the heart muscle fibers Although Goodpasture was able to show that the myo cardium of thyroxinized animals was more susceptible than normals to injury from chloroform he doubted that ' products of the thyroid alone could be responsible for the cardiac lesions which may occasionally occur in man in association with hyperthyroidism Other pathological studies have failed to reveal any constant or clearly proven pathological change in the heart which is definitely caused by hyperthyroidism

Clinically, it is thought that thyrotoxicosis produces no changes which are permanent in their effect and patients are seen who suffer for several years from the most extreme form of heart failure and then return to per fect functional activity of the heart after subtotal thyroidectomy[60] Even in those patients who die quite evidently from heart failure the myo cardium frequently reveals no changes demonstrable by present methods of pathological examinations From a careful re-examination of the hearts of twenty seven patients dying with hyperthyroidism at the Johns Hopkins Hospital it was concluded[73] that no pronounced pathological change is produced in the heart by hyperthyroidism Current opinion then is that the hearts of patients dying from thyrotoxic heart failure show a variety of inconstant minor lesions, none of which can surely be ascribed to hyper thyroidism The changes most frequently encountered are marked cardiac dilatation and hyaline and fatty degeneration of the muscle fibers

Case 2 N C Unit No 7767 Johns Hopkins Hospital C F Aet. 35 Admitted September 22 1926 Died September 23 1926

F H Negative

P H Struma with no change in size for eighteen years

P I Slight shortness of breath commencing seven months ago Eyes noticed to be more prominent Occasionally complained of palpitation Prepared breakfast for husband this morning and seemed all right he returned at 7 P M to find her in collapse—friends say that she was that way all day Sudden onset

P E P 140 Apex rate 240 T 101 R 60 Extremely emaciated rest less thrashing about marked exophthalmos Lids fail to close firm smooth enlargement of thyroid Lungs filled with rales C V Apex beating violently in sixth interspace in anterior axillary line Systolic murmur Auricular fibrillation with pulse deficit of 100 Liver down to umbilicus Pitting edema of legs Died in three hours Pulse became imperceptible two minutes before respirations ceased

Impression Hyperthyroidism Exophthalmic goiter Auricular fibrillation. Myocardial failure

Autopsy No 9471 Thirty two hours postmortem The heart is enlarged and weighs 390 Gm The right ventricle is dilated and hypertrophied the left ventricle slightly hypertrophied Microscopically there is definite perivascular and rather slighter intermuscular scarring especially toward the tip of the left ventricle There is no cell infiltration The thyroid is adenomatous The acini throughout appear normal are colloid containing and lined with cubical cells There are some lymphoid nodules The thymus is hyperplastic Lung spleen and liver show chronic passive congestion This is marked in the liver where there is central atrophy and necrosis

Treatment The treatment of the thyroid heart may be thought of quite simply in terms of protection of the patient as a whole until the improved modern technics of removing hyperthyroidism have prevailed Thus attention should be focussed on avoiding harmful practices Inept use of standard therapeutic procedures such as digitalization or the use of quinidine or adrenalin may prove disastrous Relief of hyperthyroidism returns the heart to its previous more or less normal state

When auricular fibrillation is present, digitalis usually exerts all of the benefits seen from this drug in other forms of auricular fibrillation In some cases the slowing effect of digitalis is less marked than in cases of fibrillation uncomplicated by hyperthyroidism When simple tachycardia alone exists even though it may produce evidence of heart failure, the use of digitalis is without benefit and its use is strongly questioned by many Dearing Barnes and Essex[61] produced round cell infiltration and areas of ischemia with toxic doses of digitalis in rats rendered hyperthyroid with thyroxin No direct parallelism to human cases can be drawn from these experiments but a sharp warning against over digitalization in hyperthyroidism is indicated In the opinion of the writer it should be withheld until after operation or until some other indication for its use arises For the same reasons venesection is rarely a helpful procedure

After operation quinidine is most valuable in obtaining reversion to normal rhythm in fibrillating hearts which do not revert spontaneously It should not be used before operation because the slowing effect that digitalis has on the fibrillating heart is lost after normal rhythm is established by quinidine and dangerous tachycardia may ensue

Symptomatic improvement is noted following treatment in an oxygen tent When all is said and done the ultimate and only lasting treatment is removal of the cause, that is the hyperthyroidism Subtotal thyroidectomy after preliminary medical treatment with an antithyroid drug and iodine is still the most widely used method to treatment[62] With improved technic surgical mortality has become negligible (0 18 per cent at the Mayo Clinic) and end results greatly improved Much of this improvement started with Plummer's[63] announcement in 1923 that iodine lessens toxicity in exophthalmic goiter Iodine changed the patient into a good surgical risk and the gland into a less hemorrhagic less friable object for surgical removal Then, with the advent of thiouracil and later the less toxic n propyl thiouracil and methyl mercaptoimidazole (called tapazol or methimazole) the patient could be brought into a preoperative condition

of euthyroidism and the gland, with the additional help of iodine made to resemble a colloid goiter The operation became less hurried and therefore more precise, more of the gland could be removed without danger to the recurrent laryngeal nerves or parathyroid glands and thus fewer recurrences or persistences occurred after operation Preoperative treatment could even be effected while the patient continued ambulant and the operation performed on the second hospital day, the patient being discharged on the fourth to the tenth postoperative day

The choice of anesthesia for thyroid operations in patients with heart failure deserves careful consideration Because of the dangers of open drop ether anesthesia much attention was paid some years ago to developing a smooth local anesthesia method With the improved methods of closed ether and oxygen anesthesia with gas induction the need for this has disappeared in all but the most desperately ill patients Careful ether anesthesia preceded by light basal anesthesia or avertin or sodium amytal is the method preferred by Rienhoff in the Johns Hopkins Hospital Lahey[64] advocates the use of cyclopropane combined with nitrous oxide since cyclopropane alone is likely to produce undesirable cardiac irregularities The danger of bringing on these cardiac irregularities in offset Lahey believes by the absence of the excitement stage and of postoperative vomiting

In some clinics sodium amytal (0 39 Gm [6 grains] one hour before operation) and morphine (0 01 Gm [1/6 grain] with strychnine 0 6 mg [1/100 grain] a half hour before operation) are used as a basal anesthesia followed by ethylene in the operating room We have encountered many hyperthyroid patients who were sensitive in one way or another to morphine and so we now take the precaution to give them a test dose several nights before the operation Pantopon 16 mg (1/4 grain) can be substituted in sensitive individuals Experienced anesthetists vary in their preference of methods depending on the technic with which they are most familiar The combination ether method has the one indispensable advantage of keeping the depth of anesthesia constantly under control

The surgical scar is scarcely visible If myxedema threatens it can be perfectly controlled with desiccated thyroid gland Instances in which the state of hyperthyroidism persists and becomes apparent after the effects of the antithyroid drug have fully worn off occur in only three or four per cent, and the other late complications of tetany or of recurrent laryngeal nerve palsy in only about one per cent Tetany can be relieved by calcium and the remaining normal vocal cord on the other side largely compensates for the paralyzed vocal cord This method of treatment is so good according to one of its proponents[65] that it is unnecessary to look any farther particularly if other methods may cause serious late complications from radioactivity and if many medically treated patients may still have to be operated upon

There are however cases that are better treated by other measures Prolonged medical treatment with antithyroid drugs such as propyl thiouracil or methimazole may be used to advantage in all mild cases and in severe cases that return promptly to a symptom free state of euthyroidism

provided the rare drug toxicities, such as agranulocytosis, are carefully watched for Recurrent postoperative hyperthyroidism is often well treated in this way It is of interest that young married women suffering from exophthalmic goiter who are maintained in a euthyroid state by daily doses of n propyl thiouracil not infrequently become pregnant whereas formerly the disease either prevented gestation or was terminated by surgical treatment These patients can be carried through pregnancy on antithyroid medication Preadolescent exophthalmic goiter responds in general to n propyl thiouracil as the adult form does

Radioactive iodine $(I^{1\ 1})$ taken by mouth is utilized almost entirely by the thyroid gland, where it effects destruction of thyroid cells in proportion to its uptake The dose is regulated according to the estimated size of the gland, 100 to 200 microcuries per gram of tissue, and although this is often little more than a rough guess it serves as an indicator for the size of the first of one two or rarely three doses Shortly after the I^{131} is taken, the thyroid gland becomes slightly larger and tender and the patient more toxic but this subsides within a few days or weeks seventy five per cent of patients become euthyroid after one dose at the end of several months fifteen per cent require a second dose, and ten per cent need a third dose or more Nodular goiter with hyperthyroidism requires larger dosage and longer time to cure In both types of hyperthyroidism the treatment extends over four to six months Its advantages are that the patient need not be hospitalized (the drug is taken by mouth), parathyroid tetany and laryngeal paralysis do not occur (the gland is reduced usually to normal size), there is no operative mortality, and the cost to the patient is greatly reduced Objections are theoretical, consisting mainly of the possible carcinogenic activity of the radioactive substance that remains in the thyroid gland until it loses its activity after a radioactive half life of eight days Thyroid cancer was induced in one and a half to two years in seven of twenty five rats by a single intraperitoneal injection of 400 microcuries of I^{131}, and metastases were found in five [66] the incidence of spontaneous cancer of the thyroid gland even in old rats was extremely low After fifteen years of gradually increasing use of I^{131} in human patients with hyperthyroidism no case of malignant degeneration has been reported Because of the possible late development of malignant degeneration some specialists prefer to use this form of treatment only in patients past forty years of age but do not hesitate to give it to younger patients who present clear cut contraindications to surgical procedures Its use is neutralized by previous absorption of iodine in any form Thus iodine by mouth or in radio opaque mixtures for x ray series may block the uptake of I^{131} for weeks

After this form of treatment myxedema develops in about the same percentage of patients as after surgical removal of the gland and is controlled by desiccated thyroid gland in the same manner On the other hand cases in which the hyperthyroidism persists or recurs at a later date are said to be less frequent and when they do occur can be satisfactorily treated with further dosage of I^{131}

Treatment in euthyroid patients of intractable angina pectoris or congestive heart failure by surgical or medical removal of the thyroid gland is described elsewhere in this volume [67]

Conclusion It may finally be concluded that the heart in conjunction with the rest of the body responds to hyperthyroidism by metabolic acceleration This leads to a group of circulatory changes the exact causes of which are only poorly understood Tachycardia increase in minute output of the heart increase in blood flow to the skin and muscle but not to the brain and only slight to the kidney acceleration of blood flow and increase in blood volume form a unique circulatory pattern which manages fairly well to care for the bodily needs of thyrotoxicosis and hyperthyroidism Given a normal young cardiovascular system this speeding up does not overtax the heart and circulatory system On the other hand when the heart is weakened by advancing age or heart disease the constant overwork combined with the direct effect on the myocardium from hyperthyroidism frequently leads to congestive heart failure and circulatory insufficiency In either instance correction of the thyroid disorder allows the heart to regain, both functionally and structurally its prehyperthyroid condition

REFERENCES

1 Moebius P J Die Basedowsche Krankheit 2nd Ed H Holder Vienna 1906
2 Parry C H Collections from the Unpublished Writings of the Late C H Parry Underwood London 1825
3 Adlemann G Beitrage zur Pathologie des Herzens der Schildruse und des Gehirns Jahrbucher der Philosophisch Medizinschen Gesellshaft zu Wurzburg 1 104 1828
4 Graves R J London Med & Surg J (Renshaw s) 7 516 1835
5 Stokes W Diseases of the Heart and Aorta p 278 Dublin 1854
6 Marsh Sir Henry Dublin J M Sc 20 471 1841
7 McDonnel J D *Ibid* 37 200 1845
8 Markham W O Tr Path Soc London 9 163 1858
9 Rose E Arch. klin Chir 22 1 1878
10 Horsley Sir V Brit M J 1 111 1885
11 Kocher T Arch f klin Chir 29 254 1883
12 Muller Friedrich Deutches Arch f klin Med 51 335 1893
13 Wolfer A Arch f klin Chir 40 346 1890
14 Wette Theodor L *Ibid* 44 652 1892
15 Schranz Julius *Ibid* 34 90 1886 1887
16 Kraus R Wein klin. Wchnschr 12 416 1899
17 Meyer A W and Sulger E Med Klin 22 838 (May 28) 1926 J A M A 87 372 (July 31) 1926
18 Boothby William Personal communication
19 Smith F J The Heart Bulletin 4 102 1955
20 Packard J M and Graybiel A Am Heart J 39 144 1950
21 Hamburger W W Lev M W Priest W S and Howard H C Arch Int. Med 43 35 1929
22 Hamilton B E J A M A 82 405 (Aug 9) 1924
23 Thomas H M Jr Arch Surg 16 117 (Jan) (pt 1) 1928
24 Andrus E C New York State J Med. 29 661 (June 1) 1929
25 Nahum L H and Hoff H E J A M A 105 254 1935
26 Resnick W H J Clin Invest 2 125 1925
27 Horlick L and Surtshin A Am Heart J 38 716 1949
28 Smith J R. and Wilson K. S Am. Heart J 27 176 1944

29 Surtshin A and Rucknagel D L Am Heart J 45 781 1953
30 Somerville W and Levine S A Brit Heart J 12 245 1950
31 Thompson W O J Clin Invest 2 477 (Aug) 1926
32 Liljestrand G and Stenstrom N Acta med Scandinav 63 99 1925
33 Robinson G C J A M A 87 314 (July 31) 1926
34 Burwell C S Smith W C and Neighbors DeW Am J M Sc 178 157 (Aug) 1926
35 Blumgart H L Medicine 10 1 (Feb) 1931
36 Roberts C and Griffith J Q Jr Am Heart J 14 598 1937
37 Stewart H J and Evans W F Am Heart J 20 715 1940
38 Stewart H J and Evans W F Am Heart J 23 175 1942
39 Means James H and Richardson Edward Diseases of the Thyroid Oxford Monographs on Diagnosis and Treatment Oxford University Press New York 1929
40 Stead E A Jr Myers J D Scheinberg P Cargill W H Hickham J B and Levitan B A Tr Assn Am. Phys 63 241 1950
41 Myers J D Brannon E S and Holland B C J Clin Invest 29 1069 1950
42 Schwartz T B and Myers J D J Clin Invest 33 337 1954
43 Scheinberg P J Clin Invest 29 1010 1950
44 Cargill W H and Stead E A Jr J Clin Invest 28 526 1949
45 Thorn G W and Eder H A Am J Med 1 583 1946
46 Olson R. E and Schwartz W B Medicine 30 21 1951
47 Blackford J M and Willius F A Am J M Sc 154 585 1917
48 Aub J C and Stern N S Arch Int Med 21 130 1918
49 Lewis J K and McEachern D Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 28 504 (Feb) 1931
50 Andrus E C Circulation 7 437 1953
51 Cameron A T and Carmichael J Am. J Physiol 58 1 (Nov) 1921
52 Simonds J P and Brandes W W Arch Int Med 45 503 (April) 1930
53 McEachern D and Rake G Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 48 273 (May) 1931
54 Lewis W Am J M Sc 181 65 (Jan) 1931
55 Rasmussen H Act. Med Scand Suppl CXV 1941
56 Hurxthal Lewis M Tr Am A for the Study of Goiter Portland Ore 1930
57 Friedberg C K. and Sohval A R Am Heart J 13 599 (May) 1937
58 Starr I J Tr Assn Am Phy 69 1956 (in press)
59 Goodpasture E W J A M A 76 1545 (June 4) 1921
60 Thomas H M Jr Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 47 1 (July) 1930
61 Dearing W H Barnes A R and Essex H E Circulation 1 394 1950
62 Thomas H M Jr New England J of Med 248 760 (April 30) 1953
63 Plummer H S J A M A 80 1955 1923
64 Lahey F H Transactions of the Third International Goiter Conference p 297 1938
65 Cattell R B J Clin Endocrinol 9 999 1949
66 Goldberg R C and Chaikoff I L Arch Path 53 22 1952
67 Blumgart H L and Freedberg A S Circulation 6 222 1952
68 Rowe G G Huston J H Weinstein A B Tuchman H Brown J F and Crumpton C W J Clin Invest 35 272 1956

13

The Heart in Anemia

The importance of any given factor in its relation to the heart and its physical and physiological integrity is immediately divisible into two issues The first is concerned with the effects of the stress or noxious agent on the normal heart, and the second with these effects on the diseased heart or the heart laboring under an abnormal load Hypertension and pregnancy or hyperthyroidism

In 1857 Bamberger[1] reported his observation on patients having chronic anemia and concluded that cardiac enlargement was a frequent result Irvine[2] in 1877 and Barrs[3] in 1891 described in chlorotic individuals the occurrence of bruits which were attributed to cardiac dilatation Hersman[4] in 1893 described murmurs which disappeared with the cure of the anemia and Gautier[5] in 1899 recorded his observations in twenty two cases of chlorosis and found by percussion cardiac enlargement in twenty Cabot and Richardson[6] in 1919 found cardiac hypertrophy in patients dying of pernicious anemia in whom no other factor existed to account for the enlargement Ball[7] in 1931 was apparently the first to report a case of severe anemia studied with the aid of a teleoroentgenogram recording a reduction in heart size with relief of anemia

Lunde and Schueller[8] in 1910 produced cardiac enlargement in dogs by rendering the animals anemic and Forman and Daniels[9] in 1930 while studying the effects of certain food on anemia in rats observed that the hearts of those animals having low hemoglobin values were considerably larger than the hearts of normal animals When the hemoglobin values fell to 10 Gm the hearts were slightly hypertrophied this became marked as the degree of anemia increased At the very low hemoglobin levels from 2 Gm to 3 Gm per 100 cc the hearts weights averaged approximately three times those of normal animals Ellis and Faulkner[11] in 1939 reported the results from a study of forty seven cases with varying degrees of anemia Twenty of the thirty eight cases studied by x rays showed cardiac enlargement and of the twenty six who were followed eighteen showed a decrease in heart size with improvement of the hemoglobin level Ten of the forty five patients studied by electrocardiogram showed abnormal records

Recently much interest has been shown in the heart changes occurring in sickle cell anemia These changes manifest themselves by cardiac enlargement and murmurs and owing to the bizarre joint symptoms the

entire clinical picture closely mimics rheumatic fever with rheumatic heart disease A study by Higgins and Toone is pertinent[10]

From these reported observations one must conclude that protracted chronic anemias produce significant physical changes in the heart In 1937 the writer[12] reported the heart changes occurring in hookworm

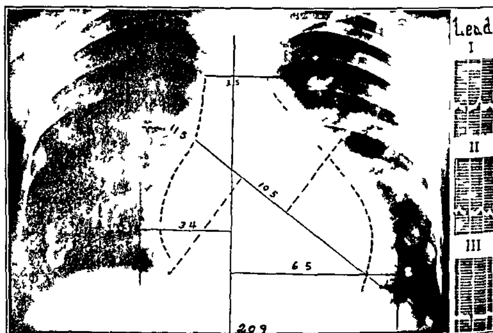


FIGURE 1*

Date	Hemoglobin Gm per 100 cc	Cardiothoracic Ratio Predicted	Transverse Diameter Hodges and Eyster	Actual Transverse Diameter
4 to 18	1 4	58 8 per cent	Data incomplete	12 3 cm.
6 to 14	12 7	47 3 per cent		9 9 cm

Electrocardiogram Sinus tachycardia rate 115 otherwise normal

anemia It was realized that much information was available which dealt with the reaction of man to anemia, but the studies were concerned with relatively acute reductions in the oxygen carrying function of the blood, hence, the conclusions were applicable in only a limited degree to the changes developing in individuals with chronic anemia existing over periods of years Many factors contribute to the physiological adjustments occurring in anemia of varying degrees and duration, and the question was whether or not anatomical changes occur in the heart during the evolution of the compensatory processes

The anemia associated with hookworm disease offered an ideal type of study It varied in intensity, duration and rate of development and was relievable by medication without the introduction of measures which might confuse the observations In this study an increase in cardiac size

* See footnote p 248

occurred in 100 per cent of the patients The data indicated that the changes in heart size were in a few patients due to reducible dilatation (Fig 1), in others to dilatation and hypertrophy (Fig 2), and in a third group to definite hypertrophy unassociated with reducible dilatation (Fig 3)

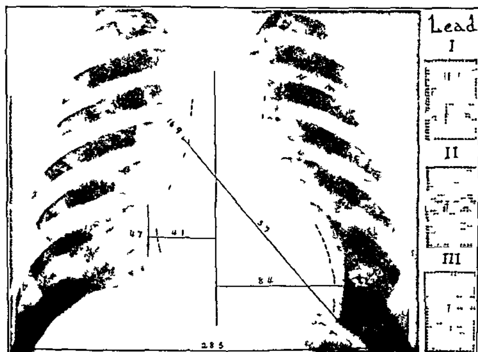


FIGURE 2*

Date	Hemoglobin Gm per 100 cc	Cardiothoracic Ratio Predicted	Transverse Diameter Hodges and Eyster	Actual Transverse Diameter
7 to 10	6 9	48 9 per cent	11 3 cm	13 9 cm.
8 to 16	9 5	43 8 per cent	11 4 cm	12 5 cm

Electrocardiogram Sinus rhythm rate 79 electrical axis left preponderance

Cardiac hypertrophy is rightly placed in the category of organic heart disease hence one is justified in classing chronic anemia as one of the etiological factors in the causation of this condition The primary cardiac dilatation may be classed as a physiological adjustment mechanism which disappears when the anemia is relieved yet if those factors which have necessitated the dilatation continue there occurs hypertrophy of the myocardium which is not reducible and is definitely pathological in character

The effects of chronic anemia on the diseased heart or the heart under stress of hypertension pregnancy or hyperthyroidism are of major clinical importance The minute volume of blood handled by the heart is increased

* See footnote p 248

by anemia, and the increase in cardiac output is definitely related to the degree of anemia It is apparent, therefore that anemia is an added drain on cardiac reserve in valvular heart disease and hypertension, and that it definitely augments the cardiac load of the pregnant woman and the patient with hyperthyroidism This additional work not only augments

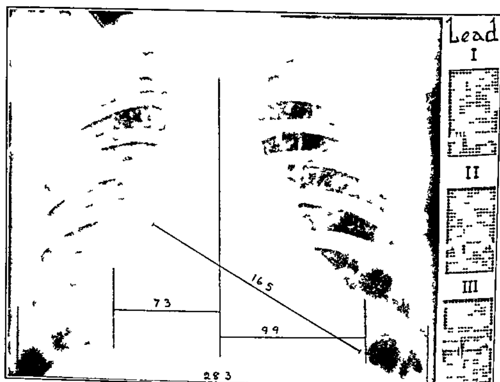


FIGURE 3*

Date	Hemoglobin Gm per 100 cc	Cardiothoracic Ratio Predicted	Transverse Diameter Hodges and Eyster	Actual Transverse Diameter
7 to 3	4 9	60 0 per cent	11 3 cm	17 2 cm.

7 to 29 death from intercurrent disease not related to the anemia Autopsy Heart weight 630 Gm otherwise normal

Electrocardiogram Sinus rhythm rate 70 electrical axis left preponderance

the degree, but definitely accelerates the development of cardiac enlargement and frequently precipitates premature heart failure

Several authors have noted the occurrence of angina pectoris of effort in patients with anemia [13,14,15,16,17,18] The specific nature of the angina syndrome has not been definitely settled, but it is universally agreed that it is concerned with cardiac work and oxygen supply

When one studies a large number of patients with severe anemias he is impressed by the fact that cardiac pain occurs only in the occasional

* All figures are composed of the first and last teleoroentgenograms the latter is indicated by the dotted line The outside figures represent the measurements in centimeters of the first and the inside figures of the last teleoroentgenogram The hemoglobin values were obtained on the same day as the x ray studies

patient and that the critical level for the anemia is quite variable Practically all of the reported instances have occurred in patients who are in the age group to quite logically have degenerated coronary arteries The conclusion reached from a correlation of all the available facts is that the angina syndrome occurs in those anemic patients who have coronary artery disease The degree of anemia necessary to precipitate the angina syndrome varies from case to case depending upon the physiological integrity of the coronary arteries and this in turn is dependent upon the degree of coronary artery disease It is doubtful if angina pectoris regardless of the degree of anemia, ever occurs in patients with normal coronary arteries yet, anemia can precipitate the angina syndrome in patients who have impairment of coronary circulation though no limitation of cardiac function be evident when the blood is normal

CASE I W M contractor aged sixty When first seen on September 6 he was complaining of substernal pain and oppression induced by slight exertion. He stated that his first symptoms were noted fourteen months previously and that they were fatigue slight dyspnea and substernal oppression when he walked rapidly up slight inclines These symptoms had gradually increased in intensity until at this time he could not walk as much as a level city block without experiencing such intense substernal pain and oppression that he would be forced to rest Rest gave him complete relief

Physical Examination The patient was a well nourished man weighing 196 pounds five feet ten inches in height. The mucous membranes and skin were manifestly pale and the tongue was smooth clean and the papillae atrophied The heart was normal in size and shape and there were no cardinal murmurs The first sound was lacking in muscle tone and the second aortic sound was amphoric and ringing in quality Pulse rate 84 sinus rhythm The peripheral arteries and fundus vessels showed moderate sclerosis The blood pressure was 115 systolic and 85 diastolic The electrocardiogram showed moderate left axis deviation and an isoelectric T wave in Lead I

Diagnosis (1) Angina pectoris (2) coronary sclerosis (3) pernicious anemia

Course and Treatment

September 7—Hemoglobin sixty two per cent RBC 2 130 000

September 8—Liver therapy begun

September 20—Hemoglobin seventy six per cent RBC 3 200 000 On this *date he could walk on the level with comfort*

October 10—Hemoglobin eighty six per cent RBC 4 400 000 No symptoms with average physical activity

November 2—Hemoglobin ninety four per cent RBC 5 120 000 No symptoms and actively engaged in his vocation

This patient was followed for three years There was a consistent recurrence of symptoms when the blood levels reached hemoglobin 70± and RBC 3 000 000± He died four years after we had first seem him of acute coronary occlusion

REFERENCES

1 Bamberger H Lehrbuch der Krankheiten des Herzens 459 pp Wien W Braumuller 1857

2 Irvine P Lancet 1 837 1877

3 Barrs A G Am J M Sc 102 347 1891

4 Hersman C F Internat Med Mag 2 341 Phila 1893
5 Gautier E Deutsches Arch f klin Med 62 120 1899
6 Cabot Richard C and Richardson Oscar J A M A 72 991 1919
7 Ball D Am Heart J 6 517 (April) 1931
8 Lunde H and Schueller L Deutsches Arch f klin Med 101 512 1910
9 Forman Mary B and Daniels Amy L Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med. 28 479 1930 1931
10 Higgins W H and Toone E C Jr Virginia M Monthly 76 400 (Aug) 1949
11 Ellis L B and Faulkner J M New England J Med 220 943 (June 8) 1939
12 Porter W B Am Heart J 13 550 (May) 1937
13 Porter W B Virginia M Monthly 58 806 (March) 1932
14 Willius F A and Giffin H Z Am. J M Sc 174 30 (July) 1927
15 Elliot A H Am J M Sc 187 185 (Feb) 1934
16 Zimmermann O Klin Wchnschr 14 847 (June 15) 922 (June 29) 1935
17 Herrick J B Am Heart J 2 351 (April) 1927
18 Keefer C S and Resnik W H Arch Int Med 41 769 (June) 1928

WILLIAM L WINTERS JR M D, AND
THOMAS M DURANT M D

14

The Heart in Pulmonary Disease

INTRODUCTION

Pulmonary disease as a specific cause for heart failure has become of considerable interest in recent years and is becoming more frequently recognized *The development of right ventricular hypertrophy dilatation* and/or failure secondary to pulmonary artery hypertension resulting from intrinsic disease of the lungs or pulmonary vasculature has been designated ' pulmonary heart disease or cor pulmonale Prior to the introduction of these terms in 1931 by White[121] emphysema heart disease was the designation commonly employed With development of more precise methods for assessment of respiratory and circulatory function it has become obvious that ' cor pulmonale embraces a multitude of conditions having in common the development of right ventricular hypertrophy and failure Considerable controversy remains as to whether pulmonary hyper tension and right ventricular disease resulting from congenital anomalies or disturbances of function of the left side of the heart (mitral valve disease left ventricular failure) should be included within the category of *cor* pulmonale[13,43,48,77,90] *It has been suggested that the terms primary* and *secondary pulmonary hypertension* be used to differentiate between pulmonary and left sided heart factors resulting in right sided heart strain[4]

Factors causing pulmonary hypertension may be classified into three groups[24] (1) Factors affecting the pulmonary volume elasticity relation ship These are anatomic or physiologic or both and may consist of (a) a *reduction in number caliber and expansibility of the small vascular chan* nels (b) an increase in tone of the venules arterioles or larger arteries and (c) an increase in the pulmonary blood volume (2) Factors affecting the flow pressure relationship An increase in blood flow causes pulmonary hypertension only if associated with any or several of the previous or following factors (3) Factors causing an increase in left atrial and pul *monary venous pressure and volume These may be due to (a) left ven* tricular failure (b) mechanical obstruction at the mitral valve or (c) changes in the volume elasticity curve of the left atrium due to changes in its wall or in the pericardium

The term *cor pulmonale* in this discussion will be restricted to etiologic factors affecting primarily the lungs or the pulmonary arterial tree and leading to pulmonary artery hypertension Brief mention will be made of

Pages 251 to 270M replace former pages 251 to 270 © 1959

those factors which produce elevated pulmonary venous pressures with secondary elevation of pulmonary artery pressure

The types of disease which may lead to the development of cor pulmonale may be divided conveniently into acute and chronic groups, the former developing after abrupt reduction of the pulmonary vascular bed either in the absence of pulmonary disease (acute pulmonary embolization) or in the presence of acute infection superimposed upon chronic pulmonary disease Chronic cor pulmonale presupposes the existence of chronic parenchymal or pulmonary vascular disease, with slow progressive development of pulmonary hypertension as demonstrable by clinical, electrocardiographic, radiologic or cardiac catheterization technics

ACUTE PULMONARY HEART DISEASE

Etiology The etiologic factors which have been incriminated in the production of acute pulmonary heart disease or acute cor pulmonale are

- I Pulmonary embolization
  - A Thrombi
  - B Gas
  - C Fat
  - D Trophoblastic[2]
- II Pneumonectomy with thoracoplasty
- III Acute infection superimposed on chronic pulmonary disease

By far the commonest cause for acute cor pulmonale is embolic blockage of the pulmonary circulation Pulmonary emboli are found in 10 per cent of all autopsy subjects and are judged to have been the cause of death in 3 per cent of these[78] Pulmonary emboli may arise in any part of the systemic venous circulation, with the exception of the portal system The commonest sites of origin however are the deep calf veins and the veins of the pelvis where thrombi are prone to form in postpartum and postoperative patients, or in patients long confined to bed for various medical conditions, e g, a high incidence in those with heart disease[64] Uncommonly, pulmonary emboli occur in apparently previously healthy individuals Less frequently, emboli arise from vegetations on the valves of the right side of the heart, or from mural thrombi originating in the right atrium Coronary occlusion may be complicated by pulmonary embolism when mural thrombi are dislodged from the endocardium overlying infarcted areas involving the right side of the interventricular septum Only rarely do emboli arise from the upper extremities The term *thromboembolic disease* is used to cover all aspects of these cases from the origin of the thrombi in the veins or heart to their lodgement in the pulmonary circulation *Phlebothrombosis* denotes thrombus formation in veins without evidence of inflammation, in contrast to *thrombophlebitis* in which there is an inflammatory basis for the clot In the latter embolic accidents are less frequent since the thrombus tends to be fixed at the site of origin Stasis of blood within veins is an important factor in phlebothrombosis This stasis is most often encouraged by confinement to bed which favors

pooling of blood in the calf muscles and pelvis and diminished muscle tonus (decreased efficiency of the circulatory 'booster pumps') One series reported that 50 per cent of autopsies of persons who had been confined to bed demonstrated venous thrombosis somewhere[1 4] Various hematologic factors, such as increased numbers or enhanced agglutinability of platelets, hemoconcentration, increased thrombokinase fibrinogen or globulin in the blood and increased blood viscosity, may play important roles in the origin of intravascular clotting Miscellaneous factors such as age, weight and the presence of malignant disease, should also be mentioned The vast *majority of cases of thromboembolic disease occurs in persons past* the age of forty years In general the greater the age the greater the tendency to this disease Obese patients are more susceptible than those with normal weight and those with malignant disease have an unexplained tendency to intravascular clotting

Rarely, nonthrombotic emboli may produce the clinical picture of acute cor pulmonale Either fat or air entering the systemic veins in sufficient amount may result in acute right sided heart dilatation circulatory failure and death

Not all pulmonary emboli produce the cardiac effect known as acute cor pulmonale Very small emboli do not do so and extremely large ones cause death before this effect is apparent Between these extremes there is a considerable group of cases in which acute cor pulmonale is an important feature It is highly doubtful that mere anatomic obstruction of pulmonary arteries or arterioles is sufficient to significantly raise pulmonary arterial pressures acutely to a degree capable of producing right sided heart dilation The normal pulmonary vascular bed has a large reserve Normal pressure flow relationships can exist at rest with as little as one third of the normal functioning lung volume This is aptly demonstrated by surgical pneumonectomy which is rarely followed by pulmonary hypertension so long as the remaining lung is free of fibrosis emphysema or pulmonary vascular disease[25 43] Holden found it necessary to obstruct 70 per cent of the pulmonary circulation in dogs by massive pulmonary embolism before death occurred[62] It seems probable as suggested by Barnes that reflex spasm of the involved pulmonary circulatory bed markedly enhances the degree of circulatory obstruction caused by the embolus itself in these cases *Experimental studies by Price Hata and Smith support this* impression[99]

The studies of Fineberg and Wiggers have materially advanced the understanding of circulatory alterations and changes in right ventricular function which occur when there is obstruction in the pulmonary circulation comparable to that which exists in pulmonary embolism[40] They demonstrated that the right ventricle of the dog is capable of maintaining its normal output if the pulmonary artery is compressed up to approximately 58 per cent of its original diameter Under such circumstances the added resistance is overcome and the left ventricle receives its normal amount of blood One factor shown to be of utmost importance in this compensation for added resistance is the increased initial tension and diastolic stretch of the right ventricle (Starling s law) Greater degrees

of compression of the pulmonary artery overwhelm the compensatory mechanism and there results a diminished transfer of blood to the left ventricle, a lowered aortic pressure, and a diminished coronary blood flow There may be an additional humeral factor mediated by serotonin released from the blood clots in pulmonary embolism increasing vasodepressor reflexes and, in turn, potentiating a drop in systemic blood pressure [11] The lowered blood supply to the myocardium undoubtedly plays an important role in the eventual complete failure of the right ventricle Two deductions of therapeutic importance are made from these findings The first concerns venesection which is to be condemned on the ground that lowering of venous pressure reduces the initial tension within the right ventricular cavity thereby interfering with the factor shown to be of such importance in the maintenance of normal blood flow to the left ventricle The second concerns the importance of attempting to maintain an adequate arterial pressure and coronary flow to aid the right ventricle

Acute cor pulmonale has been reported following pneumonectomy which was combined with thoracoplasty for pulmonary tuberculosis [9] In the usual course of pneumonectomy blood flow is readily channeled through dilated pre existent vessels of hitherto nonfunctional capillaries [95] If, however sufficient emphysema or fibrosis in the remaining lung reduces the effective ventilation of that lung, anoxia results and contributes to elevation of pulmonary arterial pressures

Less dramatic than pulmonary embolism, yet equally important in producing acute cor pulmonale is acute respiratory infection superimposed on chronic lung disease (usually emphysema) This may occur in patients who have no evidence of chronic cor pulmonale Emphysema and chronic bronchitis result in an inadequate bellows motion of the chest associated with improper alveolar distribution of gases and chronic alveolar hypoventilation Superimposition of an acute infection upon this basic pathologic state leads to the abrupt development of anoxia The latter is well known to aggravate pulmonary hypertension In addition the infectious process may further decrease the pulmonary vascular bed and increase pulmonary resistance because of associated edema and exudate Such a combination of acute anoxia and increased pulmonary vascular resistance has been reported capable of producing acute right sided ventricular failure in an apparently previously normal heart [10 114]

Clinical Features The symptoms and signs of acute pulmonary heart disease will be considered along with those of the pulmonary embolism causing it but special emphasis will be placed on the cardiac features [19] The size of the embolic occlusion determines to a large extent the character and severity of the symptoms and signs A large embolus producing obstruction of a main pulmonary artery branch may result in sudden death This tragedy may occur entirely without warning in a patient whose postoperative course has been apparently uneventful In less severe cases sudden intense dyspnea and a tightness in the chest or definite substernal pain are experienced Peripheral vascular collapse often follows with a drop in systemic blood pressure tachycardia with thready pulse profuse cold perspiration, ashy pallor, apprehension and nausea and vomiting Less

common manifestations include cyanosis syncope convulsions coma and hiccough Within the first hour or two if death is averted, the manifestations of shock begin to abate, and the signs of right sided heart strain, which constitute the acute pulmonary heart disease syndrome become apparent Dilatation of the chambers of the right side of the heart occurs and the pulmonary conus region may impinge on the anterior chest wall resulting in systolic pulsation in the pulmonary area This impingement may also cause a friction rub audible along the left sternal border in the second, third, and fourth intercostal spaces resembling a pulmonic systolic murmur The increased pulmonary artery pressure is recognized clinically by accentuation of P_2 resulting from more forceful closure of the pulmonary valves A gallop rhythm is frequently heard Neck vein distention is prominent, reflecting the increase in venous pressure behind the dilated right ventricle Marked pulsations in systemic veins indicate relative tricuspid insufficiency Cyanosis which may not have been apparent in the shock stage is often now quite conspicuous Gradual improvement may occur from this stage as right ventricular function returns toward normal or progressive failure of the right ventricle terminating in death may prevail

In twenty four to forty eight hours after the embolic episode, evidence of reaction in the lung itself appears This is the stage of pulmonary infarction Fever, tachycardia and tachypnea are present The patients frequently lie on the affected side in an unconscious effort at splinting the involved pleura Cough productive of bloody sputum is often present Limitation of expansion of the involved side of the chest dullness to percussion increased fremitus, diminished breath sounds and occasionally, bronchial breathing may be noted If the pleura is involved a pleural friction rub may be heard Leukocytosis is present in 70 per cent of cases and increased serum bilirubin in 50 per cent It should be emphasized that pulmonary signs and hemoptysis may at times be conspicuous by their absence [79,1,4]

The cardiovascular effects of small emboli reaching the lung may be insufficient to produce this acute pattern or be so mild as to produce only pulmonary or pleural signs On the other hand, unsuspected repetitious pulmonary embolization is becoming recognized as an important etiologic factor in the production of chronic cor pulmonale and at times closely resembles clinically and pathologically, so called primary pulmonary vascular hypertension [6,7,8,29,88,96,97]

Roentgenologic Examination Evidence of pulmonary embolization with or without infarction is usually absent in the early stages The triangular or wedge shaped radiopacity classically described with this condition is seen infrequently The usual late finding in the presence of infarction is a shadow which has no pathognomonic characteristics [113] Plate like atelectasis has been described as the most common finding [124] Pulmonary arterial occlusion without infarction may be manifested by relative absence of vascular patterns of the involved side termination of major arterial branches at the side of occlusion or dilatation of the pulmonary artery proximal to the embolus At fluoroscopy an overactive

pulmonary conus is often present and there may be noted a relatively immobile, high diaphragm on the involved side An avascular lung distal to the obstructed pulmonary artery, simulating localized pulmonary emphysema may be present Angiocardiography may be of valuable assistance in localizing the areas of vascular obstruction Lifesaving pulmonary embolectomies have been performed following such localization[8]

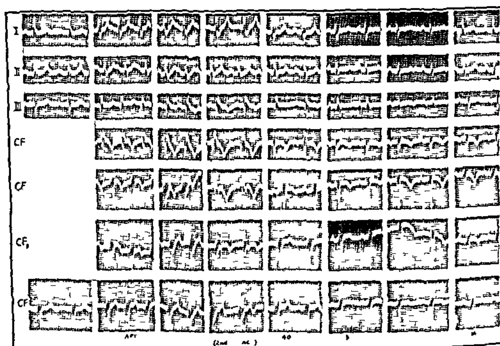


FIGURE 1 Postoperative pulmonary embolism Female aged seventy two First episode of embolism eighteen days following colostomy for adenocarcinoma of the rectum Electrocardiograms taken preoperatively and two and four hours after first embolism Second episode of embolism fourteen hours after first Electrocardiogram taken at this time and at intervals thereafter Note findings typical of transient right bundle branch block

Electrocardiogram Electrocardiographic changes associated with pulmonary embolism constitute one of the extremely interesting aspects of the acute cor pulmonale Changes are not present in all cases but they do occur with sufficient frequency to be of great value Diagnostic features are especially likely to be found when an electrocardiogram is taken within a few hours of the onset and when other tracings are taken at short intervals thereafter, as in Figure 1 Such observations will show at least transient changes in 75 per cent of the cases[1-4]

The electrocardiographic changes associated with the acute cor pulmonale are due to various factors, including rotation of the heart myocardial ischemia, and probably pressure changes within the chambers of the right side of the heart

With the advent of unipolar electrocardiography it was demonstrated that the heart rotates electrically on its long axis in a clockwise manner

and on its transverse axis so that the apex is displaced backward [1,3] A tendency to a vertical electrical position (right axis deviation) also appears [7] This results in the finding of an RS complex in the left arm unipolar lead and a late R wave in the right arm derivation In the standard leads a prominent S wave appears in Lead I (left arm minus right arm potentials), and a large Q wave in Lead III (left leg minus left arm potentials) Goldberger pointed out that the left leg unipolar lead does not show a significant Q wave as in infarction of the posterior wall of the heart [50] This is of considerable importance in differential diagnosis In addition the changes attributed to rotation of the heart tend to disappear within a few days of the onset of the acute cor pulmonale whereas the Q_3 pattern of posterior wall myocardial infarction persists

Myocardial ischemia resulting from a markedly reduced coronary circulation pressure gradient (reduced aortic pressure together with a rise in coronary sinus and thebesian vein pressure) is responsible for significant ST segment and T wave changes in many cases In the typical case the ST segment is deviated downward in Leads I and II and upward in Lead III There tends to be a staircase ascent of the ST segment to an upright T wave in Leads I and II In the unipolar extremity leads the ST segment may be elevated in the right arm (aV_R) and depressed in the left arm (aV_L) derivation In the precordial leads ST segment changes are minimal though occasional depression is noted in the left sided leads It is probable that the ischemia which accounts for these changes is predominantly that of the endocardial surface of the heart muscle

T wave inversion tends to occur in Lead III and in the right precordial leads [1] This association of T wave inversion in Lead III with a large Q wave in the same lead is often mistaken for a posterior myocardial infarction The absence however of a significant Q wave in the left leg unipolar lead (aV_F) the right precordial T wave inversions and the transient nature of the changes in the acute cor pulmonale will usually permit *differentiation*

P wave alterations are occasionally seen Peaking of the P wave in Leads II III aV_F (P pulmonale pattern) has been described but similar findings are all too common in other circumstances to be of much significance

Electrocardiograms taken within a few hours of onset of the acute cor pulmonale may demonstrate a transient right bundle branch block complete or incomplete which disappears quickly This transient conduction disturbance is probably related to myocardial ischemia and the abrupt right ventricular cavitary pressure rise [3] It is of interest to note that right ventricular conduction defects have been produced experimentally in animals in association with the marked right ventricular dilatation occurring with pulmonary (venous) air embolism [36,9]

In a recent article an attempt has been made to group specific changes which may occur with pulmonary embolism into patterns which may have more diagnostic meaning Three common diagnostic patterns were delineated [7]

1 $S_1Q_3T_3$ plus right precordial T wave inversion

2 S_1T_3 or T_3 plus right precordial T wave inversion
3 $S_1Q_3T_3$ plus right bundle branch block

Patterns *suggestive* of pulmonary embolism are
1 Right precordial T wave inversion alone
2 $S_1Q_3T_3$ alone
3 Right bundle branch block alone
4 S_1T_3 or T_3 alone T in lead aV_F often inverted also

This study found the staircase ascent" to be of little diagnostic value Sinus tachycardia, the P pulmonale pattern, clockwise rotation, and vertical electrical position were commonly present but of no diagnostic significance Arrhythmias were uncommon

Diagnosis Clinically, the differential diagnosis of acute cor pulmonale resulting from pulmonary embolism may be difficult since acute myo cardial infarction may mimic the signs and symptoms very closely This differentiation may be exceptionally difficult in the middle aged or elderly postoperative patient in whom either episode is not uncommon Both acute cor pulmonale and coronary occlusion may be ushered in by sudden dyspnea substernal chest pain, nausea, vomiting, and peripheral vascular collapse Ashen pallor, cold perspiration tachycardia, apprehension and unconsciousness may appear in both The friction rub of acute anterior myocardial infarction may closely simulate that due to the dilated pulmo nary conus in pulmonary embolism The aortic second sound is frequently diminished in myocardial infarction giving at times a false impression of accentuation of P_2 such as is heard with pulmonary embolism Fever, leuko cytosis, elevation of sedimentation rate are common to both The more classi cal findings of pulmonary embolism include hemoptysis, pleural friction rub and signs of pulmonary consolidation These are usually lacking however in the early and quite often in the later stages The electrocardiogram often provides diagnostic information particularly if serial tracings are recorded The introduction of serum enzyme determinations (serum glutamic oxalo acetic transaminase and serum pyruvic transaminase) has materially aided the clinician in resolving difficult problems These enzymes are released into the blood stream by the destruction of myocardial cells in myocardial infarction in sufficient quantities to be of diagnostic importance but no significant rise occurs in pulmonary embolism or pulmonary infarction [68]

Treatment The prevention of thrombus formation in the veins of the legs and pelvis and hence indirectly, the prevention of pulmonary embo lism is obviously the ideal in treatment This should consist in an attempt to avoid so far as possible, all the factors which are known to favor intra vascular clotting Venous stasis must be guarded against by the encour agement of deep breathing, by the prescribing of regular mild exercises and gentle massage for the feet and legs and by the avoidance of positions in bed which will favor stagnation of blood in the pelvis and legs Tight bandages applied to the abdomen may interfere with adequate respiration and increase venous pressure in the lower extremities and should therefore be avoided Excessive sedation which inhibits both respiration and body movements is dangerous

There has been considerable debate regarding the advantages of early ambulation following operation There can be no doubt that this procedure hastens recovery of the patient from his operative procedure but it is not entirely certain as yet whether or not the incidence of phlebothrombosis and embolism is reduced thereby Some statistics have indicated that there is no lessening of incidence but that the mortality from embolism is reduced It is probably of utmost importance to recognize that to be effective in this respect early ambulation must mean not just sitting in a chair soon after the operation but actual walking (with the aid of assistants of course) in order to maintain muscle tone in the lower extremities and to prevent the occurrence of venous stasis

Prophylactic bilateral superficial femoral vein ligation has been advocated by some for the prevention of postoperative thromboembolism in elderly patients Experience however, is accumulating which tends to indicate that embolism may still occur from thrombi which form at the point of ligation and that there is little difference in the incidence of embolism in the ligated and nonligated groups of patients

Anticoagulants both heparin and Dicumarol have likewise been tried prophylactically in patients following operation Apparently the incidence of thromboembolism has been reduced thereby particularly with heparin There is reason to believe that Dicumarol does not have any significant anticoagulant action *in vivo* when dosage levels are maintained within a safe therapeutic range[4] The danger of hemorrhage with any type of anticoagulant is a very real one, and it would appear that prophylactic use should be limited to cases in which there is great likelihood of abnormal blood coagulation Heparin is the drug of choice for this purpose but it should be discontinued preoperatively so that the coagulation time is restored to normal Therapy should be reinstituted forty-eight hours postoperatively if no bleeding difficulty exists

When signs of intravascular thrombosis, as indicated by a positive Homans or Moses sign or by any other evidence, are detected by the physician two courses of action to prevent embolism are open Either the vein proximal to the thrombosis may be ligated or heparin therapy instituted or both measures may be carried out simultaneously There is an increasing tendency to rely on heparin alone in most clinics but this anticoagulant should not be administered without coagulation time control of dosage and there should be a full understanding of contraindications dosage, and the therapy of bleeding should this occur

If pulmonary embolism occurs despite all precautions the physician is faced with a situation which constitutes in many instances one of the major emergencies of medical practice Sometimes the patient dies immediately and there is no opportunity for therapy Most often however the patient survives for a sufficient period of time to permit appropriate treatment to be instituted It is essential to administer drugs which will tend to overcome unfavorable reflex phenomena which occur in association with pulmonary embolism and which add greatly to the circulatory difficulties Atropine is of great value in this respect in that vasovagal phenomena are counteracted if the drug is given in sufficient dosage The average

adult should receive 1 to 1 5 mg intravenously to accomplish this purpose Usually it is unnecessary to repeat this dose unless it is judged that a sufficient atropine effect has not been achieved or unless repeated embolizations occur

Another drug of definite value which may be given with the atropine and which is probably the most important single agent in the attack upon this condition, is papaverine This drug belongs to the benzyl isoquinolin group of opium alkaloids constituting about 1 per cent of the alkaloids of that narcotic Its empirical formula is $C_{20}H_{21}NO_4$ While its discovery dates back to the work of Merck in 1848 its use in the treatment of pulmonary embolism was not reported until 1933[30] A number of reports have since appeared, confirming its value Experimental evidence has been presented by Megibow Katz and Feinstein[81(b)] demonstrating the pulmonary arterial dilating action of this drug both by means of radiopaque injection experiments and by the discovery that following the administration of the drug there is a drop in the pulmonary diastolic pressure despite a rise in systolic pressure denoting a lessened resistance in the pulmonary arterial bed Their evidence also indicates a very favorable central stimulating effect on respiration, an improvement in coronary flow, and a tendency to prevent ectopic rhythms which might lead to exodus in ventricular fibrillation

The immediate administration of papaverine is therefore indicated in all cases of pulmonary embolism in which manifestations of the acute cor pulmonale are present It should be given intravenously in a dose of 0 06 Gm of papaverine hydrochloride injection, U S P (1 cc contains 0 03 Gm) This dose may be repeated within an hour if necessary The effect is prolonged tending to last up to four hours The onset of its action is rather slow however and it is for this reason that it is wise to administer it in the same injection with the rapidly acting atropine referred to previously These drugs should be readily available in all hospital wards for the emergency situations which arise, not only in postoperative patients but in medical cases as well

Shock associated with pulmonary embolism should be treated by an intravenous drip containing amounts of l norepinephrine adequate to maintain a systolic pressure of 100 (or in the previously hypertensive patient of 110), preferably introduced into the vein by way of a polyethylene catheter to avoid local ischemic effects Digitalis is used whenever there is definite evidence of myocardial insufficiency with elevated venous pressure Aminophylline may be given to those patients having bronchospasm but it should be injected very slowly because of the danger of furthering peripheral vascular collapse Oxygen inhalation is indicated in all cases If heparin has not been administered before the attack its administration should be instituted immediately in adequate dosage and with proper control of anticoagulant effect

When pulmonary embolism and acute cor pulmonale result from gas which has gained entrance into the systemic veins, the maneuver of turning the patient onto his left side may be life saving[92] This should be

combined with artificial respiration and oxygen administration and, if need be aspiration of the gas from the right ventricle

CHRONIC PULMONARY HEART DISEASE

Incidence Chronic pulmonary parenchymal disease per se however extensive, does not necessarily imply eventual right ventricular hyper trophy dilatation or failure unless there is coincidental interference with the flow of blood through the pulmonary circuit [13] This then repre sents a late development of chronic lung disease Serious disturbances of cardiac function secondary to chronic pulmonary disease are therefore relatively uncommon However with employment of newer technics for comparing the ratio of right ventricular mass to left ventricular or left ventricular and septum mass a higher necropsy incidence is being re ported [4f 119] White and Jones reported an incidence of cor pulmonale of only 0 9 per cent of 2314 patients with organic heart disease studied by autopsy [1] In contrast Scott and Garvin found 6 3 per cent in 6548 necropsy subjects This represented fifty cases in 890 cardiac patients of all types [109] McKeown in 1952 reported 111 cases in 6770 necropsy sub jects with evidence of right ventricular hypertrophy secondary to disease of the lungs [81]

The incidence in relation to the type of pulmonary disease varies tre mendously Chronic cor pulmonale has been reported in 4 to 50 per cent of patients with pulmonary tuberculosis [5o 118] Griggs and Coggin found 52 per cent of twenty four patients with silicosis to have right ventricular failure [illegible] Wells found only four cases of cor pulmonale in necropsies of 388 coal workers with pneumoconiosis alone but the incidence rose to 42 per cent in presence of emphysema and bronchiectasis [119] In all reports chronic obstructive emphysema alone or in combination with chronic asthma bronchiectasis or chronic bronchitis constitutes by far the com monest cause of chronic pulmonary heart disease Males outnumber females by 4 to 10 1 [4] The peak age incidence weighted by the large numbers of chronic obstructive emphysema cases ranges from the fifth to seventh decade

Etiology A convenient and simple classification of etiologic factors may be derived by dividing them into two categories Group I—pulmonary diseases associated with chronic diffuse obstructive emphysema Group II —pulmonary diseases in which the pathologic process primarily results in *reduction of the pulmonary vascular bed or reduction in transfer of gases* across the capillary membrane It must be understood that these two groups are not rigidly exclusive and frequently coexist [77]

Group I Chronic obstructive emphysema with alveolar hypoventilation and hypoxia

- A Chronic bronchitis
- B Bronchial asthma
- C Bronchiectasis
- D Bullous emphysema[4 33 44]
- E Restrictive diseases of the chest
  - 1 Kyphoscoliosis

2 Pectus excavatum
3 Fibrothorax
F Obesity syndrome
G Pulmonary tuberculosis with obstructive emphysema
H Sarcoidosis with obstructive emphysema
I Silicosis with obstructive emphysema

Group II Pulmonary disease with predominant reduction in the pulmonary vascular bed
A Intraluminal processes
1 Primary pulmonary hypertension
2 Chronic recurrent pulmonary emboli
3 Chronic massive pulmonary thrombosis
4 Schistosomiasis
5 Syphilis of the pulmonary arteries
6 Sickle cell anemia
B Extraluminal processes
1 Granulomatosis
a Sarcoidosis with interstitial granulomata
b Berylliosis
2 Interstitial fibrosis
a Hamman Rich syndrome
b Silicosis
c Lymphangitic or metastatic carcinomatosis[76]
d Chronic obstructive or bullous emphysema
e Scleroderma
f Pneumoconiosis (anthracosilicosis)
g Rheumatic pneumonitis
h Polyarteritis nodosa
i Diffuse interstitial fibrosis of unknown etiology
j Celiac disease with emphysema
k Congenital cysts of lung
l Diffuse infiltration by bronchogenic carcinoma[83]

The physiologic and pathologic disturbances resulting in pulmonary hypertension in these entities will be discussed in the following section.

Pathogenesis The development of pulmonary hypertension can be traced to one or more of four basic causes

1 Increase in pulmonary blood flow In the normal state pulmonary flow may be increased three to four times without a change in pulmonary artery pressure (30/4 12) or arteriolar resistance (less than 200 dynes per second per centimeter^{-5}) This is accomplished by the great distensibility of the pulmonary tree and the opening up of numerous unused reserve capillary channels to handle the excess flow Pulmonary hypertension due to increased flow per se is not usually met with in pulmonary disease until the vascular bed is reduced [28]

2 Restriction of the pulmonary vascular bed This usually takes place at the level of the small arterioles or capillaries secondary either to arteriolar spasm or organic arteriolar changes which raise pulmonary arteriolar resistance

3 Anoxia or hypoxia The importance of anoxia in elevating pulmo

nary artery pressures and resistance by the vasoconstriction of pulmonary vessels has been clearly demonstrated[4,85,115]

4 Elevation of left atrial pressures due to disease or insufficiency of the left side of the heart This secondarily produces elevation of pulmonary arteriolar resistance

It is apparent that when right sided heart failure makes its appearance in chronic cor pulmonale it is fundamentally the result of an excessive work load from long standing elevation of pulmonary arteriolar and total pulmonary resistances[43] Other factors, however are involved

In *Group I* fixed structural changes in the pulmonary vascular bed were formerly believed responsible for the increased pulmonary pressures[56] But with the advent of cardiac catheterization such elevations were found at times to be both transient and reversible[57] Structural changes therefore cannot be the whole story Emphysema primarily disturbs pulmonary function by impeding air flow in and out of the lungs There is a marked increase in total residual volume and reduction in maximum ventilatory and timed vital capacities There is uneven distribution of air in the *alveoli and this in turn produces uneven distribution of aeration of blood* When this process progresses sufficiently to reduce systemic arterial oxygen saturation further changes occur A direct hypoxic stimulation of the bone marrow presumably stimulates a secondary type of polycythemia This is associated with an increased blood viscosity and blood volume increased venous return increased cardiac output and a residual volume of blood in the lungs These changes in the presence of a decreased pulmonary vascular capacity result in a further increase in pulmonary artery pressure Hypoxia itself increases cardiac output[60] and by direct action on pulmonary vessels affects a reduction in their caliber[60,111] Eventually, reduction of the vascular bed occurs through rupture of interalveolar septa with loss of capillary bed replacement of normal tissue by relatively avascular fibrosis compression of vessels by atelectasis inflammatory exudate and fibrosis Long standing increased intravascular pressure produces secondary changes consisting of endarteritis obliterans medial hypertrophy intimal fibrosis endothelial proliferation and eventual pulmonary atherosclerosis[15] These changes add also to the pulmonary resistance The vascular impedance however is a late development in chronic emphysema It is felt that the most important factor in the development of the cor pulmonale is the hypoxia which in many instances is reversible and therefore of utmost importance to recognize[77]

The optimal stretch of the myocardial fibers is exceeded and right ventricular failure occurs[74] through the combination of these separate factors (a) increased blood volume (b) high cardiac output, and (c) direct action of anoxia on the strained right ventricular myocardium possibly a reduced vascular bed, and marked pulmonary hypertension This failure is *characterized by an impairment* in the emptying of the right ventricle increase in right ventricular diastolic volume and elevation of end diastolic filling pressure If proper therapy is instituted this type of failure is usually easily correctable as there is little evidence for intrinsic myocardial disease and the coronary blood flow is reportedly normal[10]

Pages 51 to 270M replace former pages 251 to 270 © 1959

Specific mention should be made of several of the less common entities in Group I. Fatal cardiac failure resulting from chronic cor pulmonale in individuals with thoracic deformities is relatively rare. Kyphosis, kyphoscoliosis and pectus excavatum are the common deformities involved. In 30,729 necropsies performed at Cook County Hospital only 11 cases (0.036 per cent) fitting this classification were found.[41] Such patients are prone to pulmonary infections. All show varying degrees of atelectasis, bronchiectasis, chronic bronchitis, and compensatory or obstructive em-

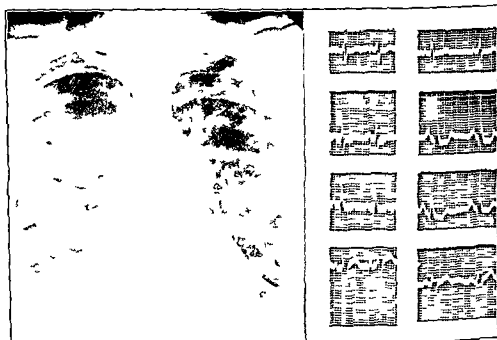


FIGURE 2. Chest x rays and electrocardiograms of a sixty three year old male with pulmonary tuberculosis and right sided heart failure. The x rays demonstrate the bilateral fibroid tuberculous lesion with spontaneous pneumothorax or large cavity at the right apex. Sputum positive for tubercle bacilli. The first electrocardiogram was taken at a time when cardiac failure was severe and shows right axis deviation without P wave changes. Treatment consisted in a period of complete bed rest, digitalization, oxygen inhalation and diuretics and resulted in a complete disappearance of the signs of failure. The second electrocardiogram was taken seven months later and shows a normal axis but abnormally tall, broad P waves in Leads II and III. The changes in the S T segment are the result of digitalis administration. The improvement resulting from treatment in this case was maintained for one year of observation. (Temple University Hospital case.)

physema. Their respiratory mechanics are inefficient, resulting in compensatory hyperventilation. Eventually in the third to fourth decade the ventilatory capacity and respiratory gas exchanges are so reduced that hypoxia and carbon dioxide retention set in motion the cycle previously described.[18, 63, 126]

A recent entity colorfully entitled the "Pickwickian syndrome"[14] has been described in detail.[23, 37, 71, 111] It is characterized by extreme obesity, somnolence, periodic breathing, cyanosis, polycythemia, right axis deviation shown in the electrocardiogram, and congestive heart failure. Physi-

ologically there are found decreased vital capacity, expiratory reserve volume functional residual capacity, tidal volume, and total minute volume Distribution and diffusion of gases within the lung are normal The physiologic dead space is increased The major physiologic abnormality is inadequate alveolar ventilation resulting in arterial oxygen unsaturation and carbon dioxide retention The reason for alveolar hypoventilation has *not been conclusively explained, but is presumably due to the tremendous* abdominal girth and fat deposits on the chest wall which permit only shallow diaphragmatic breathing[1,14,26] Despite maintenance of minute volume by increased respiratory rate a point is reached where the tidal volume falls so low that alveolar hypoventilation occurs The hypoxia presumably initiates the cycle of polycythemia hypervolemia pulmonary hypertension and right sided heart failure The entire syndrome is reversible by weight reduction

There is no agreement as to the frequency with which right ventricular hypertrophy occurs in association with pulmonary tuberculosis Nemet and Rosenblatt[90] reported exclusive hypertrophy of the right ventricle in 33 8 per cent of seventy-one pulmonary tuberculosis patients studied post mortem On the other hand Griggs Coggins and Evans [illegible] found only 3 7 per cent of pure right ventricular hypertrophy in 1470 patients with tuberculosis uncomplicated by other pulmonary disease This latter finding is in better accord with the general opinion on this subject When congestive heart failure occurs it is usually in patients with advanced bilateral disease In this instance emphysema accompanied by severe fibrosis and reduction in pulmonary vascular bed usually coexists The roentgenogram and electrocardiograms from an illustrative case are reproduced in Figure 2

In *Group II* reduction in the pulmonary vascular bed by pulmonary parenchymal disease or conditions localized mainly in or about the pulmonary vessels may be the initiating factor in the development of chronic pulmonary heart disease In most of these cases hypoxemia is not a factor early in the course and does not play a major role in the development of pulmonary hypertension as it does in the first group In the earlier stages pulmonary hypertension occurs only during exercise when the increased blood flow does not have access to reserve channels present in the normal lung As the vascular bed is further restricted hypertension develops even at rest If the patient does not die of pulmonary insufficiency he will eventually develop anoxemia first with exercise then at rest This anoxemia is thought to result from three factors (1) Alveolar capillary block occurs in patients with granulomatosis and diffuse interstitial fibrotic lesions (2) The factor of contact time is of importance in many cases[74] To maintain a specific volume flow through a restricted vascular bed the rate of flow must increase with exercise At a critical level the flow becomes so rapid that alveoli and blood are not in contact sufficiently long for diffusion of gases This results in a widened alveolar arteriole oxygen tension *gradient and unsaturation of arterial blood* (3) *Emphysema often accompanies* the extra luminal processes and results in the cycle of events previously described

Since, in the earlier stages of this group, the factors of anoxia and hypervolemia play a small role, no stage of high cardiac output precedes the eventual cardiac failure When failure does develop it may be precipitated by acute anoxia (due often to superimposed acute infection), and it is characterized by diminished cardiac output and irreversibility The latter is dependent on pathologic changes which cannot be altered therapeutically

The specific diseases form a diversified group Of those involving primarily the pulmonary arterial tree the most controversial is primary pulmonary hypertension It has been variously described under headings such as primary pulmonary vascular sclerosis idiopathic pulmonary hypertension right ventricular hypertrophy of unknown origin, Ayerza's syndrome cardiacos negros and many others [17] The question as to whether this syndrome actually exists has not been conclusively settled It is defined by Dresdale[34] as an elevation of pulmonary artery pressure with right ventricular hypertrophy whether or not associated with pulmonary vascular sclerosis McGuire[80] restricts the definition to right ventricular hypertrophy and pulmonary artery hypertension in the complete absence of other cardiac or pulmonary vascular disease The nature distribution, and severity of the pulmonary vascular changes proximal to the capillary bed vary considerably in those cases where changes are reported to have been present [38, 61, 110] These changes embrace atheromatous plaques of the stem and large elastic arteries alone or in conjunction with fibrous intimal thickening and narrowing of the smaller arteries and arterioles medial hypertrophy intimal sclerosis, and thrombi in various stages of organization [15, 34, 10] Whether the obliterative sclerosis or thrombosis is the cause or effect of the pulmonary hypertension has evoked considerable argument It is pointed out that these intimal changes are indistinguishable from those seen with recurrent pulmonary emboli The primary factor in producing hypertension in those with predominant medial hypertrophy has been suggested to be the persistence of fetal type pulmonary arterial tree [15] The clinical course is characterized by its appearance in the younger age group of forty to sixty years, with a predominance of females (60 per cent) Exertional dyspnea effort syncope, chest pain closely resembling that of angina pectoris and varying degrees of cyanosis without clubbing of the fingers are of special importance There is usually a rapid downhill course lasting five to sixty months terminating in right ventricular failure and occasionally in sudden death Deaths have been reported following Decholin circulation time determination and cardiac catheterization [105]

The term 'Ayerza s disease' was originally popularized by three students of Ayerza in describing a condition characterized by severe cyanosis and polycythemia (cardiacos negros) associated with pulmonary disease The condition was presumed to be of syphilitic origin [70] Since then however, the designation has been used to describe primary pulmonary hypertension severe obstructive emphysema with pulmonary arteriosclerosis and a host of other diseases characterized by pulmonary arteriosclerosis hypertension, cyanosis, and right sided heart failure It would be best to drop this term from general usage

In experimental animals vascular sclerosis closely resembling that seen in the syndrome of primary pulmonary hypertension has been produced by repeated pulmonary embolization with fibrin blood clots and amniotic fluid[106] The histologic reaction is primarily confined however to the intima with a normal or atrophic medial coat[6,34,58] The clinical counter part is being recognized with increasing frequency Pulmonary emboli either recognized or unrecognized clinically, are now a well-established cause for the development of chronic pulmonary heart disease[6-1?9,96]

Chronic massive main or stem pulmonary artery thrombosis has also been incriminated[8,16,?6,98,101,104] This was reported either in conjunction with pulmonary embolication or chronic pulmonary disease or both Sur vival in the face of main stem thrombosis is permitted through rapid expansion of bronchial pulmonary artery anastomoses Venous angiocar diography will readily demonstrate the presence of such a thrombosis[57]

Pulmonary thrombosis and infarction occurring in a patient with sickle cell anemia are suggested by episodes of chest pain unexplained dyspnea or pneumonitis[84] Repeated infarctions in the sickle cell state may lead to chronic cor pulmonale though considerable reduction of the pulmonary vascular bed must occur This complication is most apt to develop in the presence of severe anemia a high percentage of S hemoglobin frequent pulmonary infections and sudden demands for greater oxygen utilization These states may initiate sickle crises with subsequent intravascular thrombosis

In areas of the world where schistosomiasis is endemic cor pulmonale may be found in 2 to 5 per cent of patients harboring this parasite[49] It is usually a complication of Schistosoma hepatic cirrhosis The pathologic picture is one of relapsing endarteritis of serous fibrinous and hemorrhagic types in small arterioles thrombus formation pseudoaneurysms and angi omatoid structures[7-] Except for the latter which are quite characteristic of this disease the changes are similar to those which may be seen in rheumatic fever, thromboangiitis obliterans and polyarteritis nodosa[3] The exact mechanism for production of this arteritis is unknown It is presumed to be the result of (1) an allergic reaction to toxins elaborated by the Schistosoma ova or (2) granulomatous reaction within or around the obstructed arteriole secondary to the physical presence of the ova The development of right sided heart failure in these patients is an omi nous sign and is usually followed by cyanosis Abrupt termination of the illness in death is to be expected at this stage

Syphilis of the pulmonary arteries is an extremely rare condition Bren ner reports that there are only fourteen cases reported in the literature in which the diagnosis is reasonably well proved[12]

The group of diseases listed under the extraluminal processes in Group II all have in common the production of diffuse interstitial fibrosis or granu loma Only occasionally is the extent of the granulomata of sarcoidosis and berylliosis sufficient to reduce the pulmonary vascular bed to an extent capable of elevating pulmonary artery pressure

Anthracosilicosis is frequently the cause of pulmonary heart disease in mining regions where anthracosilicosis rather than pure silicosis occurs

Pure silicosis leads to early disability and death from silicotuberculosis, thus allowing insufficient time for the development of cardiac manifestations A valuable statistical study of this subject is that of Coggin Griggs, and Stilson[70] who found right ventricular hypertrophy to be present at autopsy in approximately one half of 102 pneumoconiosis patients Definite congestive failure was more frequent in these subjects (51 per cent) than was tuberculosis (41 per cent) Wells corroborated these findings in 1954[119] In 136 patients with massive pneumoconiosis, autopsy showed that 42 per cent had chronic pulmonary heart disease without evidence of left sided heart disease But of seventy one patients with pneumoconiosis plus tuberculosis only 17 per cent died of pulmonary heart disease (Figure 3)

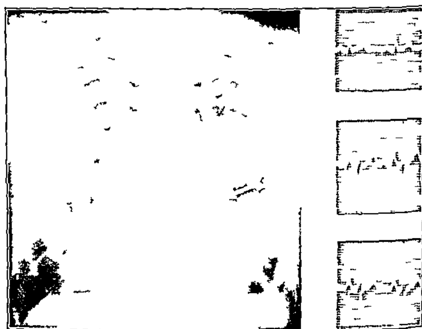


FIGURE 3 Chest x rays and electrocardiogram of a fifty eight year old male with advanced anthracosilicosis and chronic pulmonary heart disease Enlarged pulmonary conus indicated on x ray by arrow Electrocardiogram shows normal axis with large broad P waves in Leads II and III Tests of circulatory function in this case indicated incipient right sided heart failure Death resulted however not from congestive failure but from acute miliary tuberculosis which developed a few weeks after the above x rays were taken (Temple University Hospital case)

Broadly speaking, the collagen diseases' are capable of producing interstitial pulmonary fibrosis as well as pulmonary arterial changes and rarely pulmonary heart disease[3-] In scleroderma there may be found large irregular masses of fibrosis or diffuse fibrosis with cystic formation[91] Lupus erythematosus produces nonspecific changes of bronchopneumonia edema and occasionally alveolar fibrinoid degeneration as well as the better known vascular changes Polyarteritis is characterized by a necrotizing arteritis Rheumatoid arthritis may be associated with pulmonary fibrosis—either localized or diffuse Special mention should be made of

rheumatic pneumonitis Patients who have suffered from long standing rheumatic infection frequently present in addition to chronic damage of the heart valves an interstitial pneumonitis with hyperplasia of elastic tissue Previously it was assumed that this change in the lungs was a result of long standing pulmonary congestion due to mitral stenosis The studies of Gouley [2] have shown however that while congestion intensifies the fibrosis in the lungs it is only a secondary factor in the production of fibrotic changes Primarily involved is a chronic rheumatic interstitial pneumonitis which like rheumatic myocarditis is often accompanied by evidence of recurrent inflammation Histologic changes consist of alveolar lining cell proliferation organization of exudate fibrinoid necrosis of bronchiolar lamina propria and arteritis [2] The right sided heart failure which characteristically terminates rheumatic heart disease may then result at least in part from fibrotic pulmonary disease Gouley has shown that such failure may occur even in the absence of significant mitral valvular dysfunction Such cases as these could be correctly classified then as examples of pulmonary heart disease of rheumatic origin

In summary a schematic diagram is presented (Figure 4) to illustrate the general principles involved in the development of pulmonary heart disease [28]

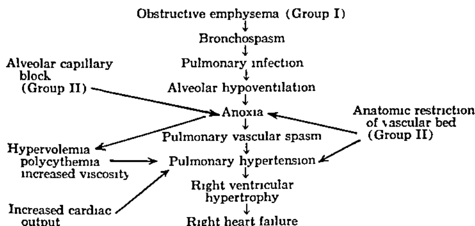


FIGURE 4 General principles in development of pulmonary heart disease

Clinical Features The diagnosis of chronic cor pulmonale would be made irregularly if reliance were placed solely on the demonstration of right ventricular hypertrophy since early detection of such hypertrophy is extremely difficult A high index of suspicion must be maintained therefore to correlate all suggestive evidence so that a presumptive diagnosis may be made before marked progression of the disease has occurred

The symptoms and signs of chronic pulmonary heart disease are first those associated with the primary pulmonary disease and second those produced by the cardiac dysfunction The pulmonary symptoms and signs need not be discussed in this chapter since such a discussion would be beyond the scope of this book It must be emphasized however that

TABLE I

	J B —Male 57	I M —Female, 46	J R —Male 20	Normal Value
History	Increasing dyspnea for 1 mo		Progressive dyspnea for 6 months	
Respiratory rate	19/min	23/min	14/min	15 20/min
Minute volume	8 87 L /min	13 8 L /min	16 6 L /min	6 12 L /min
Tidal volume	466 cc	602 cc.	1188 cc	500 1000 cc
Inspiratory capacity	1850 cc	900 cc	1850 cc	
Expiratory Respiratory Volume	800 cc	400 cc	1550 cc	
Vital capacity				
Standing	2550 cc	1500 cc	3550 cc	2500 4000 cc
Predicted	3690 cc	2855 cc	4320 cc	
Percentage of predicted	69	52	82	100
Maximum breathing capacity	39 9 L./min	113 1 L /min	64 3 L /min	80 130 L /min
Predicted	94 0 L./min.	79 0 L /min	121 0 L /min	
Percentage of predicted	42	157	53	100
Timed vital capacity				
1 second	14%			
3 seconds	50%	100%	100%	100%
Saturation arterial	88%	94 4%	96 0%	94 97%
Hemoglobin	17 3 Gm. %	Normal	Normal	
Hematocrit	52			
Diagnosis	Chronic obstructive pulmonary emphysema early cor pulmonale maximum breathing capacity reduced out of proportion to vital capacity timed vital capacity markedly delayed early polycythemia	Hamman Rich syndrome alveolocapillary block restrictive pulmonary disease chronic cor pulmonale inspiratory capacity expiratory reserve volume and vital capacity markedly reduced	Pulmonary schistosomiasis chronic cor pulmonale pulmonary function studies all normal but for maximum breathing capacity This may be related to stiffness of lung under a timed maximal effort. One week later patient became cyanotic Pulmonary vascular disease without pulmonary parenchyma disease	

dyspnea, due entirely to the pulmonary disease is very commonly encountered The presence of this symptom then does not necessarily imply cardiac failure as it so often does in other forms of heart disease Cyanosis, likewise may be due entirely to the pathologic condition in the lung though it is frequently aggravated when cardiac failure occurs

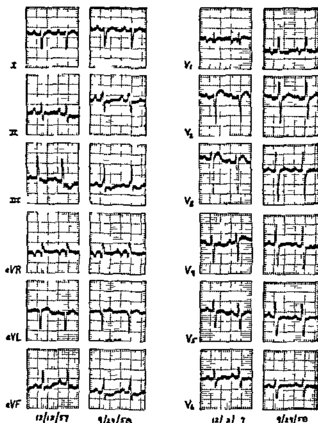


FIGURE 5 Patient I M with Hamman Rich syndrome listed in Table I The findings are classical for right ventricular hypertrophy with considerable increase in the abnormality over a nine month period

As a result of the development of pulmonary function studies it has become possible in recent years to estimate with a fair degree of accuracy the degree and type of pulmonary insufficiency in any given case and to follow the progress of the functional impairment with the advance of the pulmonary disease The findings in three patients with serious pulmonary disease are presented in Table I and will serve as an illustration of the value of these tests It will be noted that in the first patient (J B) the pulmonary function studies indicate severe obstructive pulmonary disease with inability to ventilate the lungs properly resulting in arterial oxygen unsaturation This is consistent with the clinical diagnosis of pulmonary emphysema In the second patient the pulmonary function studies were compatible to those in patients with severe restrictive pul

monary disease and the clinical diagnosis of Hamman Rich syndrome The major abnormality was a markedly reduced vital capacity The electrocardiogram (Figure 5) demonstrates the progressive development of right ventricular hypertrophy Case three (J R) illustrates essentially normal pulmonary function studies in the presence of severe dyspnea and right sided heart failure The electrocardiogram and chest x rays were those classically associated with pulmonary artery hypertension Two days prior to death, severe cyanosis appeared which was not amenable to correction with oxygen The clinical and autopsy diagnoses were pulmonary schistosomiasis with diffuse pulmonary arteriolitis The decreased maximum breathing capacity perhaps represented a degree of lung stiffness which interfered only with a maximum ventilatory effort No pulmonary parenchymal disease was present

Three stages may be recognized in the development of the pulmonary heart disease syndrome The first is that during which pulmonary hypertension is developing but maintenance of pulmonary circulation exists In the case of obstructive emphysema this may last ten to fifteen years with gradual elevation of pulmonary pressure corresponding to the progression of impaired ventilation and hypoxia[100] At this time there is seldom any evidence of cardiac involvement There are no symptoms other than those which can be accounted for by the lung disease, and on physical examination accentuation of the pulmonary second sound, due to pulmonary hypertension may be the only cardiac finding Other findings gradually appear marking the onset of the second stage with involvement of the heart and development of right ventricular hypertrophy These include a forceful subxiphoid or left parasternal systolic thrust a pulmonic systolic or left parasternal diastolic murmur, a split pulmonary second sound and palpable closure of pulmonary valves Recently, Leatham[69] has described an early systolic sound resembling a widely split pulmonic first sound in patients with cor pulmonale and a dilated pulmonary artery Unlike a split first sound which is often best heard at the mitral or tricuspid area, this is heard most distinctly in the left second or third intercostal space next to the sternum The roentgenographic and electrocardiographic abnormalities which have made possible a recognition of the disease process in this stage will be discussed later Patients generally remain in this state of compensated heart disease a considerable period of time often years before gradually passing into the third stage that of congestive heart failure Those with alveolocapillary block however, generally have a much shorter life span after the onset of their pulmonary disability

In the third stage the well known manifestations of decompensation of the right ventricle appear These include increased venous pressure, enlargement of the liver, edema of the dependent parts, albuminuria, and other evidence of renal congestion in the urine and in advanced cases ascites and hydrothorax Enlargement of the heart may be detected on physical examination although this is often very difficult in the presence of emphysema or other advanced pulmonary disease Gallop rhythm may be heard along the left sternal border Its presence indicates a poor prog



FIGURE 6 A Pulmonary emphysema with chronic pulmonary heart disease in a male aged sixty six Dyspnea and productive cough for five years Congestive failure for two weeks prior to first admission to hospital Marked improvement on rest digitalization diuretics and oxygen inhalation Second attack of congestive failure six months later resulting in death in spite of treatment The roentgenogram taken in the routine posteroanterior position shows the contour of the heart to be that of enlargement of the outflow tract of the right ventricle The convexity of the left middle border (arrow) represents enlargement of the pulmonary artery as is well shown by the postmortem specimen from this case photographed in a position corresponding to that of the heart in the roentgenogram *B* Same case as in Fig 6*A* Roentgenogram and postmortem specimen in the right anterior oblique position The convexity of the midventral portion of the cardiac silhouette is seen to be formed by the pulmonary artery in its upper portion and by the pulmonary conus in the lower (Temple University Hospital case)

nosis Major arrhythmias in general have been unusual in chronic cor pulmonale In 1958, however, Corazza[22] reported various arrhythmias in forty seven of 122 such patients (31 per cent) Most of these arrhythmias were premature atrial and ventricular beats and supraventricular tachycardias In patients who have reached an advanced stage of failure, the course is often a progressive one despite intensive treatment

Roentgenologic Examination This is of paramount importance in the diagnosis of pulmonary heart disease In the first place, this study will yield important information concerning the character of the pulmonary disease present In the second place, a careful examination of the heart contour will usually give evidence of cardiac involvement, when such is present, by demonstration of enlargement of the outflow tract of the right ventricle[3,67] The latter is an important early indication that pulmonary hypertension exists, and may be recognized when the normal concavity of the left border of the cardiac silhouette is replaced by a bulging convexity representing enlargement of the pulmonary artery and conus (Figures 3 and 6) This bulging convexity is usually more marked in the right anterior oblique position than in the anteroposterior When there is uncertainty as to the status of the right ventricular outflow tract in the conventional roentgen examination, accurate measurement of the individual chambers of the heart and of the thoracic vessels may be achieved by angiocardiography This method consists in the rapid intravenous injection of 70 per cent Diodrast or 90 per cent Hypaque followed by the taking of roentgenograms at short intervals to visualize the passage of the dye through cardiac chambers and thoracic blood vessels This method has greatly extended the value of roentgenology in the diagnosis of early chronic pulmonary heart disease

In the later stages of chronic pulmonary heart disease, enlargement of the body of the right ventricle is added to the earlier outflow tract enlargement, and there will be noted at this time a prominence of the right ventricular contour in the left anterior oblique position Enlargement of the right atrium is seen infrequently There is usually no increase in the transverse diameter of the heart, a fact worthy of considerable emphasis since this measurement is so often relied upon as an index of cardiac size Characteristically enlargement of the hilar shadows reflecting the enlarged main and stem pulmonary arteries is present There is then, however, an abrupt reduction in caliber of secondary and tertiary branches resulting in oligemic peripheral lung fields[51,94] This abrupt transition may be well demonstrated by angiocardiography

Mitral stenosis and certain forms of congenital heart disease (notably pulmonary stenosis and patent ductus arteriosus) are important causes of enlargement of the right ventricular outflow tract, and must, therefore be differentiated from pulmonary heart disease In mitral stenosis there will be evidence of left atrial enlargement demonstrable in the left projection with a barium filled esophagus Left atrial enlargement is only rarely observed in pulmonary heart disease Congenital abnormalities may be differentiated usually by the history and physical findings, but cardiac catheterization and angiocardiography may be necessary in some cases

A sign frequently observed fluoroscopically in cases of advanced pulmonary emphysema or fibrosis is inspiratory distention, followed by expiratory diminution of the cardiac silhouette, more marked on the right side than on the left[102] This sign is a manifestation of marked diminution in lung tissue elasticity When lung function is so impaired, the pulmonary tissue cannot rapidly adjust itself to changes in the volume of the thorax The respiratory movements of the chest wall are thus transmitted to the heart Whether or not this effect plays any significant role in the eventual development of heart failure is not known

Electrocardiogram This may or may not prove of diagnostic value in patients suspected of having chronic pulmonary heart disease When definite right axis deviation is present and is not accounted for by the presence of mitral stenosis or congenital heart disease, it is of considerable value In many cases of chronic cor pulmonale however, a normal axis or even left axis deviation may be found This is particularly true in cases of emphysema with coexisting hypertension of the greater circulation

Abnormalities of the P wave are found in some cases, and, when present are of diagnostic importance These changes consist in increased height and breadth of the P waves in Leads II and III Notching is rarely seen During periods of congestive failure the enlargement of these waves may disappear reappearing with return of compensation (Figure 2) Moreover, variability in size and shape and direction of the P wave may occur as seen in emphysema particularly without apparent change in the clinical course[82] The P wave enlargement so commonly seen in cases of mitral stenosis is usually most marked in Leads I and II and conspicuous notching is frequently present In congenital pulmonary stenosis increased height of the P waves is not associated with increased width

The application of unipolar electrocardiography to the problem of the chronic cor pulmonale[89 1 7] has been extremely helpful It has been shown that the typical findings in the standard leads are due to a rotation of the heart in a clockwise manner on its longitudinal axis with a backward displacement of the apex In the precordial leads there tends to be a reversal in the ratio of the amplitudes of the R and S waves in Leads V_1 and V_6 characterized by an abnormally large R wave in proportion to the S wave in Lead V_1 and a prominent S wave in Lead V_6 Johnson[65] and Scott[108] have shown that when there is electrocardiographic evidence of right ventricular hypertrophy there will be mean pulmonary artery hypertension of 30 mm Hg or more Dexter has found in addition that the right ventricular hypertrophy pattern did not appear until total pulmonary resistance exceeded 750 dynes per second per centimeter^{-5} [31] Completely normal tracings however, may be obtained in patients with well advanced pulmonary heart disease Occasionally incomplete or complete right bundle branch block is found in place of the right ventricular hypertrophy pattern The T waves from the right precordial leads are frequently inverted while those from the left precordium are generally upright If there is associated disease which causes left ventricular strain (e g hypertension in the greater circulation) there may be an absence or diminution in the amplitude of the S waves from the left of the precordium A QS type of complex

in the right precordial leads in chronic cor pulmonale occurs with considerable frequency and does not indicate the presence of myocardial infarction

Studies of the Circulatory Function Various tests of circulatory function are of diagnostic value in many cases of pulmonary disease Oppenheimer and Hitzig have extensively investigated this subject [93] They have shown that in uncomplicated pulmonary disease the findings in these tests are normal This is also true even in the early stages of pulmonary heart disease when right ventricular enlargement is present, but in which decompensation has not occurred *The presence of abnormal circulatory measurements indicates that pulmonary insufficiency is complicated by myocardial insufficiency* The myocardial failure may be incipient or frank isolated failure of the right side of the heart resulting from the pulmonary disease or it may be due to unrelated, coexisting cardiovascular disorders which produce either left ventricular or universal heart failure Incipient right sided heart failure is characterized by the presence of a normal initial venous pressure and a varying rise in this pressure during compression of the right upper quadrant of the abdomen The arm to lung circulation time (ether time) may or may not be prolonged and the lung to tongue time (saccharin or Decholin time minus ether time) is normal In frank isolated right sided failure there is a high initial venous pressure, a considerable rise in pressure on right upper quadrant compression a prolonged arm to lung time and a relatively normal lung to tongue time Left sided heart failure (due to coexisting cardiovascular disease such as hypertension or coronary artery disease) is characterized by a normal initial venous pressure with or without a rise on right upper quadrant pressure, and a considerably prolonged lung to tongue time Universal heart failure secondary to disease of the left side of the heart and possibly to pulmonary disease in addition combines these features of left and right sided heart failure

Special mention should be made of the usefulness of cardiac catheterization Obviously this will reveal pulmonary artery hypertension if it is present The presence of a normal pulmonary capillary pressure aids in the differential diagnosis by ruling out processes in the left side of the heart as a cause of the pulmonary hypertension The wedge pressure is normal in instances of pulmonary disease [19 100] Care must be used in the selection of patients for catheterization as sudden death has been reported during or shortly after the procedure in those having primary pulmonary hypertension [105]

Diagnosis The following criteria should be established before making a diagnosis of chronic pulmonary heart disease (1) the presence of pulmonary disease of a type which may be responsible for hypertension of the lesser circulation and (2) evidence by roentgenogram or electrocardiogram of right sided heart hypertrophy not explained by the presence of mitral valve disease or congenital cardiac abnormality or left ventricular insufficiency Right ventricular failure in a patient presenting these qualifications is further evidence in favor of such a diagnosis but need not be present Circulatory measurements may indicate incipient right sided heart failure in the absence of other findings usually relied upon for a diagnosis of myocardial insufficiency These measurements and those of

cardiac catheterization may also aid in differentiating cases of pulmonary heart disease and those of pulmonary disease in which there is a coexisting cardiac condition of a type unrelated to the pathologic condition in the lung

Treatment Since the cardiocirculatory complications arise from the underlying disturbance in pulmonary function the treatment of chronic cor pulmonale must include an attack upon the pulmonary insufficiency Treatment of the latter can only be beneficial if the nature of the lung disease be known The first step in treatment is proper diagnosis of the underlying pulmonary disease

It is not within the scope of this chapter to discuss in detail the treatment of the various etiologic factors previously described The reader is referred to several excellent reviews on this subject [28 43 54 59 94] Brief emphasis may be placed, however, upon the more general and practical aspects of such treatment since thoughtful attention at strategic times during the course of the primary disease may prevent the development of right sided heart failure

From the section on etiology it is evident that the treatment of chronic cor pulmonale usually involves the management of chronic obstructive emphysema or pulmonary fibrosis In review three fundamental disturbances in pulmonary function develop in the former (1) gross impedance of air flow in and out of the lungs (2) the air is unevenly distributed to the alveoli and (3) the blood passing through the lungs is similarly unevenly distributed to the alveoli The last named is not amenable to therapy but the first two are The impedance to air flow and the uneven distribution of alveolar gases stem from loss of elasticity of lung tissue bronchiolar spasm, mucosal edema retention of secretions and exudates Diligent application of vaporized bronchodilators (Isuprel Vaponefrin) antibiotics, sputum liquefiers (potassium iodide terpin hydrate) oral bronchodilators (sublingual Isuprel tablets aminophylline ephedrine) postural drainage bronchoscopy aerosol mists (trypsin) synthetic detergents (Alevaire) *and occasionally adrenal steroids*[11] *for refractory bronchospasm will main*tain pulmonary sufficiency for years Education in abdominal breathing exercises may increase diaphragmatic excursions remarkably Acute infections must be scrupulously avoided or treated since it is during such episodes that anoxia and hypercapnia may become the dominant feature In such patients hospitalization is required with prompt administration of the above procedures as required The use of sedatives is to be stringently avoided because of their tendency to produce respiratory depression Oxygen, if used in the presence of elevated serum carbon dioxide must be given intermittently or in conjunction with a mechanical respirator to avoid complete suppression of the respiratory center and apnea Diamox has been found useful occasionally in lowering serum bicarbonate and serum pH thereby reducing the depressant action of elevated plasma carbon dioxide on the respiratory center [107 116 117]

In the presence of pulmonary fibrosis and pulmonary vascular disease the anatomic lesion is chiefly responsible for the pulmonary hypertension rather than the anoxia and hypercapnia seen with emphysema The out

look, therefore is bleak at best Rigorous restriction of physical activity is of primary importance in an attempt to reduce exacerbations of pulmonary hypertension The use of cortisone and its derivatives has offered some hope of limiting the cellular proliferation in some cases of alveolar capillary block[100] The previous admonitions regarding pulmonary infection are of course applicable in the avoidance of anoxia and carbon dioxide retention Smoking is absolutely contraindicated because of its irritating and bronchoconstricting effects

The specific cardiac therapy of patients in failure with chronic cor pulmonale consists in the judicious use of those measures universally employed in heart failure due to other forms of heart disease[59] These include rest digitalis diuretics and low salt diet Digitalis was once considered valueless in chronic cor pulmonale[63] Cournand however, has convincingly demonstrated that digitalization ultimately results in a decreased cardiac output decreased pulmonary artery pressure, and improved pulmonary function[39] The last is evidenced by improved arterial oxygen saturation Cardiac rate alone must not be used as the sole guide to full digitalization since these patients, even when not in failure tend to run resting ventricular rates of 90 to 100 Digitalis if pushed may easily produce intoxication The effects of digitalis are not as dramatic as those often seen in left ventricular failure Diuretics are indicated when frank right sided failure has occurred

Special mention should be made of the value of oxygen administration a method of treatment emphasized by Barach[5] Patients with pulmonary insufficiency of sufficient severity to produce cardiac embarrassment show either a diminished oxygen saturation of arterial blood or normal oxygen levels maintained at the expense of increased ventilation Continuous administration of oxygen to these patients often relieves dyspnea and reduced pulmonary ventilation As noted previously, however great care must be exercised when it is administered in the presence of respiratory acidosis and it may be necessary to use intermittent or mechanical respirator

Phlebotomies of 300 to 500 milliliters at a time may be dramatically effectual in patients with severe anoxia plus polycythemia and hypervolemia Serial determinations of hematocrit readings and hemoglobin values will permit reduction of hematocrit levels to 45 to 50 per cent without reduction of hemoglobin below 12 0 grams

REFERENCES

1 Abelmann W H Frank N R Gaensler E A and Cugell D W Effects of Abdominal Distention by Ascites on Lung Volumes and Ventilation Arch Int Med 93 528 1954

2 Arnold H A and Bainborough A R Subacute Cor Pulmonale Following Trophoblastic Pulmonary Emboli Canad M A J 76 478 1957

3 Assmann H Klinische Roentgendiagnostik der Inneren Erkankungen 4th ed Leipzig F C W Vogel 1929

4 Baldwin E Harden K A Green D G Cournand A and Richards D W, Jr Pulmonary Insufficiency IV A Study of 161 Cases of Large Pulmonary Air Cysts or Bullae Medicine 29 169 1950

5 Barach A L Physiological Methods in the Diagnosis and Treatment of Asthma and Emphysema Ann Int Med 12 454 Oct 1938

6 Barnard P J Pulmonary Arteriosclerosis and Cor Pulmonale Due to Recurrent Thromboembolism Circulation 10 343 1954
7 Barnes A R Pulmonary Embolism J A M A 109 1347 (Oct 23) 1937
8 Barr J R and Knox F H Jr Embolic Obstruction of Major Pulmonary Arteries Producing Chronic Cor Pulmonale Dis Chest 29 225 1956
9 Bosquet, E Auger R Longtin J and Carasso B Acute Cor Pulmonale Following Pneumonectomy Combined with Thoracoplasty Canad M A J 72 368 1955
10 Braun K and Izak G Acute Infection and Cardiac Failure in Chronic Emphysema Am Heart J 49 385 1955
11 Braun K. and Rosenberg S Z. Effects of ACTH on Pulmonary Function in Cor Pulmonale J Allergy 27 149 1956
12. Brenner O Pathology of the Vessels of the Pulmonary Circulation I V Arch Int. Med 56 211 August 457 Sept. 724 Oct. 976 Nov 1189 Dec 1935
13 Brill I C Cor Pulmonale A Semantic Consideration with Brief Notes on Diagnosis and Treatment. Mod Concepts Cardiovas Dis 26(12) 425 1957
14 Burwell C S Robin E D Whaley R. D and Bickelmann A G Extreme Obesity Associated with Alveolar Hypoventilation A Pickwickian Syndrome Am. J Med 21 811 1956
15 Carpenter H M and Pritchard R W Primary Pulmonary Vascular Disease Am. J Clin Path 26 899 1956
16 Carroll D Chronic Obstruction of Major Pulmonary Arteries Am. J Med 9 175 1950
17 Chapman D W Abbott J P and Latson L. Primary Pulmonary Hypertension Circulation 15 35 1957
18 Chapman E M and Graybiel A The Decrease in Functional Capacity of the Lungs and Heart Resulting from Deformities of the Chest Medicine 18 167 1939
19 Chi Kong Liu Cardiac Catheterization in Acquired Lesions of the Heart or Lungs Dis Chest 29 73 1956
20 Coggin C B and Stilson W L. The Heart in Pneumoconiosis Am. Heart J 16 411 (Oct) 1938
21 Cohen H Unheralded Pulmonary Embolism Brit M J Vol 2 #5055 1208 1957
22 Corazza L J and Pastor B H Cardiac Arrhythmias in Chronic Cor Pulmonale New England J Med 259 862 1958
23 Counihan T B Heart Failure Due to Extreme Obesity Brit Heart J 18(3) 425 1956
24 Cournand A Some Aspects of the Pulmonary Circulation in Normal Men and Chronic Cardiopulmonary Diseases Circulation 2 641 1950
25 Cournand A Riley R L. Himmelstein A and Austrian R Pulmonary Circulation and Alveolar Ventilation—Perfusion Relationships after Pneumonectomy J Thoracic Surg 19 80 1950
26 Cugell D W Frank N R Gaensler E A and Badger T L Pulmonary Function in Pregnancy Am Rev Tuberc 67 568 1953
27 Cutforth R H and Oram S The Electrocardiogram in Pulmonary Embolism Brit Heart J 20 41 1958
28 Dack S Present Status of the Treatment of Cor Pulmonale New York J Med 57 74 1957
29 Davison P H and Armitage G H Chronic Cor Pulmonale Due to Silent Pulmonary Embolism Lancet 2 224 1956
30 Denk W Dentralbl f Chir 63 2 (Jan 4) 1936
31 Dexter L Lewis B M Haynes F W Gorlin R and Houssay H E J Chronic Cor Pulmonale without Hypoxia Bull New England M Center 14 69 1952
32 Diffuse Pulmonary Fibrosis Brit M J #5032 1409 1957
33 Dowell J C Fitzpatrick M J Kittle C F and Lin T K Cardiopulmonary Function in Bullous Emphysema Dis Chest 32 162 1957

34 Dresdale D T Schultz M and Michtom R J Primary Pulmonary Hypertension Am J Med 11 686 1951

35 Durant T M Ginsburg I W and Roesler H Transient Bundle Branch Block and Other Electrocardiographic Changes in Pulmonary Embolism Am Heart J 17 423 (Apr) 1939

36 Durant T M Oppenheimer M J Lynch P R Ascanio J and Webber D Body Position in Relation to Venous Air Embolism A Roentgenologic Study Am J M Sc 227 509 1954

37 Estes E H Jr Sieker H O McIntosh H D and Kelser G A Reversible Cardiopulmonary Syndrome with Extreme Obesity Circulation 16 179 1957

38 Evans W Short D S and Bedford, D E Solitary Pulmonary Hypertension. Brit Heart J 19 93 1957

39 Ferrer M I Harvey R M Cathcart R I Webster C A Richards D W Jr and Cournand A Some Effects of Digoxin upon the Heart and Circulation in Man Digoxin in Chronic Cor Pulmonale Circulation 1 161 1950

40 Fineberg M H and Wiggers C J Compensation and Failure of the Right Ventricle Am Heart J 11 255 1936

41 Fischer J W and Dolehide R A Fatal Cardiac Failure in Persons with Thoracic Deformities Arch Int Med 93 687 1954

42 Fishman A P McClement J Himmelstein A Cournand A Effects of Acute Anoxia on the Circulation and Respiration in Patients with Chronic Pulmonary Disease J Clin Invest 31 770 1952.

43 Fishman A P and Richards D W The Management of Cor Pulmonale in Chronic Pulmonary Disease with Particular Reference to the Associated Disturbances in the Pulmonary Circulation Am Heart J 52(1) 149 1956

44 Fitzpatrick M J Kittle C F Lin T K. and Brukardt, D T Prolonged Observations of Patients with Cor Pulmonale and Bullous Emphysema after Surgical Resection Am Rev Tuberc 77 387 1958

45 Fulton R M The Heart in Chronic Pulmonary Disease Quart J Med 46 43 1953

46 Fulton R M Hutchinson E and Jones A M Ventricular Weight in Cardiac Hypertrophy Brit Heart J 14 413 1952

47 Garb S The Current Status of Anticoagulants in the Treatment of Myocardial Infarction Am J M Sc 229 534 1955

48 Gelfand M L The Effect of Chronic Pulmonary Disease on the Heart Am. J Surg 89 245 1955

49 Gelfand M Cor Pulmonale and Cardiopulmonary Schistosomiasis Tr Roy Soc Trop Med & Hyg 51 533 1957

50 Goldberger E Unipolar Lead Electrocardiography Philadelphia Lea and Febiger 1947 Pp 155 156

51 Goodwin J F and Steiner R E Radiologic Appearance of the Lung in Heart Disease Brit J Tuberc 49 253 1955

52 Gouley B A The Evolution of the Parenchymal Lung Lesions in Rheumatic Fever and Their Relationship to Mitral Stenosis and Passive Congestion Am. J M Sc 196 1 1938

53 Gray F D Kyphoscoliosis and Heart Disease J Chronic Dis 4 499 1956

54 Griffith G C Cor Pulmonale Its Diagnosis and Management Dis Chest 29(3) 253 1956

55 Griggs D E Coggin C B and Evans N Right Ventricular Hypertrophy and Congestive Heart Failure in Chronic Pulmonary Disease Am Heart J 17 681 1939

56 Hall P W III Effects of Anoxia on Postarteriolar Pulmonary Vascular Resistance Circ Research 1 238 1953

57 Hanelin J and Eyler W R Pulmonary Artery Thrombosis Roentgen Manifestations Radiology 56 689 1951

58 Harrison C V Experimental Pulmonary Embolism J Path & Bact 63 195 1951

59 Harvey R M Ferrer M I and Cournand A Treatment of Chronic Cor Pulmonale Circulation 7 932 1953

60 Harvey R M Ferrer M I Richards D W Jr and Cournand A Influence of Chronic Pulmonary Disease on the Heart and Circulation. Am. J Med 10 719 1951

61 Heath D Whitaker W and Brown J W Idiopathic Pulmonary Hypertension Brit. Heart J 19 83 1957

62 Holden W D Shaw B D Cameron D B Shea P J Jr and Davis J H Jr Experimental Pulmonary Embolism. Surg Gynec & Obst. 88 23 1949

63 Howarth S McMichael J and Sharpey Schafer E P Effects of Oxygen Venesection and Digitalis in Chronic Heart Failure from Disease of the Lungs Clin. Sc 6 187 1947

64 Hunter W C Sneeden V D Robertson T D and Snyder G A C Thrombosis of the Deep Veins of the Leg Its Clinical Significance as Exemplified in 351 Autopsies Arch Int. Med 68 1 1941

65 Johnson J B Ferrer M I West J R and Cournand A The Relation between Electrocardiographic Evidence of Right Ventricular Hypertrophy and Pulmonary Artery Pressure in Patients with Chronic Pulmonary Disease Circulation 1 536 1950

66 Keating D R Burkey J N Hellerstein H K and Feil H Chronic Massive Thrombosis of Pulmonary Arteries Am J Roentgenol 69 208 1953

67 Kirch E Klin Wchnschr 9 769 (Apr 26) 1930

68 LaDue J S Serum Glutamic Oxaloacetic Transaminase Lactic Dehydrogenase and Glutamic Pyruvic Transaminase Activity in Evaluation of Heart Muscle Damage Am. J Cardiol 1 308 1958

69 Leatham A and Vogelpoel L The Early Systolic Sound in Dilatation of the Pulmonary Artery Brit Heart J 16 21 1954

70 Leopold S S The Etiology of Pulmonary Arteriosclerosis (Ayerza s Syndrome) Am. J M Sc 219 152 1950

71 Lillington G A Anderson M W and Brandenberg R O Cardiorespiratory Dysfunction and Polycythemia in Patients with Extreme Obesity Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin 32 583 1957

72 Lopes De Faria J Cor Pulmonale in Manson s Schistosomiasis Am. J Path 30 167 1954

73 Lopes De Faria J Pulmonary Vascular Changes in Schistomal Cor Pulmonale J Path & Bact 68 589 1954

74 Luchsinger P C Moser K M Buhlmann A and Rossier P H The Interrelationship between Cor Pulmonale Capillary Bed Restriction and Diffusion Insufficiency for Oxygen in the Lung Am Heart J 54 106 1957

75 Lustok M J and Kuzma J F Rheumatic Fever Pneumonitis Ann Int Med 44 337 1956

76 Mack I Harris R and Katz L N Acute Cor Pulmonale in the Absence of Pulmonary Embolism Am Heart J 39 664 1950

77 Mack I and Snider G L Respiratory Insufficiency and Chronic Cor Pulmonale Circulation 13 419 1956

78 McCarthey J S Postoperative Pulmonary Embolism Surgery 17 191 1945

79 McGinn S and White P E Acute Cor Pulmonale Resulting from Pulmonary Embolism J A M A 104 1473 1935

80 McGuire J Scott J C Helm R A Kaplan S Gall E A and Buhl J P Is There an Entity Primary Pulmonary Hypertension? Arch Int Med 99 917 1957

81 (a) McKeown F The Pathology of Pulmonary Heart Disease Brit Heart J 14 25 1952
(b) Megibow R S Katz L N and Feinstein M Kinetics of Respiration in Experimental Pulmonary Embolism Arch Int Med 71 536 1943

82 Michelson N P Pulmonale in the Precordial Leads and a Review of the Mutability of the P Waves in Chronic Cor Pulmonale Dis Chest 29 187 1956

83 Mitchell D A Bronchogenic Carcinoma Simulating Subacute Cor Pulmonale and Mediastinal Syndrome Dis Chest 27 436 1955

84 Moser K M and Shea J G The Relationship between Pulmonary Infarction Cor Pulmonale and the Sickle States Am J Med 22 561 1957

85 Motley H L Cournand A Werko L Himmelstein A and Dresdale D The Influence of Short Periods of Induced Acute Anoxia upon Pulmonary Artery Pressures in Man. Am J Physiol 150 315 1947

86 Mounsey J P D Emphysema Heart Disease Brit. J Tuberc 48 63 1954

87 Mounsey J P D Ritzmann L W and Silverstone N J Cardiographic Studies in Severe Pulmonary Emphysema Brit Heart J 14 442 1952.

88 Muirhead E E and Montgomery P *Thrombo-embolic Pulmonary Arteritis* and Vascular Sclerosis Arch Path 52 505 1954

89 Myers G B Klein H A and Stofer B E The Electrocardiographic Diagnosis of Right Ventricular Hypertrophy Am. Heart J 35 1 1948

90 Nemet G and Rosenblatt M B Cardiac Failure Secondary to Chronic Pulmonary Tuberculosis Am Rev Tuberc 35 718 June 1937

91 Opie L H The Pulmonary Manifestations of Generalized Scleroderma Dis Chest 28 665 1955

92. Oppenheimer M J Durant T M and Lynch P Body Position in Relation to Venous Air Embolism and the Associated Cardiovascular Respiratory Changes Am. J M Sc 225 362 1953

93 Oppenheimer B S and Hitzig W M The Use of Circulatory Measurements in Evaluating Pulmonary and Cardiac Factors in Chronic Lung Disorders Am. Heart J 12 257 1936

94 Oppenzeller D and Benz W V A Rational Approach to the Diagnosis and Treatment of Pulmonary Heart Disease Dis Chest 30 50 1956

95 Oram S Chronic Cor Pulmonale Practitioner 176 272 1956

96 Owen W R Thomas W A Castleman B and Bland E F Unrecognized Emboli to the Lung with Subsequent Cor Pulmonale New England J Med 249 919 1953

97 Petch C P Cor Pulmonale from Recurrent Pulmonary Embolism. Lancet 1 1346 1951

98 *Pou J F and Charr R Thrombosis of Pulmonary Artery Am. Rev Tuberc.* 37 394 1938

99 Price C Hata D and Smith J R Am. J Physiol 182 183 1955

100 Richards D W The Contributions of Right Heart Catheterization to Physiology and Medicine with Some Observations on the Physiopathology of Pulmonary Heart Disease Am. Heart J 54 161 1957

101 Ring A and Bakke J R Chronic Massive Pulmonary Artery Thrombosis Ann. Int Med 43 781 1955

102 Roesler Hugo Clinical Roentgenology of the Cardiovascular System. Springfield Ill Charles C Thomas 1937

103 Rose L and Hoffman D W The Coronary Blood Flow in Pulmonary Emphysema and Cor Pulmonale Circulation Res 4 130 1956

104 Savacool J W and Charr R Thrombosis of Pulmonary Artery Am. Rev Tuberc 44 42 1941

105 Schafer H et al Essential Pulmonary Hypertension A Report of Clinical and Physiologic Studies in Three Patients with Death Following Catheterization of the Heart. Ann Int Med 44 505 1956

106 Schofield G F and Beaird J B Jr Fatal Embolism by Amniotic Fluid in the Lungs Am. J Clin Path. 28(4) 400 1957

107 Schwartz W B Relman A S and Leaf A Oral Administration of a Potent Carbonic Anhydrase Inhibitor (Diamox) III Its Use as a Diuretic in Patients with Severe Congestive Heart Failure Due to Cor Pulmonale Ann Int. Med 42 79 1955

108 Scott, R. S et al The Electrocardiographic Pattern of Right Ventricular Hypertrophy in Chronic Cor Pulmonale Circulation 11 927 1955

109 Scott, R W and Garvin, C F Cor Pulmonale Observations in 50 Autopsy Cases Am Heart J 22 56 1941

110 Shepherd J T Edwards J E Burchell A B Swan H J C and Wood E H Clinical Physiological and Pathological Considerations in Idiopathic Pulmonary Hypertension Brit. Heart J 19 70 1957

111 Sieker H O Estes E H Jr Kelser G A and McIntosh H D A Cardiopulmonary Syndrome Associated with Extreme Obesity J Clin Invest 34 916 1955

112 Smith G and Smith A N The Role of Serotonin in Experimental Pulmonary Embolism Surg Gynec & Obst 101 691 1955

113 Smith K S The Radiology of Pulmonary Infarction Quart J Med 31 84 1938

114 Stone D J Schwartz A Newman W Feltman J A and Lovelock F J Precipitation by Pulmonary Infection of Acute Anoxia Cardiac Failure and Respiratory Acidosis in Chronic Pulmonary Disease Am J Med 14 14 1953

115 Stroud R C and Rahn H Effect of Oxygen and Carbon Dioxide Tensions on Resistance of Pulmonary Vessels Am J Physiol 172 211 1953

116 Taquini A C Roncoroni A J Ara mendio P and Ros A Sensitivity of Respiratory Center to Carbon Dioxide in Emphysema and Cor Pulmonale Effects of Carbonic Anhydrase Inhibition Am Heart J 54 319 1957

117 Taymor R C Mechanism and Use of Diamox in Heart Failure and Cor Pulmonale Am Pract & Digest Treat 6 1332 1955

118 Waltzer L and Frost T T Cor Pulmonale A Consideration of Clinical and Autopsy Findings Dis Chest 26 192 1954

119 Wells A L Cor Pulmonale in Coal Workers Pneumoconiosis Brit Heart J 16 74 1954

120 West T R McClement J H Carroll D Bliss H A Kuschner M Richards D W Jr and Cournand A Effects of ACTH and Cortisone in Cases of Chronic Pulmonary Disease with Impairment of Alveolar Capillary Diffusion Am J Med 10 156 1951

121 White P D Heart Disease 1st ed New York Macmillan Company 1931 p 404

122 White P D and Jones T D Heart Disease and Disorders in New England Am Heart J 3 302 1928

123 Wilson F N Rosenbaum F F and Johnston F D Interpretation of the Ventricular Complex of the Electrocardiogram Advances Int Med 2 1 1947

124 Wolff Louis Pulmonary Embolism Circulation 6 768 1952

125 Wood P Pulmonary Embolication Diagnosis by Chest Lead Electrocardiography Brit Heart J 3 21 1941

126 Woods J E Pulmonocardiac Failure Due to Thoracic Deformities North Carolina M J 17 504 1956

127 Zuckermann R Cabrera E Fishleder B L and Sodi Pallares D The Electrocardiogram in Chronic Cor Pulmonale Am Heart J 35 421 1948

HUGO ROESLER M D
AND
JACOB ZATUCHNI M D

15

Cardiac Hypertrophy and Dilatation

Introduction Hypertrophy and dilatation of the heart are commonly present in primary diseases of the cardiovascular system They also occur in systemic diseases many of which are known and understood moderately well while others that are undoubtedly a factor in their causation have not yet been discovered On the other hand it should be emphasized that the presence of a heart of normal size and shape does not exclude heart disease

Methods for estimating the size of the heart during life are necessarily indirect and depend principally upon muscle mass force of contraction and blood content Since the size of the normal heart has a wide range of variation a considerable increase must occur before enlargement is appreciated clinically or radiologically [1]

The use of enlargement is preferable to that of hypertrophy or dilatation' because the determination of these components of enlargement is very uncertain Moreover an element of both is almost always present The recognition of dilatation during life is usually retrospective and presumptive [3] Although the volume of residual blood in the right ventricular cavity may be determined approximately by special technics [4] it has only a crude correlation with the total capacity of the heart Angiocardiography is useful in determining intracardiac volume and thickness of heart wall [5]

The lay individual is fearful of the diagnosis of enlargement as an indication of an incurable condition leading sooner or later to death The practitioner is likely to diagnose enlargement as a disease *per se* Of course it is not the enlargement which is injurious but that which is responsible for the enlargement A full understanding of cardiac enlargement of its functional and prognostic evaluation and of its proper treatment demands knowledge of the conditions that produce it and of the rate at which they act [6]

Anatomy and Pathology The size of the heart at autopsy is usually determined by measuring various diameters the thickness of the myocardium and by weighing Important factors which must be considered in an analysis of heart weight are body weight and length sex and nourishment Tables are available in which these are correlated in normal individuals [7,8,9]

The heart weighs approximately 300 grams in the normal adult male and approximately 250 grams in the normal adult female[9] Some prefer to relate the weights of the body and the heart, feeling that the whole must be related to any of its parts At birth the heart weight averages 0 62 per cent of the body weight in males and 0 45 per cent in females In adults it is approximately 0 55 per cent in males and 0 53 per cent in females[10] Smaller percentages, such as 0 43 per cent in males and 0 40 per cent in females have been reported,[7] but it has been suggested that these may be too low, inasmuch as the data were obtained from individuals with emaciating diseases and body weight at death was not considered[11] Greenwood and Brown[12] found that the weight of the heart is approximately 0 575 per cent of the weight of the body Zeek[8] preferred correlation of heart weight with body length rather than body weight because height is a much more stable factor in body build and is much less influenced by disease In the normal male the heart weight, in grams is 1 9 body length (in centimeters) — 2 1 ± 40, and in females, 1 78 body length — 21 58 ± 30 Various diameters of the heart at autopsy may be measured, such as the distance from the base to the apex or from one border to another[13] These are necessarily crude and the range of normal variation is considerable For the recognition of hypertrophy the thickness of the myocardium is measured Such measurements should not include the other linings of the heart, or the papillary muscles or the columnae carneae The thickness of the myocardium of the outer wall of the left ventricle midway between the apex and the mitral valve is 10 to 12 millimeters and that of the right ventricle midway between the apex and the tricuspid valve is 3 to 4 millimeters[14] The actual measurement should be accompanied by a statement describing the gross and microscopic appearance of the myocardium

Hypertrophy refers to an inherent enlargement of the muscle fiber and not to an increase in size due to edema fibrosis fat amyloid or glycogen The myocardium of the hypertrophied heart is usually firm beefy and thickened The papillary muscles and the columnae carneae are prominent The endocardium may be opaque There is an increase in size of the muscle fibers both in transverse and long diameters The nuclei are enlarged and may be distorted and hyperchromatic The normal ratio of one capillary per muscle fiber is preserved There may be inflammatory and degenerative changes or fibrosis that may or may not be related to the hypertrophy

Dilatation denotes an enlarged capacity of the cardiac chambers A dilated heart is usually flabby in consistency The valve orifices may be widened and the intracavitary muscle bundles flattened The intercalated disks of the muscle fibers particularly those near the endocardium may be increased Various types of degenerative changes depending upon the underlying cause may be observed

More objective methods for the diagnosis of dilatation are desirable The capacity of the heart has been measured by filling the heart with liquid under pressure or with melted wax Another method consists of determining the volume of the myocardial mass by the principle of dis

placement or by dividing the weight of the myocardial mass by the specific gravity of the myocardium that has been estimated to be 1 03 The capacity of the heart could then be derived from a consideration of the heart volume estimated from roentgenographic measurements and the myocardial volume[3]

The term *tonogenous dilatation* refers to a compensatory dilatation of the healthy heart muscle because of an increased resistance to outflow of blood It begins in the outflow tract of a ventricle which is below the aortic orifice in the left ventricle and in the pulmonary conus in the right ventricle and progresses against the direction of the blood stream down to the apex Subsequently and slowly the inflow tract is involved again in a direction opposite to that of the blood flow so that the dilatation finally reaches the respective A V rings Elongation of the heart prevails over widening *Myogenous dilatation* refers to dilatation closely associated with impaired contractility of the damaged myocardium It involves simultaneously all parts of the ventricle in question quite uniformly and the result is a predominance of widening over elongation

The Nature of Cardiac Enlargement Why the heart enlarges is unknown A stimulus for enlargement is frequently a demand for an increased cardiac output or an obstruction to blood flow either within the heart or in the peripheral circulation Under such circumstances it is believed by some that the heart enlarges because more work is required Others believe that enlargement is a consequence of a diminished blood supply or of tissue injury Most investigators believe that it is related to a stretching of the muscle fibers resulting in a larger surface area for greater nutritive diffusion[3] Any muscle will increase in size if perfused with more blood But the ratio of one capillary per muscle fiber does not change with increased size of the fiber Moreover since the basis of this theory rests upon Starling s law of the heart it is pertinent to be reminded that the validity of this law depends upon equal degrees of myocardial responsiveness[15] Hypertrophied hearts are uniform only in the sense of being enlarged hearts but not in the degree of enlargement cardiac output work capacity or efficiency

Our preoccupation with heart failure and the knowledge of its almost universal association with increased heart size has resulted in undue emphasis of mechanical factors alone Catheterization studies have demonstrated that cardiac enlargement may exist without change in cardiohemodynamics[16] Moreover experimental and clinical cardiac hypertrophy due to such non mechanical factors as infection avitaminoses and endocrinopathy and others are well known[17,18] There is therefore an increasing tendency to consider primarily the metabolism of the heart and in the future the influence of mechanical factors will have to be interpreted upon the basis of biochemical changes including energy production and utilization[19]

The enlarged heart is not necessarily a poorly functioning heart Most individuals with increased heart size have normal effort tolerance It is well known that individuals with valvular disease such as aortic regurgitation, may experience steadily increasing heart size without symptoms

or limitations Usually, it is the physician who imposes the limitations Whether or not these restrictions are beneficial in the absence of heart failure is not established They are based upon the assumption that there is a limit to cardiac hypertrophy and that any increase beyond this limit will result in cardiac decompensation This hypothesis presupposes the existence of not only an absolute limit of hypertrophy but also that hypertrophy alone is present It has been stated that hypertrophy is at a maximum when all of the muscle fibers are enlarged and uniform in size Recent studies, however suggest that even in the largest hearts no such uniformity exists and that even if the single muscle fiber has reached a maximum limit, daughter fibers arise and subsequently increase in size[14] The heart is structurally and chemically prepared for marked increases in size

Enlargement of the heart does not mean hypertrophy alone There is probably always an associated dilatation It has been suggested that dilatation is dominant early in those with valvular defects and hypertrophy in those with hypertensive or coronary artery disease[3]

Enlargement of the heart is, of course reversible However when the heart decreases in size after it has been enlarged the assumption is that dilatation or pseudohypertrophy due to edema or other causes was present and not true hypertrophy A priori it is felt that true cardiac hypertrophy is irreversible Experimentally however there is evidence that suggests the reversibility of cardiac hypertrophy[20] Furthermore, it can be cited that skeletal muscle appears to decrease in size after abstinence from exercise and it is not clear why cardiac muscle should respond differently If the heart enlarges in size and remains enlarged in spite of removal of known causative factors one can assume the presence of underlying myocardial disease either pre existing and unrecognized or consequent to the enlargement

It is almost needless to point out that two or more etiologic factors may be responsible for *cardiac enlargement* To cite only a few examples In eighty per cent of the patients with coronary thrombosis and cardiac enlargement other diseases such as hypertension and heart failure may account for the enlargement Similarly, thyrotoxicosis or anemia may be associated with cardiac enlargement but other diseases affecting the heart are usually present[1]

Enlargement may affect the chambers of the heart unequally In respect to the left ventricle the following conditions may be mentioned Hypertension (of any etiology, including acute and chronic glomerulonephritis *and coarctation of the aorta)* aortic regurgitation, mitral regurgitation aortic stenosis coronary artery sclerosis aneurysm of the wall The right ventricle is involved predominantly in the presence of mitral stenosis in the late stages of congestive failure from almost any cause *occasionally in the presence of systemic hypertension* without failure, chronic disease of the pulmonary parenchyma such as emphysema obstructive disease in the lesser circulation (sclerosis endarteritis chronic embolization), tricuspid regurgitation interatrial septal defect pulmonic regurgitation or stenosis B avitaminosis The left atrium is particularly

enlarged in the presence of mitral valvular disease and this especially the case when the disease results from fibrosis of the wall following rheumatic myocarditis but is also observed with failure of the left ventricle while for the right atrium mention should be made of right ventricular failure tricuspid regurgitation or stenosis and interatrial septal defect It should be stated that the degree of enlargement in the presence of valvular lesions does not always seem to be closely correlated with the apparent extra load [21]

The principal direction of expansion of the different heart cavities is as follows Left ventricle dorsad and to the left, but also to the right and ventrad right ventricle to the left and ventrad but also dorsad left atrium dorsad right atrium to the right and ventrad

The more generalized form of enlargement is noted with a number of conditions some common and some rare *viz* combined valvular lesions advanced stages of congestive failure of different etiology myocardial lesions in the course of rheumatic fever diphtheria grippe and typhoid Fiedler s type of myocarditis acromegaly and severe and prolonged anemia [22] In this connection it is proper to state that all myocardial lesions of toxic infectious endocrine or nutritive origin may lead but not necessarily, to cardiac enlargement Among other causes may be men tioned arteriovenous fistula marked bradycardia glycogen storage dis ease rhabdomyomatosis, hemochromatosis with infantilism transposition of the great arterial vessels common arterial trunk origin of one or both coronary arteries from the pulmonary artery bilocular and trilocular heart [23]

Prolonged and strenuous physical activity carried on as endurance tests (skiing rowing cycling long distance swimming and running) may but need not bring about a slight degree of enlargement which should be looked upon as a physiological process of adaptation [24, 25]

Enlargement of a few special types is reversible and thus will be men tioned under TREATMENT

Although a rapid change in heart size is more likely to be seen in the *young than in the old it is related more to the nature of the underlying* disease rather than the age of the individual Clinically recognizable en largement may occur one week after the onset of acute rheumatic fever or acute glomerulonephritis Hypertrophy requires at least three to six weeks for its development and this will take place in a case with rheu matic infection and developing valvular lesion in spite of complete bed rest

The rate and degree of development of enlargement depends primarily upon the severity and localization of the disease The more marked for instance the toxic damage the greater will be the cardiac enlargement A second factor which contributes to cardiac enlargement is physical over exertion while the process is still active Enlargement as a rule is not steadily progressive It is likely to remain fixed in its degree for months and years [21]

Acute dilatation of the heart is undoubtedly a rare condition Severe toxic damage such as noted in the presence of diphtheritic infection is per

haps the best instance The right heart may dilate subsequent to pulmonary embolism Contrary to common belief, general enlargement does not follow subsequent to an attack of coronary thrombosis This remark does not apply to the development of an aneurysm which takes the form either of a localized bulge or if located in the apical portion, simply



FIGURE 1 Orthodiagrams of a normal heart as drawn in the anterior and left lateral views (reduced to one fourth actual size) The three main diameters are indicated by solid lines Anterior view The oblique diameter —L— connects the cardiovascular junction at the right with the farthermost point at the left lower pole The broad diameter —B— represents the sum of the lengths of two perpendiculars dropped to the line of the oblique diameter Lateral view The depth diameter—T_D —is the sum of lengths of two perpendiculars dropped to a line which connects the region of the bifurcation of the trachea with the sternodiaphragmatic angle As average figures for a male L 13 6 cm B 10 cm T_D —9 3 cm have been chosen

The volumetric cardiac value is obtained by forming a product of these three figures times a constant 0 45 (formula of Benedetti and Bollini) The value thus obtained approaches the actual volume of the heart (as expressed in cc) In this instance it is 569 This formula has been checked by actual volumetric reconstruction and submersion of the model in water The error for normal hearts was shown to be between −8 per cent and +8 per cent and for diseased hearts between −10 per cent and +15 per cent

causes an elongation of the heart This may occur within a week following the infarct

A healthy heart may dilate suddenly This is clearly noted in fluoroscopy during the pause following a premature ventricular beat, likewise when the breath is held the glottis closed and a strong effort is made to inspire Strenuous exertion never causes abnormal dilatation of a healthy heart Paroxysmal rapid heart action may be followed by dilatation but only in connection with the development of congestive failure Care should be taken not to confuse acute dilatation of the heart with collection of fluid in the pericardial cavity Another diagnostic error occurs in thinking of an acute dilatation when actually vasomotor collapse is present

Symptoms There are no symptoms of cardiac enlargement Although palpitations or forceful beating of the chest wall may be experienced these symptoms are more frequently present in those without heart disease The development of symptoms depends upon associated disturbances and the functional capacity of the enlarged heart

Diagnosis Enlargement of the heart in the living is studied in both its static and dynamic features by x rays and by inspection and palpation of the chest wall Percussion is to be carried out but should be controlled by radiological methods whenever possible The electrocardiographic study is of limited value for the diagnosis of enlargement *per se* but is very useful for complicating features

Radiology *Fluoroscopy* is the method of choice A good dark adaptation of the retina is a prerequisite The oblique views must be studied in



FIGURE 2 Male age twenty five Old rheumatic heart with aortic stenosis and regurgitation questionable mitral regurgitation marked degree of cardiac enlargement to left and sinus rhythm. Moderate degree of functional impairment Roentgenogram reveals a fairly well marked aortic configuration with prominence of left ventricular area Lung fields are of normal appearance Calcification of aortic valves could be demonstrated by means of special technic

addition to the anterior view The screen image as obtained by fluoroscopy represents of course a considerable magnification of the object size This is overcome by taking an orthodiagraphic tracing The film image as obtained by a teleroentgenogram at a distance of six feet shows a magnification of nearly ten per cent The absolute heart size is best determined by a computation formula

Using the metric system a product is formed from the oblique and broad diameter (anterior view) and oblique depth diameter (lateral view) and this is multiplied by 0 45 The value thus obtained expresses approximately the heart volume in cubic centimeters The medium value for healthy males is 569 2 and for the healthy female 422 6 with a standard deviation of 85 4 and 64 1 respectively A simple and practical procedure is to rotate the sheet on which the orthodiagraphic silhouette is drawn by approximately 180 so that the base of the heart is pointing down and place the patient s clenched right fist over the silhouette These outlines will nearly coincide under normal conditions It should be realized that the correlation coefficient between the size of the silhouette

and external measurements (weight transverse diameter of the chest etc.) is too low to have great statistical significance Standards for the various diameters of the cardiac silhouette that has been obtained by either orthodiagraphy or teleroentgenography and based upon height and weight are available These values are to be used with the reservation that they are neither rigid nor absolute for although a heart is probably enlarged if the diameters deviate more than fifteen per cent from the predicted values approximately three per cent of normals may fall into this category If measurement is attempted for the anterior view only the frontal plane area determined by either planigraphy or the product of the long and broad diameters and a constant (0 735) offers the least variation and is the preferred method for measuring cardiac size It should be correlated with the transverse diameter of the thorax and the deviation of this value from the normal should be estimated But again there is an appreciable overlap with the abnormal and a definite conclusion as to the presence of slight or moderate enlargement of the heart based upon this determination may be unwarranted Of course the larger the heart the more reliable the measurements in detecting cardiac enlargement But with larger hearts clinical accuracy is also increased and the need for elaborate studies may be unnecessary The best field of usefulness of these cardiac measurements is in repeated studies of the same individual Granted that these are made under comparable conditions particularly in regard to respiratory and cardiac phases the resulting information far exceeds that obtained by any other method

In the anterior view an enlargement to the left and caudad associated with a well preserved or lowered waistline of the left middle contour indicates left ventricular enlargement Care should be taken not to include in delineation and measurement the shadow which is caused by the extra pericardial, subpleural fat pad The waistline will, however, be straightened out if a secondary right ventricular enlargement sets in An enlargement to the left and cranial leading to a prominence of the so called pulmonary segment may be seen in enlargement of the pulmonary artery left atrium or its appendage and right ventricle An enlargement to the right should be attributed as a rule to the right atrium and only exceptionally to the right ventricle Occasionally an aneurysmal distention of the left atrium accounts for it In the right anterior oblique view, a convex bulge in front should be attributed to the pulmonary artery or to the right ventricle and in this view the conus enlargement is particularly well noted Dorsally the mediastinum may be encroached upon by the left atrium and visualization of the barium filled esophagus gives valuable information In the left anterior oblique view the right ventricle is seen to expand ventrad the left ventricle dorsad and caudad the left atrium dorsad and craniad In the latter case, the left bronchus is displaced and sometimes considerably narrowed

The commonest cause of right ventricular hypertrophy is left ventricular hypertrophy [26] The roentgenologic diagnosis of hypertrophy of either ventricle in the presence of hypertrophy of the other is very difficult and frequently impossible Usually the clinical problem is clear and only roentgenographic confirmation of an enlarged heart with left ventricular preponderance is desired But in this era of cardiac surgery our diagnosis must be more definitive For instance at present the demonstration of

significant left ventricular enlargement in an individual with mitral stenosis contraindicates mitral commissurotomy Unfortunately, the radiologist does not have any satisfactory criteria as yet for distinguishing left ventricular enlargement in the presence of marked right ventricular enlargement Caudad displacement of the apex in the anterior view and increased curvature of convexity posteriorly in the left anterior oblique view may be helpful in recognizing left ventricular enlargement Radio



FIGURE 3 Female age eighteen Chronic nephritis following scarlet fever five years ago B P 180/110 Anemia (R B C 1 46 mill Hb 35 per cent) Roentgenogram anterior view The silhouette is markedly enlarged and of a globular shape A moderate degree of pulmonary congestion is present. Postmortem Hypertrophy and dilatation of the heart weight 540 grams Coronary arteries negative Chronic glomerulonephritis

cardiography a method for determining the cardiac circulation of injected radioactive substances may offer a means for the differentiation of right and left ventricular enlargement s

During fluoroscopy one can observe unusual intracardiac or border pulsations -9 The demonstration of valvular calcification suggests the presence of an obstructive valvular lesion as a cause for chamber enlargement A systolic outward pulsation of the region of the left atrium and auricular appendage would suggest the presence of mitral insufficiency Paradoxical or limited pulsations of the left ventricular border may confirm the presence of an underlying ventricular aneurysm or recent myocardial infarction

With angiocardiography detection becomes possible of shunts obstructions and pericardial effusion Also myocardial hypertrophy may be suggested by increased widening of the area between the heart border and the injected dye or by bulging of the interventricular septum away from the affected side and dilatation by visualization of chamber capacity

An understanding of the underlying pathology is enhanced by studying the size and shape of the aorta and of the pulmonary artery and its branches The early recognition of left heart failure depends upon the roentgen demonstration of pulmonary congestion also, the shadow of the azygos vein may be prominent [30] Displacement of the heart may clinically be mistaken for enlargement and the radiological method reveals almost at one glance the presence and degree of causative factors such as pleural effusion pneumothorax fibrotic shrinking or collapse of the lung abnormal position of the diaphragm or chest deformity Augmented heart action is another cause for overestimation of heart size by clinical means Finally, radiology may assist in differentiating cardiac enlargement and pericardial effusion

Percussion and Auscultation With percussion, an attempt is made to determine roughly the portion of the chest wall that overlies the heart It is a subjective rather crude method which in the hands of the average physician yields inaccurate results Since the right heart chambers are in close proximity to the ventral chest wall, one will obtain more reliable results so far as the right heart is concerned as compared with the left heart chambers The bulk of the latter are dorsally located and hence poorly available to percussion The commonest error encountered is finding the left contour too far to the left and too far craniad Results are particularly poor in emphysematous and stout individuals An attempt should be made to determine the position and shape of the left upper portion of the contour the so called ' waistline of the heart " If this waistline is preserved one will find only the slightest degree of dulness in the third left intercostal space A marked degree of dulness indicates that the waistline has gone *i e* there is an enlargement of the pulmonary segment Dulness may extend from 2 to 8 cm towards the left of the left sternal border in the third intercostal space An increased flatness on percussion over the lower third of the sternum craniad to the upper border of liver dulness indicates an enlargement of the inflow tract of the right ventricle The latter finding is particularly noted in patients who have had failure in the past A marked degree of flatness on percussion along the sternum starting as high as the level of the second intercostal space and associated with a marked extension of the cardiac dulness to the left particularly in the third intercostal space speaks in favor of a pericardial effusion The left lower heart border should be percussed if the cardiac impulse is ill defined or not available Percussion of the right heart border and determination of the location of the trachea helps to decide as to whether or not the heart is displaced

There are no auscultatory signs of cardiac enlargement The intensity of heart sounds is not related to heart size but is dependent upon various other factors mainly atrio ventricular conduction time stroke output and intracardiac tension An apical systolic murmur due to cardiac enlargement may be present Usually, it is similar to the so called innocent murmur faint in intensity and blowing in quality, and if due to the enlargement, should disappear or lessen in intensity with decrease in heart size If the murmur is of greater intensity or is harsh or musical consideration should be given to the possibility of associated valvular defects

Inspection and Palpation Cardiac enlargement is manifested by a change in character or location of cardiac pulsations upon the chest wall Clinically the best indicator of heart size is the location of the apex impulse Every effort should be made to ascertain its presence and location Not infrequently, it is present only when the patient is erect leaning forward and in

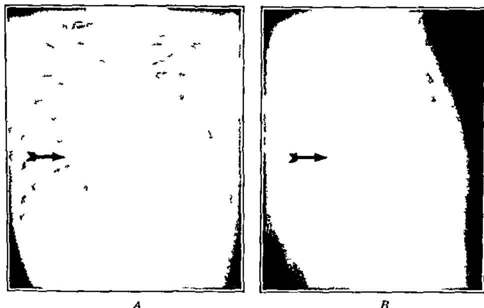


FIGURE 4 *A* and *B*—Male age nineteen Old rheumatic heart Mitral valvular lesion marked degree of cardiac enlargement auricular fibrillation good compensation In the course of upper respiratory infections partial atelectasis of the left lower lobe developed on two occasions simulating pneumonic consolidation

Roentgenograms *A* Anterior view Cardiac enlargement and general mitral configuration is noted The enlarged aneurysmal left atrium bulges into the right lung field (arrow) *B* Right lateral view Note displacement of esophagus (arrow)

deep expiration Occasionally it may be present only in the recumbent position A helpful guide is to locate its presence in the left lateral decubitus position and then to follow it medially as the patient rotates into the supine position Occasionally, the apex impulse is missed because the physician examines only its anticipated location in the region of the left midclavicular line The apex impulse is the most lateral and caudal point where a distinct thrust of the chest wall is felt [31] With normal sized hearts the point of maximal impulse will coincide with the apex impulse but with enlarged hearts the point of maximal impulse may be 1 centimeter medial to the apex impulse In normal adults it is in the left fifth intercostal space Rarely is it above or below this intercostal space The respective intercostal space can be conveniently located by determining first the position of the junction of the manubrium and the body of the sternum the so called sternal angle or angle of Louis This prominence is on a level with the second rib The second intercostal space is directly below the second rib If the hand is now placed obliquely so that the fingers are in successive intercostal spaces beginning with the second each intercostal space can

be easily and properly numbered Improper numbering of the intercostal spaces is a very frequent error The apex impulse is 6 0 to 9 2 centimeters from the midsternal line with the patient in the erect position and slightly more in the recumbent position It may vary from 5 0 to 14 0 centimeters from the midsternal line The apex impulse will correspond to the ortho



C

FIGURE 4 C—Left anterior oblique view of case shown in Fig 4 Note displacement and narrowing of left bronchus (arrow)

diagraphic apex of the heart in about forty per cent of cases In the others, it will correspond to the left border of the heart or it will be 1 or 2 centimeters medial or lateral to the orthodiagraphic apex In adults it is visible in not more than one fifth of all cases and it is rather uncommon to palpate it in the recumbent position of the middle aged or elderly person if well defined and at this age the presence of hypertrophy should be suspected Position and quality of the apical thrust may lead the examiner to erroneously assume the presence of some cardiac enlargement where there is none Such an obtrusive apex beat slightly outside of the nipple line is noted particularly in children when there is some right convex scoliosis of the spine in boys during the rapid growth period of puberty, and in association with augmented heart action as noted in the presence of thyrotoxicosis The apical thrust may be neither felt nor seen in the obese and emphysematous and is poorly palpable and shows a systolic retraction in the presence of mitral stenosis where hypertrophy and dilatation of the right ventricle push the left ventricle away from the ventral chest wall Tricuspid regurgitation has the same effect Only in exceptional instances of excessive enlargement of the right ventricle and of the right atrium pushing the left ventricle to the left such as is noted in instances of an interatrial septal defect will a heaving apical thrust be observed as

a part of a diffuse systolic bulge of the precordium The apical thrust is feeble or not palpable in the presence of dilatation without hypertrophy with fluid in the pericardial or left pleural cavity with edema of the chest wall and is usually absent in constrictive adhesive pericardial disease Hypertrophy of the left ventricle causes a characteristic heaving resistant apical thrust Dilatation superimposed on hypertrophy favors the development of a forceful apical thrust because the left ventricle is then in closer contact with the chest wall It is often noted that a fully compensated aortic stenosis or hypertension with marked hypertrophy does not reveal the presence of an apical thrust until dilatation supervenes A very broad apical thrust indicates a marked degree of dilatation (unless a narrow chest and thin chest wall are responsible for it) This in turn signifies the inability of the heart to completely discharge its contents Such a finding is therefore an unfavorable sign The heaving and resistant quality of the apical thrust may be lost when failure sets in as expressed for instance by the appearance of gallop rhythm

A careful study of the chest wall movement in heart diseases[32] gives valuable information as to the underlying dynamics *Systolic Propulsion* (Quicker and More Marked Than the Diastolic Depression Which Follows)—A large systolic bulge of the wall chest which is most marked half way between the left midclavicular line and the sternal border palpable and often visible is found predominantly in patients with advanced mitral stenosis Here the right ventricle is enlarged and during systole the depth diameter of the heart is increased with the enlarged left atrium pressing the heart ventrad and thus furthering the development of the systolic bulge Associated with this propulsion over the midportion of the chest is a flattening out of the lateral areas for obviously if in a tense elastic system a deformity is set up in one area it will affect the entire system

A ventricular aneurysm arising as a rule from the left ventricle (usually following an anterior cardiac infarct) often gives rise to a cardiac thrust which is sometimes large and forceful in character It is most commonly located at the level of the fifth left rib and depending upon its seat pulsations are situated lateral or medial to the midclavicular line and may approach the left sternal border Pulsations caused by a ventricular aneurysm should be differentiated from those caused by right ventricular hypertrophy and dilatation in association with left atrial enlargement The former is more circumscribed and further laterad the latter is localized and more mediad and its extension is more lengthwise *i e* along the sternum The diagnosis of cardiac aneurysm is made more difficult in the presence of hypertension or mitral and aortic valvular lesions for these conditions *per se* are responsible for a forceful cardiac thrust Location of the pulsations in the fourth intercostal space within the left midclavicular line is definitely in favor of the aneurysmal origin of the pulsations Furthermore supporting evidence is obtained from the history and electrocardiographic findings indicating a preceding infarction Conclusive evidence is given by observing the development of such a pulsation subsequent to cardiac infarction A strong propulsion of the left chest wall to the left and ventrad is caused by forceful action of an enlarged left ventricle while on

the right side there is commonly associated a simultaneous flattening of the ribs Occasionally in the presence of aortic regurgitation or hypertension there may be noticed a jerky systolic shift of the entire chest to the left

A primary systolic propulsion on the right side of the chest wall with the maximum of pulsation as a rule, found in the right midclavicular line between the fourth and sixth rib is noted in the presence of a high grade mitral regurgitation associated with an aneurysmal enlargement of the left atrium The mechanism is one of impact of the blood regurgitating into the left atrium which in turn, approaches the chest wall A forceful systolic propulsion of the right caudal portion of the chest wall is noted in the presence of tricuspid regurgitation where the back flow of blood suddenly enlarges the liver and this in turn, is transmitted to the chest wall In both foregoing conditions a jerky shift of the entire chest to the right may be noted

Systolic Depression (Quicker and More Marked Than the Diastolic Propulsion Which Follows)—Such a depression is noted if the cardiac volume shows a sudden and abnormally great diminution during systole and when simultaneously an abnormally large amount of blood flows out of the thoracic cavity This is exemplified by cases revealing a high degree of aortic regurgitation although this is not a constant finding because the systolic change in the shape of the heart acts as an opposing force and in the presence of tricuspid regurgitation The more rapidly this outflow of blood takes place from the thoracic cavity the less will the inflow of air and venous blood be able to keep pace with and counteract the considerable fall in the systolic intrathoracic pressure Likewise, the increase in the marginal excursions of the ventricle exerts an aspiratory effect on the chest wall The systolic depression is of course followed by a ventrally directed diastolic movement which is rather slow If systolic depression exists it will disappear when cardiac failure with congestion sets in this is because of the diminution in the stroke volume

Depressions are also noted if there is interference with the function of the pulmonary cushion, for it is obvious that the chest wall must follow the centripetal movement of the heart if the lung does not quickly take up this space left vacant by the heart and the chest wall A rapid expansion of the lung parenchyma may be interfered with by pleural adhesion by atelectasis which is not uncommon in the immediate vicinity of an enlarged heart or because of a powerful apical thrust Localized soft tissue depressions are thus observed mesiad to the apical thrust in left ventricular hyperthrophy and dilatation and laterad in right ventricular hypertrophy and dilatation

Diastolic Propulsion (Quicker and More Marked Than the Accompanying Systolic Depression Which Either Precedes or Follows) This is noted in instances of chronic pericardial disease In adhesive pericardial disease the following points are worthy of consideration First the inhibition of the systolic change in shape of the heart due to internal adhesions interfering with the normal propulsive forces—particularly of the apical thrust hence the effect of the systolic diminution

is altered by the presence of adhesions The longitudinal shortening of the ventricular cone is interfered with and therefore a compensatory increase in the marginal movements of the heart results Actually such cases reveal during fluoroscopy a remarkably large amplitude An aspiratory force on the chest wall therefore makes its appearance Third the aspiratory effect on the anterior chest wall is enhanced by the common association of pleural obliteration which inhibits the lung parenchyma from acting as a buffer Since the systolic change in the shape of the heart is interfered with the centrifugal impulse due to the diastolic filling of the ventricles acts unrestrictedly on the chest wall The resulting diastolic propulsion is directed mainly to the left and ventrad and is quite forceful while the systolic depression is often less impressive But exceptions occur In the presence of an obliteration of the pericardial cavity with external fixations to the inner chest wall providing the heart muscle functions well, ventricular systole deforms the left chest wall which is followed by an elastic rebound during diastole This forces the heart into a passive expansion and is associated with a reduplication of the second sound

The second cause of diastolic propulsion is tricuspid regurgitation here the right ventricle empties its blood not only into the lungs and liver but also the influx of venous blood is counteracted Hence the diminution in volume leads to a systolic depression but the subsequent filling of the right heart causes a ventral and diastolic propulsion which is quicker and more abrupt than the preceding depression It should be emphasized that the diastolic propulsion is often not recognized and is erroneously ascribed to systolic action of the heart on the chest wall Such an error in timing should not occur and is easily avoided by placing one hand over the chest and palpating the radial pulse with two fingers of the other hand

Electrocardiographic Criteria for the Recognition of Cardiac Enlargement Atrial enlargement is characterized by changes in the amplitude and direction of the P vector In right atrial enlargement the P vector rotates to the right of its usual position at sixty degrees resulting in a small or iso electric P wave in lead I and a large P wave in leads II and III The P wave is sharply peaked and usually greater than 2 5 mm in amplitude The resulting pattern is sometimes referred to as the P pulmonale pattern It may be transient as in acute heart failure or permanent as in atrial septal defects Similar P wave changes usually not of such amplitude may be seen in normal individuals particularly those with hearts of a vertical electrical position In left atrial enlargement the P vector is rotated to the left of its usual position resulting in a smaller P wave in lead III and a larger P wave in lead I The P wave is usually prolonged in duration increased in amplitude and notched Such a pattern is referred to as the P mitrale pattern because it is present most frequently in those with mitral stenosis Similar P waves may be seen in normal individuals or in those with heart disease other than mitral stenosis Changes in repolarization may be manifested by a shift of the T_p segment in a direction opposite to the P wave Usually this shift of the T_p segment is masked by a super imposition of the ventricular complex

Electrocardiographic manifestations of left ventricular enlargement include the following (1) Increased amplitude of the QRS complexes (2) delay in the intrinsicoid deflection of the QRS complex in leads facing the epicardial surface of the left ventricle, (3) deviation of the S T segment in a direction *opposite to that of the QRS complex and (4) decreased volt*

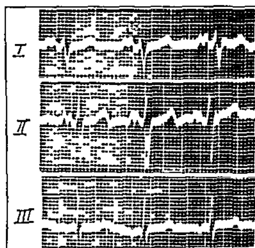


FIGURE 5 Female age thirty nine Old rheumatic heart with mitral stenosis considerable cardiac enlargement and sinus rhythm which persisted up to death This took place two years later and was due to bronchopneumonia and pulmonary infarct (anatomic verification) Electrocardiogram reveals sinus rhythm there is present widening and notching of the P deflection in leads I and II and a marked degree of right axis deviation is noted (initial deflection is down in lead I and up in lead III)

age of the T waves [33 34 35] The S T segment if depressed is convex upwards and the T wave if inverted has asymmetrical limbs The most frequent abnormality is a depression of the S T segment in leads V_4 to V_6 Increased voltage of the R wave may occur in less than fifty per cent of tracings This percentage may be increased slightly if the sum of the voltage of the R wave in leads V_5 or V_6 and the S wave in lead V_1 is considered *There is frequently no delay in the intrinsicoid deflection* that is measured from the onset of the QRS complex to the peak of the final R wave The duration of the QRS complex may be prolonged to 0 12 second or longer resulting in confusion with the diagnosis of left bundle branch block On the other hand left bundle branch block is associated frequently with cardiac enlargement Indeed some feel that the pattern of bundle branch block in the presence of left ventricular enlargement may be due, not to disturbance in the bundles but to delay in conduction throughout the hypertrophied ventricle and prefer to use the term 'left ventricular retardation' [6] By means of vectorcardiography, left bundle branch block may be distinguished from left ventricular hypertrophy [37]

The electrical position of the heart in left ventricular hypertrophy is usually semi horizontal rarely vertical The QRS vector rotates leftwards upwards and posteriorly The time honored reason given for this shift has been rotation of the heart around its long axis, so that the left ventricle

lies more posteriorly than usual. Recently evidence challenging this concept has been advanced.[38] It has been suggested that the normal lie of the heart is unchanged in hypertrophied hearts and that the shift of the QRS vector occurs principally because of delay in depolarization of the epicar-

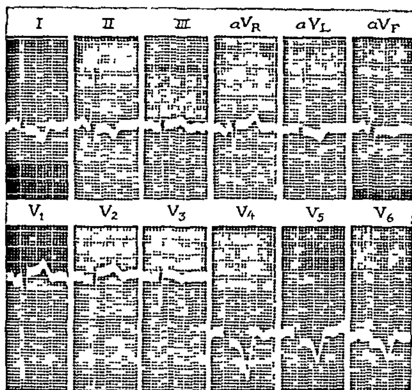


FIGURE 6. Characteristic electrocardiogram of left ventricular hypertrophy. The *tracing was obtained in a fifty six year white female who had hypertension for* ten years. Fundoscopy revealed a grade III retinopathy. Renal function was moderately impaired. The heart was enlarged to the left. There was no evidence of decompensation. Fourteen months after the tracing was obtained this individual died of renal failure. At autopsy the heart weighed 415 grams and the wall of the left ventricle was 3.5 centimeters thick. The coronary arteries were patent but showed moderate patchy atherosclerosis. The kidneys were atrophic and showed changes consistent with chronic pyelonephritis and arteriolarsclerosis.

The tracing shows a sinus rhythm with normal conduction. The QRS vector is rotated upwards to the left and posteriorly. The amplitude of the QRS complex is markedly increased. The intrinsicoid deflection in lead V_6 measured from the onset of the QRS to the peak of R is delayed and measures 0.06 second. The ST-T vector is directed opposite to the QRS resulting in a depressed S-T segment and inverted T wave whenever the QRS complex is upright. The S-T segment when depressed is convex upwards and the T wave is asymmetrical.

dial surface of the left ventricle. However, although the shift of the QRS vector is probably related to factors other than rotation of the heart, more evidence is necessary before accepting the idea of an unaltered position of the hypertrophied heart. Finally, it is to be emphasized that in at least twenty five per cent of individuals with left ventricular hypertrophy the electrocardiogram may be completely normal.

The electrocardiographic recognition of right ventricular hypertrophy depends primarily upon the presence in lead V_1 of an increased amplitude of the R wave with an intrinsicoid deflection of 0 03 to 0 05 second[39] The S T segment may be depressed and the T wave inverted Right axis deviation *per se* is not diagnostic of right ventricular hypertrophy[40] It simply reflects rotation of the QRS vector to the right of its usual position and may be seen in normals, myocardial infarction, disturbances in conduction as well as in hypertrophy of the right ventricle and even of the left ventricle The large R wave in lead V_1 has been thought to be related to rotation of the heart around its long axis so that the epicardial surface of the left ventricle faces to the right and anteriorly In fact it has been demonstrated that in individuals with the Tetralogy of Fallot, the right chest leads show a large R wave but direct leads from the epicardial surface of the right ventricle show a small R wave[41] Whether or not the lie of the heart is anatomically different in those with right ventricular hypertrophy remains to be determined It would appear from clinical and radiographic examination that the lie of the heart is most certainly different in hypertrophy of either ventricle

Electrocardiograms which demonstrate combined ventricular hypertrophy are seen infrequently[4] The finding of a vertical electrical position with signs of left ventricular hypertrophy is highly suggestive but not diagnostic The presence of large R waves in lead V_1 followed by a decreased amplitude in precordial leads to the left and then finally another rise in leads V or V_6 is also suggestive as is the presence of the P pulmonale or P mitrale pattern in those with left ventricular hypertrophy However, these findings, particularly in those with non rheumatic heart disease do not necessarily mean combined hypertrophy On the contrary, these changes may be present in those with unilateral ventricular hypertrophy, conduction disturbances or myocardial disease

Finally, in electrocardiographic parlance, the terms ventricular strain and hypertrophy are frequently employed The diagnosis of "strain" depends upon the presence of ST T alterations and that of "hypertrophy upon increased amplitude of the QRS complex[43] These terms are only descriptive and do not necessarily reflect what is present anatomically or physiologically The terminology should be avoided for the inference is not as clear as the implication The word strain when applied to individuals with cardiac hypertrophy is indefinable in the physiologic sense Moreover the ST T changes can be normalized by the administration or withholding of certain electrolytes[44]

It may be well to point out in this connection that flat or negative T deflections are noted in a number of other conditions, such as myocarditis B avitaminosis hypothyroidism alkalosis hypokalemia and acute or chronic cardiac compression due to pericardial disease Extracardiac neurogenic and emotional influences play a role and need further study Gall bladder disease has been held responsible Posture occasionally plays a role and a flat or negative T deflection particularly in Leads II and III may increase in voltage or even turn positive when the tracing is taken with the patient in the recumbent instead of in the sitting position[4]

The influence of digitalis on the ECG should be mentioned here since this drug is so commonly used in connection with cardiac enlargement Its effect on the S T segment consists in a depression in the limb and chest leads usually most marked in Lead II and in a flattening out or inversion of the T deflections Where there is left axis deviation however the aforementioned segment tends to be elevated in Lead III No very close relation exists between the degree of these changes and the amount of the drug given *It may easily take two to three weeks and in occasional cases up to six weeks following discontinuation of the drug for such changes to disappear completely* If an ECG study is planned it is important therefore to withhold digitalis medication provided the condition of the patient will permit it

Cardiac enlargement may have to be differentiated from pericarditis In the latter condition particularly of septic etiology there may be an upward shift of the S T segment in all leads

Functional Evaluation and Prognosis While the physiologist considers enlargement of the heart muscle as a means of adaptation the clinician is inclined to correlate these findings with potential or actual myocardial insufficiency Enlargement of the heart is never a complete diagnosis without determining its cause and functional status Usually the underlying disease can be readily ascertained by careful and thorough examination Occasionally the cause may not be apparent There may be an anomalous vessel or glycogenosis amyloidosis nutritional disturbances muscular dystrophy connective tissue disorders endocardial disease endocrinopathy or infection The manifestations of heart failure may be so predominant as to mask the underlying disease

In the presence of coronary artery disease cardiac enlargement is a much less valuable guide than in valvular disease Anginal failure is compatible with a normal heart size Patients with coronary artery disease who develop cardiac infarction often reveal no change in heart size on follow up studies If this is the course of the disease it will be found that a fairly active life is carried on much more commonly as compared with those who either had cardiac enlargement to begin with or develop cardiac enlargement subsequent to the attack

Congestive failure rarely occurs in the presence of normal sized hearts In this connection it should be remembered that in chronic constrictive pericardial disease the heart is sometimes prevented from increasing in size while failure of the circulation develops sooner or later

Patients with cardiac enlargement show as a rule a diminished capacity for work The term enlargement in this connection refers mainly to the ventricular mass Considerable enlargement of the heart is likely to be followed by more or less rapid onset of failure Auricular fibrillation sets in more frequently and the same holds true of the occurrence of thrombosis along the auricular wall or in the coronary arteries

The general remark holds true that the larger the heart the worse the exercise tolerance experience with individual cases however shows exceptions This holds true particularly for the younger age group who have healed rheumatic valvular lesions It may also be stated that there is no

strict proportionality between the degree of enlargement and the signs and symptoms of heart failure Heart size is not more than a fair prognostic criterion and the clinician never should omit obtaining a correct idea as to the general physical tolerance of a patient Furthermore, the etiology and special anatomical features of a disease process are important items in the prognostic evaluation and should always be taken into consideration It is known that sudden death often occurs in the presence of coronary ostium

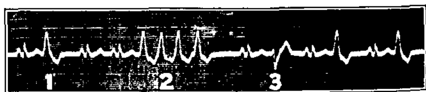


FIGURE 7 Male age forty one This obese patient had developed signs and symptoms of left ventricular failure with coronary artery disease and a mild hyper tension as presumable etiology A considerable degree of cardiac enlargement existed During the course of one week the patient had been given an unknown amount of digitalis The electrocardiogram (lead II) reveals sinus rhythm which is interrupted by premature ventricular beats of multifocal origin and in bigeminus arrangement (1 3) and a short run of ventricular tachycardia (2) These findings disappeared promptly upon discontinuance of digitalis and prescribing quinidine sulfate 0 2 Gm (3 grains) strychnine sulfate 1 6 mg ($\frac{1}{40}$ grain) t i d Bigeminal premature beats reappeared on digitalis medication but were not noted when all three drugs were given together

stenosis due to syphilis, with or without associated aortic regurgitation or in the presence of a high grade aortic stenosis and in both instances this occurs regardless of heart size The correlation of cardiac enlargement and mortality quota seems to be closest for patients with rheumatic valvular lesions In one such very careful study on 1164 cases it was found that the mortality quota for all valvular lesions together for three groups of heart sizes as determined by orthodiagraphy was as follows The ratio of actual to expected deaths for approximately normal sized hearts was 420 per cent for moderately enlarged hearts 589 per cent and for much enlarged hearts 1092 per cent [46]

It has been previously stated that cardiac enlargement may be stabilized over a period of years In other instances however progression takes place over shorter periods of time and it is important to obtain exact information as to the rate of progression An increase, especially if rapid gives a poor prognostic outlook This holds particularly true for the course of the heart in myocarditis or diphtheria

Circulatory Failure When cardiac enlargement is diagnosed circulatory failure may not be present but it will result eventually Hence a short discussion of this finding is justified Those forms which are primarily of extracardiac origin will not however be discussed Here belongs first the clinical picture of inflow stasis (engorgement of the systemic veins and less common of the pulmonary circuit) which results from inadequate work of the heart due to inadequate filling as noted in instances of pericardial effusion chronic constrictive pericardial disease or with extremely high heart rate and second the primary peripheral failure, *i e* shock

The commonest types of cardiac insufficiency are associated with inadequate emptying of the heart The whole heart may be affected or strain may have acted predominantly on the left or right side resulting in syndromes which are spoken of as left or right sided heart failure Before enumerating some symptoms and signs of heart failure it must be kept in mind that one of the most important measures for a lowered circulatory efficiency is the subjective perception of the patient

If heart failure is present it should not be assumed a priori that the enlarged heart has reached its limit and that the prognosis is very grave Instead attention should be directed to uncovering some agent that may have precipitated the crisis There may be an infection an arrhythmia an emotional disturbance electrolyte or fluid imbalance or thromboembolism Careful examination for and proper treatment of these conditions may result in restoration of pre-existing heart size and function So called refractory heart failure is seldom due to a diseased heart *per se* Also in this era of cardiac surgery it is necessary to recognize whether the manifestations of heart failure are related predominantly to valvular myocardial or pericardial dysfunction

Dyspnea The principal factor is impairment of respiration due to engorgement of the pulmonary vessels [4] Pulmonary congestion can be detected radiologically long before the appearance of rales The earliest clinical sign of pulmonary hypertension is an accentuation of the second pulmonic sound Common underlying diseases affecting the left side of the heart include systemic hypertension aortic and mitral valvular disease and coronary artery disease Orthopnea is present if the patient can breathe better when upright than recumbent and trepopnea if dyspnea is present in one recumbent position and less or absent in another

Cardiac asthma or recurrent episodes of dyspnea and wheezing due to left ventricular failure is frequently associated with an antecendent history of effort intolerance It may occur on effort or it may be precipitated by various other factors that demand a sudden increment in cardiac output Frequently it occurs only at night after the patient has fallen asleep An antecedent nightmare may be present The late onset in life the absence of pre existing allergy the presence of cardiac enlargement the demonstration of heart failure either clinically or by laboratory means and the response to a cardiac regimen serve to differentiate it from bronchial asthma

Cheyne Stokes respiration is frequently seen in those with heart failure Careful observation is necessary to detect its presence The periods of apnea may be very brief and the changes in rate and depth of respiration barely perceptible During the periods of apnea there may be transient unconsciousness Prognosis should never be based upon the presence or absence of this phenomenon *per se* Often the discontinuance of drugs such as acetophenetidin, barbiturates or morphine will abolish this respiratory arrhythmia Additional digitalis restriction of salt or more frequent use of diuretics may be necessary Treatment should be directed at both the possible underlying causes for its occurrence and the respiratory disturbance proper (slow intravenous injection of 0 25 to 0 8 Gm (4 to 12 grains) of theophylline ethylenediamine)

Cardiac Pain Pain indistinguishable from that seen in individuals with coronary artery disease may be related to heart failure[48] After all, myocardial insufficiency may result from either impaired supply or augmented demand and the end result is the same Nitroglycerine will offer spectacular relief if it is related to impairment of supply but will fail if there is primarily an augmented demand In case of the latter, improvement of cardiac efficiency by digitalis or decreasing heart load by mercurials and other measures will relieve the pain The onset of right sided failure may be associated with a diminution or disappearance of anginal pain previously present

Heart Sounds A lowered intensity of the first apical sound is often and not always correctly interpreted as evidence for heart muscle dysfunction Leaving aside the possible influence of obesity or emphysema, it must be remembered that a relatively longer, though still normal atrioventricular conduction time (for instance 0 20 sec) tends to be associated with a first sound of lesser intensity A similar and more marked effect is caused by mitral insufficiency and also by aortic stenosis on the second aortic sound Besides mitral disease an accentuation of the second pulmonic sound is noted with left sided failure whatever the etiology may be

Gallop rhythm a form of triple rhythm, is characterized by the appearance of a third heart sound diastolic in time and usually dull in character[19] It is best perceived by auscultation but can be seen and felt as well Gallop rhythm is likely to disappear with a slowing of the heart rate, and is not heard with auricular fibrillation although graphic registration seems to indicate it may exist with the latter condition Mitral lesions tend to obscure it Gallop rhythm indicates as a rule failure of the left ventricle only unless it accompanies acute myocarditis or pulmonary embolism The presence of gallop rhythm entails as a rule, a bad prognosis but this does not necessarily hold true if it is observed in the presence of acute myocarditis where it indicates a toxic damage of the heart muscle which may be reversible It is to be emphasized that a diagnosis of heart failure should not be based upon the presence of gallop rhythm alone

Blood Pressure The effects of heart failure have a variable influence Cardiac infarction is commonly followed by a fall while a rise, sometimes to a very marked degree may be noted during an attack of angina pectoris or pulmonary edema A moderate rise with each bout of failure is noted in occasional patients It should be noted parenthetically that high blood pressure does not contraindicate the use of digitalis

During the measurement of the blood pressure alternation may be observed as a succession of strong and weak beats The loud sounds come through corresponding to only half the heart beats This finding should not be confused with an extrasystolic bigeminus An alternating pulse is not uncommonly encountered in patients with arterial hypertension Its presence particularly when continuous in nature, signifies heart failure

Cyanosis It is closely correlated with an increase in the amount of reduced hemoglobin anemia therefore tends to counteract the appearance of cyanosis It may be present in certain congenital cardiovascular malformations without indicating failure In acquired lesions cyanosis will be

noted particularly in the presence of mitral stenosis tricuspid stenosis and with right sided failure in general It is very marked if due to extensive obliterative vascular disease in the lesser circulation Cyanosis may occur of course without any cardiac disease pulmonary hypo ventilation serves as an example An appearance clinically indistinguishable from that produced by reduced hemoglobin is that observed in the presence of methemoglobinemia or sulfhemoglobinemia One sees patients with hypertensive cardiovascular disease who are markedly cyanotic following the prolonged ingestion of proprietary preparations containing acetanilide for the relief of headache Marked cyanosis in the absence of dyspnea should incite suspicion of chemical poisoning

Pulmonary Engorgement Left sided failure or obstruction leads to engorgement of the venous half of the pulmonary circuit and later this is followed by overfilling of the entire lung field Examples are hypertension and organic defects of the left sided valve orifices The output of the left and right heart are equal for some time and circulation takes place at a higher pressure level The outstanding symptom is dyspnea both of the exertional and paroxysmal variety Cyanosis cough hemoptysis and fine basal rales may or may not be present Signs for pulmonary engorgement are First the roentgenogram reveals the transparencies of the lung fields diminished with occasional cloudy opacities all vascular shadows are increased in density and width but relatively hazily outlined This holds particularly true for the hilus structures Second an accentuation of a previously normal second pulmonic sound Third a decrease in the velocity of blood flow through the pulmonary circuit this can be determined by measuring the arm to tongue and arm to lung circulation time

Venous Engorgement Right sided failure or obstruction leads to engorgement of the systemic veins An increase of the venous pressure to over fifteen cm of water indicates then advanced insufficiency of the right side of the heart provided that pericardial and mediastinal pathology have been excluded Such insufficiency of the right heart may be primary in nature such as observed with emphysema pneumonoconiosis obliterative disease of the pulmonary arteries pulmonary embolism and organic defects of the right sided valve orifices Much more commonly however it follows *failure or valvular lesions of the left side* Signs for venous engorgement are cyanosis engorgement of superficial veins and increase in venous pressure swelling of the liver subcutaneous edema and ascites

The normal venous pulse both of liver and neck veins is a volume pulse and indicates dynamic events in the right atrium As one observes the movements along the neck veins in a healthy person in the recumbent position one easily notices a collapse which is ventricularsystolic in time This collapse is due to the rapid inflow of blood into the previously emptied right atrium The caudad movement of the atrioventricular septum and the sudden drop of the intrathoracic pressure due to outflow of blood from the chest cavity favor this collapse The veins then fill gradually This ascent is broken by another collapse which occurs during the early part of ventricular diastole This collapse is due to the emptying of blood from the right atrium through the opened tricuspid valves and while always

registered on the graph, it may not be noticeable on gross inspection The progressive distention of the vein is then suddenly increased This indicates atrial systole which has interrupted the inflow of venous blood into the right atrial cavity The normal venous pulse in the neck therefore is characterized by a systolic emptying and diastolic filling Proper timing should be carried out by palpating the carotid or the radial pulse while inspecting these pulsations

With cardiac failure and mild congestion the veins reveal an increase in both fulness and pulsations Occasionally, in those with heart failure the cervical veins may not be distended and the venous pressure may be normal In such individuals increased abdominal pressure usually exerted in the region of the right upper quadrant, will result in distention of the cervical veins and a rise in the venous pressure Of course it is necessary to be certain that the patient has not held his breath during this maneuver for similar changes may occur with a Valsalva experiment As congestion increases the normally visible pulsations in the lower part of the neck disappear while they become noticeable in its upper part, and pressure against the abdomen causes the level of pulsations to climb cranad With maximal stasis no movement may be noted in the very full veins and pulsations may be only brought out as the patient gradually sits up or during deep inspiration A closer observation of these pulsations reveals that the normally observed systolic collapse is lacking completely That means that the ascent of the venous pulse starting in early diastole lasts throughout the systole Hence one speaks of the systolic or ventricular form of the venous pulse Obviously, the enhancing effect of ventricular contraction on the venous blood flow is diminished and the overdistended and often fibrillating right atrium is emptied inadequately A collapse from the high plateau occurs at the time of the opening of the tricuspid valves which is during the early part of ventricular diastole Hence this pulse is characterized by a diastolic emptying In the presence of tricuspid regurgitation there is likewise noted a diastolic collapse and a systolic elevation But the latter is more impressive abrupt, and in contrast to the congestion pulse well palpable

A congested and large liver is likely to reveal pulsations of the ventricular type particularly so in the presence of auricular fibrillation The ascent of the pulse wave is not so distinctly felt but rather the subsequent diminution in volume *i e* the diastolic emptying of the liver This is also, and quite markedly noted in the presence of adhesive pericardial disease This is of diagnostic significance because the condition which is most likely to imitate adhesive pericardial disease is tricuspid regurgitation Here a liver pulse of the ventricular type is likewise found but the outstanding feature is a sudden and forceful systolic thrust while with ordinary congestion and adhesive pericardial disease the systolic filling of the liver takes place gradually In the presence of sinus rhythm and providing the right atrium is still capable of contracting forcefully with the right heart overfilled or because of an associated tricuspid stenosis an obstacle is offered to right atrial emptying The blood is then backed up into the venae cavae during the presystolic period and a presystolic re-

gurgitation wave results This is called the presystolic auricular liver pulse, *i e* it is diastolic in time and its elevation distinctly follows the elevation palpated at the radial artery In the presence of mitral stenosis such a presystolic liver pulse is highly suggestive of an associated tricuspid sten osis though it may well occur in the presence of marked congestion with sinus rhythm preserved Often the liver pulse reveals in addition to the presystolic regurgitation wave a systolic elevation An associated tricuspid insufficiency or marked overfilling of the right atrium such as noted in tricuspid stenosis or with the interatrial septal defect may be responsible for it

Treatment Reversibility of Cardiac Enlargement Cardiac enlarge ment as previously stated signifies potential or actual insufficiency of the myocardium and patients with a considerable degree of enlargement rarely ever possess good exercise tolerance It is the duty of the physician there fore to *regulate the life of the patient* so that he will remain within the limits of his reserve in order to avoid heart failure as long as possible Such a limitation of activity may range from complete *bed rest* as in the case of acute myocarditis glomerulonephritis or congestive failure to a program of nearly normal activity avoiding athletic and competitive activ ity and excessively long working hours as in the case of a fully compen sated rheumatic valvular lesion or benign essential hypertension *Over weight* should be corrected *Digitalis* is first indicated when the limitation of reserve becomes evident together with simultaneous *curtailment of physical activity* and second when auricular fibrillation supervenes par ticularly in the rheumatic and sclerotic group

In the great majority of instances enlargement of the heart is a chronic incurable condition particularly in reference to the large group of hyper tensive valvular sclerotic or syphilitic etiology

In a relatively few instances it is possible to remove the cause of cardiac enlargement so that regression of heart size will occur provided that not too long a period of time has elapsed and that no other complicating fac tors interfere As examples may be cited (*a*) Prolonged attack of parox ysmal auricular tachycardia (unilateral carotid sinus and bilateral bulb ous pressure induced gagging and vomiting *magnesium sulfate* 15 cc of a twenty per cent solution intravenously *quinidine sulfate* 0 4 to 0 6 Gm (6 to 9 grains) orally or *quinidine hydrochloride* with *urea* and *anti pyrine* 0 6 Gm (9 grains) intramuscularly every four hours *mecholyl* 20 to 30 mg (1/3 to 1/2 grain) subcutaneously (atropine sulfate is the anti dote) *digitalis*—in the form for example of digitoxin 0 4 mg ((1/150 grain) to be repeated within a few hours) paroxysmal ventricular tachy cardia (*magnesium sulfate quinidine sulfate* as above pronestyl 100 mg per minute IV) (*b*) thyrotoxicosis (*subtotal removal of the gland or radioactive iodine*) (*c*) B avitaminosis (purified B_1 *vitamin* intravenously and orally and proper *diet*) (*d*) anemia of the pernicious or intestinal parasitic type (*liver* or B_{12} intra muscularly) (*e*) arteriovenous fistula (*operative closure*)

In other instances a considerable diminution in the heart size will be noticed provided the natural course of the disease is favorable though

treatment may occasionally be helpful To cite (*a*) acute glomerulonephritis with hypertension (here resorption of pericardial fluid may be a contributing element in the regression of 'heart' size), (*b*) myocarditis of rheumatic fever, diphtheria grippe, typhoid fever, (*c*) replacement of a previously slow heart rate (nodal rhythm, complete heartblock) by a faster, normal heart rate (*d*) pulmonary embolism (said to affect the right heart only)

In the hypertensive patient with evidence of left ventricular failure one occasionally observes regression of heart size under the effect of rest, low sodium diet and digitalis Somewhat more often a reduction in heart size is noted when the blood pressure has been permanently lowered secondary to a dorsolumbar sympathectomy regardless of whether or not left ventricular failure was present to begin with In the absence of heart failure, regression of cardiac enlargement in those with hypertension may occur with many and varied regimens including rest salt restriction, salt diuresis hypotensive agents and surgery

It may be noted that in healthy athletes a moderate increase of the heart size may be observed during the period of severe training This takes about four to six weeks and recedes at about the same rate following cessation of training Whether the process underlying the increase in heart size is only due to a stretching of the muscle fibers, or whether there is also a thickening, is not known

Finally it may be asked how often and how much the heart recedes in size with recovery from congestive failure The change in the height of the diaphragm resulting from a diminution in the total bulk of the abdominal contents causes a change in the shape and position of the heart and this is a real obstacle in an evaluation on decrease in size both from an x ray and clinical point of view In addition, resorption of pericardial fluid may introduce an element of error

REFERENCES

1 White P D Heart Disease 5th ed New York Macmillan 1955
2 Roesler H Clinical Roentgenology of the Cardiovascular System 2nd ed Springfield Thomas 1943
3 Friedman Carl Eric Heart volume myocardial volume and total capacity of the heart cavities in certain chronic heart diseases Acta med Scandinav 140 3 1951
4 Bing R J Heimbecker R and Falholt W An estimation of the residual volume of blood in the right ventricle of normal and diseased human hearts in vivo Am Heart J 42 483 1951
5 Dotter C T and Steinberg I Angiocardiography Annals of Roentgenology vol 20 New York Hoeber 1951
6 Grant R T After histories for ten years of a thousand men suffering from heart disease a study in prognosis Heart 16 275 1933
7 Smith H L The relation of the weight of the heart to the weight of the body and the weight of the heart to age Am Heart J 4 79 1928
8 Zeek P M Heart weight 1 The weight of the normal human heart Arch Path 34 820 1942
9 Nomenclature and Criteria for Diagnosis of Disease of the Heart and Blood Vessels New York New York Heart Association Inc 1953
10 Bardeen C R Determination of the size of the heart by means of the x rays Am J Anat 23 423 1918

11 Hellerstein H K and Santiago Stevenson D Atrophy of the Heart A correlative study of eighty five proved cases Circulation 1 93 1950

12 Greenwood M and Brown J W A second study of weight variability and correlation of human viscera Biometrika 9 473 1913

13 Roessle R and Roulet F Mass und Zahl in der Pathologie Berlin Julius Springer 1932

14 Gould S F Pathology of the Heart Springfield Thomas 1953

15 Wiggers C J Circulatory Dynamics Physiologic Studies New York Grune and Stratton 1952

16 Harvey R M Ferrer M I Cathcart R T and Alexander J K Some effects of Digoxin on the heart and circulation in man Digoxin in enlarged hearts not in clinical congestive failure Circulation 4 366 1951

17 de Grandpre R and Raab W Interrelated hormonal factors in cardiac hypertrophy Circulation Research 1 345 1953

18 Rosahn P D Endocardial fibroelastosis Old and new concepts Bull N Y Acad Med 31 453 1955

19 Olson R E and Schwartz W B Myocardial metabolism in congestive heart failure Medicine 30 21 1951

20 Hall O Hall C E and Ogden E Cardiac hypertrophy in experimental hypertension and its regression following reestablishment of normal blood pressure Am J Physiol 174 175 1953

21 Palmer J H The development of cardiac enlargement in disease of the heart a radiological study Medical Research Council Special Report No 222 London H M Stat Off 1937

22 Stembridge V A and Rigdon R H A consideration of cardiac hypertrophy in sickle cell anemia Southern Med J 45 948 1952

23 Friedberg C K Diseases of the Heart Philadelphia Saunders 1949

24 Thomas C B The cardiovascular response of normal young adults to exercise as determined by the double Master two step test Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 89 153 1951

25 Beckner G L and Winsor T Cardiovascular adaptations to prolonged physical effort Circulation 9 835 1954

26 Thompson W P and White P D The commonest cause of hypertrophy of the right ventricle-left ventrical strain and failure Am Heart J 12 641 1936

27 Prinzmetal M Corday E Spritzler R J and Flieg W Radiocardiography and its clinical applications J A M A 139 617 1949

28 Shipley R A Clark R E Liebowitz D and Krohmer J S Analysis of the radiocardiogram in heart failure Circulation Research 1 428 1953

29 Soloff L A Zatuchni J and Fisher H Use of planigraphy in demonstration of calcification of heart valves and its significance Arch Int Med 95 219 1955

30 Stauffer H M LaBree J and Adams F H The normally situated arch of the azygos vein its roentgenologic identification and catheterization Am J Roentgenol 66 353 1951

31 O'Rahilly R The normal cardiac apex and apex beat a critical review of recent data Am Heart J 44 23 1952

32 Dressler W Clinical Cardiology with Special Reference to Bedside Diagnosis New York Hoeber 1942

33 Wilson F N Rosenbaum F F and Johnston F D Interpretation of the ventricular complex of the electrocardiogram In Dock W and Snapper I Advances in Internal Medicine Chicago Year Book Publishers 1947 vol 2

34 Sokolow M and Lyon T P The ventricular complex in left ventricular hypertrophy as obtained by unipolar precordial and limb leads Am Heart J 37 161 1949

35 Scott R C Seiwert V J Simon D L and McGuire J Left ventricular hypertrophy A study of the accuracy of current electrocardiographic criteria when compared with autopsy findings in one hundred cases Circulation 11 89 1955

36 Rosenman R H Pick A and Katz L N Intraventricular block Review of the literature Arch Int Med 86 196 1950
37 Grishman A Scherlis L and Lasser R P Spatial vectorcardiography Am J Med 14 184 1953
38 Grant R P Architectonics of the heart Am Heart J 46 405 1953
39 Myers G B Klein H A and Stofer B E The electrocardiographic diagnosis of right ventricular hypertrophy Am Heart J 35 1 1948
40 Kossman C E Berger A R Brumlik J and Briller S A An analysis of causes of right axis deviation based partly on endocardial potentials of the hyper trophied right ventricle Am Heart J 35 309 1948
41 McGregor M The genesis of the electrocardiogram of right ventricular hyper trophy British Heart J 12 351 1950
42 Lipsett M B and Zinn W J Anatomic and electrocardiographic correlation in combined ventricular hypertrophy Am Heart J 45 86 1953
43 Littmann D Ventricular strain and ventricular hypertrophy New Eng J Med 241 363 1949
44 Bryant J M Effect of potassium on the ventricular deflections of the electro cardiogram in hypertensive cardiovascular disease Proc Soc Exp Biol and Med 67 557 1948
45 Lepeschkin E Modern Electrocardiography Baltimore Williams and Wilkins Company 1951
46 Friedman R Einfluss der Herzklappenfehler auf die Lebensdauer Ztschr f Klin Med *130 382 1936*
47 Richards D W Jr The nature of cardiac and of pulmonary dyspnea Circu lation 7 15 1953
48 Soloff L A Angina pectoris during decubitus hitherto unrecognized manifesta tion of circulatory failure J A M A 143 225 1950
49 Wolferth C C and Margolies A Gallop rhythm and the physiological third heart sound I Characteristics of the sounds classification comparative inci dence of the various types and differential diagnosis Am. Heart J 8 441 1933

16

Congestive Heart Failure

Introduction *The purpose of this chapter is to describe briefly and concisely* a very common clinical condition—congestive heart failure To do this various aspects must be discussed which include the mechanism complicating factors signs and symptoms differential diagnosis prevention and therapy A tremendous amount of clinical and basic work has been done over the years without eliciting the exact mechanisms that bring about congestive heart failure nor a complete and concise understanding of exactly how the many therapeutic agents employed in this condition perform their functions However, it is worthwhile to review the more generally accepted present day concepts bearing on this subject

The Mechanism of Congestive Heart Failure As pointed out in many recent articles and textbooks, two diametrically opposed schools of thought concerning the mechanism of heart failure have existed for generations These two factions have been called the schools of forward failure and of backward failure Those who believe in forward failure argue that the main cause for congestive heart failure is insufficient output of the heart to the tissues The other school believes it is due to congestion of parts of the body or backward pressure from the failing ventricle(s) Extensive recent studies in many laboratories favor the forward failure school of thought in the vast majority of cases of slowly progressing congestive heart failure

Occasionally, the classic picture of sudden backward failure is observed A typical example would be the sudden appearance of pulmonary edema following a massive myocardial infarct in a patient with no previous history of dyspnea In such a patient edema of the lungs develops suddenly without a change in body weight The fluid collected in the lungs comes from fluid originally present in the blood stream and from fluid pulled into the blood stream from the tissues This represents an abnormal redistribution of the fluid normally present in the body It is not due to salt retention and increased body fluids

There are several important findings present in patients with congestive heart failure who gain weight from the accumulation of body fluids as recently reviewed by Stead [1] (1) A marked reduction of the renal excretion of sodium chloride (2) a higher urinary output during the night than during the day, (3) an unimpaired ability to excrete water without difficulty at a maximal rate and an ability in moderate congestive failure if salt is withheld to excrete water sufficiently well to tolerate a daily fluid intake of several liters (4) a frequent and moderate lowering of the con

centration of sodium and chloride in the blood (5) an increase in the plasma and blood volume, and (6) an elevated venous pressure

Sodium chloride retention is a characteristic finding in chronic congestive heart failure This inability to excrete salt is relative rather than absolute, and the patient with heart failure varies his sodium chloride excretion as does a normal subject The only peculiarity shown by a patient with heart failure is that he excretes more salt at night than in the day time Presumably the daytime activities divert some blood flow from the kidneys as occurs during exercise in normal people The decreased renal blood flow that is uniformly found in subjects who form edema at rest on an unrestricted diet is the most likely cause for the edema and salt retention With the reduced renal blood flow total glomerular filtration is decreased although the amount of filtrate obtained from each unit of plasma flowing through the glomeruli is greatly increased The lowered filtration rate decreases the amount of sodium chloride presented to the tubules over a given period of time The tubule reabsorbs nearly all of the filtered sodium chloride However the absolute amount of sodium chloride filtered is so small that the total amount of sodium chloride reabsorbed is much less than in normal persons Thus in chronic congestive heart failure the renal blood flow and filtration rate is decreased, the per cent of sodium chloride reabsorption by the tubules is increased, and the urinary excretion of sodium chloride is reduced It should be emphasized that the disturbed renal hemodynamics of chronic failure are not correlated with changes in various pressure, but do correlate with the reduction of cardiac output

Many objections have been raised to the glomerular tubular imbalance concept of sodium retention For instance many investigators believe that the damming up of blood behind the failing ventricles forces water into the tissues by increasing venous and capillary pressure Thus, ingested salt and water pass through the blood stream to the tissues and are not excreted by the kidneys because of prerenal deviation Some arguments against this theory are that it fails to account for the similar retention of salt which occurs after hemorrhage or trauma that plasma and blood volume in chronic congestive failure is increased rather than decreased and that the quantitative difficulties in handling sodium chloride persist after the venous pressure has been returned to normal by salt restriction and diuretics

Other investigators have felt that the impairment of sodium chloride excretion results from high venous pressure in the kidneys produced by backward failure This has been shown to be true in animal experiments where there is a decrease in sodium chloride output from a rise in venous pressure without perceptible change in renal blood flow or filtration rate This does not explain the abnormal sodium chloride retention in man that persists after the return to normal central venous pressure, nor does it explain similar retention of sodium chloride after hemorrhage

Another objection to the glomerular tubular imbalance concept is the fact that some other diseases such as chronic glomerulo nephritis and marked nephrosclerosis do not cause the same tendency to edema so char

acteristic of congestive heart failure Stead[1] points out that this observation actually supports the concept as there is usually a decrease in tubular as well as glomerular function in these renal diseases On the other hand the tubular function remains surprisingly good in congestive heart failure In other words the argument is that a fairly even and equal decrease in glomerular filtration and in tubular function because of disease will decrease the tendency for edema formation

With the tremendous interest in the salt retention brought about by ACTH cortisone testosterone and other corticosteroids some investigators wonder whether a major cause for salt retention in congestive heart failure might not be hormonal influence upon the renal tubules produced by decreased circulation in the pituitary and adrenal glands There is some indication that there is increased urinary excretion of corticoids Studies of sweat secretion are compatible with this thesis Undoubtedly the decreased cardiac output does stimulate the pituitary adrenal axis, but it is highly doubtful that such stimulation plays much of a part in congestive heart failure It remains to be shown that the body produces sufficient salt retaining hormones such as aldosterone to cause the massive edema of chronic heart failure

In summary the basic mechanism of congestive heart failure is the decreased cardiac output produced by organic heart disease The decreased cardiac output in turn produces a decrease in renal blood flow and renal glomerular filtration rate In the face of normal tubular reabsorption there is a quantitative decrease in sodium chloride excretion With unrestricted fluid and electrolyte intake sodium chloride retention occurs and the extracellular space expands producing increased fluid retention and the eventual production of clinical edema It remains to be shown whether the stress of congestive failure produces unusually large amounts of salt retaining hormones In acute congestive heart failure brought about by myocardial infarction and similar conditions pulmonary edema develops suddenly without a change in body weight due to an abnormal redistribution of the fluid normally present in the body

Signs and Symptoms The cardinal symptom of myocardial insufficiency is dyspnea on exertion or at rest Various tasks that formerly caused no symptoms now produce shortness of breath If the individual has led a very sedentary life or if his activities have been severely restricted because of disabilities the first symptom may be dyspnea that comes suddenly at rest particularly at night As the degree of myocardial insufficiency increases dyspnea occurs with less physical effort until finally it is present even at rest Dyspnea of such severity as to render lying flat in bed difficult or impossible is called orthopnea At this point Cheyne Stokes breathing is usually present As the condition progresses moist rales appear first at the lung bases and later throughout the lungs There may be attacks of paroxysmal cardiac dyspnea attended by asthmatic breathing (cardiac asthma) or by acute pulmonary edema with copious frothy and frequently blood stained expectoration All these signs and symptoms are due to congestion in the pulmonary circulation

In the earliest phases of left ventricular failure described in the preceding paragraph, there may be no overt signs or symptoms However the vital capacity of the lungs is already diminished, circulation time from arm to tongue may be slightly prolonged and there are almost invariably signs of heart disease as manifested by cardiac enlargement and significant heart murmurs At this point X ray studies of the chest will not reveal pulmonary congestion as commonly believed The butterfly distribution of pulmonary congestion and signs of fluid in the chest usually occur only with frankly overt physical signs and symptoms Other findings that usually occur late in the disease are a diastolic gallop rhythm and pulsus alternans

The early evidence of congestion of the greater circulation is increased venous distention and/or dependent edema In the earlier stages of failure, venous pressure may be within normal limits during rest and only become elevated during exertion Therefore a normal resting venous pressure does not necessarily indicate cardiac competence or an ability to do work under stress On the other hand increased venous pressure at rest implies a moderate degree of fluid retention in the extracellular space The appearance of edema in the ambulatory person occurs in the morning and increases during the day only to disappear at night * In the bedridden patient the first appearance of clinical edema may be over the sacrum, the most dependent portion of the body Unfortunately, the first appearance of edema that pits on pressure does indicate that excessive fluid has already accumulated It has been demonstrated in actual practice that the patient goes from his basal weight level to the clinical appearance of edema through a stage in which fluid is insensibly collected and only manifested by an increase in body weight It has been stated that there must be a ten per cent increase in body weight before clinical edema appears Therefore in a patient in whom congestive heart failure is suspected or in whom it has occurred before a definite weight gain from five to ten pounds within a short period of time indicates increasing congestive heart failure As a part of the congestion in the greater circulation venous pressure increases the jugular veins distend and the liver enlarges Associated with this congestion in the splanchnic area are symptoms of epigastric distress, nausea food intolerance and other gastrointestinal symptoms Palpation of the liver will reveal an enlargement below the xyphoid and/or the costal margin often accompanied by pain on pressure

There are other symptoms which generally accompany heart failure They are less distinctive and are commonly found in other conditions unassociated with heart failure These symptoms include weakness easy fatigability irritability indigestion insomnia and dull aching precordial pain Alone such symptoms are of little value in establishing the diagnosis of congestive heart failure

Although congestion in the lesser and greater circulations can occur separately they are much more commonly found together As a result all

* As fluid retention increases edema will not disappear Stasis infections and increasing fibrosis of the subcutaneous tissues are normal sequelae

combinations of the above symptoms and signs may be elicited Thus, the usual picture of early combined failure consists of dyspnea orthopnea a few moist rales at the lung bases more particularly on the right distention of the neck veins slightly enlarged liver and from one to two plus pitting edema of the ankles and feet more noticable in the afternoon Although rales usually are heard first at the right lung base and later at the left base the reverse can occur Pleural effusions do not appear if the visceral and parietal pleural membranes are fused by antecedent disease The full blown picture of combined failure is as follows The patient is orthopneic and the neck veins are obviously distended above the heart level Respiration is markedly increased and often of the Cheyne Stokes type Moist rales are heard in the chest extending from the bases to the fourth or fifth interspace Other findings are dulness to percussion and evidence of fluid at both bases *gallop rhythm* cardiac enlargement on inspection and by percussion the liver edge three to four fingerbreadths below the xyphoid and/or the right costal margin more or less fluid in the abdomen as manifested by shifting dulness four plus pitting edema of the legs lower abdomen and scrotum and visible cyanosis of the face and extremities but particularly the nail beds and tongue Blood pressure is usually normal but may be somewhat elevated Pulsus alternans may be revealed by palpation of the radial pulses or with the sphygmomonometer Finally there may be a slight icteric tint to the sclerae and skin due to impaired liver function

Differential Diagnosis One of the most important features in the treatment of congestive heart failure is the recognition of conditions that may simulate it Too some disorders may produce congestive heart failure as a secondary manifestation In the latter type of dysfunction the treatment of the primary disease is much more important than the treatment of the manifestation All too frequently digitalis and diuretics are unnecessarily administered to patients who are thought to have congestive heart failure Hypotension tachycardia dyspnea rales in the chest and edema often are due to causes other than congestive heart failure

These conditions can be roughly divided into two groups The first group consists of the diseases and manipulations that cause peripheral circulatory failure or shock Such conditions include infectious diseases severe hemorrhage severe trauma diabetic acidosis cerebral hemorrhage surgical operations (particularly with prolonged anesthesia) conditions producing pulmonary emboli and conditions which cause severe respiratory embarrassment such as emphysema asthma and other pulmonary disorders Unless there is an element of congestive heart failure in association with these diseases the usual therapeutic measures for congestive heart failure are of no avail

The second group consists of conditions associated with high output failure In these the manifestations of congestive heart failure often coexist with the primary disease Among this group can be included severe anemias nutritional deficiencies hyperthyroidism and arteriovenous fistulas Other miscellaneous conditions consist of myxedema renal disease

lymphangitis, thrombophlebitis of the lower extremities marked obesity, and supramediastinal obstructions These conditions may also serve as complications of primary congestive heart failure

The diagnosis of congestive heart failure should not be made unless definite signs and symptoms are present In doubtful cases a therapeutic trial of digitalis is worthwhile Differential diagnosis is aided by measuring vital capacity, body weight, circulation time and venous pressure before and during digitalization

Diagnosis of Some Surgically Remediable Conditions Although the diagnosis of these conditions are presented more fully in other chapters it is worthwhile to present a few of the characteristic features of some of the congenital and acquired cardiovascular lesions that may produce con gestive failure and which may be improved or corrected surgically

Pure Pulmonary Stenosis Usually the child afflicted with this congenital lesion lives only six to eight months In the milder forms the clinical fea tures are dyspnea, marked limitation of activity, progressive right ven tricular enlargement and fulness of the pulmonary conus of the right ven tricle Cyanosis varies with the patency of the foramen ovale A systolic murmur and thrill over the pulmonary area occurs almost invariably The electrocardiogram shows marked right axis deviation An abnormally short circulation time occurs only with a patent foramen ovale

Lutembacher Syndrome This congenital disorder is an atrial septal defect combined with mitral stenosis and enormous dilatation of the pul monary artery It occurs twice as often in women as in men Life expect ancy is about forty years Suspicion should be aroused upon seeing an asthenic person of poor physical development with conspicuous *left sided* chest deformity but without cyanosis or clubbing The important physical findings are a basal systolic murmur intermittent paroxysmal auricular tachycardia, and signs of mitral valvular disease The distinctive x ray features are increased hilar shadows great right atrial and right ventricular *enlargement, a small aortic knob, and a prominent pulmonary* conus Tall P waves a prolonged P R interval right axis deviation and QRS changes are the usual ECG findings

The Maladie de Roger Roger was the first to describe the simple per foration in the ventricular wall Roger s disease differs from a high ven tricular septal defect which is caused by a failure of the aortic septum to meet the ventricular septum The latter may occur alone or when the aorta over rides the ventricular septum The maladie de Roger is usually asymptomatic and is discovered upon routine physical examination A harsh systolic murmur and thrill are found in the third and fourth left interspaces close to the sternum Surgery is rarely required

Patent Ductus Arteriosus This congenital lesion is usually *easy to diag* nose clinically Very infrequently it may need to be distinguished from the murmurs of severe anemia and a venous hum often heard in childhood Almost invariably a continuous or so called machinery murmur is found over the pulmonic area (second left interspace) with a systolic accentua tion and *widened pulse pressure* When a systolic murmur without any diastolic component is found in this area, it can be rarely diagnosed as

patent ductus arteriosus Not all individuals with this lesion need surgery The patient should be checked periodically for signs of progressive cardiac failure associated with symmetrical ventricular enlargement

Coarctation of the Aorta There are two distinct types infantile and adult In the former the patent ductus arteriosus remains patent The *adult type* occurs much more frequently in males and the constriction is found usually just proximal to the ductus arteriosus The clinical findings in the strikingly well developed male are the difference in strength of the pulse and blood pressure between the upper and lower extremities The right radial pulse is often greater than the left because of constriction of the left subclavian artery Blood pressure and arterial pulsations in the lower extremities are greatly diminished The extensive collateral circulation produces murmurs and pulsations not found in the normal person The most common places where these findings occur are the intrascapular area and over the internal mammary arteries The X ray often reveals notching of the ribs due to the enlargement of the internal mammary arteries This finding is rarely seen before twelve years of age X rays often reveal a dilated aortic knob Finally poor and delayed healing of leg wounds in normal appearing tissue should arouse suspicion

The *infantile type* is usually incompatible with life beyond early infancy and is difficult to diagnose

Arteriovenous Fistulas The congenital form usually occurs in the extremities and rarely causes cardiac failure Large fistulas in the lungs may cause cardiac embarrassment They are diagnosed by the presence of X ray shadows and a murmur heard locally if the site of the fistula is near the chest wall

The acquired type of arteriovenous fistula if large may cause marked cardiac embarrassment and congestive failure The diagnosis is usually simple It depends upon the following findings the presence of unexplained unilateral varicosities one limb longer or warmer than the other increased oxygen saturation of the venous blood from the site of the lesion evidence of venous insufficiency after an injury the patient s awareness of a murmur in the region of a penetrating wound the finding of a continuous machinery like thrill and bruit (increased in intensity during systole) and the sharp decrease in pulse rate when the fistula is closed by digital pressure (Branham s sign)

Acquired Cardiac Valvular Defects The most important lesions are mitral and aortic stenosis Surgical intervention as discussed elsewhere in this book can produce dramatic results The signs and symptoms of these valvular lesions are described in Chapter 17

Therapy of Congestive Heart Failure The important therapeutic measures in the treatment of congestive heart failure are rest relief from pain or discomfort digitalization restriction of sodium ingestion and diuretics The prevention and treatment of complications that aggravate congestive heart failure are discussed in succeeding sections

Restriction of Activities One of the most important measures in the treatment of patients with congestive heart failure is the restriction of activities by confinement to bed and chair The effectiveness of such a re

gime is well illustrated during the clinical evaluation of one of the digitalis preparations when no other therapeutic measures are used If a patient's activities are markedly restricted it may take ten to fourteen days to reach a state of equilibrium In the patient in congestive heart failure with auricular fibrillation the ventricular rate will slow and there may be a spontaneous diuresis of ten to thirty pounds of fluid with a concomitant weight loss Under the hurry up" modern methods of treatment for congestive heart failure in which bedrest, digitalization low salt diet and diuretics are employed simultaneously, this factor is often overlooked The restriction of activities will increase renal blood flow, glomerular filtration rate, and thereby the urinary output of sodium

The social and economic aspects of the individual patient must be taken into consideration in this respect In very mild congestive failure with minimal edema and weight gain a few days restriction to the bedroom with bathroom privileges may be employed rather than continuous bed rest With evidence of moderate congestive failure, bedrest will hasten the rehabilitation of the patient As in myocardial infarction, bedrest should not imply absolute immobility The patient should be encouraged to move around and flex the muscles to prevent peripheral stasis and thromboembolism Self feeding shaving, and frequent turning should be encouraged If a comfortable chair can be provided there is no reason why the patient should not spend most of the waking hours in it Some find it more comfortable to even sleep in the chair The use of a bedside commode rather than a bedpan is to be encouraged Normal evacuation is much more likely and oxygen consumption is significantly reduced with the use of a bedside commode as compared to a bedpan In the presence of peripheral venous thrombosis the straining on a bedpan may easily induce pulmonary embolism

Patients with congestive heart failure in general fare better in the upright position This is particularly important as the horizontal position favors the accumulation of fluid due to the reabsorption of edema from the legs As the lungs instead of the legs become the most dependent portion of the body pulmonary edema and stasis pneumonitis may result The upright position enhances drainage of the urinary tract and the ability to void The likelihood of urinary infection and calculi are decreased A simple measure to prevent paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea is the placement of blocks eight to nine inches high under the head posts of the bed

Under restriction of activities may be included a low caloric diet in the overweight patient Semistarvation produces a fall in blood pressure, pulse rate and basal metabolic rate These changes will diminish the work of the heart and thereby improve the circulation With moderately severe congestive heart failure the simple Karell diet consisting only of 200 cc of milk four times daily, but allowing additional water up to two or three liters daily, may be employed for two or three days Afterwards a more general diet containing the proper amount of vitamins is gradually allowed A diet allowing 1 Gm of protein per kg body weight per day is permissible unless there is real evidence of severe nephritis or cirrhosis

Under the restriction of activities sedation should be included The

orthopnea dyspnea and general discomfort of patients with moderate congestive failure may be combated by continuous sedation It may be advisable to give 10 to 15 mg (1/6 to ¼ grain) of morphine sulfate sub cutaneously for the first few nights This dose should be gradually dimin ished and in four or five days phenobarbital 60 to 90 mg (1 to 1½ grains) pentobarbital in the same dosage or chloral hydrate 1 0 Gm (16 grains) may be given to induce sleep Daytime sedation such as phenobarbital 15 to 30 mg (¼ to ½ grain) may be used three times daily

Excessive use of barbiturates and analgesics may be dangerous in cor pulmonale or in serious liver disease In cor pulmonale there is an elevation of the carbon dioxide tension (pCO) which is aggravated by medication that depresses the respiratory center Confusion diminished ventilation and even death may occur Severe liver disease prolongs the action of these drugs

Other measures to induce rest consist of mild cathartics or enemas if constipation is present after two to three days In the presence of pychoses which are often associated with severe heart failure all sedatives should be withheld During the early period of recovery visitors should be restricted although diversions such as reading listening to the radio watching TV and writing letters help relieve the boredom induced by the physical re striction

Digitalis The mode of action and therapeutic uses of digitalis whole leaf the glycosides derived from the digitalis plants and other cardiac glyco sides are described in greater detail in Chapter 17 Briefly digitalis is the only drug in present use which has a specific action upon congestive heart failure In congestive heart failure the myocardium is dilated both in systole and diastole Digitalis is the only known drug that can shrink the heart size to within normal limits If medication is carried to excess in diseased hearts the systolic and diastolic sizes are further reduced Effi ciency is lost and congestive phenomena may reappear Digitalis adminis tration reduces the reserve of normal hearts In patients suffering from auricular fibrillation digitalis delays conduction through the AV node and slows the ventricular rate It is the drug of choice for congestive heart failure It increases tonicity and contractility of the damaged myocardium

The milder forms of congestive failure can be handled by digitalis ad ministration alone It is only in the more severe forms that salt restriction mercurials or other forms of therapy need be employed In recent years there has been an increased incidence of digitalis toxicity iatrogenic in origin In actual practice digitalis is a relatively safe drug as its thera peutic range is about two thirds of the dose required to produce toxic symptoms The most important point about digitalis therapy is the avoid ance of toxicity It is the RARE patient that needs rapid digitalization The overwhelming majority of patients can be digitalized over a period of days if the general principles of restricted activities and the judicious use of mercurials or a sodium restricted diet are followed The patient with mild congestive failure can be given 1 Gm of the whole leaf (1½ grains) or digitoxin 0 1 mg three times a day for five days and then re evaluated clinically In the few instances where moderate haste is necessary the pa

tient may be digitalized in two or three days if kept under constant observation The whole leaf 0 3 Gm (4½ grains) or digitoxin 0 3 mg may be given every six hours The patient should be evaluated before each new dose

The most common toxic signs are the appearance of frequent premature ventricular beats and coupling The most common symptoms are gastrointestinal Nausea, vomiting and diarrhea occur as the toxic dose is approached The signs and symptoms of improvement are weight loss, and the disappearance of dyspnea, orthopnea, peripheral edema engorgement of the liver, abdominal fluid rales, and pleural effusion In congestive failure associated with auricular fibrillation, the slowing of the ventricular rate from around 140 to 170 to a rate between 60 to 80 is a very helpful guide to therapy The premature ventricular beats associated with uncontrolled auricular fibrillation disappear as the ventricular rate is controlled During the early stages of digitalization the ventricular slowing is due to the vagal effect and later to the direct effect upon the conduction tissue of the heart itself

In the rare patient critically ill with acute congestive failure, intravenous digitalization may be employed *cautiously* In such cases no more than one half of the digitalizing dose of the drug should be given Toxic effects from unsuspected previous digitalization electrolyte imbalance, and unusual sensitivity may thus be avoided The intravenous preparation of the whole leaf digalen may be given in a dosage equivalent to 0 8 Gm (12 grains) of the whole leaf Similarly 0 8 mg of digitoxin may be employed Ouabain or strophanthin, which are the fastest acting glycosides, may be given in doses of 0 3 to 0 5 mg and 0 5 to 0 75 mg respectively It is safer to wait at least four to six hours before giving any further digitalis regardless of the preparation Although complete digitalization will not be accomplished by this method the patient's life will not be jeopardized Concomitant measures such as oxygen morphine, and immobilization will help in producing the rapid abatement of the symptoms and signs

Unless it is certain that digitalis has not been given previously discretion is the better part of valor and one should proceed to digitalize cautiously It should be pointed out that *myocardial infarction is not a contraindication to the use of digitalis in the presence of congestive heart failure*

Digitalis dosage must be tailored to the individual Therefore no rule of thumb will suffice for either the amount of drug needed for digitalization or for daily maintenance In about fifty to seventy five per cent of patients 1 5 Gm (22½ grains) of digitalis and 1 5 mg of digitoxin will fully digitalize In a similar percentage of patients the average maintenance dose for each drug is approximately one tenth of the digitalizing dose digitalis 0 15 Gm (2 grains) and digitoxin 0 15 mg It is the author s opinion that in most instances the whole leaf preparation should be tried first Only after an unsuccessful therapeutic trial of the whole leaf should one of the purified glycosides such as digitoxin digoxin or gitalin be employed Every three to six months it may be necessary to reevaluate a patient on a maintenance dose in order to avoid toxicity or underdigitalization For

tunately, once a maintenance dose is established it usually can be maintained for years without need for adjustment Some patients seem to do better on certain preparations than others as far as gastrointestinal tolerance is concerned In the vast majority of patients this is purely emotional Another very important point is that patients do not develop tolerance to digitalis Rather if the congestive failure increases it is due to dedigitalization or to progression of the disease Finally sensitization to digitalis preparations occurs rarely if ever

Diuretics In many instances of congestive heart failure digitalis combined with restricted activities causes sufficient diuresis to produce an edema free state As the disease progresses in severity these measures are not sufficient to prevent accumulation of body fluid and visible edema In acute severe congestive heart failure precipitated by the onset of auricular fibrillation myocardial infarction lobar pneumonia and other severe conditions it is wise to expedite diuresis by the use of diuretics

Organic Mercurials Among the many diuretics available the organic mercurials are considered the most potent most dependable and most rapid in action

The depressant effect of mercury upon the function of the tubular cells promotes the excretion of water by means of osmotic diuresis in the distal tubule It is debatable whether the main effect consists of blocking the reabsorption of chloride or sodium At any rate the rejection of the electrolyte enhances the excretion of water The advantage of organic mercurials over inorganic compounds lies in the fact that they are largely and rapidly excreted by the kidney Their low dissociability permits control of the degree to which renal reabsorptive capacity is reduced It is believed that their activity is due to the inhibition of the SH activated enzyme system presumably by the formation of mercaptides Strong evidence for this is the fact that certain mercaptans can prevent systemic mercury poisoning and the diuretic effect of the organic mercurials Dimercaprol (B A L) a dithiol analogue of glycerol is the most effective of the mercaptans and is used to treat acute mercurial poisoning

In planning a rational diuretic regime with mercurials one should bear in mind their many possible side effects These reactions can be divided into three major groups poisoning from either a single excessive dose or accumulative effects hypersensitivity to either mercury or a specific compound and the effects of excessive diuresis such as dehydration electrolyte depletion or acute urinary retention The allergic reactions may be prevented by not exceeding 1 cc in adults and 0 5 cc in children in the initial test dose Although deaths and serious side effects rarely occur the intravenous injection of mercurials should be avoided except in emergencies because of the danger of hypersensitivity and the occasional production of serious arrhythmias such as ventricular tachycardia ventricular flutter and ventricular fibrillation Dilution and slow infusion do not prevent such reactions The symptoms of hypersensitivity are usually mild following the first few injections by any route They are manifested by a subjective feeling of chilliness fever cutaneous eruptions or vomiting With subsequent injections more severe symptoms may occur and can ter

minate in irreversible shock and death Since hypersensitivity is usually limited to one specific compound it is best to change preparations at the appearance of any of these reactions An extremely rare allergic manifestation is agranulocytosis

Most of the organic mercurial preparations commercially available contain about 40 mg of mercury and 30 to 50 mg of theophylline per cc Table I lists some of the better known forms The usual site for injection is intramuscular

Mercaptomerin sodium U S P (thiomerin sodium) is the only one which does not contain theophylline The linkage of the mercury ion to sulfur results in comparatively little dissociation locally and the resultant tissue reaction is minimal For this reason it has been recommended for subcutaneous injection However when given by this route, the incidence of local reactions such as pain, ecchymosis and fibrous nodules is about twenty per cent [3] As this compound also has a higher incidence of sensitivity reactions than the other preparations it is not recommended for routine use

Merethoxylline procaine N N R (dicurin procaine) is also available for deep subcutaneous injection but preferably by the intramuscular route The drug should not be given to patients sensitive to procaine

The oral route of administration has been given extensive trial in the last decade Unfortunately absorption is erratic and the diuretic effect is uncertain Frequently the symptoms of mercurialism appear These symptoms are gingivitis, metallic taste, epigastric distress nausea, abdominal griping and colitis Chlormerodrin and mercumatilin are effective in daily doses ranging from one to four tablets About five to ten per cent of the ingested mercury is absorbed from the intestinal tract Oral administration of mercurials is not recommended for routine use

Suppositories of organic mercurials are available, however the absorption is unpredictable and rectal irritation occurs frequently This route is not recommended

The usual procedure is to start with an intramuscular test dose of 0 5 cc of one of the preparations The injection should be given in the morning or at least six hours before retiring to prevent interference with sleep If renal function is normal and no allergic symptoms or signs appear the patient may be started on either a course of 1 cc daily or 2 cc every other day Such a regime will prevent excessive accumulation of mercury in the tubules or excessive diuresis which may cause electrolyte imbalance The patient should be weighed daily or at least every other day The goal is to achieve and maintain the ' basal weight level rather than actual "dry weight which is the point where diuretics are no longer effective and when the patient is dehydrated When the "basal weight level has been achieved, the injections of mercurials are gradually spaced out in the hope that eventually they will become unnecessary In patients who are already partially or fully digitalized excessive diuresis is particularly undesirable as it may precipitate hypokalemia thereby increasing the toxicity of digitalis Redigitalization by the mobilization of cardiac glycosides from the extracellular fluid does not occur Recent studies[4] have shown that

there is very little digitalis in such fluid space and that the toxic effects are associated with a low potassium plasma level In patients with marked edema who are expected to require prolonged mercurial treatment the serum levels of sodium potassium chloride CO combining power and urea nitrogen are determined at the outset

Ammonium Chloride Often the acidifying salt NH_4Cl is employed therapeutically to enhance the effect of the organic mercurials

The mechanism of the diuretic action of NH_4Cl is based upon the increase of the chloride concentration of the extracellular fluid as the cation NH_4^+ is converted to urea and the replaced anion HCO_3^- rapidly goes to CO and H O An appreciable amount of the augmented chloride load to the tubules escapes reabsorption along with a cation predominantly sodium but also potassium and an isosmotic quantity of water The resulting net loss in extracellular fluid promotes the mobilization of edema fluid

As a result of the acidosis produced the renal defense calls for the excretion of chloride unaccompanied by fixed cation The kidney accomplishes this by elaborating ammonia secreting H^+ for Na^+ and thereby excreting Cl^- in combination with NH_4^+ Full compensation is achieved in three to four days at which time the renal excretion of ammonium chloride may equal that ingested

Clinically, therefore ammonium chloride is effective for a period of only one to two days As the drug may cause gastric irritation gelatin capsules are administered orally Enteric coated capsules are absorbed erratically The usual dosage is 8 0 to 12 Gm daily given in divided doses for one to three days the organic mercurial being administered on the second day In order to abolish the renal defense pattern three to four days should elapse between courses of ammonium chloride

Xanthines Since the introduction of the potent organic mercurial diuretics other milder diuretics have been almost completely abandoned Aminophylline (theophylline with ethylenediamine) is employed occasionally The diuretic effect is produced by an effect upon the renal tubules similar to that induced by mercurials There is also a brief increase in renal blood flow It should be remembered that xanthines do more than produce diuresis They stimulate respiration by lowering the threshold of the respiratory center to pCO Other effects are central nervous system stimulation increased cardiac work and smooth muscle relaxation as manifested by bronchodilatation and peripheral vasodilatation

Orally the various xanthines differ in potency Theophylline is the most potent Theobromine is slightly less potent but acts longer Caffeine is the weakest diuretic and has a more pronounced effect upon the central nervous system Oral absorption produces very low blood levels Rectal administration (suppositories) is slightly more effective The intravenous route achieves very high blood levels and clinical effectiveness The gastrointestinal irritation produced by oral administration in large doses prevents an effective blood level

Aminophylline (theophylline ethylenediamine) U S P is the most widely employed soluble theophylline salt It consists of a combination of

approximately 78 per cent anhydrous theophylline and 12 per cent ethylenediamine It may be given orally, intramuscularly intravenously and rectally In acute pulmonary edema, despite the report of rare deaths (presumably due to myocardial stimulation and/or excessive peripheral vasodilatation), it may be administered intravenously if well diluted and given over a period of ten to fifteen minutes The usual dose is 250 to 500 mg The blood level and presumably the clinical effect decreases about ten per cent every thirty minutes when given intravenously *To prevent nocturnal dyspnea, it may be given rectally in the form of a 500 mg suppository* Orally it may be given in plain and enteric coated tablets 100 to 200 mg three to four times daily

Other preparations that may be given are theobromine which is only given orally and choline theophyllinate (choledyl®) which has been introduced very recently The latter differs from other theophylline preparations in that it is a true salt rather than an addition product Oral absorption is greater and more rapid than with other theophylline preparations Gastrointestinal irritation is claimed to be greatly reduced The recommended oral dose is 100 to 200 mg four times daily Daily doses up to 1500 mg have been reported to be well tolerated

Carbonic Anhydrase Inhibition A new and different type of drug has been added recently to the list of diuretics Acetazolamide (diamox®) produces diuresis by interference with the catalytic effect of carbonic anhydrase in the renal tubules upon the reversible reaction between CO_2 and H_2O



$$CO_2 + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_2CO_3$$

As the important renal functions for conserving fixed cation depend upon the exchange of H^+ in the renal tubular cell with Na^+ in the tubular urine and as the source of H^+ is believed to be carbonic acid, it can be readily appreciated that when the rate of formation of carbonic acid is depressed (by the inhibition of carbonic anhydrase), H^+ and Na^+ exchange in the tubule is greatly reduced Bicarbonate reabsorption becomes incomplete titratable acid and ammonia disappear from the urine and an increased volume of alkaline urine is excreted without significant loss of chloride phosphate and the accompanying cations A metabolic acidosis develops Other renal transport mechanisms remain unaltered

If a single daily dose between 250 500 mg is administered, the peak effect is reached within two hours 70 90 per cent is excreted unchanged in the urine and the effect lasts six to twelve hours A dose lower than 250 mg orally is ineffective and the ceiling dose is 500 mg During the subsequent twelve to eighteen hours renal compensation restores the extracellular fluid to a normal level

The present recommended schedule is to administer 250 500 mg once daily for three to four days with a rest period of similar duration Toxic reactions are few Agranulocytosis has been reported The early appearance of paresthesias may disappear with continued administration Acetazolamide may be given with mercurials, each drug being given on alternate days

Restriction of Sodium Ingestion *Diets* In recent years with the growing understanding of the quantitatively reduced sodium excretion in patients with congestive failure and the resultant accumulation of salt and fluid in the body, sodium restricted diets have become very popular Such diets are most satisfactory with intelligent and cooperative patients To be effective the restriction must limit the intake of sodium to between 400 and 500 mg per day In some patients the sodium intake must be reduced to 150 to 200 mg Such a restricted diet unless supplemented with special protein preparations low in sodium will cause a marked reduction in protein intake There is still some divergence of opinion whether such a reduction is desirable The problem needs further investigation In moderate congestive failure the more liberal sodium intake of 400 to 500 mg is usually sufficient When sodium ingestion is severely restricted the use of mercurials can lead to dangerous electrolyte imbalance

The essential data necessary for planning a sodium restricted diet are the degree of sodium restriction desired other needed dietary alterations and the normal food habits and customs of the patient As these diets can be obtained in any well run hospital or from such sources as the National Academy of Sciences[5] details will not be presented here Several points however, should be emphasized The sodium content listed for foods is not always exact The label should always be read The statement that no salt has been added does not mean that the food itself is free of sodium In order to permit dietary control by serial estimations of urinary chloride excretion salt substitutes should not be used The preparation of food for this diet need not be complicated but the cook at home or in the hospital should exercise ingenuity in developing flavorings other than salt There are many flavoring aids that do not contribute significant amounts of sodium to the diet and may be used as desired Experimentation is essential in order to learn the correct amounts of flavoring In general it should be remembered that 'a little goes a long way' It is a simple matter to cook all meats and vegetables without adding salt A small amount of sugar added to vegetables during the cooking period helps to bring out the natural flavor of the food Fortunately many foods are now processed and packed without added salt or with reduced sodium content

It should be appreciated that there is a considerable amount of sodium in the water supply of some areas Similarly water softened by certain ion exchange systems is also high in sodium content Sodium bearing medicinals such as the bicarbonate based antacids or 'alkalizing preparations may be a problem Other medicinals containing sodium are certain saline cathartics barbiturates sulfonamides antibiotics salicylates and bromides Certain barbiturates are available which contain calcium rather than sodium Toothpastes and powders may contain considerable sodium Detergent residues on kitchenware and dishes may be a further source of adventitious sodium ingestion but if ordinary care is exercised such residues *are not important*

In planning a sodium restricted diet the patient should have good motivation adequate instructions relating to the need for the diet and sufficient information concerning its limitations This is the responsibility of

the physician and should not be delegated to others The patient should not be led to expect immediate or dramatic results and should know that improvement usually requires many weeks and even months of strict adherence to the diet In fact group discussions among patients on a low salt diet will provide incentive as well as useful information Encouragement by all those who come in contact with the patient is very important

Cation Exchange Resins Shortly after Segal and associates[6] introduced anion exchange resins as gastric antacids, Dock[7] found that cation exchange resins could prevent the intestinal absorption and promote the fecal excretion of sodium The mechanism of action is complex[8] and is not discussed in detail here The affinity of cations for the cation exchange resins, which usually contain H^+ or NH_4^+ in combination with the acidic groups, depends upon the relative concentration of cation and the 'exchange capacity' as well as the particular affinity for any one cation The divalent ions Ca^{++} and Mg^{++} have a greater affinity for the cation exchange resins than do the monovalent cations K^+, NH_4^+ and Na^+ arranged in the order of decreasing affinity

In practice the foregoing is important clinically in that a greater exchange with K^+ than Na^+ can occur in the neutral or alkaline intestinal tract particularly when sodium intake is restricted about fifty per cent The fecal elimination of sodium is decreased as its intake is decreased There may be a slow loss of calcium if the resins are given continuously

With increased fecal excretion of fixed cation and increased absorption of H^+ renal compensation is achieved quickly by the excretion of a highly acid urine containing large amounts of NH_4^+ and Cl^- The hypochloremic acidosis thus brought about, is soon lost with continuous medication although some degree of hypochloremia may persist and enhance the diuretic effect of organic mercurials Finally, a large dose administered to patients with normal renal function or a normal dose given to patients with impaired renal function can produce renal decompensation

In order to avoid severe disturbances in electrolyte metabolism, it has become the practice to employ mixed resins Carbacrylamine resins N N R (carbo resin) is a mixture of 87 5 per cent polyacrylic carboxylic acid resin for cation exchange and 12 5 per cent polyamine methylene resin for anion exchange Two thirds of the cation exchanger contains H^+, one third K^+ Each gram of resin will remove 1 mEq (23 mg) of Na^+ if the patient is on a daily diet of at least 3 7 Gm of sodium chloride Initially 16 Gm are taken orally three times daily between meals No more than 24 Gm is advisable for a single dose When it is necessary to prescribe more than 72 Gm per day the number of doses should be increased To absorb this bulk of medicine flavored preparations have been concocted to permit suspension of the resin in a glass of water Many recipes have been devised for incorporating the finely powdered resins in a wide variety of foods

Untoward effects from resin administration consist of mild acidosis during the first few days (if renal function is adequate) hypocalcemia, and gastric irritation In the prolonged administration of mixed resins calcium should be given, preferably at bedtime, to avoid interference from the ac

tion of the resin ingested during the day Finally, diarrhea may develop occasionally and fecal impactions of resin may occur on rare occasions in elderly patients

Since most patients prefer a low sodium diet alone to resin therapy the practical usefulness of cation exchange resins seems to be limited to those cases of congestive failure where low sodium diets and mercurials are no longer effective The resins also seem a useful tool to enhance the effects of mercurial diuretics However ammonium chloride is much more effective in this respect

Quinidine Congestive heart failure may be often associated with arrhythmias which impose an added burden to existing myocardial disease The most common of these arrhythmias are auricular fibrillation and auricular flutter Less common precipitants of congestive failure are ventricular nodal, and paroxysmal auricular tachycardias It is wiser to treat the congestive failure with digitalis diuretics and restricted activities before *considering conversion of the arrhythmia to a normal sinus mechanism* This principle is particularly true in auricular fibrillation and flutter In these conditions the ventricular rate will accelerate during the *conversion unless the AV node is protected by therapeutic dosage of* digitalis

It has been shown experimentally and clinically that a normal sinus rhythm between sixty and eighty five beats per minute not only produces a more efficient heart beat but also a higher cardiac output than is found in auricular fibrillation or auricular flutter The rates associated with auricular nodal and ventricular tachycardias of between 120 to 200 beats per minute are obviously much less efficient than a normal sinus rhythm at a normal rate Another factor to be considered is that in a high percentage of patients long standing auricular fibrillation with the formation of thrombi in the right and left atria poses a threat of lesser and greater circulation embolism These embolic phenomena are unpredictable and may be catastrophic Recent articles[9] suggest that the danger of embolism from conversion is about one seventh that of allowing auricular fibrillation to continue

Each case must be judged individually as to the merits or demerits of attempted conversion to normal sinus rhythm Some of the factors to be taken into consideration are (1) the existing mental status of the patient (2) the duration of fibrillation (3) the type and severity of heart disease (4) the ability of digitalis to control the ventricular rate in auricular fibrillation (5) the cooperation of the patient and family and (6) the amount of quinidine necessary to maintain normal sinus rhythm once conversion has occurred Some authorities feel that in auricular fibrillation without congestive failure in which the rate can be controlled easily by digitalis conversion should not be attempted The usual reasons cited are that (1) some patients with auricular fibrillation when converted to normal sinus rhythm present heart rates greater than 100 (2) there is a high incidence of embolic phenomena during or shortly subsequent to conversion to a normal sinus rhythm and (3) the administration of quinidine may cause death in a few instances In the last decade there has been a

general trend toward more active attempts at conversion to normal rhythm, particularly in auricular fibrillation Although no hard and fast rules have been set up, a few physicians feel safer if anticoagulants are given a week or ten days prior to attempted conversion in order to minimize embolic phenomena Those who have had extensive experience feel that the incidence of embolism during conversion is negligible and that prophylactic anticoagulant therapy is rarely necessary Conversion to normal rhythm and the maintenance thereof is about 100 per cent effective in people without apparent heart disease, about 90 to 95 per cent effective in those with mild to moderate arteriosclerotic heart disease, and just under 50 per cent effective in those with severe arteriosclerotic heart disease and moderate rheumatic or syphilitic valvular disease In some "hopeless" cases brilliant results have been obtained

The generally accepted plan for conversion from auricular fibrillation to a normal sinus rhythm is as follows After explaining the definite but small risk to the patient, the patient is fully digitalized A test dose of quinidine 100 to 200 mg is given orally the day before conversion is attempted The next day 200 mg may be given orally every two hours for five doses with a careful check of the pulse blood pressure, and ECG tracings It is not usually necessary to take an ECG tracing until just before the fourth dose to check for intramyocardial conduction delay and for other quinidine effects The next day 300 mg can be given every two hours for five doses on a similar schedule and on the third day of attempted conversion 400 mg may be given on the same schedule *

Another dosage schedule is to give on the first day 200 mg at 10 A M, 300 mg at 2 P M, and 400 mg at 6 P M, again examining before each dose for pulse blood pressure, and ECG evidence of intoxication The next day the initial dose can be 500 mg with a similar 100 mg increase per dose This dosage may be increased until the last individual dose in a day reaches 1 0 to 1 5 Gm Another method is to give 200 to 600 mg three to four times daily for several days A peak blood level is achieved within three to four days if the same dose is given daily

Once the rhythm has been regularized one should give 200 to 800 mg three times daily for two to three weeks depending upon the dosage at the time of conversion and then slowly drop the dosage staircasewise in the hope that 200 mg given two to four times daily will maintain normal sinus rhythm In some instances the patient will be unable to be maintained on these schedules In others the symptoms of "cinchonism" may prohibit conversion In such patients the use of long term anticoagulant therapy to lessen the dangers of thromboembolism should be considered very seriously

The appearance of *ventricular tachycardia* in a patient with severe myocardial disease may warrant the use of quinidine intravenously In such cases the drug should be well diluted given very slowly intravenously

---

* If conversion has not been achieved this dosage may be repeated for several days Rarely the dosage may be increased to 500 to 600 mg on successive days The danger of serious poisoning becomes more likely when more than 2 0 Gm are given daily 3 0 Gm per day are considered the maximal dose

monitored by serial ECG tracings, and stopped immediately if there is a severe drop in blood pressure ECG evidence of toxicity such as prolongation of the QRS and QT intervals or evidence that there is no auricular pacemaker present In the last instance continued quinidine administration will cause cardiac arrest Quinidine is the drug of choice for therapy of all supraventricular arrhythmias Procaine amide (pronestyl) appears to be equally effective in the correction of ventricular arrhythmias However several cases of agranulocytosis from procaine amide have been reported

Relief of Pain In patients with acute congestive heart failure or in those with Cheyne Stokes respiration the judicious employment of morphine sulfate in doses of 15 to 30 mg (¼ to ½ grain) will rapidly relieve the discomfort In acute pulmonary edema the injection of two thirds of this dose intravenously rather than subcutaneously may be life saving Morphine does not relieve Cheyne Stokes breathing but does make the patient less aware of it

Surgical Procedures In a few selected patients where the primary disease can be removed or corrected by surgery such a procedure is the treatment of choice *Congestive failure must be treated before attempting* surgery At present surgery is most successful in the following conditions arteriovenous fistulas hyperthyroidism stenosis of the mitral and aortic valves unaccompanied by a significant degree of insufficiency most cases of constrictive pericarditis severe pericardial adhesions and coarctation of the aorta The morbidity and mortality from surgical procedures in a patient with heart disease are not to be regarded lightly despite the magnificent progress in these procedures Certainly no patient should be subjected to surgery in whom there are no signs or symptoms of definite and progressive heart failure

Miscellaneous Forms of Therapy *Southey Tubes* Southey tubes have been used for a long time for draining edematous legs At present the tubes have been replaced by the use of No 20 gauge needles The procedure is to infiltrate the skin with 1 per cent procaine and then make multiple incisions with the needle Such a procedure is rarely used now except in the more severe forms of congestive failure when other treatments have failed Similarly subcutaneous punctures may be made in the edematous scrotum There will be a significant protein and electrolyte loss from paracentesis and thoracentesis Mobilization of edema fluid from the tissues accompanied by diuresis does not cause significant protein loss

Genitourinary Problems In the patient with prostatism diuresis may not be successful due to obstruction at the bladder neck An indwelling catheter may be used during the diuresis if the bladder is partially decompensated The catheter should be withdrawn as soon as possible to avoid introducing ascending infection and chronic bladder irritation During the period of catheterization sulfisoxale (gantrisin®) may be employed to minimize urinary infection The recommended oral dose is 0 5 to 1 0 Gm three times daily Fluids need not be forced and toxicity is low Later a transurethral resection may be of great benefit if the patient s condition permit

Phlebotomy Phlebotomies have been used for many years for acute pulmonary edema The rationale has been that the sudden reduction in venous pressure will relieve the backward failure of the heart More recently bloodless phlebotomy has been recommended either by rotating tourniquets or an apparatus that automatically produces a venous pressure sufficient to prevent return to the heart, but low enough not to prevent arterial inflow into the limb It is the writer's opinion that such procedures are rarely if ever necessary and are dangerous for several reasons (1) Actual phlebotomy, unless the patient is phlethoric may further increase an anemia that is already embarrassing the myocardium (2) tourniquets inadvertently have been left attached more than ten or fifteen minutes resulting in some permanent ischemia and in several instances actual amputations have been required, (3) acute pulmonary edema responds in the vast majority of patients to oxygen and morphine alone, and (4) such procedures are alarming and painful to the patient Further agitation and stimulation to the sympathetic nervous system aggravate the condition

Production of Hypothyroidism Blumgart has been recommending for many years the production of hypothyroidism in the euthyroid patient with intractable congestive heart failure to lessen cardiac work The original procedure was total or subtotal removal of the thyroid With the advent of goitrogenic drugs propylthiouracil was tried More recently I_{131} has proven to be the drug or tool of choice

The patient s basal metabolic rate is determined by use of iodine uptake BMR and/or the plasma bound iodine level I_{131} is then given in three or four well spaced small doses A single dose is more apt to produce a marked thyroiditis with the concomitant release of thyroxine and temporary hypermetabolism The metabolic rate and blood cholesterol are checked at intervals to determine the amount of hypothyroidism produced The effects do not appear for several weeks The final low metabolic rate may not be reached for three or four months Mild to moderate relief of symptoms is achieved in a little under fifty per cent of cases If the dose of radioactive iodine is too high myxedema is produced This usually aggravates and exaggerates the symptoms of congestive failure The myxedema can be relieved easily by daily administration of small doses of desiccated thyroid extract Although the results are not as striking as in the relief of intractable angina this form of medication is well worth trying in certain carefully selected patients

Prevention and Treatment of Complicating Factors The physician should be acutely aware of the possibility of certain complications The primary conditions that may produce congestive heart failure are surgically remediable conditions such as stenotic mitral and/or aortic valves the tetralogy of Fallot ventricular and atrial septal defects, patent ductus arteriosus coarctation of the aorta arteriovenous fistulas certain other congenital anomalies and constrictive pericarditis

Primary or complicating factors that can be treated medically include severe anemias hyperthyroidism hypoproteinemia hypothyroidism, vitamin B complex deficiency as manifested by beriberi heart disease and

thromboembolism It has been well demonstrated that hemoglobin levels below 12 Gm decrease efficiency and work output Primary pernicious anemia can produce congestive heart failure when the hemoglobin level drops to 4 or 5 Gm In this condition the use of liver extract and vitamin B_1 is much more important than digitalis salt restriction or diuretics Although a low serum albumen per se will not cause congestive heart failure any finding significantly below 4 mg per cent will enhance the accumulation of extracellular fluid A liberal protein intake and in emergencies salt free albumen injections will correct this disorder Hyperthyroidism occurs in about five per cent of patients with auricular fibrillation In hyperthyroidism accompanied by auricular fibrillation and congestive failure digitalis and diuretics may be unnecessary once normal metabolism has been reestablished Hypothyroidism with a high blood cholesterol level is often associated with coronary arteriosclerosis and myocardial damage The judiciously slow administration of thyroid extract should be employed This will prevent the precipitation of angina and myocardial infarction The ventricular hypertrophy and dilatation thought to accompany myxedema is in most instances due to pericardial effusion and will disappear during thyroid medication Beriberi disease is a thiamine chloride deficiency which produces congestive failure because of interference with intracellular enzyme activities The patient in chronic congestive heart failure often has subclinical nutritional deficiencies including avitaminosis due to the anorexic effects of dyspnea orthopnea and splanchnic congestion Prophylactically the patient should be given vitamin supplements and as liberal a protein diet as possible

The danger of thromboembolism in congestive failure is higher than previously suspected The venous stasis in the legs and pelvis due to edema and restricted activity may cause unsuspected thromboses and recurrent pulmonary emboli Such complications easily may be overlooked and considered part of the primary disease It has been claimed that thirty five per cent of the patients with heart disease have thrombi in the left atrium or left ventricle and that sixty five per cent of patients with myocardial infarction have postmortem evidence of thromboembolism Although these figures may be too high the serious implications cannot be ignored

In rheumatic heart disease and particularly that associated with auricular fibrillation there is a very high incidence of thrombi in the left atrium Such thrombi may produce recurrent cerebral embolism The acute type of embolism simulates a primary cerebral vascular accident The slow type may appear to be a progressive organic brain disease It is due to a slow fragmentation of the thrombus It has recently been demonstrated that four per cent of institutionalized patients with organic brain damage have multiple embolic infarcts [10] In such cases thrombi may not be identifiable at autopsy As a result today s clinician must think very seriously of long term anticoagulant therapy in chronic congestive failure particularly in those patients who have a past history of myocardial infarction [11] It remains to be demonstrated just how much protection can be provided by such therapy

Obstructive and infectious diseases of the urinary tract may aggravate the renal factor in congestive heart failure Routine renal function tests should always be done When prostatism is suspected the residual urine after voiding should be measured If there is a residual of more than 30 cc (1 ounce) the bladder size should be watched carefully during diuresis A catheter should be inserted if voiding becomes difficult Urinary infection should be treated vigorously by a five day course of sulfisoxazole (gantrisin®) or some similar drug If the infection is not eliminated, urine culture should be done and appropriate broad spectrum antibiotic therapy instituted

Finally hepatic hypoglycemia with confusion and coma has recently been described in congestive heart failure [1] Often this cannot be correlated with the apparent clinical degree of liver impairment As the manifestations of hypoglycemia are nonspecific and may be confused with other causes of disordered behavior, the real nature of the hypoglycemic episodes may not be recognized immediately If the observer is aware of its potential occurrence in any circumstance in which liver function is impaired, *though perhaps unobtrusively this condition can be corrected* easily and rapidly by the administration of 50 cc of 50 per cent glucose intravenously It is very important to recognize and treat hypoglycemia as soon as possible in order to prevent irreversible cerebral damage It is wise to withdraw some blood for a sugar determination just before the injection of glucose

Hazards in the Treatment of Congestive Heart Failure ***Iatrogenic Electrolyte Imbalance*** With the development recently of important means of exploring and influencing human ionic equilibrium and with the ever increasing employment of the principle of salt restriction iatrogenic salt depletion in its various forms has become more evident and much more frequent in the last fifteen or twenty years

In congestive failure the main therapeutic measures which contribute to salt depletion are (1) the mechanical removal of large volumes of salt containing fluids by thoracentesis, paracentesis, Southey tubes, and continuous gastric or intestinal suction without parallel administration of saline (2) stringent salt restriction (3) energetic mercurial diuresis (4) prolonged exchange resin therapy, (5) sudden relief of severe urinary retention, (6) prolonged use of ammonium chloride and similar salts, and (7) broad spectrum antibiotic therapy complicated by diarrhea medicamentosa

Salt depletion occurs more often when several of these factors are employed simultaneously, and particularly in the patient with congestive failure who is being treated with dietary sodium restriction, mercurial diuretics and ammonium chloride The use of exchange resins and diamox® further complicates the situation The various syndromes produced are described below

The Low Salt Syndrome The low salt syndrome is characterized by a decrease in plasma sodium and chloride concentration acidosis a decrease in urinary chlorides and an increase in blood urea The clinical manifestations are weakness drowsiness muscular cramps thirst unrelieved by

water, anorexia nausea vomiting decrease in urinary output, and re fractoriness to diuretics When salt depletion is severe, fluid retention will be enhanced Other clinical signs consist of restlessness mental confusion a fall in blood pressure increased pulse rate and the full blown picture of shock and coma

In mild cases this syndrome may be treated by giving salt orally either in soups or in sugar coated tablets In more severe cases salt must be given intravenously usually in a five per cent solution Not more than 200 cc should be administered at one time and should be given slowly A total of 400 cc should not be exceeded in a twenty four hour period

There are several methods to calculate how much sodium is required to achieve the normal extracellular level It has been found that often only one third or one half of a calculated dose is needed For this reason a cal culated dose should be administered in divided portions and by frequent estimations of the serum electrolytes One method of estimating the theo *retical amount required is based on the calculation that fifty three per cent* of body weight is total body water as in the following example

A man weighing 70 kilograms has about 37 kilograms of total body water If his serum sodium is 122 mEq liter then his total deficit of sodium is 142 minus 122 = 20 x 37 = 740 mEq As 1 Gm of sodium chloride contains 17 1 mEq of sodium then 100 cc of five per cent salt solution contains 17 1 x 5 = 85 5 mEq This patient will therefore require 740 divided by 85 5 x 100 = approx 860 cc of five per cent salt

Hypertonic salt frequently causes disagreeable side effects such as in tolerable thirst and thrombophlebitis In a number of cases the energetic use of five per cent salt has resulted in a downward course accompanied by increasing edema

Hypochloremic Alkalosis This condition is more common than the low salt syndrome It is most often produced by mercurial diuresis due to the proportionately greater elimination of chloride than of sodium Sodium remains at near normal levels while the serum chloride concentration de creases It may be avoided if injections of mercurials are spaced a few days apart and if ammonium chloride is administered concurrently Alkalosis develops with an increased bicarbonate level and urea retention A con comitant decline in serum potassium often occurs Milder cases may be given 3 to 6 Gm of ammonium chloride orally in solution or in gelatin capsules When the condition is acute a one per cent solution of am monium chloride in five per cent glucose should be given slowly at not more than 200 cc per hour and in a daily dose not exceeding 1000 to 1500 cc as only 10 to 15 Gm of ammonium chloride can be detoxified in the normal liver by conversion to urea in twenty four hours Most cases of congestive heart failure have some degree of liver insufficiency If am monium chloride cannot be tolerated 20 cc of the ten per cent acid dilute hydrochloric acid may be mixed in 600 to 1000 cc of water and given with meals in divided doses

Chronic Dilution Hyponatremia Chronic dilution hyponatremia may develop gradually in some patients with untreated congestive heart failure and in others receiving relatively conservative treatment As there is usu

ally a hypernatremia and total increase in body sodium in congestive heart failure this condition implies associated renal tubular dysfunction The patient should be fully digitalized and *not* given hypertonic saline The appearance of this syndrome at best implies a grave prognosis

Hyperchloremic Acidosis Hyperchloremic acidosis occurs most frequently in patients with impaired renal function Hyponatremia may coexist as well as hypokalemia This syndrome usually occurs in patients being treated energetically by the use of organic mercurials and constant ammonium chloride administration It may also occur as a result of the predominant removal of cation by resins Intermittent use of the resins or ammonium chloride with mercurial diuresis will help to avoid this complication

Hypokalemia Hypokalemia may result from the excretion of potassium during mercurial diuresis when dietary sodium is restricted It may also result from absorption of potassium by the resins and is only partly offset by the use of potassium containing resins Potassium depletion should be avoided in congestive heart failure as it enhances digitalis toxicity Clinically the symptoms of hypokalemia are weakness, malaise, tachycardia shallow respiration stupor, the so called fish mouth" expression and muscular paralysis The electrocardiogram may be helpful diagnostically When available frequent determination of serum potassium levels are indicated When hypokalemia is associated with hypochloremic alkalosis, potassium chloride is the drug of choice In acidotic states potassium citrate or acetate are indicated The daily oral dose is 3 to 6 Gm which must be regulated by determinations of serum potassium levels

Hypocalcemia Hypocalcemia may develop from the prolonged use of both the sulfonic forms of the cationic exchangers and the carboxylic resins Because of the frequently associated hypokalemia and acidosis clinical tetany rarely occurs

Bedrest The hazards of absolute bedrest have become more apparent in the last few decades The rigid restriction of patients to bed not only will produce muscular weakness and psychological changes, but may also favor the development of thromboembolism

Oxygen Although oxygen is very useful in the treatment of acute congestive failure it becomes dangerous when administered continuously for long periods The most serious complication is bronchial irritation leading inexorably to pulmonary edema and death This may occur in normal individuals or in animals when mixtures containing more than sixty five per cent oxygen are administered for more than twenty four hours 70 to 100 per cent oxygen should be given intermittently and for only six hours at a time The inhalation of pure oxygen favors the development of atelectasis by washing out nitrogen from the pulmonary alveoli In cor pulmonale chronic anoxia and severe carbon dioxide retention are present The sudden introduction of oxygen inhalation, where the main stimulation of respiration is the chemoreceptor drive may depress respiration to such an extent that carbon dioxide retention is markedly increased As the tension of CO rises in the blood its narcotic action produces drowsiness confusional psychoses, coma and death

Xanthines Xanthines not only induce diuresis but cause central nervous system stimulation bronchodilatation and the relaxation of smooth muscle anywhere in the body The two dangers of aminophylline therapy are its myocardial stimulating properties in a patient whose myocardium is severely damaged and the collapse or even death from peripheral vasodilatation that may occur during rapid injection

Ammonium Chloride Although the action of ammonium chloride as a diuretic is most helpful in enhancing mercurial diuresis and in the prevention of excessively low blood chloride levels it may be very dangerous in patients with impaired renal function A significant rise of blood urea level may occur Although this is not established as necessarily harmful the administration of a large dose such as 15 Gm a day to patients with normal renal function or smaller amounts to patients with renal insufficiency will lead to the accumulation in the blood of ammonia in concentrations toxic to brain tissue Psychoses and coma may appear In addition the acidosis produced by ammonium chloride ingestion may depress carbohydrate utilization This may complicate the management of patients with diabetes

Organic Mercurials Mercurial diuretics may easily produce hypochloremia and the low salt syndrome Muscle cramps, confusion stupor or a shocklike state may occur in patients on restricted sodium diets In addition a significant amount of other cations such as potassium and calcium may be carried off during mercurial diuresis Potassium loss induces or accentuates digitalis intoxication Mercurial poisoning can occur in those patients given mercury orally Excessive injections can cause renal tubular damage Intravenous administration may cause sudden death Finally, severe allergic reactions can occur

Dietary Restriction The increasing use of very low salt diets makes it imperative to avoid nutritional deficiencies particularly in proteins and the vitamin B complex Use of the Karell diet imposes additional deficiencies of calories iron and vitamins A C and thiamin Patients who require frequent mercurial diuresis should not be allowed to restrict their salt intake excessively Such restriction is best reserved for those who can be kept free of edema without mercurials

Ion Exchange Resins Although the use of ion exchange resins is not widespread it should be remembered that these agents can produce chronic potassium and calcium depletion The chief hazard is sodium depletion Gastrointestinal upset and acidosis may be caused by the ammonium chloride contained in some resins

Morphine Although morphine is strikingly beneficial in acute congestive failure particularly pulmonary edema it may cause untoward effects in some patients The most serious effect is depression of respiration particularly in cor pulmonale Other effects are constipation vomiting cutaneous itching impairment of bladder function in prostatism and hypotension in elderly patients Hypotension is produced by marked peripheral vasodilatation It may well precipitate collapse in severely ill patients who are maintained in the upright position

TABLE I

Generic Name (Trade Name)	*Organic Mercurial Content (mg /cc)*	*Mercury Equivalent (mg /cc)*	*Single Dose*	*Route*	*Marketed*
Meralluride U S P (Mercuhydrin)	130	39	1–2 cc	I M	1–2 cc ampules 10 cc vials
Mercurophylline Sodium U S P (Mercuzanthine)	135 100	38 28	1–2 cc 1–2 tablets daily	I M Oral	1–2 cc ampules Tablets
Mersalyl and Theophylline U S P (Salyrgan Theophylline)	150 120	39 6 32	1–2 cc 1 tablet daily	I M Oral	1–2 cc ampules Tablets
Mercumatilin N N R (Cumertilin)	132 67	39 20	1–2 cc 1–4 tablets daily	I M Oral	1–2 cc ampules Tablets
Mercaptomerin Sodium U S P (Thiomerin Sodium)	130	43	1–2 cc	I M	1 4 and 4 2 Gm vials made with 10 or 30 cc of sterile water respectively Also requires refrigeration Discard if turbid
Merethoxylline Procaine N N R (Dicurin Procaine)	100	39 3	1–2 cc	I M or deep s c	10 cc vials containing 50 mg per cc Theophylline 45 mg per cc Procaine base
Chlormerodrin N N R (Neohydrin)	18 3	10	1–4 tablets daily	Oral	Tablets

Digitalis Complications from digitalis therapy are becoming increasingly frequent This is due to rapid digitalization with the purified glycosides hypokalemia from the energetic use of diuretics, and lack of recognition of some of the more unusual forms of digitalis intoxication The physician should be aware of toxic manifestations such as diarrhea visual disturbances Stokes Adams attacks the sudden appearance of nodal tachycardia in a patient with auricular fibrillation and a change from normal sinus rhythm to auricular fibrillation and atrial tachycardia Finally it should be remembered that some patients can gradually become dedigitalized and may develop symptoms of congestive failure Redigitalization should be attempted cautiously before other preparations or therapy is instituted

Phlebotomy The production of phlebotomy either by withdrawal of blood or by decreasing the venous return from the limbs by means of tourniquets helps to relieve pulmonary congestion and edema The beneficial results are often outweighed by the deleterious effects Phlebotomy may increase a pre existing anemia the use of tourniquets may precipitate shock and also fever from impaired heat dispersal Respiratory activity may suddenly be increased shortly after tourniquets are released by the introduction into the circulation of large amounts of lactic acid and carbon dioxide accumulated during the period of stasis The discomfort of tourniquets may cause anxiety and restlessness Finally if tourniquets are left on too long ischemia and gangrene may ensue

SUMMARY

The management of congestive heart failure requires accurate diagnosis adequate but not too energetic treatment and the prevention and removal of conditions which complicate the existing heart failure

As congestive heart failure is primarily due to myocardial disease and secondarily due to the retention of salt and water in the tissues the prime requisite in the management of this condition is restoration of cardiac function to as near normal as possible In the milder forms of congestive failure restriction of activities and slow digitalization will accomplish this goal In the moderate forms of congestive failure restricted activity without absolute bedrest digitalization and accompanying mercurial diuresis will soon restore the patient to normal activities In acute congestive failure accompanied by pulmonary edema heroic measures may be necessary These include the judicious use of morphine and oxygen When a fast ventricular rate due to auricular fibrillation is present the use of a quick acting cardiac glycoside may be lifesaving

In the long term management of patients with congestive heart failure adequate digitalization must be achieved and maintained If this is not sufficient to prevent accumulation of fluid there are two alternatives The first is the use of intermittent organic mercurial diuretics accompanied by short courses of ammonium chloride The second is the use of a moderately restricted sodium chloride intake with diets containing 400 to 500 mg of sodium per day The use of both mercurials and a low salt diet concomi

tantly is risky It is imperative to guard against electrolyte depletion by intermittent estimations of the plasma levels of sodium, potassium chloride, and bicarbonate The long term use of anticoagulants may prevent thromboembolism In about fifty per cent of cases with intractable and severe congestive failure, the production of hypothyroidism will produce beneficial results

It is important to search for and remove any primary disorder that may cause congestive failure such as a surgically remediable condition hyperthyroidism, and thiamine deficiency Nutritional deficiencies anemias, and urinary disorders should be corrected

The physician must be aware of the dangers and toxic manifestations associated with the powerful drugs available for the treatment of congestive heart failure Such drugs include morphine, oxygen, digitalis, organic mercurials, xanthines, resins, ammonium chloride, and anticoagulants

Finally the physician must be willing to accept responsibility for the adjustment of the patient to his environment A balance must be struck between overoptimism and overzealous restriction of the patient's activities The patient with congestive heart failure now may live many years, and it is the duty of the physician to see that these years are productive and happy ones

SPECIFIC REFERENCES

1 Stead E A Jr Circulation 8 294 (Feb) 1951
2 Warshaw L J *et al* J A M A 145 1049 1951
3 Gold H *et al* Am J M Sc 223 618 1952
4 St George S *et al* J Clin Invest 32 1222 1953
5 National Research Council publication 325 2101 Constitution Avenue N W Washington D C July 1954 Price $1 00
6 Segal H L Hodge H C Watson J S Jr and Scott W J M Gastroenterology 4 484 1945
7 Dock W Tr A Am Physicians 59 282 1946
8 Symposium (Sobotka H Consulting Editor) Ann New York Acad Sc 57 61 1953
9 Goldman M J Am J M Sc 222 382 (Oct) 1951
10 Towbin A Arch Neurol & Psychiat 73 173 1955
11 Levinson D C and Griffith G C Circulation 4 416 (Sept) 1951
12 Mellinkoff S M and Tumulty P A New England J Med 247 745 1952

GENERAL REFERENCES

1 Modell W Recent Contributions to Diuretic Therapy Am J Med Sc 231 564 596 1956
2 Editorial Iatrogenic Salt Depletion Ann Int Med 39 152 157 1953
3 Love W D The Basis of Quinidine Therapy Am J Med Sc 229 89 10? 1955

MORRIS W STROUD 3RD M D

17

Digitalis

Introduction Digitalis has been employed as a therapeutic agent for centuries but it was not until 1785 that its value in dropsy' was *first recorded by Withering Its true place as a therapeutic agent in* congestive heart failure and certain cardiac arrhythmias has only been established in the last sixty years The intent of this chapter is to emphasize the basic principles underlying the clinical use of the digitalis and digitalis like agents To do so the historical background, chemistry, and physiologic and pharmacologic action of the glycosides are presented as a background to their clinical usefulness and potential toxicity

Historical Background The cardiac glycosides contained in a large number of plants have been used by primitive people for centuries for killing game with poisoned arrows and by ingestion for tribal ordeals Below are listed chronologically some of the important milestones in the medical aspects of these glycosides

Ca 1500 B C	Squill was mentioned as a medicine in the Ebers Papyrus
300 B C – 476 A D	The Romans employed squill as a diuretic heart tonic emetic and rat poison.
1250 A D	Digitalis (foxglove) was mentioned in the writings of Welsh physicians and was used internally or locally for a number of unrelated diseases ranging from epilepsy to skin ulcers
1242	Digitalis purpurea was described by Fuchsius the word digitalis deriving from the resemblance of the flower to a human digit
1775–1785	The English physician and botanist William Withering recognized that digitalis was the active agent in a remedy consisting of twenty or more different herbs After a ten year trial he published his famous account which set forth excellent rules for digitalis administration that went for the most part unheeded for over a century
1799	John Ferriar seems to have been the first to realize that the primary action of digitalis was upon the heart the diuretic effect a secondary one
1890	Sir Thomas Fraser discovered the digitalis like action of strophanthus while studying African arrow poisons
1911	Sir James Mackenzie felt that the principal therapeutic effect of digitalis was the slowing of the ventricular rate

ment in the steroid ring system, and the absolute necessity of an unsaturated butyro lactone ring at C 17

Semisynthetic derivatives have been made by reaction of aglycones with various substances As yet such compounds have not been made in sufficient quantity for clinical use An exception is acetylstrophanthidin which is prepared by esterification with acetic acid *via* OH at C 3 It differs from strophanthus glycosides in being fairly well absorbed orally It has been recommended as a tool to measure clinically the amount of ' digitalization "

Distribution and Fate of Digitalis [1,2,5] A good deal of factual knowledge concerning the distribution and fate of the cardiac glycosides in the human body has been accumulated from the three methods presently employed These consist of (1) observation of the subjective and objective effects of different preparations in different amounts (2) observation of randomly labelled digitoxin obtained by the biosynthetic method of growing digitalis plants in an atmosphere containing C^{14}, and (3) bioassay of various fluids and tissues by the very sensitive embryonic duck heart method

TABLE 1

Botanical Sources and Major Chemical Components of Cardiac Glycosides of Clinical Importance

	Plant Source	Precursor Glycoside	Split Off by Enzymatic and Mild Alkaline Hydrolysis	Glycoside	Split Off by Acid Hydrolysis	Aglycone or Genin
Digitalis	*D purpurea* (leaf)	purpurea glycoside A (desacetyl digilanid A)	glucose	digitoxin	digitoxose (3)	digitoxigenin
		purpurea glycoside B (desacetyl digilanid B)	glucose	gitoxin	digitoxose (3)	gitoxigenin
		—	—	gitalin	digitoxose (2)	gitaligenin (gitoxigenin hydrate)
	D lanata (leaf)	lanatoside A (digilanid A)	glucose + acetic acid	digitoxin	digitoxose (3)	digitoxigenin
		lanatoside B (digilanid B)	glucose + acetic acid	gitoxin	digitoxose (3)	gitoxigenin
		lanatoside C (digilanid C cedilanid)	glucose + acetic acid	digoxin	digitoxose (3)	digoxigenin
Strophanthus	*S Kombe* (seed)	K-strophanthoside	glucose	K-strophanthin β (strophanthin)	glucose + cymarose	strophanthidin
		K-strophanthoside	glucose (2)	cymarin	cymarose	strophanthidin
		K-strophanthin β	glucose	cymarin	cymarose	strophanthidin
		—	—	cymarol	cymarose	strophanthidol
	S gratus (seed)	—	—	ouabain (G-strophanthin)	rhamnose	ouabagenin (G-strophanthidin)
Scilla (Squill)	*Urginea maritima* or *indica* (bulb)	scillaren A	glucose	proscillaridin A	rhamnose	scillaridin A

*One mol of sugar or acetic acid is split off unless the number of mols is otherwise indicated in parentheses
From Goodman & Gilman 2nd Ed p 671

Absorption [1,2] Oral and rectal absorption of digitalis whole leaf and the purified glycosides is consistent and unaffected by moderate to severe intestinal disease On the other hand, strophanthus and squill are absorbed poorly and erratically Subcutaneous and intramuscular absorption is somewhat erratic, usually painful, and may produce sterile abscesses Intravenous absorption is uniform and effective for all of the purified glycosides

A comparison of the oral and intravenous dose of a cardiac glycoside preparation that must be given to achieve similar effects in patients suffering from combined atrial fibrillation and congestive failure reveal the following

$$\% \text{ absorption} = \frac{\text{Oral Effect}}{\text{I V Effect}} \times 100$$

Glycosides of squill (five to ten per cent) lanatoside C (ten per cent) digitalis powder and tincture digilanid and digifolin (twenty per cent) digoxin (twenty to fifty per cent) and digitoxin (100 per cent) Gastrointestinal absorption of the effective dose is usually complete for all the above mentioned drugs within two hours

Distribution [1,2] Once in the blood stream there is a variable time lag before full cardiac effect is achieved This seems to depend upon the binding by serum albumen This binding effect does not seem to alter qualitatively the cardiac action By the bioassay method digitoxin disappears from the blood fairly rapidly fifty per cent within a few minutes eighty five per cent after two hours while lanatoside C can no longer be detected in the serum at the end of thirty minutes Very little of the active principles get into extracellular fluid and the recorded digitoxin content of edema fluid has never exceeded 0 2 mg per liter Therefore mobilization of edema fluid does not mobilize digitalis enough to be of any clinical significance The toxic manifestation concomitant with massive mobilization and diuresis of extracellular fluid are presumably due to electrolyte distribution

Recent experimental work would indicate that digitoxin is not concentrated specifically in cardiac muscle that it can be easily washed out of the heart and that it is found in the soluble supernatant intracellular parts of cells but not in the nuclear and mitochondrial portions The inference is that the action is at the cell membrane rather than due to specific intracellular changes Some recent studies suggest that the glycosides may have a specific effect upon the actomysin threads of cardiac muscle

Elimination and Destruction [1] The actual fate of the cardiac glycosides is unknown What the metabolic degradation products are and whether they have little or significant biological activity remains to be solved About all that can be said at present, is that the liver appears to be involved in the degradation of that fraction of the active glycoside not excreted At present the radioisotope studies and the bioassay technic give conflicting pictures of the excretion of the digitalis glycosides Biological assay would indicate at least for digitoxin that there is a prolonged excretion (two to four weeks) of about one half of the active agent while the radioisotope technic shows that within one hour seventy four per cent of the labelled digitoxin is already in the molecules of degradation products Summing up not more than 0 05 mg of digitoxin per day is rendered

ineffective, but a good deal of the persistent effectiveness may well reside in unknown degradation products

Actions of Digitalis Fundamental Actions [5] The fundamental action of digitalis is its ability to increase the force and speed of myocardial contraction Since Vulpian first noted this effect upon the frog s heart in 1855 many investigators, including Cushny in 1897, have contributed to the literature on this subject More recently, to mention a few specific investigators, Cattell and Gold (1938), Kabat and Visscher (1939) and Wedd and Blair (1948) have shown conclusively that digitalis acts directly on heart muscle to increase the force of systolic contraction independently of other cardiac or extracardiac factors In addition the ventricle empties more completely and the relative length of time in each cardiac cycle occupied by systole is shortened These changes make for better diastolic filling and a potential increase of coronary flow of thirty per cent Just how this increased force of systolic contraction is obtained and why after digitalis the heart seems able to do a given amount of work with less consumption of oxygen (Gremels, 1933, Peters and Visscher, 1936) is unknown at present

The second most important effect of digitalis upon the heart in man is its action upon the rate and conduction of impulses through the heart At present it is felt that receptors in the heart and elsewhere are "sensitized by digitalis resulting in an increased vagal tone with a relative decrease in sympathomimetic tone In early digitalization this effect is mediated through the vagus and can be blocked by atropine, exercise or cooling of the vagal nerves In full digitalization as will be explained later, these actions are presumably mediated through the direct effect of digitalis upon the conduction system in the heart and cannot be blocked to any great extent by the agents just mentioned From the foregoing discussion one would feel that digitalis actually can improve the normal heart and exert a significant effect upon the heart rate and conduction of the specialized neuromuscular system of the normal heart That this is far from true can be easily explained The human heart under normal conditions is operating at maximum efficiency If we consider the left ventricle as the primary pump and the right ventricle as an outpouching that in most instances is passively following the action of the left ventricle and if we consider the left ventricle to operate as a symmetrical sphere, it can be easily deduced on theoretical premises that the heart operates mechanically within the correct boundaries for optimal efficiency in contraction and relaxation In the normal heart any increased force of contraction and increased emptying produced by digitalis brings the heart into a relatively inefficient range and actually prevents optimum filling under conditions of stress On the other hand, in the heart in congestive failure which is dilated beyond the normal range and in which the actual stroke volume is small and the systolic contraction relatively feeble digitalis by its unique action returns the heart to within normal limits for systolic and diastolic areas

The effect of the administration of digitalis to the normal person as far as the vagus and intrinsic conduction system of the heart is concerned produces little action upon the pacemaker (SA node) or the specialized conduction tissue within the therapeutic dosage range On the other hand

if the heart is in congestive failure there is a reflex slowing of the pace maker brought about by the improved stroke volume general circulation and tissue oxygenation In the cardiac arrhythmias in which digitalis is of help, effects of little importance for the normal heart become much more apparent To cite one example the effect of digitalis on the conduction of the A V node in the normal heart is insignificant while in the heart in atrial fibrillation where conduction through the A V node is of the utmost importance the effect is exaggerated as the ventricular rate is markedly slowed out of all proportion to the expected effect Of course other factors are important, such as the relief of congestive failure which in turn would tend to slow the ventricular rate The writer feels that digitalis must also have some unique action upon cardiac muscle that prevents excessive ventricular filling in the failing heart and subnormal filling in the normal heart If such a concept could be proven it would be most helpful Unfortunately there is no experimental evidence to back up this theory At present the evidence is in the other direction[1]

Collateral Circulatory Effects As outlined in the historical background of digitalis, observers have thought for many years that most of the changes in congestive heart failure could be explained by actions occurring outside of the heart The most recent claims which have been adequately refuted by more detailed investigations were that the primary action of digitalis was to lower venamotor tone and pressure The action of digitalis was likened to an acute phlebotomy and supporting evidence was produced experimentally indicating that a certain amount of blood could be trapped upon the administration of digitalis in the dog s liver and splanchnic area In careful studies such as those of Harvey Richards Ferrer and Cournand, and their respective coworkers it has been demonstrated conclusively in combined left and right ventricular failure that the increased cardiac output due to stimulation of the myocardium occurs *before* any measurable changes in central venous pressure and that there is no relation between the magnitude of fall in venous pressure and the degree of increase in cardiac output Similar studies in patients with isolated left ventricular decompensation showed that with digitalization there is a significant increase in stroke volume and cardiac output accompanied by a decrease in pulmonary arterial pressure These changes are achieved without alterations in right ventricle end diastolic pressure and could not be ascribed to the action of the drug on systemic venous pressure (Harvey 1949)

As to the effect of digitalis on the vascular flow in the specialized beds of the various organ systems there is no indication that digitalis has any direct effect Any increase or decrease in flow through cerebral renal or other special vascular beds may be considered at least for the present to be secondary to systemic changes produced by the direct effect upon the myocardium

Effects on Special Systems and Organs For a long time it was felt that digitalis had a direct diuretic effect upon the kidneys However digitalis is not an effective diuretic in the absence of congestive heart failure with the possible exception of noncardiac edema states associated with the presence of excessive circulating adrenal corticosteroids Increased renal venous pressure (usually found in congestive heart failure) decreases so

dium excretion and urine outflow The improved circulation induced by digitalis may lower the obnormally high renal venous pressure and thereby enhance diuresis Summing up, it may be stated that the increased diuresis following the administration of digitalis in congestive heart failure is secondary to the improvement of the action of the failing heart, but that there is some indication that a slight but significant effect on diuresis does occur in the normal individual perhaps by competing with some desoxy corticosterone like hormones in the renal tubular mass Other unimportant actions are the production occasionally of slight gynocomastia presumably due to the close chemical relationship to the sex hormones The production of gastrointestinal symptoms by the whole leaf preparations are in part due to direct irritation of gastric mucosa In toxic doses the effect is central in origin Finally but very rarely allergic phenomena may arise all of which are described later under the heading of digitalis toxicity

Relation to Cations [7] Although it has been known for many years from animal experiments that there was some relationship between digitalis effect and concentration of various cations it has only been recently that renewed interest and clinical investigations have occurred because of the availability of new technics such as the flame photometer The three important cations involved are sodium, potassium, and calcium At present there is no clearcut evidence that an excess or deficiency of sodium within the clinical range significantly affects the actions of digitalis upon the heart However it does so indirectly For instance it is well documented that in congestive heart failure the body tends to store sodium excessively If sodium is severely restricted in a patient's diet, significant diuresis may occur Conversely, the combined use of a severely restricted sodium intake and mercurials may result in the "low salt syndrome' with all the subjective objective and chemical findings listed elsewhere Such a clinical state impairs renal function and thereby the diuretic effect of digitalis It has been known for years that calcium has a synergistic action with toxic doses of digitalis both having a propensity to produce an excessive amount and duration of muscle contraction Although most texts and articles concerning the clinical use of digitalis quote one report on several sudden fatalities resulting from the intravenous administration of calcium to digitalized patients it has been the reviewer's impression that such a risk is more theoretical than actual Of course it would be foolish to administer calcium to a patient already showing toxic symptoms or signs of digitalis poisoning The cation that has been studied most recently is potassium Although the serum concentration of potassium may be altered very little in congestive failure, the total body content in its intracellular and/or extracellular distribution may be markedly disturbed Some potassium deficit of the cardiac muscle not necessarily associated with a low serum level commonly occurs in congestive heart failure This deficit may be compounded by anoxia, acidosis, inadequate nutrition and many therapeutic procedures such as dietary restrictions, mercurial diuretics, ammonium chloride resins and the use of carbonic anhydrase inhibitors Finally impaired renal functon diabetes, and the well known effect of cortisone in enhancing potassium excretion may increase such a deficiency Although high levels of serum potassium have profound deleterious effects

upon the heart it is not known whether they have any influence upon the therapeutic action of digitalis However it has been well documented that a low serum potassium will increase the toxicity of a given amount of digitalis whether the impairment is induced as mentioned above or withdrawn as by hemodialysis Digitalis toxicity may be abolished temporarily in man as in animals by the administration of potassium even when the blood level is within normal range It should be mentioned that potassium ion loss by heart muscle occurs with digitalization the loss apparently proportionate to the degree of digitalization

Quantitative Differences in Digitalis Preparations The quantitative differences between the various preparations of digitalis employed in the treatment of congestive heart failure depend upon their rate and degree of absorption from the gastrointestinal tract the uniformity in composition or potency of any one preparation, how much the preparation is bound to the plasma and the rate of decay and elimination of the particular agent In Fig 2 may be seen a chart illustrating what an average single dose of representative fast and slow acting glycosides will do The curves illustrate the marked variation in the time for full effect to be reached and the variability of decline not only among the different preparations but also for the same one It should be mentioned in passing that the *qualitative* biological effects of the cardioactive glycosides are almost identical However there still is some controversy on this subject Some European observers feel that strophanthus and its derivatives exert a relatively greater influence upon the myocardium than upon the Purkinje system The sudden and sustained popularity of digitoxin around 1940 due to the enthusiasm of Gold and his associates finally provoked an interesting and provocative editorial (Ann Int Med April 1954) The editorial pointed out that the very advantages claimed for digitoxin such as the lack of gastrointestinal upset has been one of the most serious drawbacks to its clinical use The reason is that there may be little warning of the onset of such toxic conditions as a serious arrhythmia or a drug induced congestive heart failure Although much of the toxicity observed in the last fifteen years has resulted from misguided and rigid therapeutic schedules it is easier to slip unnoticed into toxicity with a purified glycoside such as digitoxin than with the whole leaf preparation in which digitoxin is the main therapeutic agent Batterman and his associates have claimed that gitalin has a greater margin of safety than other agents Similar claims have been made in the past for other preparations and at present there is no proof positive that any one agent is definitely superior to any other under ideal supervision

Indications and Contraindications for Digitalis Administration ***Congestive Heart Failure and Potential Heart Failure*** The most important use of digitalis is in congestive heart failure By definition congestive heart failure means impairment of the myocardium with a consequent reduction in the mechanical efficiency of the heart resulting in impending or overt signs described below In isolated left ventricular failure dyspnea orthopnea and signs of pulmonary congestion develop With combined left and right ventricular failure there is a marked weight gain the appearance of peripheral edema to a greater or lesser extent and a congested

painful liver in addition to the pulmonary findings In isolated right ventricular failure the pulmonary signs and symptoms are absent Often there is an insensible collection of extracellular fluid before these symptoms and signs of failure appear In a suspected or known case of congestive heart failure, this can be most easily recognized by frequently weighing the patient A weight gain of 2 27 to 2 72 kg (5 to 6 pounds) may occur before the overt signs appear When congestive failure is not secondary to initial myocardial damage in conditions such as cardiac tamponade, digitalis is not only useless but can be harmful

The effectiveness of digitalis will vary depending upon how much of the failure is due to direct myocardial disease, valvular obstruction, and whether the myocardial damage is an acute inflammatory or degenerative one However, digitalis may always be tried if the heart is enlarged and congestive phenomena are present Similarly where overt signs and symptoms are not present in sufficient number or degree to make a positive diagnosis a careful trial of digitalis is indicated In most instances when there is no symptomatic improvement or sign of weight loss after adequate digitalization, the drug should be discontinued Opinion does differ concerning the value of giving digitalis to a patient with an enlarged heart but in whom failure has never appeared Such 'prophylactic digitalization' recommended by Christian in the 1930 s has never been fully accepted

Cardiac Arrhythmias 1 *Sinus Tachycardia and Bradycardia* Digitalis is never indicated in either of these two conditions unless there is definite danger or accompanying signs of the development of congestive heart failure secondary to a persistent tachycardia

2 *Paroxysmal Atrial (Auricular) Tachycardia* This arrhythmia unlike simple sinus tachycardia has an abrupt onset and abrupt cessation It is often induced by sudden emotional stress and may be stopped by simple procedures that stimulate the vagal reflexes Such measures include carotid sinus massage and painful stimuli If the attack is prolonged and if signs of heart failure are developing digitalis is the drug of choice Digitalis may be given in intravenous form to sensitize the afferent receptors that increase vagal tone" Within a half hour of injecting a cardiac glycoside such as lanatoside C (0 4 to 0 8 mg) the rhythm may revert spontaneously to normal or carotid sinus massage may become effective Other measures are available such as the use of parasympathomimetic drugs or drugs that induce similar vagal reflex by their baroreceptor effect induced by the elevation of arterial blood pressure However such drugs may be contraindicated There is the potential danger of inducing cardiac standstill ventricular fibrillation and death by the use of parasympathomimetic drugs The introduction of hypertension by sympathomimetic drugs may overwhelm a diseased heart Carotid sinus massage is not an innocuous procedure in elderly people as it may cause syncope or convulsions It has been known to precipitate cerebral vascular thrombosis in rare instances

3 *Ectopic Atrial or Ventricular Systoles* Digitalis *per se* will not abolish ectopic atrial or ventricular systoles However impending congestive failure, particularly in rheumatic valvular disease may be heralded by the onset of ectopic atrial beats In such instances digitalizaton may abolish the aberrant focus by improving the nutrition and oxygenation of the

atrium and by relieving the increased atrial pressure caused by the failing left ventricle Theoretically the same may hold true for ectopic ventricular beats but in actual practice digitalis is rarely indicated In fact ectopic ventricular beats in an otherwise normal heart usually can be abolished by exercise or by eliminating stimulants such as tobacco and coffee It should be remembered that the appearance of ectopic ventricular beats during digitalis administration are often the first signs of intoxication

4 *Atrial Flutter* [4] Atrial flutter is a disorder of atrial activity characterized by rapid regular abnormal contractions ranging from 220 to 400 per minute initiated by an ectopic pacemaker Very rarely can the A V node conduct all such impulses The usual arrhythmia consists of an auricular rate of around 300 per minute followed by a ventricular response of 150 per minute (2 1 block) Unless the heart is essentially normal and there are no signs or symptoms of impending or actual congestive heart failure digitalis is the drug of choice If direct conversion of the abnormal rhythm to a normal sinus rhythm is attempted with quinidine a sequence of events occurs which is potentially dangerous to the diseased heart Quinidine will slow the ectopic pacemaker and at the same time improve conduction through the A V node Before the ectopic focus is abolished a 1 1 response may occur at rates around 180 to 220 This sudden acceleration of ventricular rate has occasionally caused acute cardiac failure and sudden death The routine use of digitalis will prevent this Digitalis will impair A V node conduction and the ventricular rate will slow as the 2 1 block increases variably to 3 1 and 4 1 Finally the arrhythmia changes to auricular fibrillation with a ventricular rate well below 100 which is not influenced significantly by exercise or atropine

In most instances a conversion from atrial flutter to atrial fibrillation occurs in the therapeutic range of digitalis dosage As soon as it occurs the digitalis dosage can be dropped to a maintenance one At this point if indicated quinidine may be administered with full assurance that the ventricular rate will not rise significantly as the A V conduction is impaired by both a reflex vagal and direct effect upon the A V node Occasionally it will be found that the administration of digitalis will cause a direct conversion to normal rhythm It can be assumed that in this event atrial flutter was induced by dilatation of the atria anoxia and impaired circulation Digitalis relieved this condition by improving the stroke efficiency restoring normal circulation and thereby eliminating the ectopic atrial pacemaker There is no good evidence that digitalis administration prior to attempted conversion to normal rhythm by quinidine will lessen the chances of success

5 *Atrial Fibrillation* [4] Briefly atrial (auricular) fibrillation is a cardiac arrhythmia in which the rate of the ectopic atrial pacemaker(s) exceeds the ability of the atrial muscle to follow in an orderly fashion Electrically and physically the atrial muscle responds in a chaotic disorganized fashion as manifested both by the f' waves which replace the P wave in the ECG and by the bag of worms' recorded by high speed motion pictures during direct visualization at surgery or experimentally The f waves beat irregularly against the A V node As a result the irregular irregular' ventricular response varies between 140 to 180 beats per minute in the

absence of any impairment of A V node conduction In the presence of pre existing impairment of A V node conduction the ventricular rate may be much slower (60 to 140 beats per minute)

The principles for the use of digitalis in atrial fibrillation are essentially the same as those for atrial flutter In an otherwise normal heart paroxysmal atrial fibrillation can be treated by quinidine without prior digitalization Where there is a history and/or physical findings suggestive of organic heart disease, digitalization should be accomplished before any attempted conversion to normal sinus rhythm The conversion of atrial fibrillation to normal sinus rhythm by quinidine can be shown to go through an intermediate stage of atrial flutter in most instances if continuous ECG tracings are taken Therefore the same dangers are present for the diseased heart as described in the previous paragraph for atrial flutter (Q V) Digitalis tends to perpetuate the atrial fibrillation and at the same time slow the ventricular rate by its vagal and direct action upon the A V node Full digitalization is not accomplished until a significant direct effect upon the A V node is indicated by the poor response of the ventricle to moderate exercise or atropinization The usual clinical picture is a completely irregular ventricular rate between 140 and 170 per minute with occasional ectopic ventricular beats which are due to the poor circulation and anoxia These ectopic ventricular beats are *not* a contraindication to digitalis therapy As the ventricular rate is slowed they will tend to disappear

The ventricular response to digitalization is much more striking when congestive heart failure accompanies the arrhythmia because of the combined effects of digitalis upon the A V node and upon the failing left ventricle In rare instances digitalization will directly convert the atrial disorder to normal rhythm presumably for the same reason given for atrial flutter Hyperthyroidism should always be considered as an etiological factor in the production of atrial fibrillation, although the incidence is probably less than five per cent There are two reasons for this (1) Experimental work has shown that digitalis may cause myocardial damage when administered to drug induced hyperthyroid animals In actual practice this theoretical possibility may be ignored (2) Control of the ventricular rate in the presence of hyperthyroidism by digitalis is less efficient

6 *Partial and Complete Heart Block* In first degree heart block where the P R interval is lengthened as an indication of impaired conduction by the A V node or in second degree heart block where there is A V conduction block with occasional dropped ventricular beats digitalis is not indicated Rather an attempt should be made to improve conduction of the A-V node by the use of sympathomimetic agents to decrease any vagal component However, in a supraventricular rhythm varying with third degree heart block, (complete dissociation between the atria and the ventricles) digitalis may be the drug of choice when other drugs have failed to reconvert and maintain sinus rhythm The main reason for this is occurrence in one form of the Stokes Adams syndrome in which periods of unconsciousness sometimes accompanied by convulsions may occur because of an asystolic period during the transition to an idioventricular rhythm Digitalization may cause and maintain complete heart block by its known paralyzing effect upon the A V node and thereby prevent such

occurrences There is a common clinical impression that digitalis should not be used in the presence of complete heart block The stated reason is that administration of digitalis may slow the heart rate further causing more circulatory failure In actual practice if latent or overt congestive heart failure is present digitalis should be used as outlined previously for congestive heart failure and potential failure

7 *Ventricular Tachycardia* Paroxysmal ventricular tachycardia is rarely an indication for digitalis In fact the presence of such an arrhythmia suggests the possibility of digitalis toxicity Other measures should be ener getically employed before digitalis is considered For the sake of complete ness it should be mentioned that in a few instances digitalis has been reported effective after all other forms of therapy were exhausted Pre sumably the administration of digitalis relieved congestive heart failure and thereby abolished the ectopic ventricular pacemaker Such instances are rare and other accepted measures should be tried first

7a **Coronary Insufficiency and Myocardial Infarction** In coronary in sufficiency (angina pectoris) without congestive heart failure digitalis sel dom proves of benefit Occasionally the administration of digitalis to patients with an advanced degree of coronary atherosclerosis may increase the symptoms In the average case it is unlikely that digitalis will change the symptoms as the effects upon coronary circulation and cardiac work are insignificant When congestive heart failure is present digitalis admin istration is indicated but should be given with caution as such patients presumably are particularly susceptible to ventricular fibrillation Occa sionally not only the dyspnea but also the pain may be relieved In acute coronary occlusion accompanied by myocardial infarction digitalis is not indicated unless the indications noted previously are present such as auricular fibrillation and congestive failure In these cases digitalis should be administered with extreme caution and constant supervision Theoreti cally the increased force of myocardial contraction the more complete ventricular emptying and the increased velocity of blood circulation might induce embolic phenomena arising from thromboses in the heart chambers or peripheral vessels The use of anticoagulants should reduce this poten tial hazard

7b **Conditions Not Primarily of Cardiac Origin** (1) Anemia and Poly cythemia Digitalis is of no value in these conditions If indications of congestive heart failure persist after the primary disorder is treated ade quately digitalis should be tried

(2) Hypo and Hyperthyroidism In hypothyroidism or myxedema con gestive phenomena may occur The dilated heart noted on physical and x ray examination has been shown to be due to a pericardial effusion rather than an actual dilatation of the heart chambers Digitalis is not indicated in this condition Some form of thyroid should be given In hyperthyroidism agents that will lower the basal metabolic rate are indi cated Digitalis may be used if atrial fibrillation and congestive heart failure are present with the note that the hyperthyroid heart is more susceptible to digitalis toxicity than the normal one

(3) Nutritional Deficiencies In beriberi of advanced degree with exten sive edema cardiac enlargement and pronounced dyspnea the parenteral

administration of vitamin B_1 in large doses causes the disappearance of the abnormal clinical features In actual practice latent thiamin and other B complex deficiencies may occur in patients with prolonged heart failure due to a poor dietary intake In consequence adequate vitamin administration using the whole B complex as well as thiamin is indicated In these nutritional disorders with congestive failure the heart is probably functioning reasonably well and in actuality there is a high cardiac output Digitalis is of no benefit as the fault is basically a blockade in carbohydrate utilization with pyruvate accumulation

(4) Nephritis Acute glomerulonephritis or the nephrotic syndrome may produce a condition sometimes hard to distinguish from congestive heart failure Unless it can be proven that cardiac failure is also a factor in the production of the edema, digitalis is contraindicated

(5) Pulmonary Disease In advanced pulmonary disease whether primarily of the lungs or of the pulmonary blood vessels right sided heart failure may occur (cor pulmonale) eventually accompanied by congestive phenomena Although the results are not as striking in this type of failure as in either acute left sided or combined left and right sided failure digitalis should be tried The results are variable If digitalization produces no change or if the symptoms and signs of failure increase or are not changed by digitalization the drug should be discontinued Other measures such as phlebotomy, bronchodilators and antibiotics should be considered

(6) Pregnancy Pregnancy places a temporary load upon both the normal and abnormal heart There is absolutely no indication for the use of digitalis in a patient with a normal heart who has been adequately observed from the first trimester False signs of congestive failure in the last trimester are due to the increased blood volume pressure of the near term baby upon the pelvic vessels and upward displacement of the diaphragm On the other hand pregnancy in a woman with chronic heart disease requires careful evaluation throughout the pregnancy As pregnant women with organic heart disease have a death rate twice that of pregnant women without heart trouble, everything should be done to lessen this heavy toll The same rules apply in pregnancy for the use of digitalis as in congestive heart failure and the arrhythmias Prophylactic digitalization prior to delivery may well be indicated in the most severe cases The subject is adequately covered elsewhere in this volume

ADMINISTRATION OF DIGITALIS

(a) Official Preparations
(b) 8 criteria of acceptance
(c) Guides to safe digitalization
(d) Fast and Slow digitalization

Administration of Digitalis Preparations [1,2,3,4] To administer the cardiac glycosides intelligently and expertly requires a good deal more knowledge skill and repeated observation of the patient than do other forms of therapy The physician must know what conditions to treat, what to expect

from treatment and what can be expected of each type of preparation He must have some knowledge of prior digitalization be able to differentiate the signs and symptoms of congestive heart failure from those of digitalis intoxication and be able to not only diagnose the arrhythmias amenable to digitalis therapy but also to be on the alert to avoid adding further digitalis to a digitalis induced arrhythmia The indications for digitalization and the signs and symptoms of digitalis intoxication are covered in other sections of this chapter This section deals mainly with the different digitalis preparations and the general rules for their administration

Before discussing the administration of the cardiac glycosides it is most important to have a clear cut picture of the various preparations available their dosage range and some idea of the onset and duration of biological activity Only the official digitalis preparations are covered in this section Following are listed such preparations and also illustrative tables (II & III) Fig 2 also illustrates the different rates of biological absorption and excretion

DIGITALIS PURPUREA PREPARATIONS[5]

1 Digitalis tablet U S P This preparation is usually available in 0 1 Gm tablets but can also be obtained in a powder injection and tincture It is prepared from the dried leaves of digitalis purpurea and contains 0 2 to 0 4 per cent digitoxin plus digitonin digitalin antirhinic acid digitalosin digitoflavone inositol and pectin The biological assay of the whole leaf preparation is based upon measurement of the lethal dose in pigeons Each commercial sample must be assayed against a standard (U S P digitalis reference) One U S P unit is defined as 0 1 Gm of reference standard The present standard is U S P XI and is approximately thirty per cent stronger than the U S P X prior to 1936 when the whole leaf was assayed in cats against the U S P unit

1 a Digalen N N R This preparation contains in the amorphous state the natural mixture of cardiac glycosides of the whole leaf separated from the inert substances It is standardized exactly as the Digitalis tablet, U S P Although it may be given orally in liquid or tablet form its main usefulness is that it can be given intravenously when oral whole leaf medication is contraindicated It is available as a sterile solution in ampules (0 5 U S P unit per ml) Thus 2 ml is roughly equivalent to 0 1 Gm of the powdered whole leaf

1 b Digifolin N N R Exactly the same as digalen

2 Digitoxin tablet U S P It is derived from a natural glycoside of digitalis purpurea by the removal of glucose The commercial preparation is usually a mixture of cardioactive glycosides The purity must be at least ninety five per cent and strength within twenty per cent of the U S P reference standard As gitoxin is measured as digitoxin in this chemical assay commercial samples of digitoxin U S P have been found to contain varied but appreciable amounts of gitoxin which have relatively little biologic cardioactivity Therefore there may be a wide variation in the biologic activity of the various commercial digitoxin preparations A few of the various trade names include digitoxin digitaline nativelle unidigen purodigen and digisidin

3 Gitalin (amorphous) N N R This preparation is also known as gitaligin It is a mixture of amorphous glycosides obtained from digitalis purpurea The drug is assayed biologically by the U S P method for digitalis It was formerly known as verodigin N F

DIGITALIS LANATA PREPARATIONS[5]

1 Digilanid, N N R This preparation is a mixture of the amorphous crystallized lanatosides A B and C obtained from digitalis lanata leaves Proportions are as they naturally occur, forty seven per cent A, sixteen per cent B, and thirty seven per cent C Its actions are almost identical to the official digitalis leaf and it is assayed gravimetrically

2 Lanatoside A There are no commercial preparations for this glycoside, but digitoxin and acetyl digitoxin are derived from it, the first by removal of glucose and acetyl while the latter is derived by removal of glucose but not of acetyl

3 Lanatoside B No commercial preparation is available

4 Lanatoside C U S P Its potency is obtained by pigeon bioassay and may legally vary from 85 to 120 per cent of the lanatoside C reference standard It is marketed only for oral administration and usually contains 0 5 milligrams of the glycoside

5 Deslanoside (deacetyl lanotoside C) U S P is derived from lanatoside C by alkaline hydrolysis The loss of the acetyl group makes the glycoside more soluble and more stable than its precursor Otherwise its actions are identical It is assayed colorimetrically against the standard preparation It is marketed in two and four milliliter ampules each milliliter containing 0 2 milligrams of drug for intramuscular or intravenous use

6 Digoxin, U S P Digoxin is pharmacologically similar to lanatoside C and is derived from it by removal of glucose and acetyl groups It contains between 90 to 110 per cent of labelled contents and is assayed colorimetrically, the reference material being a standard digoxin

STROPHANTHUS AND OUABAO PREPARATIONS[5]

1 Ouabain (G strophanthin) U S P It is a sterile aqueous solution for injection each ml of which contains 0 25 or 0 5 mg of drug It is a pure glycoside but must be bioassayed by the official digitalis method (pigeons), a standard ouabain preparation being employed as a reference material It is for intravenous use only and is obtained from the seeds of *Strophanthus gratus* or from the wood of *Acocantheria schimperi* (ouabao tree)

2 Strophanthin N F Like ouabain it is prepared only for intravenous injection each ml usually contains 0 3 or 0 6 mg of strophanthin It is either a glycoside (K strophanthin B) or a mixture of glycosides obtained from the strophanthus Kombe After assay it is standardized to half the potency, per milligram of ouabain U S P, K strophanthoside, a natural glycoside isolated from the mixture

3 Acetyl strophanthidin It is a synthetic elaboration of the aglucone strophanthidin It is biologically assayed in cat units against a reference standard 0 5 mg of the drug is approximately three cat units equivalent to 0 3 Gm of powdered whole dry purpurea leaf

SQUILL PREPARATIONS

1 Scillaren N N R Urginea maritima ("sea onion) contains two natural glycosides component A and component B in the proportion of about two parts of A to one part of B Scillaren is a purified stable chemically standardized preparation containing A and B in the same proportions as occur naturally The drug is assayed gravimetrically and is available only for oral administration in tablet form (0 8 mg) and in solution (0 8 mg /ml)

2 Scillaren B N N R This preparation consists of the amorphous component B It is for intravenous use and is marketed in 1 ml ampules containing 0 5 mg of the drug

3 Urginin N N R This preparation is similar to Scillaren except the components A and B are in equal portions It is marketed as oral tablets containing 0 5 mg of the drug It is assayed gravimetrically as are all the squills as well as by the U S P method for digitalis

EIGHT CRITERIA OF ACCEPTANCE[5]

Of the eight criteria of acceptability of the digitalis preparations as listed by Goodman and Gilman six of the criteria are found equally in all the preparations at present used clinically These criteria are listed below

1 Effective myocardial action
2 Uniformity of potency (The purified glycosides may be slightly more uniform than the whole leaf preparation)
3 Ease of administration
4 Drug stability
5 Adequate intestinal absorption (exception ouabain and strophanthin)
6 Cheapness
7 Margin of safety (therapeutic toxic ratio)

In most of the preparations the therapeutic range seems to be two thirds of the toxic level Several recent articles suggest that as far as gitalin is concerned the therapeutic level may be about thirty six per cent of the toxic range Animal preparations do not bear this out Final judgment must await further well controlled studies

RATE OF ACCUMULATION AND ELIMINATION[1 2 3]

Under this heading a clinician has four possibly five different rate categories as illustrated in Table 2 and Fig 2 describing the rapidity of onset of action the duration of action and the rate at which the effect decreases * The fastest acting acetyl strophanthidin is of no use as a therapeutic agent *per se* but can be a useful tool in determining rapidly the need for digitalis in doubtful cases The second group which consists of ouabain and strophanthin may be used in emergencies for very rapid action but only intravenously and are not recommended for long term usage The third group lanatoside C and deslanoside have an action which is almost as rapid in onset as strophanthin and ouabain but the action may persist for

* In Table III may be found dosage tables for the official digitalis strophanthus and squill preparations Such a table emphasizes the need for individualizing the digitalizing oral and intravenous dose and daily oral maintenance dose

TABLE 2

RAPIDITY OF ONSET AND DURATION OF ACTION OF CARDIAC GLYCOSIDES

Agent	Route	Starts	Action Maximal	Regresses	Gone
A Acetyl Strophanthidin	I V	30 sec –5 min	12 min	30 min	2 hours
B Strophanthin / Ouabain	I V	3–10 min	½–2 hrs	8–12 hrs	1–3 days
C Lanatoside C	Oral	30 min	1–2 hrs	16–36 hrs	2–3 days
	I V	10 min	1–2 hrs	16–36 hrs	2–3 days
Deslanoside	Oral	30 min	1–2 hrs	16–36 hrs	2–3 days
	I V	10 min	1–2 hrs	16–36 hrs	2–3 days
D Gitalin	Oral	60 min	6–7 hrs	2–3 days	5–7 days
	I V	5–10 min	6–7 hrs	2–3 days	5–7 days
Digoxin	Oral	2 hours	4–6 hrs	2–3 days	4–7 days
	I V	½ hour	4–6 hrs	2–3 days	4–7 days
E Digitoxin	Oral	2 hours	2–9 hrs	2–3 weeks	3 + weeks
	I V	½ hour	2–9 hrs	2–3 weeks	3 + weeks
Digitalis Leaf	Oral	6 hours	12–48 hrs	1–2 weeks	2–3 weeks

several days Gitalin and digoxin have a slightly slower onset and a somewhat longer action while the final group of digitoxin and digitalis take about two hours for the onset of action and two to three weeks for terming tion of any measurable action Thus at the present time the clinician has cardiac glycosides with action ranging from a fleeting flash like effect to a stable persistent action of two to three weeks

One point that may not be evident from the graphs and the description of the drugs should be emphasized As yet there is no ideal method of standardization of the individual drugs or even batches of the same drug All the bioassay and gravimetric methods have objectionable features However on the whole the variation between batches of the same drug are minimal and if the following rules of administration are carried out this objectionable feature becomes more theoretical than real

GUIDES TO SAFE DIGITALIZATION

1 *Never give the drug without ascertaining whether digitalis has been given previously* All too often this phase is neglected The electrocardiogram is not a reliable method for determining the degree of digitalization A judicious telephone call to the previous physician or hospital is mandatory If such information is unavailable digitalis should be administered with extreme caution

2 In the vast majority of cases rapid digitalization is not only unneces sary it may be injurious and even lethal In most instances where digitalis is indicated such as congestive heart failure limitation of activity, mild mercurial diuresis, decrease in the excessive salt intake and other forms of

therapy usually combined to produce enough abatement of symptoms which allow the clinician to slowly digitalize the patient over a period of weeks rather than hours or days Improvement from the simple restriction of activity in forcing either a bed or a chair existence without any other form of therapy will induce a diuresis and symptomatic improvement that can continue for days

3 *The cardiac glycosides should never be given by rule of thumb* Any plan of therapy requires a considered guess of the amount of drug required to produce the desired effect Although it has been established for digitoxin that a single oral dose of 1 2 mg will produce definitely beneficial effects with only minor gastrointestinal symptoms this is rarely a necessary or wise procedure As listed in the rule above although previous digitalis medication may have occurred other factors such as electrolyte imbalance may be unsuspected If vomiting does occur one is at a loss to know how much of the drug was absorbed and how much was vomited Finally any of these so called rule of thumb initial doses if given to enough people can and do cause death

4 *The therapeutic effect is desired not the toxic effect* In most in stances this can be achieved In others the myocardium may be so severely damaged that digitalization alone will not achieve therapeutic effects without bordering on toxic signs and symptoms In this event other additional measures must be used

5 *Tolerance to digitalis does not develop* So called ' tolerance is either due to the fact that the maintenance dose is too low or that the underlying condition has worsened Too often the physician has switched to some other preparation and has ascribed any beneficial effects to the peculiar qualities of that preparation In most instances an increase in the maintenance dose of the initial drug would have produced the same effect

FAST AND SLOW DIGITALIZATION

Most cardiologists feel that except in a rare emergency the drug of choice is the whole leaf preparation of digitalis The purified glycoside digitoxin at the present time might be slightly more popular However it does seem to require more careful supervision than the whole leaf The main reason is that its toxic effects are not heralded as often by symp toms recognizable to the patient and the physician Nausea yellow vision ectopic ventricular beats and other symptoms and signs described more fully in the following section usually come on early and often soon enough to safely warn of impending digitalis toxicity when the whole leaf prepara tion is used That this is not true with digitoxin has been amply confirmed by many observers over the last fifteen years It is now known that serious arrhythmias and the reappearance of congestive failure due to overdigitali zation can occur with the use of digitoxin with little symptomatic warning

For the patient who has developed mild congestive failure over a long period of time and who can be re evaluated weekly a suggested initial digitalization schedule would be to give 0 3 Gm daily either in one dose or divided doses for five days and then drop to 0 1 Gm daily and reobserve at the end of the week If full effects have not been achieved the dosage

schedule could then be either 0 2 Gm daily or an alternating schedule of 0 2 Gm one day to 0 1 Gm the next day, with re evaluation in another week Such regime could be continued until the desired therapeutic effects or toxic signs or symptoms are manifested If more rapid digitalization is desired, 0 2 to 0 4 Gm may be given every six to eight hours for several doses noting the clinical effect before each new dose is given Thereafter smaller doses may be administered until the desired effect is achieved In the rare individual in pulmonary edema, cyanotic, and apparently in ex tremis more urgent digitalization is necessary The author feels the physi cian s aim should be to get the patient somewhere between one half and two thirds digitalized in a day and "full digitalization later This will afford some protection and insure against toxicity In such a case one has a choice of either the most rapid acting group—ouabain and strophanthin —or one of the lanatoside preparations The strophanthin and ouabain preparations have an advantage which is apparently not realized by some clinicians in that the onset of action is slightly faster and the main action is gone in eight to twelve hours, instead of sixteen to thirty six hours for the lanatoside preparations This has not only the advantage of getting very rapid action but it also allows the concomitant administration of longer acting drugs such as the I V preparation of the whole leaf or digitoxin thus minimizing cumulative toxic effects of the two drugs The use of the rapid acting drug demands very close observation on the part of the clinician in that he must be most careful to avoid toxicity during the concomitant administration of the fast and long acting drugs This usually demands reobservation at intervals of two to four hours during the first twenty four to forty eight hours Either strophanthin or ouabain may be employed The usual recommended dosage schedule is 0 5 mg intra venously followed by 0 1 to 0 25 mg every half hour until desired effect is achieved The lanatoside C preparations are a bit slower in onset An initial I V dose of 0 8 mg of cedilanid, digilanid, or digoxin followed by 0 2 to 0 4 mg every two to four hours will afford some protection Rarely will such a dosage schedule cause serious toxicity even in the face of previ ous unsuspected digitalis administration or hypokalemia The importance of examining a patient as a guide to digitalization cannot be overempha sized Such observation demands good clinical judgment as to the extent of relief of the manifestations of congestive heart failure Although venous pressure and circulation time can be utilized, such measures are rarely needed The main guides to successful therapy are the relief of orthopnea dyspnea and nausea symptomatically and the overt signs of diuresis such as the disappearance of rales shrinking of the liver, and weight loss The conversion of a gallop rhythm to a normal beat is a good sign In patients with manifest edema the best guide is probably a daily weight chart at the same time of day with the same amount of clothes or lack of clothing under similar circumstances In congestive heart failure associated with auricular fibrillation the ventricular rate is helpful As described in the previous section the maintenance of a ventricular rate (60 to 80/minute) which is not elevated significantly by mild exercise or atropinization indicates that not only the vagal reflex mechanism but the direct effect upon the conduction tissue has been achieved

TABLE 3

	*Dose for Initial Digitalization**		*Daily Oral Maintenance Dose*
	Oral	*Intravenous*	
1 *Digitalis Purpurea*			
Digitalis U S P	1 0– 2 0 Gm	—	0 05–0 30 Gm
Digalen (Digifolin) N N R	1 0– 2 0 Gm	1 0–2 0 Gm	0 05–0 30 Gm
Digitoxin U.S P	1 0– 2 0 mg	1 0–2 0 mg	0 05–0 30 mg
Gitalin N N R	4 0 8 0 mg	—	0 25–0 10 g
2 *Digitalis Lanata*			
Digilanid N N R	3 0– 6 0 mg	0 8–1 6 mg	0 33–0 66 mg
Lanatoside C N N R	5 0 10 0 mg	—	0 5 –3 0 mg
Deslanoside U S P	—	1 2–1 6 mg	—
Digoxin	2 0– 4 0 mg	0 8–1 6 mg	0 25–1 25 mg
3 *Ouabao and Strophanthus*			
Ouabain U S P	—	0 5–1 0 mg	0 6 –1 0 mg
Strophanthin N F	—	0 5–1 0 mg	0 6 –1 0 mg
Acetyl Strophanthidin	—	0 6–1 2 mg	—
4 *Urginea Maritima*			
Scillaren N N R	9 6–14 4 mg	—	0 8 –3 2 mg
Scillaren B N N R	—	0 5–1 75	—
Urginin N N R	6 0–12 0	—	0 5 –2 0 mg

* Based on a normal weight of 70 kg (150 lb) no digitalis within three weeks and no electrolyte or similar complications

Another point that should not be overlooked is the intelligence of the patient An intelligent patient can be forewarned of the symptoms of the impending toxicity and be able to report by telephone if such symptoms develop unexpectedly Detailed specific instructions both verbally and written are necessary as even the most intelligent patient may overdose himself by misinterpreting the physician s instructions This may sound obvious but all to frequently this is a cause of over or underdigitalization

If either on the initial digitalization or some time during the maintenance of digitalization by the whole leaf the drug seems to be losing its effect the maintenance dose can be increased If toxic symptoms or signs develop before the desired therapeutic effects are reached one of the glycosides such as gitalin digoxin or digitoxin may be tried Although in most instances no improvement may be noted occasionally dramatic therapeutic successes occur As noted in the previous section gitalin may prove to have a greater margin of safety than the other glycosides

DIGITALIS TOXICITY [3]

Symptoms and Signs ***Gastrointestinal*** The commonest toxic manifestations are directed toward the gastrointestinal tract The most frequent and early complaints are lack of appetite nausea and sense of fulness Often these symptoms are hard to distinguish from the gastrointestinal

discomfort secondary to congestive heart failure If they occur early in the course of initial digitalization by the whole leaf preparation, local irritation of the gastrointestinal tract is likely, particularly if more than 0 3 to 0 4 Gm are given in one dose When digitalization has been accomplished, such complaints are definite symptoms of overdosage and arise in the central nervous system If digitalis is pushed, vomiting and diarrhea occur

Cardiac Arrhythmias The next most important feature of digitalis toxicity is the effect upon cardiac rhythmicity Although overdosage may produce any and all types of arrhythmia, by far the commonest and earliest warning is the onset of premature ventricular contractions As these 'extrasystoles' become more frequent, "coupling" occurs "Coupling' is an arrhythmia in which every normal sinus beat is followed by a premature ventricular contraction Digitalis must be discontinued immediately If not ventricular tachycardia, ventricular flutter, and ventricular fibrillation can and often do occur Ventricular fibrillation almost invariably means sudden death unless heroic measures are initiated immediately

Other arrhythmias in order of frequency are sinus arrest or block sinus bradycardia, atrioventricular conduction delay to complete heart block, premature atrial beats leading to an ectopic atrial tachycardia accompanied by Wenkebach phenomena, 2 1 A V block or erratic ventricular response and merging into auricular fibrillation or "impure flutter", and very rarely bundle branch block One common mistake may be easy to make The ventricular slowing induced by digitalization in auricular fibrillation may change to a fairly fast regular rhythm This may be interpreted by the clinician to mean conversion to normal sinus rhythm In actual practice it is much more likely to be due to an ectopic pacemaker in the A V node or ventricles Therefore it is a sign of toxicity Digitalis must be withheld immediately Any of the aforementioned arrhythmias can and will lead to ventricular fibrillation if digitalis is pushed

Neurologic Symptoms Neurologic symptoms are infrequent However the clinician must be on the alert for such symptoms as the patient often does not mention them unless they are brought out by skillful questioning The commonest symptom is a visual disturbance in which all objects appear yellow or snowy" Spots before the eyes (scotomata) and blurring of vision is infrequent Occasionally headaches and neuralgias of the arms and of the face appear The facial pain may lead to unwarranted tooth extractions Vaguer symptoms such as weakness loss of pep, irritability, and insomnia may occur The only proof that digitalis is the causative agent is the demonstration that withdrawal of the drug relieves the symptoms The recent studies on placebo reactors make even this test a shaky one

Miscellaneous True allergic reactions must be very rare A few cases of thrombocytopenic purpura have been reported The frequent complaint by some patients that they can not tolerate any digitalis preparation is usually false Secondary effects such as the appearance of gynecomastia in males is uncommon and not considered a toxic sign

Prevention and Treatment It is true that digitalis intoxication has become more frequent in the last two decades There are many factors involved The most important one is that the medical profession has come

to realize the importance of digitalis in congestive heart failure and in certain cardiac arrhythmias This realization has led to more frequent use of digitalis preparations Another factor has been the employment of the purified glycosides and more rapid digitalization schedules Rapid digitalization increases the risk of toxicity

A purified glycoside digitoxin has been shown to be almost completely absorbed by the gastrointestinal tract in large doses with only trivial discomfort Serious arrhythmias and reappearance of congestive phenomena from overdosage of this drug can occur without the appearance of important toxic signs and symptoms Digitalis whole leaf almost invariably produces premonitory intestinal symptoms visual disturbances or ' coupling long before such serious events occur

Another factor of major importance in the production of toxicity is the use concomitantly with digitalis of energetic diuretic regimes such as low salt diet acidifying agents such as ammonium chloride mercurial diuretics resins carbonic anhydrase inhibitors and so forth Such all out therapeutic regimes lead to electrolytic disturbances that increase the hazards of digitalis medication Examples are the production of the ' low salt syndrome ' with impairment of renal function and depletion of potassium stores with enhancement of digitalis toxicity

Finally, a motley crew of errors of omission and commission can produce serious consequences Failure to take into consideration the possibility of prior digitalis administration failure to look for or heed the warning signals of overdosage failure to learn well the average rate of absorption and elimination of a few preparations failure to take into consideration contributory factors such as hyperthyroidism myocardial infarction nutritional status and finally errors in diagnosis all may lead to serious over or underdosage

Prevention of toxicity therefore includes the following measures A careful evaluation of the patient before and during digitalization slow digitalization except in rare instances frequent observation of the patient a willingness to change the dosage schedule as indicated a reasonable knowledge of the preparation employed the avoidance of an excessive number of other measures and a conservative attitude If these rules are observed digitalis toxicity is a rare event

If minor symptoms and signs occur the withdrawal of the drug followed by resumption of maintenance at a slightly lower dosage level is sufficient If the symptoms and signs are more serious the drug may need to be withheld for a longer period

If the more serious arrhythmias occur such as ventricular tachycardia hospitalization and constant careful medical supervision are desirable As the therapeutic agents and measures that may be employed are potentially dangerous it is important to determine whether the toxicity is increasing or decreasing The main and only danger is death from ventricular fibrillation An electrocardiograph machine should be connected continuously to the patient in order to take frequent tracings If it is reasonably established that hyperkalemia is not present and that renal function is adequate potassium may be given orally or intravenously It is difficult to produce serious toxic cardiac disturbances by the oral route while

intravenous route is potentially hazardous Hyperkalemia causes depression of the cardiac conduction and impairment of muscular contraction leading to arrhythmias, hypotension anoxia, and ventricular fibrillation Other antifibrillatory agents have similar effects plus other features such as a direct peripheral vasodilation Such agents include quinidine, procaine, procaine amide, and magnesium hydroxide

A recommended procedure for the use of potassium is to employ a solution containing potassium chloride, 3 0 Gm (13 m Eq /Gm) in 20 ml of water This solution should be diluted to 500 ml in five per cent glucose solution With a normal serum potassium, 6 0 Gm may be injected intravenously at a maximum rate of 5 ml per minute In frank hypokalemia, the rate and total dosage may be increased The salt may be given orally as chloride or citrate in an initial 4 0 Gm dose followed by 2 0 Gm hourly for two hours

If potassium is not available procaine amide may be given either orally or intravenously for ventricular paroxysmal tachycardia 1 5 Gm may be given orally followed by 250 mg hourly for several doses as needed Intravenously the drug may be given continuously at the rate of 25 mg per minute until 300 mg has been given The rate is then reduced to 12 5 mg per minute

Whether potassium or procaine amide are given, frequent blood pressure and ECG tracings are mandatory during use of the intravenous route to prevent hypotension and cardiac conduction defects These observations may need to be made every minute If serious hypotension develops the infusion must be stopped Norepinephrine should be administered if the pressure does not return promptly to preinjection levels Elevation of the feet may be of help

SUMMARY

In this chapter the reviewer has covered the high spots of our increasing knowledge of the invaluable cardiac glycosides At present a wide spectrum of fast and slow acting agents are available All possess identical actions upon the myocardium and specialized cardiac conduction system but vary in speed and duration of effect

With the rapidly increasing span of life more and more patients will need treatment for congestive heart failure and cardiac arrhythmias The cardiac glycosides are and will be in the foreseeable future the only agents that possess a specific remediable action upon the failing myocardium and certain types of cardiac arrhythmias For that reason alone all physicians should be able to administer the cardiac glycosides intelligently Careful adherence to the following simple rules may be of some help in this respect

1 Be sure that the condition is one that will respond to digitalis therapy
2 Always ascertain how much digitalis has been given previously
3 Always digitalize as slowly as convenient
4 Always adjust the dose to the patient's needs
5 Know one fast and slow acting preparation well
6 Remember that tolerance to digitalis preparations does not occur
7 Be on the alert for symptoms of physical and electrolyte changes that require adjustment of dosage

SELECTED REFERENCES

1 Kay C F The Clinical Use of Digitalis Preparations Circulation 12 116 291 (July August) 1955
2 Lown and Levine Current Concepts in Digitalis Therapy Little Brown and Company Boston 1954
3 Friedman M Digitalis Therapy and Intoxication Modern Concepts of Cardio vascular Disease 15 311 (Feb) 1956
4 Gold H Quinidine in Disorders of the Heart Hoeber Inc New York 16 New York 1950
5 Goodman and Gilman The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics Section 7 Cardiovascular Drugs 2nd Ed The Macmillan Company New York 1955

18

The Cardiac Patient as a Surgical Risk

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Physicians are frequently asked by their surgical brethren or by their patients whether the heart can stand a contemplated operation This question is by no means as simple as it sounds and like the one put to a man on the witness stand when he was asked if he would stop beating his wife, it cannot be answered categorically yes or no It places on the physician a triple responsibility First he must aid in the underlying diagnosis for often a condition that is regarded as surgical may in fact be due to a disorder of the heart itself or to the peripheral circulation for which medical treatment would be indicated The second aspect of this problem is to ascertain if possible the prognosis of the cardiac condition that is present in order to aid in advising whether a surgical operation that ordinarily would be indicated and justifiable should be undertaken It is obvious that if a patient has advanced hypertensive heart failure he should not be subjected to an operation such as repair of an abdominal hernia This requires the intelligent appraisal of the cardiac state and an attempt to foretell how long a patient may be expected to enjoy the benefits of the surgery that is planned Finally when an operation is decided upon in one suffering from some form of heart disease the physician may aid in estimating with what added risk a particular cardiac abnormality is attended and in what way the risk might be minimized The above questions therefore entail a close cooperation between the surgeon and physician permitting a free and detailed analysis of all the factors concerned

Differential Diagnosis Let us first consider some of the difficulties that arise in differential diagnosis in distinguishing what appears to be an acute surgical abdominal condition from disorders that are produced directly by the heart or cardiovascular system In former years it was not an infrequent experience to confuse acute coronary thrombosis and myocardial infarction with acute abdominal emergencies such as perforated peptic ulcer acute pancreatitis acute disease of the gallbladder diaphragmatic hernia acute intestinal obstruction etc There is hardly any active surgical clinic that has not made the error of exploring the abdomen when the cause of the epigastric pain vomiting and collapse was a thrombosis of the coronary artery This confusion was discussed many years ago[1] since which time much has been learned to help us avoid similar

blunders In fact our knowledge concerning diagnosis of coronary artery disease has become so extensive that at present there is possibly greater danger of overlooking abdominal conditions that require immediate operation when this type of differential diagnosis arises

There are certain precautions that may help in this decision Realizing that severe epigastric distress or pain may be due to disease of the heart or of the abdominal organs, a previous history of angina which often has to be deliberately inquired for, lends some support to the former as the cause in any particular case *Pain from* coronary artery disease even when localized in the abdomen tends to radiate up the sternum or to the arms and almost never extends below the umbilicus It is also often associated with dyspnea *One should always suspect the abdomen when this differential problem arises in a woman if it is known that the patient was not hypertensive* This general rule does not apply in the male sex

Finally the electrocardiogram which now can be taken so readily at the bedside may give invaluable information Although there may be pathognomonic changes pointing to myocardial infarction, great caution needs to be exercised in reading too much into less distinctive alterations in the form of the ventricular complex There will be instances that tax all our diagnostic resources including x ray plates of the abdomen looking for free gas below the diaphragm It is needless to go into a complete discussion of all the conditions that may arise for they are numerous Suffice it to recall that many of the common acute abdominal conditions may be confused with an attack of atypical coronary thrombosis

Similarly there are occasional instances when the acute development of congestive heart failure can present the picture of an acute surgical condition of the abdomen This is apt to occur with the sudden onset of auricular fibrillation, especially in a previously undigitalized heart If mitral stenosis is present and it may not have been recognized or easily detectable acute pain and spasm in the epigastrium or right upper quadrant slight fever and leukocytosis nausea vomiting, and even slight jaundice may result The presenting findings in such cases probably are the result of acute congestion of the liver with stretching of its capsule and may be misjudged as due to acute cholecystitis The therapeutic decision is not very difficult as ordinarily there is no great haste about surgery for disease of the gallbladder, and the presence of a rapid irregular heart rate in any case deserves digitalis therapy and other treatment for heart failure if evidence of congestion is found When the above symptoms are due to the heart they will promptly be relieved by appropriate cardiac therapy

In younger patients acute pain in the abdomen resembling that due to acute appendicitis may occur in rheumatic fever The pain need not be very severe but can be accompanied by nausea some localized tenderness and vomiting slight fever and leukocytosis and in many ways imitate very closely what is found in acute appendicitis At times it will be impossible to distinguish the two conditions with any certainty and an exploratory operation will be unavoidable and should be regarded as the correct procedure even if it turns out to have been unnecessary

Some of these operations will be unavoidable for *there is greater risk in delay when the appendix is inflamed than in an abdominal exploration when mild rheumatic fever is present* There are times, however when careful attention to details will reward the physician by enabling him to make a more definite diagnosis Rectal tenderness is much more apt to indicate appendicitis as it is quite rare in rheumatic fever

Of greater importance in these cases of atypical rheumatic fever with abdominal symptoms but without pains in the limbs are the direct findings in the heart One may detect distinct abnormalities in the heart that occur with particular frequency in rheumatism and are rare in other conditions The *finding of a loud systolic murmur or a diastolic murmur* that was not previously present a pericardial friction rub or the detection of delayed A V conduction time (increased P R interval in the electrocardiogram) would make the diagnosis of rheumatic fever fairly certain I recall an instance in which the surgeon heard a peculiar sound over the precordium which he was unable to interpret This proved to be a gallop rhythm which in children should always make the physician suspect a delayed P R interval *(or first degree heart block)* This turned out to be the case and the young girl recovered on salicylates, thereby avoiding what might have been an ill advised operation

Other medical conditions that may present themselves with what appears to be an acute surgical abdomen are pneumonia and acute pericarditis These acute inflammatory processes in the thorax especially when they occur in childhood may first manifest themselves with abdominal pain and vomiting Only the scrupulous care of a thorough physical examination and the constant recollections of these possibilities in differential diagnosis will prevent the confusion that otherwise will take place Similarly the rare cases of tabetic crises lead colic and other nonsurgical conditions must be sought for when the cause of abdominal symptoms is being investigated

Significance of Symptoms In appraising the significance of abdominal or other symptoms that appear to have surgical implications the possibility of embolism must not be forgotten One should have this particularly in mind under the following four conditions Auricular fibrillation mitral stenosis coronary thrombosis with myocardial infarction and bacterial endocarditis With the first two sterile thrombi form in the auricles with the third in the ventricles and with the last infected vegetations are present on the valves If parts of these thrombi become dislodged embolism develops When such emboli involve the renal splenic or mesenteric arteries abdominal symptoms result Careful examination of the cardiac state will prevent the physician at least from overlooking these nonsurgical causes of abdominal symptoms

Prognosis versus Surgical Risk The second aspect of this problem is whether the prognosis of the cardiovascular state is good enough to warrant the contemplated surgical operation Is the patient with a particular type of heart disease going to live long enough to enjoy the results of the surgery? This is entirely a matter of prognosis and here judgment is difficult Those operations which in themselves help the embarrassed

circulation are always better borne and will be more beneficial in their end results than when there is no direct relation between the surgical and cardiac conditions A patient with mitral stenosis, auricular fibrillation and hyperthyroidism in advanced congestive failure for example, will actually show marked improvement in the heart following a subtotal thyroidectomy It would be unwise in such a case, on the other hand, to advise an operation for repair of a cystocele In patients with angina pectoris occasionally the cardiac state seems to be improved following the removal of gallstones or after the relief of prostatic obstruction Apart from the cases in which the heart itself may be more or less improved by the operation, great care must be exercised in not advising major surgical procedures for those conditions which are not urgent or for which there are available adequate nonsurgical or palliative measures When one would judge the life expectancy of a given cardiac disease as one to two years, it is illogical to advise a hysterectomy for fibroid tumors of the uterus when x ray treatment may control the menorrhagia If a patient has had hypertensive heart failure and shows a bundle branch block or gallop rhythm or pulsus alternans it is better to temporize with a truss than to operate for an ordinary inguinal hernia Removal of teeth and tonsils and procedures such as pelvic operations for prolapse of the uterus or a relaxed pelvic floor may be avoided when contemplated in those suffering from grave heart disease An illustration of such a problem is the following experience

A woman aged forty complained of lower abdominal discomfort and excessive uterine bleeding She had luetic aortitis and aortic insufficiency She also showed evidence of a large uterine fibroid which could barely be felt above the pubis A hysterectomy had been advised by another physician Because of her cardiac condition it seemed wiser to try x ray treatment This was carried out and caused cessation of her menstrual periods and the tumor could no longer be felt A simple method without risk achieved the same therapeutic result as the contemplated surgery

In all these matters the intelligence of the physician must be used, weighing all the circumstances pertaining to the prognosis of the type of heart disease that is present and the amount of discomfort and hazard from the surgical conditions

Estimation of Surgical Risk The final phase of this problem is the estimation of the risk that a patient with heart disease undergoes in a major surgical operation *There has been altogether too much fear concerning the ability of the heart to withstand operations* When postoperative deaths have occurred physicians have been too prone to ascribe the cause to the heart In all fatal cases, death occurs when the heart stops, but that is by no means synonymous with death from heart failure or heart disease On close scrutiny it will be found that in only a few instances can the heart be blamed as playing even a contributing role in the cause of the fatality

Let us first consider what changes take place in the heart during an operation Marvin and Pastor[2] found that there was no constant change in the blood pressure during or following operations In some the pres

sure rose and in others it fell They decided that the only instances in which the change in pressure materially affected the incidence of untoward complications were those in which there was extreme lowering of the blood pressure and pulse pressure with a state of shock It was also found[3] that routine preoperative administration of digitalis failed to exert a favorable influence on the blood pressure or on the incidence of postoperative complications In fact there was suggestive evidence that digitalis may have a slightly deleterious effect On the other hand Blalock[4] found that the average output of the dog s heart during ether administration was increased seventy six per cent In this experimental investigation it was also found[5,6] that the increase in the cardiac output could be diminished by the use of alkali or digitalis From these experiments it would seem that the work of the heart might be temporarily increased during surgical operations However in actual surgical cases Snyder[7] found an average decrease of forty one per cent in cardiac output directly after operations while the patients were still under the anesthetic and that it required one to four days for the output to return to normal How material these various effects might be in the operative risk can only be ascertained by clinical experience

Brow and Long have shown[8] that chloroform ether nitrous oxide and barbiturate derivatives when used to produce anesthesia in cats cause a decrease in glycogen storage and an accumulation of acid metabolites (lactic and phosphoric acid) in cardiac muscle Furthermore disturbances in the mechanism of the heartbeat have been observed during anesthesia Levy[9,10] noted in cats the development of extra ventricular systoles ventricular tachycardia and ventricular fibrillation at certain low concentrations of chloroform anesthesia He thereby explained the mechanism of sudden death which occurred under chloroform In routine operations on surgical patients during anesthesia produced by ether, nitrous oxide or procaine Lennox Graves and Levine[11] observed frequent abnormalities of the heartbeat such as premature beats dislocation of the pacemaker especially resulting in nodal rhythm and even paroxysmal auricular tachycardia These were found to be transient and with very rare exception were of physiological rather than clinical interest Only on rare occasions did the development of a new rhythm during an operation produce alarming symptoms A study of such disturbances[12] has shown that they are due to paroxysms of auricular tachycardia auricular fibrillation or auricular flutter When properly recognized they are easily controlled by carotid sinus or ocular pressure or by the use of such drugs as mecholyl digitalis or quinidine Despite the above physiological and chemical alterations which take place during anesthesia and operations how much harm they produce can only be determined by studying the incidence of postoperative complications and fatalities in cardiacs and noncardiacs This is the only method available to determine the surgical risk of various types of heart disease

Extensive experience during the past two decades has afforded adequate proof that patients with heart disease on the whole withstand surgical operations very well The old fears concerning the heart although

they still persist in the minds of the laity and to a slight extent of the medical profession have largely disappeared A review of over 400 patients[13] suffering from organic heart disease, who were subjected to various major surgical operations showed that the unexpected mortality was only 6 4 per cent Furthermore on investigating the cause of postoperative death in cardiacs it becomes evident that death results for the most part, from the same complications that occur in noncardiacs,[14] i e, postoperative pulmonary complications shock, infection, etc. True cardiac failure is rare although some of the so called accidents of heart disease such as coronary thrombosis and pulmonary and peripheral embolism do occur more frequently

In estimating the risk which a given cardiac condition adds to that of the contemplated operation there are two important factors to be considered The first and by far the most important is the ability of the heart to respond to effort If the cardiac condition has been well compensated if the patient has been able to carry on his ordinary duties the heart has already given evidence of withstanding a greater load than any operation will demand This has reference to the heart and not to the peripheral circulation, for the latter may fail with equal facility whether the heart is diseased or not

If follows therefore that the history pertaining to cardiac efficiency is much more important than the physical examination of the heart The presence or absence of breathlessness is much more informing than whether a murmur or some cardiac hypertrophy is present The second important factor is the liability of that particular heart to the so called 'accidents of heart disease These are the unpredictable complications that occur which suddenly change the entire status and prognosis of the situation Amongst the latter are the development of acute coronary thrombosis embolism, sudden changes in cardiac rhythm such as Adams Stokes attacks or paroxysmal rapid heart action bacterial endocarditis and sudden death possibly due to ventricular fibrillation Fortunately such postoperative complications are not very common though they do occur One can classify cases into those that are more and those that are less likely to develop these complications, but it is impossible to foretell events in individual instances

Because it is mainly the above "accidents' of heart disease that increase the operative risk of cardiac patients it is of some interest to analyze the circumstances under which they may arise Coronary thrombosis can occur in anyone suffering from coronary artery sclerosis The main clinical evidence of this will be the history of angina pectoris Therefore, it becomes extremely important to inquire most carefully into those symptoms that characterize the anginal state Often when a postoperative coronary attack has occurred apparently in one who was regarded as previously having a normal heart, it later becomes evident on close scrutiny that there was a definite history of sternal constriction on effort which had been entirely overlooked Even some sudden and instant postoperative fatalities will prove to have a similar explanation

Embolism from the heart mainly comes from sterile mural thrombi

from the auricles in cases of auricular fibrillation or of mitral stenosis and much more rarely from the ventricles in cases of myocardial infarction The presence of these conditions therefore predispose to such complications Complete heart block obviously is the most common condition in which sudden Adams Stokes attacks may occur, but the various types of paroxysmal rapid heart action may develop in patients with *otherwise normal hearts although more frequently in those with* organic heart disease Postoperative bacterial endocarditis is very rare but may develop in one who previously gave evidence of a well compensated regular heart and in whom there was some kind of cardiac murmur Such disastrous complications have been observed particularly after tonsillectomy or extraction of teeth possibly because these simple operations are so common They are now either preventable by prophylactic use of antibiotics or responsive to chemotherapy should they arise

Notwithstanding the various hazards to which patients with heart disease are subject on the whole the operative risk is rather small An operative mortality of 2 1 per cent in 147 cases of valvular disease and of 3 0 per cent in 103 cases of auricular fibrillation[13] indicates how satisfactorily cardiacs tolerate major surgical procedures The risk increases however under certain circumstances Cases of angina pectoris for the most part occurring in the second half of life carry a risk of 7 7 per cent This is mainly due to the postoperative development of coronary thrombosis a subject emphasized by Master and associates [15] The danger is still greater amongst those who have already suffered a previous attack of coronary thrombosis The proper timing of operations and selection of cases should even here keep the rate about ten to fifteen per cent The presence of congestive heart failure adds decidedly to the risk of operation but except for emergencies adequate preoperative medical treatment will decidedly reduce this risk Although hypertension has little effect on the mortality rate the presence of chronic nephritis increases it three fold In general it may be said that *all cardiacs do surprisingly well except for those who have nephritis congestive failure or coronary artery disease*

So far no mention has been made about the type of anesthesia in its relation to the operative risk in cardiac patients There has been no extensive analysis of the relative merits of different anesthetics for those suffering from organic heart disease Our opinions therefore rest upon general impressions rather than convincing data Differences in point of view amongst different observers probably signify that the matter is not of great importance Marvin[16] very wisely stated 'that it is far more important to select the proper anesthetist than it is to select the proper anesthetic The choice will generally be determined after a consultation between surgeon anesthetist and physician with the goal that a smooth shockless anesthesia may be obtained Ether avertin ethylene spinal and local anesthesia each have their advocates The important factors that seem to be material are to avoid struggling the collection of mucus in the upper respiratory tract and cyanosis and to prevent a maintained fall in blood pressure The disadvantages of the former are obvious and

there is reason to believe that a significant fall in blood pressure, apart from being a forerunner of surgical shock, is conducive to the development of coronary thrombosis It is for this latter reason that, when spinal anesthesia is used in elderly patients who often have coronary artery sclerosis, great care should be taken to prevent any untoward fall in the pressure level In general, I prefer ether anesthesia in cardiac patients although there are reasonable differences in views amongst reputable authorities

In conclusion, it may be stated that intelligent cooperation between physician, surgeon and anesthetist will enable most patients suffering from heart disease to undergo surgical operations with only slightly greater risks than prevails in noncardiacs It will also avoid ill advised operations on cases that present features resembling surgical conditions which in point of fact are due to some form of cardiovascular or non surgical disease Proper preoperative care and timing of the operation when possible, will diminish the surgical risk Finally, careful diagnosis and prognosis will eliminate many unwise operations for which palliative nonoperative measures are available when the patient might not be expected to live long enough to enjoy the results of the surgery

OBSTETRICAL CONSIDERATIONS

The problem of the cardiac patient and pregnancy has many ramifications The physician has to consider not only the purely medical aspects of the case but also religious social and economic factors Decisions will therefore have to differ even when the physical condition of the heart may be the same depending on these other factors The whole problem is one in which the medical profession has made considerable progress The application of modern methods of diagnosis and treatment of heart disease and the institution of a systematic control of cardiacs who may become pregnant has decreased the maternal mortality amongst organic cardiacs during the past several decades from about twenty per cent to about three per cent [17] By the proper selection of patients who should become pregnant and the intelligent care during pregnancy, many lives are now being saved that were previously sacrificed

Effect of Pregnancy on Normal Heart Let us first consider the effect of pregnancy on the normal heart Studies of the dynamics of the circulation[18 19 20] have shown that there is a decided gradual increase in the work of the heart during pregnancy This reaches its maximum of fifty per cent increase at the eighth month The blood volume and the minute output of blood increases and the velocity of blood flow accelerates The blood pressure normally does not increase (in fact it often is quite low) but during the pains of labor it may rise producing a further temporary increase in the work of the heart During the ninth month adjustments in the circulatory dynamics occur which somewhat lighten the cardiac burden from the high point reached the previous month

Care of Heart Disease in Pregnancy Of primary importance in the care of pregnant cardiacs is accurate diagnosis of the condition of the heart When heart disease is present in association with pregnancy the

overwhelming majority (ninety per cent) will be found to have rheumatic valvular disease a few will have hypertensive luetic or congenital heart and very rarely one may have coronary artery disease The main discussion therefore will concern rheumatic heart disease There are many pregnant women who present features resembling those seen in organic heart disease that are functional in origin and may be called neuro circulatory asthenia or cardiac neurosis They may have faint systolic murmurs rapid heart rates dyspnea and palpitation In addition there may even be some puffiness of the ankles from the pressure of the gravid uterus without any structural disease of the heart Such patients can quickly be separated and treated as normal pregnant women Great care therefore must be exercised before classifying the case as one with organic heart disease

The second group to distinguish consists of those who have simple mitral insufficiency In this group a moderately loud or loud systolic murmur will be audible at the apex not explicable on any other basis There generally will be a past history of rheumatic fever or chorea and possibly slight cardiac hypertrophy If there is no diastolic murmur whatever *and no other signs of mitral stenosis it may properly be classified as* one of mitral regurgitation When such cases are well compensated and show no objective or subjective evidence of congestive failure for obstetrical purposes they may be regarded as normal women for the maternal mortality will be about one per cent

The third group consists of those showing definite evidence of mitral stenosis or of aortic valvular disease Amongst the former will be some *with auricular fibrillation* The signs of mitral stenosis may be obscure and require most careful auscultation Some will show signs of both aortic and mitral involvement This is the most important group of all for here the problem of congestive heart failure arises and there will be a significant maternal mortality

In order to outline the practical methods in the care of pregnant cardiacs let us trace the steps of a married woman who contemplates pregnancy At the outset she should visit a physician for a complete physical examination If she does not fall into the third group, *i e* she has no organic heart disease or only has mitral insufficiency she may become pregnant without any undue apprehension and can be treated as a normal patient If she belongs to group three *i e* shows signs of mitral stenosis aortic valvular disease or one of the less common types of organic heart disease an estimation of the state of compensation should be made The early evidence of decompensation will mainly be dyspnea on exertion not previously experienced cough on effort rales at the bases of the lungs hemoptysis or the presence of auricular fibrillation A decided reduction of the vital capacity of the lungs especially when its previous level is known is a very reliable index of congestive failure It is striking *that in normal or well compensated cardiacs* the vital capacity of the lungs is not diminished even when the abdomen is enlarged by the full term fetus When it is found that decompensation is absent the patient may be advised to become pregnant or be permitted to carry on

if already pregnant Contrariwise, if there has been a history of decompensation in the past, or there is present evidence of cardiac failure or if persistent auricular fibrillation is found (omitting the rare instance of this arrhythmia in an otherwise normal heart) pregnancy should be avoided or interrupted The advantage of early and frequent examination is that abortion during the first few months is a comparatively simple procedure whereas during the last few months it is a major one

As the pregnancy continues, the patient should be cautioned against overexertion or becoming unduly fatigued Tiresome shopping should be prohibited Respiratory infections should be avoided as far as possible and any apparently minor infection requires more than the customary care in bed If any evidence of heart failure develops in the later months of pregnancy, the patient will need to be more or less in bed the remainder of the pregnancy Even when treatment results in restoration of compensation activities should be restricted to a bed and chair existence with very little more until after the delivery

The advice given to cardiacs will differ materially depending upon the number of children there are already In the absence of decompensation or other evidence of grave heart disease all cardiacs should be allowed to go through their first pregnancy In fact, they should be urged to have their baby soon The heart does not get better with increasing years and the mother will live longer to enjoy the life with the child than if pregnancy is delayed Furthermore when a normal viable child has been obtained without any difficulties, it is wise to advise such a patient to have a second child within the next two years Most parents want more than one child and it is better to make the final decision about this matter immediately than to have it come up five years later The question of a third child providing that compensation has remained satisfactory is entirely optional with the parents When there are already three normal children there is good reason to advise cardiac mothers to avoid any further pregnancies Although there are numerous instances of women with mitral stenosis surviving six, eight or ten pregnancies there are a good many others who have succumbed Under the best circumstances the risk is greater than normal for any cardiac who belongs to group three There is therefore a definite indication for the use of contraceptives in all cases of organic heart disease when there are already three children or for performing abortion if pregnancy has already occurred *There is very little evidence to show that cardiacs going through pregnancies without failure of the circulation shorten their lives* Reid [1] showed that married women suffering from heart disease who had borne on the average more than five children died at an average age only slightly less than unmarried cardiacs In all these considerations due attention must be paid to the wishes of the parents their religious restrictions and the economic and social status of the household bearing in mind that the actual bringing up of several children is a considerable task on a diseased heart

Sterilization should never be performed unless it is absolutely certain that no more pregnancies are to be permitted It is generally unwise to perform sterilization at the time of the first pregnancy, for the child may

not survive the first few days or may be an abnormal child On several occasions I have seen well compensated cardiacs who had a cesarean section at the time of their first pregnancy and had their tubes tied who lost their babies during the first twenty four hours They were in a sufficiently good state of compensation readily to have gone through subsequent pregnancies but had to remain childless the rest of their lives Furthermore a cesarean operation should not be advised merely to enable the obstetrician to sterilize the patient This should be done at a later time if advisable Notwithstanding the fact that there is some difference of opinion amongst obstetricians I favor the opinion that the procedure of choice is delivery by the pelvic route unless there are obstetrical indications for an abdominal section The second stage of labor should be abbreviated by the use of low forceps The type of anesthesia is not of great importance although cardiacs in general do well with ether If an abdominal operation is decided upon and there is or has been cardiac failure or a sufficient number of children have already been born sterilization should be performed at the same time

It is obvious that women who are in congestive failure should not become pregnant and should be aborted during the first two or three months of pregnancy But if they are first seen in gross failure after the fifth month or develop failure in the latter months of pregnancy, most painstaking cardiac treatment should be carried out to reestablish adequate compensation or at least to carry the mother far enough to obtain a viable child To avoid the development of congestive phenomena in those suffering from major cardiac disease the salt intake should be restricted but protein should be given liberally and iron as well if necessary Hypoproteinemia and anemia are potential factors that may further embarrass the circulation and often can be readily prevented

The value of carefully classifying cases according to diagnosis and functional capacity is well brought out by the statistics compiled by Pardee [9] He reported no deaths amongst 157 organic cardiacs who showed no evidence of failure on considerable effort 1 death in 180 patients with only slightly restricted activities 8 out of 169 who were greatly limited in their response to effort and 16 out of 40 who were essentially bedridden The results published by Fitzgerald [3] and Hamilton and his collaborators[17-4] are all in accord with these results Despite these excellent results unexpected and unpredictable disasters can occur At times congestive failure develops even in the form of acute pulmonary edema when everything pointed to a favorable course The latter may require morphia and even phlebotomy and oxygen therapy Digitalis would also be indicated Rarely subacute bacterial endocarditis used to be a fatal complication but now is amenable to penicillin therapy These complications apart from those to which normal pregnant women are subject are responsible for the small but irreducible mortality of pregnancy in cardiacs

REFERENCES

1 Levine S A and Tranter C L Am. J M Sc 155 57 1918
2 Marvin H M and Pastor R B Arch Int Med 35 768 (June) 1925
3 Marvin H M Pastor R B and Carmichael M Arch Int Med 35 782 (June) 1925
4 Blalock A Arch Surg 14 732 (March) 1927
5 Blalock A Arch Surg 14 921 (April) 1927
6 Blalock A Arch Surg 14 978 (May) 1927
7 Snyder J C J Clin Investigation 17 571 (Sept) 1938
8 Brow G R and Long C N H Anesth and Analg 9 193 (Sept Oct) 1930
9 Levy A G and Lewis T Heart 3 99 1911 12
10 Levy A G Heart 4 319 1912 13
11 Lennox W G Graves R C and Levine S A Arch Int Med 30 57 (July) 1922
12 Levine S A J A M A 75 795 1920
13 Butler S Feeney N and Levine S A J A M A 95 85 (July 12) 1930
14 Purks W K Ann Int Med 7 885 (Jan) 1934
15 Master A M Dack S and Jaffe H L J A M A 110 1415 (April 30) 1938
16 Marvin H M New England J Med 199 547 (Sept 20) 1928
17 Hamilton B E and Kellogg F S J A M A 91 1942 (Dec 22) 1928
18 Stander H J and Cadden J F Am J Obst and Gynec 24 13 (July) 1932
19 Cohen M E and Thomson K J J Clin Investigation 15 607 (Nov) 1936
20 Burwell C S Am J M Sc 195 1 (Jan) 1938
21 Reid W D J A M A 95 1468 (Nov 15) 1930
22 Pardee H E B J A M A 103 1899 (Dec 22) 1934
23 Fitzgerald J E Am J Obst and Gynec 29 53 (Jan) 1935
24 Carr F B and Hamilton B E Am. J Obst and Gynec 26 824 (Dec) 1933

BURTON E HAMILTON, M D

19

The Cardiovascular Patient in Pregnancy

SIGNIFICANCE OF PREGNANCY TO WOMEN WITH CHRONIC HEART DISEASE

From the Medical Point of View Many young women with chronic heart disease even nowadays do not know they are cardiacs till married and pregnant Since most young women cardiacs marry and then nearly all undertake pregnancy, school and premarital examinations should be thorough enough to reveal the cardiacs They should be given timely information so that they can intelligently decide whether they will marry and with their husbands decide whether to undertake pregnancy This holds for therapeutic abortion within the law and medical ethics It is *the physician s function to inform the principles not to make the decision* for them nor to advise Pregnancy is not a disease It is more or less desirable to each individual patient

From the Obstetrical Point of View In regions where rheumatic fever is prevalent close to one in seventy pregnant women have chronic heart disease This small percentage of all pregnant women has furnished a much higher percentage of all the obstetrical deaths

The Risks of Pregnancy for Cardiacs When a heart clinic was started at the Boston Lying in Hospital the maternal death rate for cardiacs had been between fifteen and twenty per cent Two to three years after the heart clinic was started a system for detecting heart disease early in pregnancy and for special care for the patient had developed The death rate then fell critically to approximately three per cent Similar critical drops in maternal death rates for cardiacs have been reported by other obstetrical clinics after they started similar cardiac clinics This puts the responsibility for the cardiac in pregnancy and puerperium squarely on the shoulders of the physician or cardiologist working with the obstetrician

Statistics from the Boston Lying in Hospital Cardiac Clinic have been carefully reported at times since 1921 In summary they are

Approximately ninety per cent of all the pregnant women who are cardiacs have chronic rheumatic heart disease three per cent have con genital *cardiovascular defects the remainder includes all the other cardiac* diseases such as cardiovascular syphilis thyroid heart deficiency heart premature atherosclerotic heart disease and serious disorders of the heart beat Patients with hypertension and no other cardiovascular disease are

not included The following applies particularly to the great majority of the cardiacs—those with chronic rheumatic heart disease

The maternal death rate for all those with chronic rheumatic heart disease delivered at the Boston Lying in Hospital for twenty five years after the cardiac clinic started was between three and four per cent Since the risk of individual cardiacs varies greatly, useful advice to an individual calls for as accurate subclassification as can be made In simplest form the problem of estimating a cardiac patient's risk from pregnancy is whether the heart can fulfill the normal demands of pregnancy if she has all possible needed treatment designed to lessen the work of the heart If a patient has led a reasonably normal life has been able to carry on in school and to work in a factory or shop or as a secretary or teacher, or to go about socially to dances, and so forth, without congestive heart failure—even if she has avoided heavy demands on the heart such as climbing running, swimming tennis, because breathlessness prevented her from keeping up with her companions—the chances are that with a careful regimen, enough work can be taken off her heart to compensate for at least the usual demands of normal pregnancy But if she has had congestive heart failure under ordinary circumstances, the chances are that she will have difficulty in avoiding a return of failure even under the best treatment Although it is difficult to define congestive heart failure and sometimes difficult to know from the history whether a given patient has had congestive heart failure it is usually easy to decide this point

If a patient with heart disease has some other defect such as chronic nephritis pyelitis tuberculosis, etc, she would be a poor risk for pregnancy Two diseases are worse than the sum of the risks of both diseases For illustration the maternal death rate in pregnancy for uncomplicated mitral stenosis is approximately 2 5 per cent, for uncomplicated eclampsia in previously normal women approximately ten per cent The maternal death rate for mitral stenosis complicated by eclampsia however, is not 12 5 per cent but approximately forty per cent The significance of this point in treatment of cardiacs will be discussed later

It has long been known that cardiacs who have auricular fibrillation are comparatively poor risks for pregnancy

One can, then distinguish a group of cardiacs who have led reasonably normal lives and not had congestive heart failure who have no significant complicating disease who do not have auricular fibrillation and consider the group 'favorable' for pregnancy More than eighty five per cent of the cardiacs at the Boston Lying in Hospital are by these criteria 'favorable' There is a small group left that have had congestive heart failure, or have a complicating disease, or have auricular fibrillation who are "unfavorable' prospects for successful pregnancy

On this basis the maternal death rate for "favorable cases for the year of a pregnancy and puerperium, in my experience is between 2 and 2 5 per cent The yearly death rate for similar cases when not pregnant is slightly less The maternal death rate for 'unfavorable cases has been approximately sixteen or eighteen per cent whereas their yearly death rate when not pregnant has been from six to seven per cent For patients

with chronic heart disease who have auricular fibrillation the maternal death rate has been close to 33 1/3 per cent, but only eight per cent yearly when not pregnant Infant mortality jumps from, roughly eight per cent in the favorable group to thirty per cent in the whole unfavorable group and fifty per cent for those that have auricular fibrillation

Occasionally, one encounters statistical reports indicating that the risk for cardiacs in pregnancy is much lower than this and from some reports incredibly low It is difficult to collect accurate statistics on this matter In general hospitals cardiacs before delivery are treated in medical wards and if they die undelivered they do not appear in the obstetric service s deaths If delivered and doing well they are discharged from the obstetric service as successful cases and if their cardiac condition is poor after delivery, they are sent to a medical service as they should be Only those who die quickly and after delivery die on the obstetric service If one is in doubt about the accuracy of the statistics given here it is reassuring to know that almost identical statistics have been obtained simultaneously in similar heart clinics in other obstetric hospitals—for example the Sloane Hospital for Women in New York City

All cardiacs differ from each other in many ways especially in their capacity for effort Patients are more or less favorable or unfavorable for pregnancy But the statistics given above show the value of this simple classification We can only estimate the risk of an individual in each group as she seems better or worse than the average favorable or unfavorable case In my experience patients over thiry five years of age are twice likely to have congestive heart failure as are those younger whereas patients under twenty three years of age are many times more likely to have a recurrence of rheumatic fever than the older patients The patients with uncomplicated aortic regurgitation have little if any greater risk than those with mitral stenosis Those with aortic regurgitation are however more troublesome than those with mitral stenosis because of the tendency of the former to have good capacity for effort until the onset of severe left ventricular failure They have little warning of disaster Patients with both mitral and aortic involvement are only slightly worse risks than those with either valve alone involved But patients with a systolic murmur no diastolic murmur and definite enlargement of the heart are twice as good risks as those with aortic regurgitation mitral stenosis or both Gross enlargement of the heart is certainly not a favor able finding but I have not been able to express with definite statistics the estimation of risk on heart size We may feel sure of the value in subclassification of the three groups as defined above "favorable ' un favorable and the small group of cardiacs that have auricular fibrilla tion and need not feel great concern for further subclassification because care of the patient dominates all the other factors in maternal mortality in the large group that are defined favorable cases for pregnancy With suitable individual care we can make their mortality rate low The great drop in maternal mortality of the whole group came after we had learned the details of their care and applied the knowledge effectively and the drop was from a lessening of the number of deaths from congestive heart

failure in the favorable group The chance now for a favorable cardiac under suitable prenatal management to die from congestive heart failure in pregnancy and puerperium is little more than 1 in 500, whereas two thirds of the deaths of the 'unfavorable' cases are directly due to this. Try as we may we cannot make the "unfavorable" cases good risks

The maternal mortality for unfavorable cases for the first fifteen years at the Cardiac Clinic at the Boston Lying in Hospital was sixteen per cent it was eighteen per cent for the succeeding ten years, despite, as we hoped, improved technic in their care The maternal mortality for cardiacs with auricular fibrillation was also no better for the ten or twelve years following the first sixteen years It was approximately one death for every three patients

In my experience the causes of death in the cardiacs can be listed as congestive heart failure embolism, or subacute bacterial endocarditis The last is now a rarity In approximately twenty five per cent of the deaths obstetrical or coincidental complications not related to the pregnancy directly have been a material factor

Control of Congestive Heart Failure in Pregnancy An individual daily regimen is essential In general, it should call for nine or ten hours in bed each night and a rest in the morning and in the afternoon The number of flights of stairs should be limited, and only the lightest housework allowed It is a good plan to allow no shopping or activities outside the house except when the patient is transported although exceptions may be made for thoroughly favorable patients during the first two trimesters During the latter months of pregnancy when the load on the circulation is heaviest it is often wise to keep a cardiac at home and on one floor and to allow no housework whatever Cardiacs in pregnancy do not need exercise No harm comes from overtreating them The burdensome part of pregnancy lasts only a few months, and one can overtreat the cardiac during this short period with a clear conscience for the greater safety of mother and child

Weight Control and Nutrition A good plan is to keep weight gain throughout pregnancy to less than 6 8 kg (15 pounds) Some have had no apparent harm and probably great benefit with much less gain than this The intake of foods that we believe nonessential such as rich desserts and sweets should be reduced Thin milk, lean meats, poultry fish vegetables and fruits except those that are twenty per cent or higher should be allowed and supplemented by vitamins iron, and calcium We should bear in mind the rule that two burdens are greater than their sum Disproportionate improvement will then follow removal or partial removal of one of the burdens For example 4 kg (10 pounds) of excess fat or moderate fatigue from insufficient rest are nothing much to a healthy normal human under usual conditions Either may mean the difference between success and failure to the hard pressed athlete at the end of a race or fight or to anyone in a severe illness, and under all conditions to the severely handicapped cardiac Therefore remove or lessen any extracardiac burden that one feasibly can, and do it with enthusiasm

These general rules are fundamental to the prevention of congestive

heart failure in cardiacs in pregnancy It was largely due to the application of these principles that the maternal death rate for cardiacs fell abruptly and critically many years ago when cardiac clinics were started at the Boston Lying in Hospital and at other similar institutions There are much more novel and interesting aspects of the problem of cardiacs in pregnancy but none is more important for their welfare

Special Load of Normal Pregnancy on the Heart Careful studies have shown that in pregnancy the circulating blood volume increases and the circulation becomes hurried—cardiac output increases Pulse rate quickens the blood pressure tends on the average to fall a little and the pulse pressure widens Oxygen consumption respiratory rate tidal air increase Vital capacity and basal metabolism do not increase proportionately so much as circulating blood volume Circulating blood volume changes appear to be a good gauge of the load of normal pregnancy on the circulation Roughly, the circulating blood volume at its peak during pregnancy is almost fifty per cent higher than early in pregnancy These physiological phenomena normal in pregnancy appear only to a small degree in the early months except in unusual cases and in the last few weeks of pregnancy they normally recede (except the oxygen consumption) Roughly half the increase in circulating blood volume recedes during the last four weeks Congestive heart failure when it occurs for the first time in pregnancy rarely appears before the sixth month or during the ninth calendar month or at or after delivery A curve representing the times in pregnancy when heart failure has first appeared resembles closely a curve showing the average variations in the extent of the average load of normal pregnancy on the circulation as determined by direct studies of the phenomena mentioned above particularly the circulating blood volume

Significance of the Curve of the Load of Pregnancy on the Heart Formerly it was believed that the load on the circulation of normal pregnancy rose gradually toward a peak at term When it was proven that on the average the load does not grow heavy before the sixth month and then rises abruptly and stays close to its peak until the last four weeks when it normally lessens to roughly half its rise a number of general rules for the care of the cardiacs became clear

It has been a rule at the B L I Hospital that cardiacs must be seen often in pregnancy—at least once a week It is not safe to select good risks give them general rules and let them go their way with only the usual number of prenatal examinations unless symptoms force them to call for help Though the average curve of the load of pregnancy rises at the sixth month and begins to fall at the end of the eighth a few patients appear to feel the effect of the load very early in pregnancy others later and in some the rise of the load is abrupt in others gradual and in none can the course for an individual be correctly predicted However experienced a physician may be he must examine each patient often through pregnancy if he is to know how she is tolerating the strain Furthermore case histories of patients dying of heart failure in pregnancy often reveal that the symptoms of failure appeared and became severe days or weeks before the physician knew of it

It is natural when one sees a woman early in pregnancy to speculate on whether she can stand delivery Actually, delivery is not her greatest test Few heart failures occur for the first time at or after delivery unless there is a complication inflicting excess work on the heart such as fever, anemia, toxemia or unless labor is unusually long and difficult

Nevertheless patients who are in congestive heart failure do not tolerate delivery well It has long been known that cardiacs in congestive failure are not immediately relieved of their symptoms by emptying the uterus In fact, they are more dyspneic and show more evidence of venous congestion If they recover, they do so slowly over days or weeks, and in some reported series including one from the Boston Lying in Hospital more fatalities have occurred among the cardiacs after delivery than during pregnancy and delivery The natural way to account for this is that the final effort of labor and delivery is too much for them But even apparently effortless deliveries as in precipitate deliveries, and where hysterotomies are performed before labor has begun the cardiac who is in congestive failure is immediately worse, not better Many suggestions have been made to account for this phenomenon—among them the onset of lactation with increased demand on the circulation rapid loss of vitamins with lactation a harmful effect of ergot or pituitary extracts on the heart and circulation, even psychosomatic factors, such as mental letdown after the struggle and excitement of pregnancy and delivery are over One documented fact must have an effect on the deterioration of the cardiac who is in congestive failure immediately after delivery is that there is an average loss of vital capacity of approximately 250 cc as soon as the uterus is emptied The circumference of the thoracic cage becomes smaller There is also lessening of the intra abdominal pressure These factors lessen the stretch of the diaphragm and diminish effective diaphragmatic function A loss of 250 cc of vital capacity is little or nothing to the average normal woman or cardiac who has no lung disease and is not in congestive failure The loss may be critical to a cardiac whose vital capacity has been heavily reduced by congestive heart failure Other probable factors may be equally or more important release of pressure on pelvis and leg veins with flooding of the circulation transfusion of a considerable quantity of blood from the uterus when it contracts following emptying, perhaps in some cases absorption of amniotic fluid with perhaps some pulmonary capillary embolism from particulate matter in the amniotic fluid such embolism perhaps being particularly troublesome to the patient with pulmonary congestion from heart failure

Whatever the explanation may be the fact that even the easiest delivery makes the cardiac in congestive heart failure worse gives emphasis to the need for careful watching through pregnancy in order to anticipate congestive failure by a strict regimen and leads to a general rule that every effort should be made to improve congestive failure once it has occurred before interrupting a pregnancy Furthermore at the Boston Lying in Hospital we have been led to believe that after the load of pregnancy has once become heavy it is unwise to interrupt a cardiac s pregnacy before term unless there is some complication such as a severe toxemia which in

itself calls for interruption Even if the patient is in heart failure which resists medical treatment at the sixth or seventh or eight month, it seems that the chance of successful delivery is greater if we can carry the patient along until the expected lightening of the load in the few weeks before term has become effective If one delivers a cardiac when the load of pregnancy has grown heavy (roughly after the sixth month) and before the normal lightening of the load during the last few weeks has become effective, one imposes a total load that is greater than the load of delivery at term We cannot prove by statistics that our cardiacs have done better since the rule never interrupt a cardiac for cardiac reasons after the load of pregnacy has once become heavy has been in effect, but such is our opinion The infant mortality is much better

All who are caring for cardiacs in pregnancy should keep the following in mind Subdivide young women who are cardiacs into favorable and 'unfavorable groups before pregnancy Enlighten the patient before marriage concerning her risk from pregnancy Let the cardiac and her husband decide if and when they desire to take the risk If they take it watch the patient and treat her with more care than one believes is required to forestall congestive heart failure If failure occurs diagnose it quickly, treat it vigorously and persistently by medical means Do not count on interruption of pregnancy to rescue a patient if congestive heart failure appears It is unlikely to appear before the load of pregnancy becomes heavy Mortality rates are high if interruption is done at this time for congestive heart failure so treat the patient by medical means until term when the load of normal pregnancy has lightened and deliver by the easiest method

Delivery of Cardiacs by Cesarean Section The rule to avoid premature delivery of cardiacs after the load has once become heavy has reduced the number of cesarean deliveries markedly In the past, it has been generally believed that cesarean section is the easiest way to deliver the usual severe cardiac and many still believe this Fear of sepsis now largely gone made routine cesarean delivery for cardiacs distasteful to many Even so at the Boston Lying in Hospital hysterotomies on cardiacs are now done only where there is an obstetrical indication For the average cardiac are the risks of complications from opening the abdomen even though the chance for infection is now almost abolished greater than the risks from delivery through the pelvis? Is the average hysterotomy easier on the circulation than the average delivery from below? No one can answer the questions involved firmly In any case the decision is not critical both methods are well tolerated In the present state of our knowledge it seems to me that one is not making a mistake to follow in general the conservative plan of not delivering a cardiac by hysterotomy unless there is some obstetrical indication

The Puerperium Congestive heart failure rarely appears for the first time in the puerperium and then only when provoked by some complicating condition such as over exertion an embolism or a fever Lactation has been feared as a danger to the cardiac There is an apparent but not yet defined increase in the demands on the circulation during the initial

stages of lactation and probably a lesser load from continued lactation So it is the custom to discourage nursing by cardiac mothers This applies particularly to the more severe cardiacs Many favorable cardiacs, how ever have nursed their babies without apparent harm

"Idiopathic Myocarditis of Pregnancy and Puerperium" Occasional cases have been reported that have developed symptoms in late pregnancy and in the puerperium that have led some observers to believe that there is an idiopathic myocarditis of pregnancy and puerperium The case reports that I have read have not clearly established a congestive heart failure nor a myocarditis but they are striking cases It is easy to believe that pregnancy had some bearing on the production of the symptoms though this has not been proven Perhaps they had a late toxemia Perhaps they were depleted women whose condition was aggravated by the demands of pregnancy delivery, and lactation until serious circulatory, renal and other symptoms appeared It is certain that cases with un accountable acute myocarditis during pregnancy puerperium have been *almost unknown in my experience* With economic social and medical conditions such as are present in Boston one need not fear an acute myo carditis in pregnancy or puerperium more than at other times

Treatment of Congestive Heart Failure in Pregnancy This is similar in most respects to the treatment of congestive heart failure in general The well recognized but not yet well explained tendency for many women to retain fluid in pregnancy is a complicating factor This edema of preg nancy is not well controlled by any of the usual methods of sodium restriction etc and the same can be said for the high circulating blood volume and blood dilution usual in pregnancy In treating congestive failure in pregnancy this factor should be recognized and from my expe rience fluid administration of all sorts should be cautiously controlled It is easier to produce pulmonary edema by forcing fluids of any sort in pregnancy than at other times

Surgical Treatment of Cardiovascular Defects To treat or forestall congestive heart failure during pregnancy surgery has been tried Some suc cessful results have been reported Data are far too scanty to justify firm *principles for these procedures Decision must be based for* each patient on the risk of the operation *versus* the risk of pregnancy without surgical treat ment For example the risk for "favorable' cardiacs with uncomplicated mitral stenosis (roughly those in Class 1 and 2) for pregnancy, and for surgical treatment of the valve in nonpregnant patients is about the same The chance for having a live mother and baby at the end of the pregnancy would undoubtedly be lessened if the operation was performed The same can be said for the unfavorable cardiac with mitral stenosis (Class 3 and 4) The statistical mortality rate for any such operation performed dur ing pregnancy must be lower than the risk of the pregnancy to make surgery an attractive risk How much lower depends on how much benefit the patient may receive from the operation Such benefit must be timely —not long delayed—if it is to improve the patient s chance for surviving the pregnancy if she survives the operation The risk to the child must be considered So far I have not encountered a pregnant patient with

rheumatic heart disease where the known statistical risks of either surgical treatment or pregnancy *per se* made the surgical treatment attractive to me

The Surgical Treatment of Patent Ductus Arteriosis During pregnancy this may well prove to be sound policy The patient may be promptly cured The risk of surgery is very small for the mother much smaller than the risk for pregnancy without surgery in my experience Clearly how ever the diagnosis should be made before and suitable treatment given before not during pregnancy

From very scant clinical data now available and from data suggesting that during pregnancy some rare women have temporarily weakened structure of the aorta it seems that during pregnancy conditions are not favorable for surgical correction of *coarctation of the aorta*

Mitral Stenosis and Paroxysmal Dyspnea in Pregnancy A small but extremely interesting group of women with uncomplicated mitral stenosis suddenly develop symptoms of severe pulmonary congestion apparently from acute heart failure There may be little or no apparent provocation There are usually rapid heart rate with normal rhythm (even as high as 180) and severe dyspnea with or without asthmatic breathing and/or cough Hemoptysis may occur in any degree sometimes as a hemorrhage threatening death There may be pain in the front chest usually above the heart on the left Sometimes the pain is severe Few men with mitral stenosis have these symptoms more women with mitral stenosis who are not pregnant have them but it is commonest among women with mitral stenosis who are pregnant Even among pregnant women with mitral stenosis only one or two per cent have these violent and paroxysmal ' failures Very few such patients have gone through pregnancy successfully Most of them have had recurrences of their alarming symptoms in spite of all usual treatment until the pregnancy was interrupted and then the succession of paroxysms has promptly ceased though occasional patients have had one or two recurrences shortly after the interruption and then stopped having them From my experience once a patient with mitral stenosis has had a sudden and violent pul monary congestion during pregnancy it is not safe to postpone interrup tion for a long time Some have survived a number of repeated attacks and then had pregnancy interrupted with excellent results but a few have died in their second or third attack I have encountered two patients who had a few comparatively mild attacks during the seventh and eighth calendar months and none thereafter who went through delivery success fully and have done well since The other patients that I have encoun tered in pregnancy began their attacks early in pregnancy when it was still feasible to interrupt Such cases have not yet been adequately followed for expectation for life but they do not have a good group prognosis Most of those whose symptoms have appeared in pregnancy and stopped recurring at once after the pregnancy was interrupted have had recurrences months or years later It is generally believed that surgi cal treatment of the mitral stenosis is strongly indicated for such patients and it may be that surgical treatment during pregnancy is desirable under

some circumstances for example early in pregnancy, where interruption is declined

Embolism In spite of all our care and treatment, congestive heart failure is still the single greatest cause of death for cardiacs in pregnancy Embolism is the next commonest cause (probably in some of these cases congestive heart failure is the main cause of the thrombosis that resulted in death from embolism) In the present state of our knowledge I have no firm plan for discouraging thrombosis and embolism in cardiacs in the puerperium Certainly the need for usual precautions against venous thrombosis is evident It is not dangerous to get the usual cardiac who is not in failure out of bed early in the puerperium and the usual simple procedures for keeping the leg veins from undue congestion by "exercise" and suitable pressure bandaging of the legs are safe In recent years, ligation and division of veins have been freely done in suitable cases The results have been pleasing Anticoagulants have not been routinely used by me They have been used in some of the cases that had vein ligation and division after operation It certainly is to be hoped that the present active interest in this subject will be sustained and lead to sound methods for reduction of the number of embolic accidents among the cardiacs

SUBACUTE BACTERIAL ENDOCARDITIS

Before effective antibiotics appeared, subacute bacterial endocarditis caused approximately one fifth of all the fatalities among the cardiacs in pregnancy There is nothing about pregnancy to make cardiacs more susceptible to such infections In fact, some recent statistics show that cardiacs are less likely to have subacute bacterial endocarditis while pregnant than they would be in usual conditions Delivery and the puerperium however offer a chance for infections In rare cases it is apparent that symptoms of subacute bacterial endocarditis began shortly after delivery One must consider whether antibiotics should be given prophylactically My present plan is to give them after delivery to patients who have aortic regurgitation and to patients who have a history of rheumatic fever and a loud systolic murmur, but do not have mitral stenosis, and continue them until the patient is discharged I do not give antibiotics to the patients who have uncomplicated mitral stenosis but give them freely if there is an unexplained even slight fever or other symptoms to suggest that there may be an infection Curiously, careful statistics gathered from large series of patients in several Boston hospitals who died of subacute bacterial endocarditis before the introduction of penicillin treatment have shown that among the married women the chance for contracting subacute bacterial endocarditis appears definitely greater during the three or four months after pregnancy than at any other corresponding interval of time The high incidence of S B E in the puerperium is not well explained by infections started at delivery and the few days thereafter One factor appears to be the natural tendency to postpone dentistry during pregnancy and then to have the dentistry often extractions in the few months after delivery It is probably a good plan to take

cultures before a cardiac is discharged from an obstetric clinic Certainly blood cultures should be taken if there is the slightest reason to suspect an infection but this is not enough Special observation should be continued for the next few months

Since the introduction of penicillin it has been shown that patients can survive subacute bacterial endocarditis that is discovered and treated during pregnancy and go through the pregnancy successfully From replies to questionnaires that I have sent out and from my experience it appears to me that the death rate is somewhat higher for S B E treated during pregnancy than it is under other conditions and from observation of individual cases it seems to me that women with S B E in pregnancy are likely to show more severe symptoms and more evidence of depletion—anemia even scurvy—than one commonly encounters in the disease in nonpregnant individuals It is possible that where the disease is recognized early in pregnancy interruption should be considered I have never recommended this procedure but believe the question should be considered unanswered until much more data can be obtained Reports from questionnaires and my own experience indicate that women who have been cured of S B E are not likely to have a recurrence during later pregnancies Indeed all such patients that I have heard of and seen have gone through the pregnancy and puerperium without recurrence A few of these women have had antibiotics throughout the pregnancy and most of them have had antibiotics for a while after delivery Such women should be advised concerning their risk for pregnancy on the basis of their chronic heart condition alone

RHEUMATIC FEVER AND PREGNANCY

This subject has interested a number of observers Others writing on the heart in pregnancy ignore it Those that are interested in the subject usually express and endeavor to support the opinion that active rheumatic carditis is an important factor in prognosis for pregnancy and occasionally it is suggested that pregnancy is likely to provoke a recurrence or flare up of rheumatic carditis in susceptible individuals Some have believed that pregnancy protects against rheumatic fever In my experience definite rheumatic fever is rare in pregnancy and also cardiac findings that suggest smoldering or active rheumatic carditis Postmortem examinations at the Boston Lying in Hospital have shown no evidence of active carditis in patients with chronic rheumatic heart disease who died suddenly or after a short illness in pregnancy Slight evidence of activity is usually found in those who died in severe prolonged congestive failure but in only one case in the last thirty years has active rheumatic carditis appeared at the Boston Lying in Hospital in the degree commonly found in children with fatal rheumatic fever The patients with chronic rheumatic heart disease at this hospital averaged twenty seven to twenty-eight years Approximately one fifth of the patients were twenty two years of age or younger These younger patients had more recurrences of rheumatic fever than the larger group of older women Altogether less than two per cent of my patients have had any clear suggestion of recurrence of rheumatic fever

during pregnancy and in many of these cases, the diagnosis was questionable Rheumatic fever can occur in pregnancy but it is an unusual event In my experience it occurs scarcely if any more often in pregnancy or puerperium than in women of comparable age with chronic rheumatic heart disease during a year of living when not pregnant There are insufficient data at present to indicate interruption of pregnancy for rheumatic fever Interruption is for all we know just as undesirable as allowing the pregnancy to continue It is, however certainly not fair to encourage married women with recently active or smoldering rheumatic fever to become pregnant There are no clear data to guide us in deciding how soon after an attack of rheumatic fever it is advisable to undertake pregnancy Arbitrarily, one may advise a wait of at least two years There is reason to believe that adding to the work of the heart has some effect in the development of valvular disease after rheumatic fever, and pregnancy certainly adds to the work of the heart Since definite data show that recurrences of rheumatic fever are much less likely in women of twenty three years of age or older than in younger women it is wise for the young woman who has had rheumatic fever, even though free from it for many years to postpone pregnancy until she is over twenty two years of age

DOES PREGNANCY, IF SURVIVED, SHORTEN THE CARDIAC'S LIFE?

Independent studies of age at death of women with chronic rheumatic heart disease have shown that those who bear children live slightly longer than those who do not This is a pleasant idea But individual histories show that some cardiacs enter pregnancy in good condition and are left with larger hearts and soon thereafter take a fairly rapid downhill course It is certain that, in general the heavier the demand on the circulation the faster the enlargement of the burdened heart chambers and the greater the likelihood of failure It is not easy to believe that pregnancy does not hasten the progress of chronic heart disease unless the normal demands of pregnancy have been fully compensated for by careful regimens designed to remove enough work ordinarily done to equal the added work demanded during pregnancy The unconvincing statistics may be affected by the fact that the worst cardiacs are not so likely to get married and attempt pregnancy as are the cardiacs who are favorable, and less handicapped The worse the cardiac the sooner she will die The better cardiacs live longer and have more time and opportunity for marriage and pregnancy

A few beliefs that have been expressed on the behavior of cardiacs in pregnancy deserve brief comment Cardiacs have easy labor' "Cardiacs miscarry if their hearts fail' Cardiacs who are in failure or who have auricular fibrillation do not become pregnant" All these statements are false The last sentence quoted is particularly erroneous Cardiacs continue to menstruate to almost the same age as normal women and many a cardiac invalid in chronic advanced congestive failure and with established auricular fibrillation has become pregnant

ESSENTIAL HYPERTENSION

Because of the difficulty during pregnancy of distinguishing between the toxemias of pregnancy essential hypertension and hypertension associated with nephritis and the fact that patients with hypertension are often seen by an obstetrician or cardiologist only after they have become pregnant adequate data on the prognosis and treatment of uncomplicated essential hypertension in pregnancy are lacking Furthermore, the difficulties in subdividing known individuals with essential hypertension into varying degrees of severity have not yet been overcome It appears from my experience at the Boston Lying in Hospital and with private patients that patients with mild degrees of essential hypertension are approximately as common among pregnant women as are patients with rheumatic heart disease The maternal death rate is not quite as high among the mild hypertensives as it is among the favorable cardiacs There is however a heavy maternal death rate for the patients who have severe hypertension and those who with their hypertension have evidence of cardiac enlargement and myocardial change or symptoms of circulatory embarrassment The death rate among such cases is comparable to the death rate among the unfavorable cardiacs Furthermore there is a belief not fully supported but held by many observers including myself, that pregnancy tends to accelerate the progress of essential hypertension

The hypertensive patient who elects pregnancy should be guarded by the same general rules that apply to the patient with chronic rheumatic heart disease Obstetrician and cardiologist should work even more closely together The difficulty in assessing the symptoms of toxemia and hypertension are so great that the experienced obstetrician must keep in close touch with the patient particularly in the last trimester In hypertension with or without toxemia it seems that an essential point in treatment of mother and fetus is to decide if and when pregnancy should be terminated The rule Do not interrupt pregnancy when the load has once become heavy before term for cardiac reasons ' does not apply to the hypertensive patient This whole subject needs more study and documentation as of course does hypertension in general

Management of hypertension is much the same as under usual conditions though closer watch on the possible effect of severe sodium and protein restriction is clearly indicated and undoubtedly closer control of all the stresses known to affect hypertension are needed than if the patient did not have the stress of pregnancy itself The importance of the hypertensive albuminuria in pregnancy in the prognosis of women after successful delivery was shown years ago when a very large series followed for a number of years had a mortality rate several times that of normal expectancy

Though the vast majority of cardiacs who become pregnant have rheumatic heart disease nearly all of the cardiac diseases discussed in these volumes may occur in a pregnant woman For example pregnancy complicated by each of the following and many other rare cardiovascular diseases have been discussed in the literature Complete dissection of the aorta, complete heart block cardiovascular changes associated with

kyphoscoliosis, atresia of the aorta, pregnancy in patient with Wolff Parkinson White syndrome When one encounters such and other rare situations one must consult the special literature or seek the specially informed consultant Such rarities cannot be feasibly covered adequately in volumes devoted to the whole field of cardiovascular disease such as this This statement also applies to pregnancy in women with congenital cardiovascular malformations

REFERENCES

1 Bartholomew R A Colvin E D Grimes W H and Fish J S Interpretation of blood pressure behavior in pregnancy and the puerperium Am Practitioner and *Digest of Treatment 1 394 1950*

2 Brown E Sampson J J Wheeler E O Gundelfinger B and Giansiracusa J E Physiologic changes in the circulation during and after obstetric labor Am Heart J 34 311 1947

3 Bunim J J and Appel S B A principle for determining prognosis of pregnancy in rheumatic heart disease J A M A 142 90 1950

4 Carney L and Bolles M M Personality and sexuality of the physically handicapped woman New York Paul B Hoeber 1942

5 Chavez I Enfermedades del corazon cirugia y embarazo Mexico El Colegio Nacional 1945

6 Correll H L and Rosenbaum F F Multiple pregnancies in patients with rheumatic or congenital *heart disease Am Heart J 39 283 1950*

7 DeGraff A C and Lingg C The course of rheumatic heart disease in adults The influence of the type of valvular lesion on the course of rheumatic heart disease Am Heart J 10 478 1934 35

8 Dripps R D and Vandam L D Clinical progress The anesthetic management of patients with heart disease Circulation 5 927 1952

9 Furman R H Kennedy J A and Daniel R A Jr Coarctation of the aorta complicated by dissected aneurysm in pregnancy Report of a case with survival studied by arteriography Am Heart J 43 765 1952

10 Goodfriend M J Klein M D and Smolev M Pregnancy associated with hypertension and intracranial hemorrhage Am J Obst & Gynec 58 770 1949

11 *Haig D C and Gilchrist A R Heart disease complicated* by pregnancy Edinburgh M J 56 55 1949
Hamilton B E Cardiovascular Problems in Pregnancy Circulation 9 922 1954

12 Hamilton B E and Thomson K G The heart in pregnancy and the child bearing age Baltimore Williams & Wilkins 1941

13 Hamilton H F H Cardiac output in hypertensive toxemias of pregnancy J Obst & Gynec Brit Empire 58 977 1951

14 ——— Cardiac output in pregnancy Symposium on haemodynamics in pregnancy Tr Edinburgh Obst Soc Edinburgh M J 557 1 9 1949 50

15 Herrick W W and Tillman A J B Clinical and necropsy findings in cases of toxemia of pregnancy with prolonged follow up Their relation to cardiovascular disease Tr A Am Physicians 49 207 1934

16 ——— and ——— Toxemia of pregnancy Its relation to cardiovascular *and* renal disease Clinical and necropsy observations with a long follow up Arch Int Med 55 643 1935

17 Henderson E N The obstetric management of pregnancy complicated by heart disease Am J Obst & Gynec 53 494 1947

18 Jensen J Heart disease and pregnancy Mod Concepts of Card Disease 18 January 1949

19 ——— The heart in pregnancy St Louis C V Mosby 1938

20 Kellar R J Symposium on haemodynamics in pregnancy V Haemodynamics in pregnancy Tr Edinburgh Obst Soc Edinburgh M J 57 27 1949 50

21 Kennedy J D Sudden death in labour associated with acute rheumatic cardic lesions J Obst. & Gynaec. Brit Empire 57 765 1950
22 Kowalski H J Callahan E J III Rutstein D and Ellis L B Cyclic increase in cardiac disability during menstruation in women with rheumatic disease (In press)
23 Landesman R Douglas G and Snyder S S Retinal changes in toxemias of pregnancy II Mild and severe hypertension renal disease and diabetes mellitus Am. J Obst & Gynec 63 16 1952
24 Marshall R Heart disease and pregnancy Ulster M J 19 72 1950
25 McKeown F Rheumatic heart disease in pregnancy Ulster M J 19 68 1950
26 Mendelson C L Pregnancy and subacute bacterial endocarditis Am. J Obst. and Gynec 56 645 1948
27 Mukherjee C L and Govan A D T Blood pressure and prognosis in toxemia of pregnancy J Obst Gynaec Brit. Emp 57 941 1950
28 Reid D E and Teel H M Nonconclusive pregnancy toxemias Am. J Obst & Gynec. 37 886 1939
29 Taussig H B Johns Hopkins University Baltimore Maryland Personal Communication. March 1953
30 VanderVeer J P and Kuo P T Cardiac disease in pregnancy Study of patients with heart disease at Philadelphia Lying in Division of Pennsylvania Hospital from 1937 1947 inclusive Am. Heart J 39 2 1950
31 White R. Symposium on haemodynamics in pregnancy III Blood volume in pregnancy Tr Edinburgh Obst Soc Edinburgh M J 57 14 1949 1950
32 ——— Symposium on haemodynamics in pregnancy I Limb volumes in normal and toxemic pregnancy Tr Edinburgh Obst. Soc p 10
33 Zimmerman H A A preliminary report on intracardiac catheterization studies during pregnancy J Lab & Clin. Med 36 1007 December 1950

WILLIAM B. PORTER, M.D.
AND
RENO R. PORTER, M.D.

20

Acute Pericarditis

Definition Acute pericarditis is an acute inflammatory process involving the parietal and visceral layers of the pericardium. Except for the nonspecific (benign) type, it is always found in association with a systemic disease, a septicemia, or an inflammation in contiguous tissues and, as such, should not be considered an independent entity but rather a complication or extension of the underlying disease process.

Etiology and Classifications Acute pericarditis is due to a variety of infectious agents as well as several noninfectious causes. It results in two basic types of reaction. One consists of a fibrinous or serofibrinous exudate *with minimal to absent fluid (pericarditis sicca)* while the other consists of a fibrinous, serosanguinous or purulent exudation with the accumulation of an appreciable quantity of fluid in the pericardial sac which may in itself, become of clinical significance (pericarditis with effusion). For this reason, acute pericarditis has been classified at times according to the nature of this reaction and whether or not an effusion is present. However, the specific etiologic agent is largely responsible for the severity and character of the pericardial reaction and is the determining factor in prognosis and treatment. It is highly desirable, therefore, to have as a basis for the approach to the clinical problems of acute pericarditis, a classification of a different order from that which is founded upon the nature of the pericardial inflammatory reaction.

The following classification gives one the proper perspective since the type of pericarditis is immediately related to the associated disease or causative factor and this orientation logically suggests a concise and rational foundation for prognosis and treatment.

A. Rheumatic pericarditis (rheumatic fever)
B. Acute nonspecific (benign) pericarditis
C. Bacterial pericarditis
   (a) Tuberculous pericarditis
   (b) Pyogenic (purulent) pericarditis
D. Nonbacterial
   (a) Myomalacic pericarditis (myocardial infarction)
   (b) Uremic pericarditis
E. Traumatic pericarditis

There are other forms of acute pericarditis which are quite rare and deserve only to be mentioned in passing. These include pericarditis asso

ciated with disseminated lupus erythematosus and with infectious mononucleosis, cholesterol pericarditis, chylopericardium, and infections due to echinococcus and fungus

Pathology Acute pericarditis begins as a localized inflammatory or a noninflammatory fibrinous reaction of the pericardium It may remain localized and confined to one layer of the pericardium Usually, it soon spreads over the entire surface of the heart and involves both layers of the pericardium In many types of acute pericarditis, the inflammatory reaction extends down into the subepicardial myocardium Varying amounts of serous hemorrhagic, and/or purulent effusions may be formed, the quantity varying from a few cc to as many as 3000 cc Localized effusions occasionally occur One of the writers (W B P) has observed a patient with tuberculous pericarditis who had an effusion localized over the right auricle and part of the right ventricle The roentgenogram had many features suggesting a large aortic aneurysm, and the clinical picture was quite similar to the syndrome of constrictive pericarditis

Symptoms Acute pericarditis may exist without the addition of any subjective complaints distinct from those associated with the primary disease, but there are two circumstances which give rise to new symptoms

The first of these is the inflammatory involvement of the parietal pericardium, particularly that which is contiguous to the pleura diaphragm or anterior mediastinum This gives rise to chest pain which is usually sharp and knifelike in character and may be intermittent or continuous It varies in intensity from mild to severe and is frequently aggravated by respiration and other movements of the chest wall The area of distribution is variable, being, at times, only remotely related to the precordial area It is located most frequently over the lower sternal region or along the left sternal border At times the pain radiates to or is localized to the upper abdomen the left shoulder, and the left scapular area posteriorly It is an interesting observation that in myomalacic and uremic pericarditis where the process is confined within the pericardial sac pain is never a symptom

The second circumstance that accounts for symptoms is the development of a significant degree of pericardial effusion This results in two sets of symptoms those resulting from an increase in intrapericardial pressure and those due to the compression of adjacent structures by the distended pericardial sac The first of these effects is dependent upon the rate of formation and the quantity of the effusion A small effusion may produce no symptoms, whereas a moderately large effusion (500 cc 1 pint), which has accumulated rapidly, seriously interferes with cardiac filling (cardiac tamponade) This produces a combination of venous engorgement ('backward failure') and diminished cardiac output ('forward failure') Venous engorgement leads to right upper quadrant pain from distension of the liver and to varying degrees of edema of the feet and legs The diminished cardiac output causes weakness and faintness Dyspnea and orthopnea may also be present, but these are related more often, to the fact that respirations are painful, giving rise to rapid shallow respiratory movements Large effusions produce these symptoms in

greater degree and in addition produce symptoms of extrapericardial compression such as cough cyanosis dysphagia and hoarseness The clinical picture in patients having large effusions may masquerade that of advanced congestive heart failure The similarity of these symptoms and altered circulatory dynamics to those occurring in congestive heart failure may lead to the erroneous diagnosis of primary myocardial insufficiency

Physical Signs The physical findings associated with acute pericarditis are those phenomena caused by the fibrinous exudate and by the accumulation in the pericardial sac of an effusion sufficient in quantity to be clinically detectable

A to and fro *friction rub* over the precordial area is a characteristic finding and is sufficient evidence to warrant the diagnosis of pericarditis It is a scratchy, superficial sound often quite faint and must be looked for with diligence and concentration It is heard with greatest intensity during held expiration, and may be audible only at this time This finding is more readily noted if the chest piece of the stethoscope is applied with moderate pressure and particularly so if the chest piece is of the diaphragm type *It must be searched for at frequent intervals for often it* is evanescent and can be heard for only a brief time during the course of the disease This sign may be mistaken for an endocardial to and fro murmur and *vice versa* but this error in interpretation is not probable if due consideration is given to the established points in differential diagnosis The presence of a pericardial friction rub does not negate the existence of a significant degree of pericardial effusion The heart tends to fill the space between the sternum and spine and will remain against the anterior parietal pericardial sac even in the presence of large effusions [9] A pericardial friction signifies pericarditis which implies that a large effusion may be either in the making or is actually present

The physical phenomena which are caused by the accumulation of fluid in the pericardial sac can be divided into two groups those which are the result of the enlarged pericardial sac and those which result from cardiac tamponade

Signs of an Enlarged Pericardial Sac 1 An increase in the supracardiac dulness in the second and third interspaces especially to the left of the sternum is an early sign of effusion This is elicited by light percussion with the patient in a recumbent position It will be noted that the extent of the dulness lessens or disappears when the patient sits up There is a high area of left auricular dulness and an increased area of absolute cardiac dulness The left border of cardiac dulness is found to extend *beyond the apical impulse if this latter is discernible*

2 The heart sounds are diminished in intensity and the apical impulse is less readily seen and felt

3 There are evidences of consolidation or atelectasis in the lower lobe of the left lung (Ewart s sign) These posterior phenomena assume one of two rather distinct types (a) Distant bronchial breathing and impaired resonance are noted at the angle of the left scapula With large pericardial effusions these findings increase to involve the entire left lower lobe

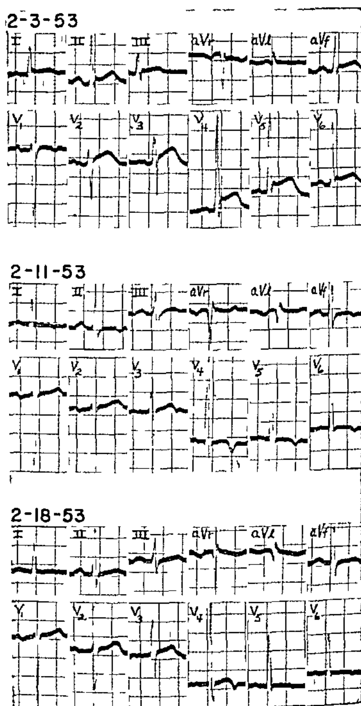


FIGURE 1 Electrocardiogram Case of acute nonspecific pericarditis

posteriorly closely imitating a pneumonic consolidation (b) There are the physical phenomena of pulmonary consolidation plus those of a pleural effusion *These findings at times, are so strikingly similar to those produced by a pleural effusion* that occasionally a pericardial sac is aspirated posteriorly under the mistaken belief that it is a pleural effusion It is obligatory, therefore that some distinctive differential point be found to aid in the clinical separation of pericardial effusion and pleural effusion when these elusive phenomena are present It will be noted that the upper margin of percussion dulness in patients with pericardial effusion reaches its maximum height at the angle of the scapula descends downward in the axilla reaching the lowest point in the mid axillary line then rises to become continuous with the left margin of cardiac dulness An analysis of this line of dulness shows it to be a reverse of the Ellis S shaped line observed in pleural effusion The major difference is the absence of axillary flatness consistently found in pleural effusions The inverted S line has proven to be invaluable in differentiating pericardial effusion from pleural effusion when other confusing phenomena existed over the area *of the left lower lung*

Signs of Cardiac Tamponade 1 A pericardial effusion depending upon its volume and the rapidity of its development may interfere with cardiac filling and produce an inflow obstruction This causes a rise in venous pressure resulting in distension of the neck veins above the level of the right auricle an enlarged and tender liver and if this state continues widespread edema and ascites

2 The interference with cardiac filling also causes a reduction in cardiac output and there results a fall in systolic and pulse pressure and an increase in heart rate

3 Pulsus paradoxus occurs and is recognized by a significant decrease in pulse volume (and systolic blood pressure as noted on the sphygmomanometer) during inspiration This is a reversal of the normal respiratory variations of the pulse which consist of an increase during inspiration and a decrease during expiration This phenomenon also occurs in other cardiac and pulmonary diseases and this fact greatly lessens its diagnostic significance

Electrocardiogram The characteristic changes which occur in the electrocardiogram (Fig 1) consist of an initial slight elevation of the S T segment which persists for several days to a week or more Gradually the S T segments return to the isoelectric line concomitant with the development of low flat or slight to moderately inverted T waves These changes may be present in only a few leads or in as many as ten leads of the routine twelve lead electrocardiogram The reciprocal elevation of the S T segments (except sometimes in aVr) and the Q waves changes which are characteristic of myocardial infarction are not seen In most instances the electrocardiographic changes return to normal after several weeks although some abnormalities persist indefinitely The deviations occurring in the electrocardiogram have been attributed to reduction in coronary blood flow resulting from the pressure effects of the pericardial effusion on the coronary circulation However the withdrawal of peri

cardial fluid does not alter these changes in the electrocardiogram, a fact which indicates that the intrapericardial pressure is not concerned in the pathogenesis of the electrocardiographic abnormalities It is generally agreed now that the observed changes occurring in acute pericarditis are due to involvement of the subepicardial myocardium by the inflammatory reaction in the pericardium

Roentgenography Roentgenographic examination of the heart in acute pericarditis reveals no significant findings unless an effusion is present under which circumstances there often are characteristic findings which may be extremely helpful in diagnosis Teleoroentgenograms show enlargement of the cardiac silhouette, the degree depending upon the

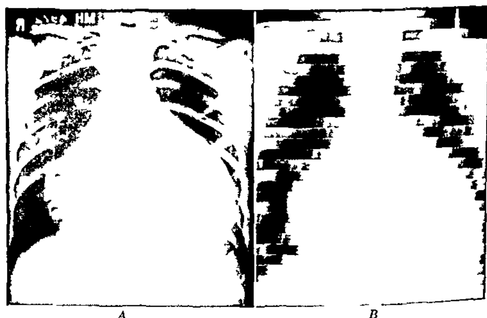


FIGURE 2 *A* Teleoroentgenogram *B* Kymographic teleoroentgenogram Case of tuberculous pericarditis with effusion

amount of effusion The characteristic change is a 'waterbottle' appearance to the cardiac shadow, which is narrow in the superior portion and rounded and wide in the lower portion (Fig 2*A*) The roentgenograms should if possible, be made in both the recumbent and sitting positions since this will demonstrate the changes in shape resulting from the effect of altered posture on the distribution of the pericardial effusion

The fluoroscope is useful in determining the size and shape of the cardiac shadow but, in addition, is particularly valuable for studying the amplitude of cardiac contraction which progressively decreases as the quantity of pericardial fluid increases This finding at times may be so marked that no pulsations are seen and a picture approaching a 'dead heart results

The kymograph (Fig 2*B*) is another means for studying the amplitude and character of the heart s contracting waves It is doubtful whether it

gives more data than a careful fluoroscopic study except that a permanent record of the motions of the heart border is obtained

Roentgenographic studies done after aspiration of fluid and the injection of 100 to 150 cc of air (Fig 3 *A* and *B*) is often quite revealing and gives additional useful information The size and shape of the heart, the *presence or absence of tumor masses and the thickness of the pericardium* can be determined by this means

Other Findings Fever, leukocytosis and an elevated sedimentation rate occur in acute pericarditis Where the pericarditis is a part of some other disease process these changes conform in general to those associ-

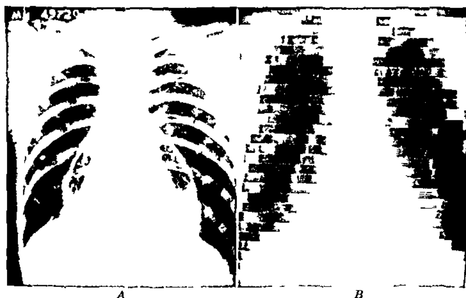


FIGURE 3 *A* Teleoroentgenogram *B* Kymographic teleoroentgenogram. Same case as Fig 2 following aspiration and the introduction of 300 cc of air

ated with the primary disease and are not materially altered in degree or character by the additional inflammatory reaction in the pericardium Nonspecific pericarditis which usually follows a previous upper respiratory infection, has fever leukocytosis and an elevated sedimentation rate as the initial features of its onset Tuberculosis of the pericardium is likewise distinctive, for a moderate leukocytosis is usual in serous membrane tuberculosis whereas the leukocytosis is slight if any in uncomplicated pulmonary or glandular tuberculosis

Differential Diagnosis The pericardial friction rub may be confused with *endocardial murmurs* but this is rarely a problem in differential diagnosis *if careful attention is* paid to the auscultatory findings Occasionally *the diastolic murmur of aortic or pulmonic insufficiency* which is heard quite well along the left sternal border may resemble the diastolic component of a pericardial friction rub Usually however this murmur is soft and blowing and does not have the superficial scratchy characteris

tics of a friction rub Further, any systolic murmur associated with such a diastolic murmur generally is quite harsh and is definitely lower in pitch and bears no similarity to the systolic component of a friction rub

The combination of signs and symptoms of venous congestion with findings suggesting enlargement of the heart may present some diagnostic difficulties between pericarditis with effusion and *congestive heart failure* on the basis of myocardial and/or endocardial disease Cardiac dilatation and pericardial effusion do, at times, have a superficial similarity The history of the illness is most helpful in this differentiation, for the causes of myocardial failure are distinctive and quite different from those occurring in patients with acute pericarditis The presence of a gallop rhythm and more distinct heart sounds distinguish myocardial failure from pericardial effusion Likewise careful comparison of the findings of palpation and percussion will indicate that the left border of cardiac dulness extends beyond the apical impulse in pericardial effusion The circulation time (arm to tongue) has been reported by Bellet *et al* (1951) to be normal or only slightly prolonged in pericardial effusion and, therefore, useful as a differential finding from cardiac dilatation where the circulation time is always prolonged This appears to be a helpful differential point, but in our experience is not specifically diagnostic in all cases Fluoroscopic examination of the heart generally is most helpful since the amplitude of cardiac contractions are much less and may be entirely absent, in pericardial effusion as compared to those seen in a dilated heart This is not invariably so because, in some instances, a tremendously dilated heart may have very feeble or imperceptible pulsations of the cardiac borders Rarely, a diagnostic pericardial tap may be required to make the differentiation We have had the experience recently of following a patient for many months with the diagnosis of idiopathic cardiac hypertrophy and fibrosis until someone had sufficient doubt as to the correctness of the diagnosis to do a pericardial tap which revealed a large pericardial effusion Angiocardiography is very helpful in the differential diagnosis since it will demonstrate the small heart chambers in the larger area of pericardial effusion However, this is a somewhat formidable procedure and should be used in only the difficult situations where differentiation is of critical importance to the patient and cannot be made by other means

The differentiation of *coronary occlusion* with myocardial infarction from acute pericarditis particularly the nonspecific type, has been receiving increasing attention in recent years The sudden onset of substernal pain may suggest a myocardial infarction and in occasional instances, the differentiation may not be apparent for several days or more In the typical case the sharp character of the pain with its restrictions on respiration, the presence of a friction rub fever leukocytosis and elevated sedimentation rate on the first day of illness, and the electrocardiographic findings serve to identify the episode as acute pericarditis rather than acute myocardial infarction

Primary or secondary *tumors* of the pericardium may give rise to pericardial effusions and other phenomena suggesting acute pericarditis The history is usually quite helpful in making this differentiation The aspi

rated pericardial fluid is nearly always hemorrhagic and may contain tumor cells when suitably stained X rays taken after withdrawal of fluid and injection of air into the pericardial sac frequently demonstrate the tumor mass In some instances pericardial exploration and biopsy may be necessary

Acute pericarditis at times is accompanied by very confusing abdominal symptoms, simulating so perfectly some acute *intra abdominal pathology* that useless operations for suspected surgical diseases have been done This is particularly true of nonspecific pericarditis where abdominal pain and tenderness may be the only symptoms for the first few days This error will be avoided if due consideration is given to the entire clinical history and to a careful examination of the heart [10]

Treatment The specific treatment of acute pericarditis varies with the etiological nature of the disease When it occurs during the course of any primary disorder it may or may not require additions to or modifications of the therapeutic regimen already instituted (see Specific Types of Acute Pericarditis)

Regardless of the type of pericarditis thoracic distress and pain are prominent symptoms and require therapeutic control A lightly filled ice cap placed over the precordium frequently gives considerable comfort and should be tried routinely As a rule the use of opiates is indicated and required These not only relieve pain but promote sleep and lessen the patient s anxiety which at times is most distressing

Pericardial Paracentesis When pericardial effusion is of sufficient degree to cause cardiac tamponade or serious compression of lung tissue pericardial paracentesis must be done promptly to relieve the circulatory embarrassment and/or respiratory distress There are several sites at which pericardial taps can be made The apical and subxyphoid are the ones most commonly used with the parasternal routes and the posterior thorax route employed less frequently [7] The site selected should be the one most suitable for the particular patient as determined by careful study of the patient including PA and oblique chest x rays and cardiac fluoroscopy It will be found that just within the outer border of cardiac dulness (1 to 2 cm outside of the apex impulse if perceptible) in the fifth or fourth intercostal space (apical approach) is the area of choice in the majority of patients The second commonest choice is the point formed by the junction of the ensiform process and the left costal arch (subxyphoid approach) In this approach the patient s body should be elevated thirty to forty degrees and the needle directed slightly upward This site is particularly useful when there is a large effusion which tends to recur rapidly and it is desirable to empty the lower part of the pericardial sac It is also the route of choice in instances where the amount of fluid is considered to be slight or questionable When the effusion projects unusually far to the right the needle may be inserted in the fourth intercostal space 1 cm to the right of the sternum In the rare case where fluid is not obtained from the anterior sites and there are well developed posterior compression phenomena (Ewart s sign) the posterior thoracic approach can be utilized The needle is inserted in the seventh or eighth

intercostal space in the midscapular line with the left arm raised to lift the scapula upward and outward from the site of puncture This site for paracentesis should not be chosen if purulent pericarditis is suspected, for the danger of pleural infection by the contaminated needle is great

The site selected for the puncture should be anesthetized adequately with a local anesthetic (two per cent procaine) It is desirable to use a No 27 needle to infiltrate the skin and chest wall, including the pleura and sufficient time must be allowed for the anesthetic to take effect before the exploratory needle is inserted If the patient is distressed by pain, breathlessness and anxiety, the procedure should be preceded by an *opiate* administered hypodermically The patient should be placed in a sitting or semisitting position The aspirating needle should be either No 20 to No 18 gauge and have a short bevel A 30 cc glass syringe is a convenient size which is attached to the needle by a piece of rubber tubing, 4 cm in length, which allows some movement of the needle if it comes in contact with the heart

Regardless of care used, the heart is occasionally felt against the trocar and the ventricular wall may even be perforated without harm but injury to a coronary artery may be serious This fact emphasizes the importance of assuring a patent lumen by the use of a stilet and the choice of a needle with a short beveled point

SPECIFIC TYPES OF ACUTE PERICARDITIS

Rheumatic Pericarditis ***Pathology*** Rheumatic pericarditis is a part of the carditis that may occur during the course of active rheumatic fever It is doubtful if it ever is present as an isolated rheumatic lesion, or, at least it would be most uncommon for it to be recognized as such It consists of a fibrinous or serofibrinous inflammatory reaction involving the entire pericardium The cellular exudate is made up of plasma cells and lymphocytes and usually extends into the subepicardial tissues The mass of fibrin may be quite dense and firmly adherent to the serous surfaces Typical Aschoff bodies are seen at times and, when present, are diagnostic but their absence does not exclude the rheumatic nature of this type of pericarditis A small or moderate amount of fluid may be found between the fibrinous adhesions sometimes definitely loculated On occasions, there may be an appreciable quantity of fluid free in the pericardial cavity as a definite effusion This fluid is serous in most cases but may be serosanguineous particularly in fulminating cases

Clinical Features The clinical behavior of rheumatic fever is no index to the probability of pericarditis Rheumatic pericarditis is not unusual in patients in whom the other manifestations of the disease are so mild that they are entirely ignored by the individual but generally, it is seen in patients rather acutely ill with active rheumatic fever Thomas *et al*[15] have emphasized the differences in the clinical features and prognosis of rheumatic pericarditis with an effusion from that without an effusion The latter is a relatively unimportant early manifestation of active carditis whereas the former occurs later on in the course of rheumatic fever and

is much more serious in its implications A pericardial friction rub is the characteristic finding There may be no other alterations in the clinical course of the rheumatic fever although at times there is an associated increase in many or all the evidences of active disease Significant amounts of pericardial effusion commonly are present but the quantity is not clinically detectable since, ordinarily it is impossible to determine how much is effusion and how much is cardiac dilatation secondary to the rheumatic myocarditis This problem does not introduce serious difficulties for the reason that it is doubtful whether one is ever justified in assuming that effusion accompanying rheumatic pericarditis is of sufficient degree to require aspiration

Treatment The occurrence of acute pericarditis as a complication during the course of acute rheumatic fever is a somewhat ominous development and requires an intensification of the therapeutic regimens already instituted whether salicylates antibiotics and/or adrenal steroids It is an indication that the underlying disease is still quite active or that a recrudescence has occurred It generally responds very well to adrenal steroids and these should be given or reinstituted if they have been discontinued previously

Acute Non Specific (Benign) Pericarditis ***Pathology*** The pathology of this condition is not known too well because the disease in practically all cases runs a benign course without fatality and postmortem studies therefore are scanty It is considered to be a serofibrinous type of inflammatory reaction infectious in nature and probably viral in origin The amount of pleural effusion is usually small and in the majority of those instances where aspiration was done has been found to be serosanguinous [11]

Clinical Features This condition is generally considered to be a benign self limiting disease lasting one to three weeks from which recovery is complete and without significant sequelae [9] However in a recent report of twenty four cases of benign pericarditis [8] two cases later developed constrictive pericarditis which required pericardial resection six and twenty months following the acute episode It is more commonly encountered in adults but cases have been reported in the pediatric age group [4] The disease begins during or following a nonspecific respiratory infection with the rather sudden onset of chest pain and fever The character of the pain varies from patient to patient being described as 'sharp knife like sometimes dull and occasionally as crushing The intensity varies but is always sufficient to require medication for relief The commonest location of the pain is along the left sternal border or over the lower sternal area but at times it is noted in the epigastric area and less frequently over the precordium and in the left shoulder Associated with this pain there is sometimes felt a deep substernal soreness similar to that felt after physical injury to the sternum Both the pain and soreness are aggravated by respiration cough and other movements of the chest The pain is a much more consistent and significant symptom in nonspecific pericarditis than in other types of acute pericarditis The pain gradually diminishes in intensity over a period of several days to a week

A pericardial friction rub sometimes lasting *for many days*, is the most significant physical phenomenon In one of our cases the friction rub was present for twelve days Pericardial effusion does not occur in amounts sufficient to be detected on physical examination Teleoroentgenograms have shown an increase in the size of the cardiac silhouette at the onset of the disease and a reduction in size following recovery This has been attributed by some writers to cardiac dilation[6] but it is the authors' opinion that this is due to pericardial effusion alone Recurrences, apparently, are quite common, occurring in thirty per cent of the cases reported by Tomlin, Logue and Hurst [14]

There have been reports of fatalities in this type of pericarditis from the use of anticoagulant drugs, in the mistaken belief that the patient had an acute myocardial infarction Death was due *to extensive hemopericardium* This points out the importance of differentiating this disorder from myocardial infarction (see Differential Diagnosis)

Treatment Therapy is essentially symptomatic in nature since the disease is self limiting It has not been demonstrated that antibiotics are of any particular value, but, in view of the probable viral etiology, it seems wise to undertake some type of specific therapy At the present time tetracycline 0 5 Gm four times daily for a period of ten days to two weeks seems the preferable therapeutic agent The adrenal steroids have been used in the treatment of this condition with dramatic improvement reported [4] It seems doubtful that such therapy is indicated in the average case although its use might be considered if the course is unusually acute or unduly prolonged

Tuberculous Pericarditis ***Pathology*** Tuberculous pericarditis is an inflammatory reaction of the pericardium showing characteristic tubercles, epithelioid cells subsequent hyalinizing fibrosis and scattered giant cells The myocardium and immediate epicardial layer of fat are rarely, if ever, involved although encapsulated tubercles are occasionally found in the myocardium The epicardial fat layer is often thick The actively granulating outer surface of inflammatory tissue, which is vascular and in which fibroblasts are proliferating, greatly favors the formation of adhesions, which may become generalized and dense

Clinical Features Tuberculous pericarditis occurs more often by the direct spread of infection from caseous mediastinal lymph glands or from clinically quiescent pleural or pulmonary foci Occasionally it is a part of multiple serous membrane tuberculosis or of miliary tuberculosis The clinical course is both elusive and variable and the condition, therefore, is frequently confused with other diseases It is a serious disease yet, many cases do go unrecognized and recover with slight disability The diagnosis is made on the basis of the clinical history, x ray studies, and from bacteriologic examination of the aspirated fluid In those instances where the bacteriologic results are negative a presumptive diagnosis can be made on the history and course of the disease and the demonstration of a thickened parietal pericardium as seen on chest x rays taken after injection of air into the pericardium Those cases presenting the symptoms and signs of massive pericardial effusion may be confused with heart failure

when prolonged subacute tamponade has resulted in extensive edema, enlarged liver and venous congestion yet the probability of error is remote if reasonable care is exercised

Treatment The treatment of tuberculous pericarditis is an individual problem In all cases however, the established therapeutic principles for active tuberculosis must be rigidly adhered to in an effort to arrest the active lesions Effusions when they occur are usually quite large and repeated aspirations may be required While there is some merit in the injection of air into the pericardial sac after aspiration of fluid at least from a diagnostic point of view there appears to be considerable doubt that this is of any therapeutic value as was thought earlier

The introduction of the antimicrobial agents particularly those effective against the tubercle bacillus has altered the therapeutic approach to tuberculous pericarditis and has modified to a considerable extent the clinical course and ultimate outcome of such diseases The management with these newer agents has not been definitely established and is still in the exploratory phase There is no question as to their efficacy, but the problems of preferable drug and proper dosage remain to be settled Streptomycin alone has been used to some extent[3 10] and with good results but a more recent agent isoniazid appears to be the drug of choice since it has the best penetration and is more likely to reach the deepseated tubercle bacilli in a pericardial exudate The recommended dose is 100 mg three times daily In addition it appears advisable to supplement this drug with either streptomycin 0 5 Gm twice weekly or para aminosalicylic acid 3 0 Gm four times daily The general trend is for prolonged drug treatment of tuberculosis so therapy should be continued for a period of twelve to eighteen months irrespective of the fact that laboratory and other evidences of activity subside prior to this This therapy can be continued on an ambulatory basis at home after the initial acute mani festations have subsided It remains to be seen how this therapy will alter the course of this disease, and particularly how it will modify the chronic changes we have expected in the past

Pyogenic Pericarditis ***Pathology*** Pyogenic pericarditis is due most commonly to the pneumococcus or staphylococcus less frequently to the streptococcus and rarely to colon bacillus gonococcus *Bacillus melitensis*, *Bacillus tularensis* and *Bacillus influenzae* Except for infection following direct trauma, it is always secondary to a pyemia elsewhere in the body It occurs most commonly from direct extension of an adjacent intra thoracic inflammatory process such as purulent foci in the lungs or mediastinum It is due less frequently to a bacteremia as occurs in acute bacterial endocarditis or in a metastatic invasion from a distant focus such as osteomyelitis It may be a localized or generalized purulent inflammation of the pericardial sac with generally some infiltration into the adjacent myocardium There is a small to moderate amount of puru lent fluid which varies in consistency from thin to quite thick

Clinical Features Pyogenic pericarditis is seen less frequently now, probably due to the widespread use of the newer antibiotic drugs which effectively control the primary foci of infection that otherwise, would

give rise to secondary invasion of the pericardium As in other forms of acute pericarditis, the onset may not cause any symptoms in addition to those peculiar to the disease, of which it is a complication However, when a patient suffering with acute osteomyelitis, emphysema, pulmonary suppuration or suppurative peritonitis continues to be ill in spite of adequate therapy purulent pericarditis should be looked for as a possible complication The development of precordial distress and breathlessness along with the symptoms of sepsis demands a careful search for the physical phenomena of pericardial disease There are diverse opinions as to the relative value or danger of a diagnostic pericardial paracentesis in suspected pyopericardium Except for surgical pericardiostomy it is the only way to make a correct diagnosis and obtain material for sensitivity studies both of which are extremely important if treatment is to be successful If properly performed, the implied dangers are unimportant in comparison with the value of the procedure As far as possible, aspiration through normal lung tissue should be avoided

Treatment Every effort must be made to determine the existence of purulent effusion at the earliest possible moment by the use of a diagnostic pericardial puncture Culture of the fluid obtained and determination of the organism responsible and its sensitivity is necessary for determining the proper antibiotic therapy to be instituted In general the dosage should be massive and continued for about two weeks after all evidences of active infections have subsided Pneumococcus and staphylococcus organisms are the ones most commonly encountered If pneumococcic infection is suspected at the time of the initial diagnostic tap, 50 000 units of penicillin can be instilled into the pericardial cavity In addition penicillin in large amounts one to two and a half million units every three hours should be administered If staphylococcus, or other organisms, are the offending organisms sensitivity studies are mandatory in order to determine which agent will be effective Use the two drugs found to be most effective most likely penicillin, one to two and a half million units every three hours, erythromycin 4 0 Gm daily, and/or chloramphenicol 4 0 Gm daily

The need for surgical pericardiostomy and drainage as treatment seems less imperative now that satisfactory antimicrobial agents are available Experience has been too limited to draw any final conclusions but it seems probable that surgical treatment in the acute stage can be dispensed with if early and adequate antibiotic therapy is instituted

Uremic Pericarditis Uremic pericarditis is a noninflammatory fibrinouslike exudate over the surface of the pericardium which occurs during the terminal stages of renal failure from glomerulonephritis, nephrosclerosis and pyelonephritis It does not take the characteristic fibrin stains and histologically it has the characteristics of a protein precipitate There is no involvement of the underlying myocardium It is never associated with an effusion unless it becomes secondarily infected Uremic pericarditis does not justify more than casual consideration in a discussion of acute pericarditis, for it is not infectious in origin and in no way alters the clinical course of the primary disease It is considered an ominous prog

nostic sign so far as the renal failure is concerned No particular therapy is indicated

Myomalacic Pericarditis It is probable that whenever a patch of myomalacia (myocardial infarction and/or degeneration) occurs at or near the surface zone of the myocardium there develops a mild localized fibrinous inflammatory reaction involving the adjacent epicardium This process is characterized by some edema a mild round cell infiltration and some engorgement of the small capillaries in the epicardium This process *tends to spread laterally and may involve a larger area of epicardium* than is represented by the underlying myomalacic patch It has no clinical significance other than indicating the presence of a subepicardial myocardial infarction and no specific treatment is required

In this connection however it is well to point out the possibility of hemorrhagic pericarditis secondary to hypoprothrombinemia occurring during the course of anticoagulant therapy in myocardial infarction [1] The pericarditis of uncomplicated myocardial infarction is of brief duration A persisting pericardial friction rub or the appearance of such a sound after the second week of the disease in a patient on anticoagulant therapy should make one suspicious of a complicating hemorrhagic pericarditis Evidences of the development of a pericardial effusion makes such a diagnosis almost certain in a patient on anticoagulant drugs who shows a significant depression of the prothrombin activity This condition should be kept in mind as a possible complication in the course of anticoagulant treatment of myocardial infarction Early recognition is imperative since it may prove fatal if corrective therapeutic measures are not instituted promptly

Traumatic Pericarditis Traumatic pericarditis occurs as the result of a penetrating *wound of the pericardium and in a few instances from a* nonpenetrating blow to the anterior chest A fibrinous exudate and hemopericardium develop as a result of contusion and laceration of the pericardium rupture of a coronary vessel or from perforation of the heart wall The clinical features are those of pericarditis with or without an effusion occurring in a patient giving a history of a prior chest injury The hemopericardium may be of sufficient degree to cause tamponade of the heart *which should be treated by repeated aspirations as needed* In the absence of tamponade it seems wise to aspirate as much of the effusion as possible since there is some evidence to indicate that the hemopericardium may become organized and fibrotic and lead to constrictive pericarditis This can be done quite adequately by needle aspiration in the vast majority of cases but occasionally surgical pericardiostomy will be needed

In penetrating pericardial wounds where there is contamination with pyogenic organisms a purulent pericarditis will be superimposed on the hemopericardium This is treated in a similar fashion to other forms of pyogenic pericarditis

REFERENCES

1 Bellet S Nadler C S and Steiger W A Arch Int Med 34 856 (April) 1951
2 Carmichael D B Sprague H B Wyman S M and Bland E F Circulation 3 321 (March) 1951
3 Falk A and Ebert R V J A M A 145 310 (Feb 3) 1951
4 Friedman S Ash R Harris Q N and Lee H F Pediatrics 9 551 (May) 1952
5 Godfrey J Ann Int Med 35 1336 (Dec) 1951
6 Goyette E M Ann Int Med 39 1032 (Nov) 1953
7 Kotte J H and McGuire J Modern Concepts of Cardiovascular Disease 20 (July) 1951
8 Krook H Acta Med Scandinav 148 201 1954
9 McGuire H Kotte J H and Helm R A Circulation 9 425 (March) 1954
10 Natelson R P Ann Int Med 34 1169 (May) 1951
11 Porter W B Clark O and Porter R R J A M A 144 749 (Oct 28) 1950
12 Powers P P Read J L and Porter R R J A M A 157 224 (Jan 15) 1955
13 Tomlin C E Logue R B and Hurst J W J A M A 149 1215 (July 26) 1952
14 Thomas C O Besterman F M M and Hollman A Brit Heart J 15 29 (Jan) 1953
15 Wolff L Modern Concepts of Cardiovascular Disease 21 (July) 1952

PAUL D WHITE, M D

21

Chronic Constrictive Pericarditis*

Introduction Preparation for a new edition of this work has enabled me to review with my associates in particular Dr John C Dalton the new cases and experience that we have had since the last edition which presented our experience up through 1948 There have been added to the fifty three patients at the Massachusetts General Hospital reported before another twenty five cases making a grand total of seventy eight It is in large part through our experience with this group of new patients that *modification of our previous discussion has resulted*

Definition Chronic constrictive pericarditis is a disease consisting primarily of obstruction to the diastolic filling of the heart because of the presence of dense unyielding chronically diseased pericardium

Sometimes called by the unsatisfactory designation Pick s disease † this malady has become a subject of increasing interest and importance during the past three decades The reasons for this are two In the first place the condition has been one easily mistaken for something else and secondly it is now possible in many cases to effect a cure by proper treatment whereas in the past there was no adequate treatment and the disease was regarded as hopeless and necessarily carrying with it years of invalidism

Etiology and Pathology Chronic constrictive pericarditis always follows acute pericarditis which may or may not itself be constrictive Sometimes it is possible to follow the course of the case from the beginning of the acute pericarditis right through to the stage of chronic constrictive pericarditis over a period of months to years In a good many cases however it is impossible to make such an observation the acute pericarditis having been very insidious and frequenty undiagnosed

The majority of the patients are young (children or young adults) but the disease may appear in middle age Both sexes are affected In the writer's series of seventy eight cases fifty nine were male and nineteen female The ages (in years) at which the disease became manifest were as follows to nine years two cases ten to nineteen fifteen cases twenty to twenty nine fifteen cases thirty to thirty nine sixteen cases forty to forty nine nineteen cases and fifty to fifty nine eleven cases Thus there were only thirty of the seventy eight cases in whom the disease became

* Also called Pick s disease concretio cordis and chronic compression of the heart

† Chevers in 1842 published a good description of chronic constrictive pericarditis more than fifty years before Pick (1896)

apparent after the age of forty, therefore it is preponderantly the result of infection in youth and commoner in males

As a rule, the thickening of the pericardium consists of a fibrosis, the cause of which is usually undeterminable when the tissue is examined Simply evidence of the result of inflammation is found, without definite indication of the cause of such inflammation In some cases, tuberculosis is discoverable, in a few other cases, some septic infection, and in still other cases a reaction associated with polyserositis attending a pneumonia or other infection In most instances the etiological factor is unknown or obscure In only very rare cases is rheumatism even a possible causative factor In the series of seventy eight cases observed by the writer at the Massachusetts General Hospital (proved by operation or otherwise), rheumatism has been the cause in no case In all probability tuberculosis is the commonest cause of chronic constrictive pericarditis it was the only clearcut factor in any cases (eight) of our series Dr George Pickering of England and others also have observed the actual evolution of chronic constrictive pericarditis in the course of years from acute and subacute tuberculous pericarditis in tuberculosis sanitaria and other such institutions

The pericardial sac may or may not be obliterated, usually it is It is to be recognized at the outset that obliterative pericarditis is not synonymous with chronic constrictive pericarditis, since most obliterative pericarditis does not constrict the heart at least to any serious degree Both layers of the pericardium may be much thickened to cause the constriction or either layer, epicardium or parietal pericardium or both may be so firmly adherent that it is impossible to separate them or to distinguish which is the more thickened The thickening of the pericardium may be universal or only over certain parts of the heart In order to have the important constricting effect however, the amount of pericardium involved is usually considerable The posterior surface of the heart *i e* over the left ventricle and left atrium, may be more or less involved than the anterior surface *i e* over the right ventricle and right atrium The great veins may or may not be constricted at their junction with the right atrium There may or may not be fluid in the pericardium in addition to the thickening When fluid is present in the pericardium the constriction may be due more to the fluid than to the chronic thickening of the pericardium itself such a state is not strictly to be designated chronic constrictive pericarditis since nearly all fluid accumulations occur during acute or subacute involvement of the pericardium and should be classed under the designation *acute* or *subacute constrictive pericarditis* (*cardiac tamponade*)

Calcification may be superimposed as a complication in chronic pericarditis It has been present in about one third of the writer s cases But again there must be a clear differentiation between calcification of the pericardium and chronic constrictive pericarditis There may be either without the other

Polyserositis (sometimes called *Concato s disease*) has at times erroneously been regarded as synonymous with chronic constrictive peri

carditis To be sure chronic polyserositis is frequently found with chronic constrictive pericarditis, and acute polyserositis may precede chronic constrictive pericarditis, but again, either may be present without the other

Chronic pleuritis with adhesions is a common and relatively unimportant finding after polyserositis but on occasion it becomes so severe that, as in the case of the pericardium it becomes constrictive and gives rise to a condition that has been labelled by Dr C S Burwell as *chronic constrictive pleuritis*

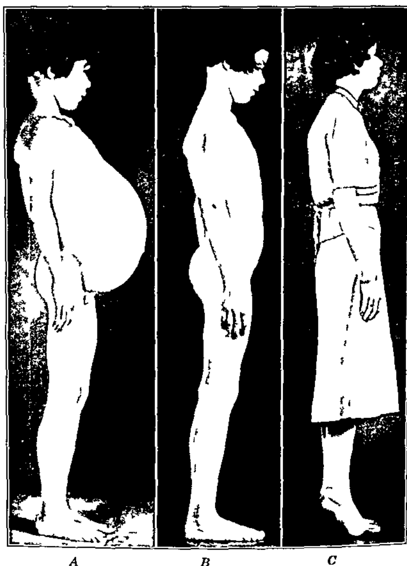


FIGURE 1 Heart encased in constricting pericardial sac Note the fibrosed pericardium as thick as shoe leather (Courtesy of the Lancet London)

Perihepatitis (frosted or iced liver or Zuckergussleber), and perisplenitis belonging to a chronic peritonitis may be a part of a polyserositis but they have sometimes been incorrectly attributed to chronic constrictive pericarditis itself

Finally thick external adhesions binding the heart to the chest wall may or *may not complicate chronic constrictive pericarditis They are not* part of the picture although it is usual for the heart to be adherent to the diaphragm

Diagnosis No one finding is conclusive for the diagnosis of chronic constrictive pericarditis Use must be made of the assembly of all available information, including history, physical examination, and laboratory data, particularly electrocardiography and x ray study



A B C

FIGURE 2 *A* Ten years old showing the marked ascites engorged neck veins and malnutrition characteristic of advanced chronic constrictive pericarditis *B* Same case two years later six months after surgical cure *C* After another six years still showing a normal state of the circulation

Probably the most important diagnostic clue of all is the development in a young or middle aged individual of evidence of increase in the systemic venous pressure, consisting of engorgement of the neck veins, enlargement of the liver, dependent edema and actual increase in direct venous pressure (above 10 cm of blood or water) in the absence of evidence of heart disease and provided acute pericarditis with effusion is not

the cause That is, the slow onset of dropsy, particularly evidenced by enlargement of the abdomen should cause suspicion of the diagnosis Liver enlargement alone is not indicative of the condition, because there are many other causes for a big liver Liver enlargement and evidence of increased systemic venous pressure are suggestive of the condition but heart disease with failure is the common cause of such findings, and these must be ruled out at the start The ascites that is so frequently present is in large part merely secondary to the liver engorgement

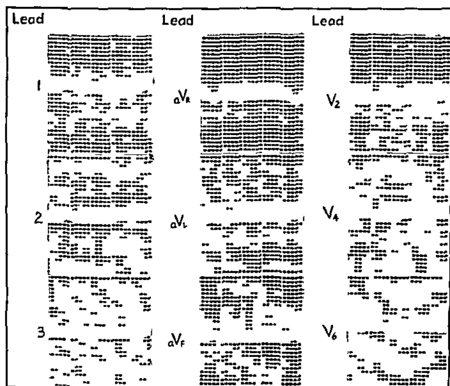


FIGURE 3 Electrocardiogram of man (S F) aged forty one years with chronic constrictive pericarditis Note low voltage of Q R S waves and abnormal T waves throughout

It is true that increase in the size of the abdomen due to enlargement of the liver and ascites is predominant and often one of the earliest signs but there are exceptions to this rule Sometimes the edema first appears in the feet and sometimes the edema of the legs is at least as great in degree as the enlargement of the liver and ascites This variation is probably due to the variability of the relative increase in pressure in the hepatic veins and in the inferior vena cava There is also sometimes slight edema of face chest wall or arms especially after recumbency

It is of great importance and help in the diagnosis to have had a clear history of acute pericarditis with friction rub or effusion preceding the signs and symptoms of chronic constrictive pericarditis by months or years

Other signs that are helpful in establishing the diagnosis are a small arterial pulse pressure with a tendency to the so called paradoxical pulse (a sharp decrease in systolic and pulse pressure during inspiration) and the tendency for the heart to remain fixed in its position during respiration and change in position of the body It is possible, however, to have the heart chronically constricted by a thickened pericardium while it remains completely or almost completely mobile, due to the fact that there are no important external adhesions Broadbent s sign is generally absent

The size of the heart may be normal or slightly to moderately increased it is never markedly increased when an uncomplicated case is dealt with and most of the cases are uncomplicated There are no important murmurs although systolic murmurs at the apex are not rare There is frequently a loud third sound in early diastole heard best at the left of the sternum it is not diagnostic Normal rhythm is the rule in some cases however there is atrial fibrillation It was present in twenty two (twenty eight per cent) of the author's seventy eight cases And in a few cases (four) there was atrial flutter In very infrequent cases there may be independently, heart disease and chronic constrictive pericarditis The writer has encountered two such cases one with congenital heart disease and one with rheumatic heart disease

The *symptoms* are relatively unimportant There may or may not be dyspnea There may or may not be weakness There may or may not be malnutrition (in the severe cases this is practically always present) There usually is no pain The patients tend to be semi invalids

Laboratory data are of considerable help, especially *electrocardiograms* Almost invariably the electrocardiogram shows either low voltage of the QRS waves in the classical limb leads, or abnormality of the T waves (flattening or inversion), or both The electrocardiograms in some of the cases resemble those of coronary heart disease, but the changes are less characteristic and more diffuse or extensive Right axis deviation usually with atrial fibrillation and hence resembling the pattern of marked mitral stenosis may be found in a few cases with relatively greater constriction of the left than of the right heart chambers

X ray evidence is generally helpful but there are occasional cases in which little or no abnormality can be found the heart moving quite freely and even with fair pulsation of the left border Calcium when found is an additional help in confirming the diagnosis when other signs are present Often the heart and mediastinum are fixed or displaced a bit to one side or the other or there is an increase in thickness of the mediastinum Also frequently there is an obscurity of the borders of the heart, and occasionally little or no pulsation is visible anywhere along the heart borders Observation of the pleura is important because if the pleura is very much thickened there is evidence suggesting chronic poly serositis as a background for the chronic constrictive pericarditis Chronic constrictive pleuritis may accompany chronic constrictive pericarditis

Some of the increase in heart size indicated by x rays is to be accounted for by the actual increase in thickness of the pericardium which may reach ½ to 1 cm on either side of the heart In occasional cases the

lung hilus shadows are increased and there is more indication than usual of involvement of the left ventricle and left atrium by the chronic con strictive pericarditis as noted particularly by calcification In such cases there may be evidence of enlargement of the right ventricle due to the strain on that heart chamber from pulmonary hypertension secondary to constriction of the left heart chambers somewhat comparable in mecha



FIGURE 4 X ray picture (teleroentgenogram) of heart and pericardium of case of chronic constrictive pericarditis with calcification Note the shell of calcium just outside the shadow of the left heart border and along the diaphragmatic border

nism to the effect of mitral stenosis it is such cases that are more likely to show atrial fibrillation

It is of considerable importance in the future study of cases of chronic constrictive pericarditis to determine the pulmonary arterial blood pres sure by cardiac catheterization since the direction of the surgical approach and the success of the operative therapy may depend on this finding If the pressure is higher than normal there should be a wide anterior (*e g* sternum splitting) or lateral approach to free the left as well as the right

heart chambers from their preponderant constriction It is probably wise to make such an approach in all cases in the future

Other laboratory information is of little help The blood counts may be normal or show some degree of anemia If there is leukocytosis, a subacute pericardial or polyserositic infection or some other complication must be suspected The serum protein may or may not be reduced, it is reduced in severe cases with malnutrition Liver functional tests may or may not show slight reduction, but there is no evidence in uncomplicated cases of severe liver damage, although some degree of "cardiac cirrhosis' of the liver is not uncommon There is never any jaundice (unless there is a complicating pulmonary infarction) or bile in the urine Special studies have shown a decreased output of the heart in accord with the other findings The reduction may be to less than fifty per cent of the normal with inability to show an appreciable increase on exercise the pulse rate tending to be unusually elevated in these patients as the result of the heart's effort to produce a satisfactory circulation The systemic venous pressure is always elevated, sometimes up to 300 mm or more The circulatory rates are also delayed

Differential Diagnosis In the differential diagnosis there are three conditions which are particularly likely to be confused with chronic constrictive pericarditis The first of these is *mitral stenosis with congestive heart failure* The differential diagnosis should be easy in nearly every case of this sort The presence of a mitral diastolic murmur at the apex is practically pathognomonic of mitral stenosis and has not been encountered in any of the writer s cases of chronic constrictive pericarditis It is important to listen at the apex, however for this murmur since it may be localized and it was the failure actually to listen at the apex itself which was responsible for the erroneous diagnosis of constrictive pericarditis in two cases referred to the writer In these patients the apex had become situated in the anterior axillary line with increasing enlargement of the heart In most cases with congestive failure the heart is considerably enlarged a finding not consistent with chronic constrictive pericarditis Also there are more likely to be atrial fibrillation and right axis deviation with mitral stenosis than with chronic constrictive pericarditis, although several of our cases (twenty two out of seventy eight in number) observed have shown atrial fibrillation a few (four in number) have had atrial flutter and several have shown some right axis deviation due quite likely to the greater pericardial constriction of the left than of the right heart chambers

Cirrhosis of the liver is a second condition to be differentiated from chronic constrictive pericarditis This is easily done by the finding of increased systemic venous pressure in the latter condition The neck veins are always engorged in chronic constrictive pericarditis, while in hepatic cirrhosis they are prominent only when there is an excessive amount of ascites displacing the heart and great vessels upwards Slight degrees of "cardiac cirrhosis' of the liver may, however be induced by chronic constrictive pericarditis

Polyserositis is the third condition that is sometimes confused with

chronic constrictive pericarditis The presence of an acute infection with fluid in the pleural cavities and pericardium and sometimes in the peritoneal cavity, is not 'Pick's disease' although it may precede it One of the difficulties here however is that in complicating chronic constrictive pericarditis itself there may be a good deal of pleural effusion sometimes extensive especially in the severer cases The effusion is in the nature of a transudate as a rule although the differentiation between transudate and exudate is often difficult The evidence of signs of persistent infection is the most important clue in such cases along with the examination of the fluid obtained from the various body cavities

Nutritional edema is easily distinguished from chronic constrictive pericarditis because of its diffuseness and the usual absence of liver enlargement and ascites along with the history of the causative factor of malnutrition and the very low serum protein

Tricuspid valve disease of high degree is so rare that it hardly needs to be mentioned but it must be considered in some of the cases Since it nearly always complicates mitral stenosis it is usually easily ruled out It is however comparable to chronic constrictive pericarditis in one particular namely its tendency to cause *long continued* invalidism or semi invalidism lasting for years with recurrent ascites that may need repeated paracentesis Tricuspid stenosis complicating mitral stenosis adds to the duration of life that would be expected in systemic venous congestion due to mitral stenosis alone

Course and Prognosis Most patients with chronic constrictive pericarditis live for years Their longevity and activity vary however very greatly depending on the amount of the cardiac constriction on complications and on the degree of success of surgical treatment There tends to be a state of prolonged semi invalidism with occasional or frequent abdominal paracentesis unless surgery affords a functional cure In the writer's own series of seventy eight cases studied during the past twenty seven years (1928 to 1955 inclusive) there has been a wide range of experience from one case who had progressed so rapidly downhill in the course of six months that she was too serious a risk for surgery and died of the disease shortly after entering the hospital and another case who severely affected died at the end of the operation to a mild case who was still alive and at work (as a physician) forty years after his acute pericarditis and onset of evidence of the disease not requiring operation and a young woman now perfectly well twenty seven years after pericardial resection done when she was practically a complete invalid Thirty two of the sixty three patients operated upon in the writer's series have been cured functionally by surgery in the last twenty seven years and most of these are well and active today All six of our patients who have been followed for over twenty years are living normal unrestricted lives Ten other patients have been followed for over ten years and eleven for over five years

Treatment The only satisfactory treatment for chronic constrictive pericarditis is surgery Digitalis is of no avail except in cases of atrial fibrillation where it controls the heart rate at a level which is optimal for

the most favorable circulation in a given case Diuretics, either by mouth or intravenously are only temporarily helpful They may however aid in tiding a patient along for months or years if his condition is for any reason inoperable, or if the patient refuses surgical treatment They are helpful also in preparing the patient for operation The best diuretic for the purpose is either mercuhydrin 1 to 2 cc, intramuscularly, or thiomerin, 1 to 2 cc, subcutaneously, at intervals of one to four weeks as needed, with or without the aid of ammonium chloride (1 Gm [15 grains] three times a day) or other diuretic by mouth Paracentesis is invaluable in the cases not operated upon and in preparing the patients for operation Usually such paracentesis is confined to the abdomen but now and then the chest cavities need to be emptied also In the old days these patients were subjected to abdominal paracentesis once every week or two or three for years on end, a very disagreeable but necessary act

Finally, before proceeding to the radical cure of chronic constrictive pericarditis two palliative measures of value may be mentioned *i e*, limitation of physical activity, and restriction of fluid, food and salt intake

Exercise, by increasing the demand of the body for an active circulation, almost invariably aggravates the condition and the degree of congestion A patient with chronic constrictive pericarditis who attempts to carry on his normal life is almost sure to grow worse despite other medical measures He adds weight in the form of fluid in the abdomen and extremities When he rests completely in bed he usually improves rapidly for a while and has a spontaneous diuresis At half or mild activity he is able to carry on, sometimes fairly well if not badly affected Some patients however, are so seriously damaged that they must remain complete invalids and even then may go on to early death The individual patient quickly finds his optimal level of activity

From the beginning it was appreciated that the more salt and fluid ingested by a patient with chronic constrictive pericarditis the more pronounced were the signs and symptoms of congestion Of particular importance is a restriction of total sodium intake, a reduction to 1 or 2 Gm of sodium chloride instead of the usual 10 to 12 Gm per day may suffice Very interesting experiments with respect to fluid and salt intake were made on himself by Finsen and reported in 1894 and 1904

Surgical Treatment Most patients are reasonably good subjects for efforts at surgical cure Thoracic and especially pericardial surgery has been so much developed in recent years that operation can be approached by a skilled trained surgeon nowadays with little hesitation Much care experience and judgment however are needed for a high percentage of success A suitable case for surgery may be considered to be an individual who can be made largely free of congestion by medical measures and who seems otherwise in fairly good condition but who is incapacitated by the disease itself There are a few individuals who are so sick that operation is contraindicated and death may come when an attempt is made to operate on such patients They are those with very extensive constriction not much relieved by medical measures and paracentesis

It is of great importance furthermore to recognize that the disease may progress to a relatively early fatal termination The speed of the increase of the constriction varies very greatly in different individuals In some cases a few weeks or a few months may mean the difference between life and death

Technic The surgical operation itself may be carried out either anteriorly or laterally In the former case it consists first in resecting the ribs overlying the heart usually with removal of several inches of the fourth fifth and sixth ribs and costal cartilages on the left side along with resection by special blade of the left part of the sternum It is of considerable importance to identify and retract the pleurae which are also often thickened and out of their normal positions When anesthesia was carried out as used to be the practice at the Massachusetts General Hospital under tracheal insufflation of ether and oxygen with the patient in the sitting position in a dental chair there was found to be no great harm in allowing air to enter the pleural cavities if by chance they should be opened

During recent years however we have had interesting and important experiences *with the relief of several patients by either the left lateral* or the sternum splitting surgical approach so that the surgeon can decorticate the posterior as well as the anterior heart chambers The very first case in which the lateral approach was carried out (Case 2 to follow) is well today nearly nine years after his third operation the first two operations with anterior decortication having been unsuccessful

The pericardium is identified and opened near the apex of the heart If it is completely adherent it has to be incised and an attempt made to peel it off from the heart itself The actual process of decortication of the heart sufficient at least to give some relief usually takes about one hour Since the involvement is usually extensive both anteriorly and posteriorly the decortication begins near the apex and extends up over both ventricles and atria and if necessary down over the inferior vena cava and up over the superior vena cava although usually there is not much involvement of the veins (In one case observed a calcified band was excised from its position overlying the inferior vena cava)

The pericardium should not be cut off in large masses There should always be a small bit of pericardium left attached to the heart in case of rupture of the wall of either ventricle or atrium if the wall is torn the pericardial tab may be sewed over the rupture This was done in two of our successful cases

How much of the posterior heart chambers *i e* the left ventricle and left atrium should be decorticated is for the surgeon to decide Some of the writer s cases have given evidence of extensive posterior constriction but decortication of the posterior heart chambers was not attempted in the early days by us although a case had been reported in Germany in whom there was a successful decortication first of the anterior surface of the heart and at a later operation of the posterior surface of the heart

During the operation it is encouraging to find the heart increasing visibly in size and degree of pulsation while it is being decorticated The

pulse pressure may definitely increase during the operation In one of our patients the pulse pressure increased at once from twenty to forty with obvious improvement in the heart's action Good judgment must be used in deciding when to stop the operation It is to be recognized that it is possible to carry out a second operation if the first has not been complete enough This has been done in eleven of the writer's cases, and the approach the second time proved as a rule to be very easy, there being no ribs to remove and no pericardium to penetrate first in approaching the field of operation The reformed adhesions were nonconstricting

The patient is returned to the ward and kept in an oxygen tent for the first day or two, or as long as may be needed Great care postoperatively to empty the pleural cavities of fluid if they fill rapidly, and expert nursing are essential Some patients recover very quickly with spontaneous diuresis directly after the operation while others take months for their improvement, the cure going on progressively for close to a year Still others show little or no improvement, and a few cases may die as a result of the operation

In our series of seventy eight cases of this disease at the Massachusetts General Hospital sixty three patients were operated upon (fifty two once, seven twice four, three times) Of these sixty three patients thirty two were cured so far as chronic constrictive pericarditis is concerned and twenty two have died four on the operating table because of the severity of the illness one the day following operation, two two days after operation one six days after the operation, and twelve others months later from the disease itself or from complications Unexpected accidents may sometimes occur in cases that otherwise seem favorable Such happened during operation in two of our very young patients, in one of these the atrium was torn during the pericardial resection, but the tear was quickly repaired by the use of a bit of the pericardial flap still attached and no harm was done, for she is well today over twenty two years later in the other patient (a girl of thirteen) at the end of the operation the right heart, which was very thin dilated to a high degree, and death came in a few minutes apparently as a result of the failure of the right side of the heart

In the patients that have been cured clinically there has been a disappearance of all evidences of congestion except that there may still be a slight elevation of the venous pressure above the normal and persistence of slight enlargement of the liver The electrocardiogram may remain abnormal but frequently it improves in appearance

ILLUSTRATIVE CASES

Chronic constrictive pericarditis varies so greatly in its manifestations and response to treatment that it will be helpful to present certain illustrative cases The first will show the excellent curative result in a severely affected young child The second will illustrate the important advance in surgical approach and technic

CASE 1 *Successful result of operation in a severely crippled child*

B K now (August 1955) aged thirty three years This girl was reported in

full up to 1935 in the Lancet London September 7 and 14 1935 pages 539 and 597 as follows

B K a girl aged ten entered the hospital on October 13 1931 with a history of having lived a semi invalid life since the age of 5½ due to a markedly enlarged abdomen resulting from the presence of much ascitic fluid When she was twenty months old she suffered from what was apparently an attack of acute pericarditis and her abdomen became enlarged At the age of 2½ years a laparotomy was performed and a gangrenous appendix was removed No tubercles were seen on the peritoneum at the time of operation A drain was inserted and the patient made a good recovery The fluid returned in about three weeks but following an abdominal tap one month later there was no recurrence of fluid for three years At the age of 5½ the abdominal fluid returned and six months later a Talma operation (omentopexy) was done Abdominal fluid injected into a guinea pig gave negative results There was no improvement following this operation and at the age of nine the patient entered a second hospital for further study Her abdomen was tapped at that time but not again after that until her entrance into the Massachusetts General Hospital in the fall of 1931 when 6240 cc of straw colored fluid with a specific gravity of 1 013 were removed

Her mother had died of tuberculosis during the patient s infancy Her father is living and well

Physical examination showed a thin somewhat pale young girl with heart apparently normal in size and sounds and without murmurs and with prominent jugular veins and a large protuberant nontender abdomen filled with fluid (Fig 2A) X ray examination showed heart and great vessels somewhat dis placed to the right and anchored to the diaphragm no pulsation was evident at the right border of the heart and great vessel shadow the right pleura was thickened

The electrocardiogram showed normal rhythm rate 100 with inverted T waves in Lead II

Advice was given at that time that the chest be explored surgically and the adhesions constricting the right auricle right ventricle and the great veins be freed

After an interval of two years this girl returned to the hospital in an un changed condition with persistence of the enlargement of the abdomen The serum protein measured 4 3 per cent X ray and electrocardiographic findings were as before

Pericardial resection was carried out on November 16 1933 and a moderately thickened pericardium containing calcareous plaques was removed from over the right *ventricle and right auricle* by Dr Churchill The pericardial tissue that was removed showed fibrosis and calcification on examination There was a stormy time for two days after the operation and during the first two weeks there was no apparent improvement About four weeks after the operation spontaneous diuresis began and in the course of a few months the ascites completely dis appeared (Fig 2B) She has been in excellent health since and was well when she was last heard from.

The electrocardiogram on May 16 1935 showed normal rhythm at a heart rate of 80 with slightly upright T waves in Lead I flat T waves in Lead II and very slightly inverted T waves in Lead III this record differed from that taken before the operation in that the T waves were more normal and the voltage of the QRS waves was greater

Follow up in July 1939 Good health and rapid growth have characterized the last four years except that during the past few months there has been some

evidence of easy fatigability Physical examination now shows a tall slender somewhat delicate appearing girl (Fig 2C) with normal heart sounds and size The electrocardiogram shows normal rhythm rate 95 slight right axis deviation low T waves in Lead I inverted T waves in Lead II, and inverted T waves in Lead III

Blood examination shows a normal smear minimal achromia and no abnormal cells

The rapid growth and slight anemia in this girl are responsible for her present somewhat frail state of health but fundamentally she seems all right and there is no evidence whatsoever of any recurrence of the trouble associated with her constrictive pericarditis for which the operation was so successfully carried out six years ago See the illustration herewith showing her in 1931 1933 and 1939 (Fig 2)

September 1948 Her father reports excellent health in every respect'

May 1955 Examined by us and found to be in perfect health

CASE 2 R P male aged twenty one was admitted to the Massachusetts General Hospital in September 1944 with a diagnosis of chronic constrictive pericarditis already recorded The discovery of pericardial calcification had been made in March 1943 by x ray examination of the chest incident to routine check up for his fitness for military service He had no symptoms at that time On admission to the hospital in September 1944 he showed good development and nutrition with a regular pulse rate of 80 The blood pressure was 120/80 The heart seemed of normal size the pulmonary second sound was louder than the aortic second and there were no murmurs There was no enlargement of liver or spleen There was no evidence of peripheral edema Venous pressure was at the normal upper limit with a Burwell end point of 117 mm of water The total serum protein was 7 4 Gm Blood and urine examinations showed no abnormalities Electrocardiogram showed inversion of the T waves in all leads X ray examination confirmed the presence of calcification of the pericardium evidence of old pleurisy at the left base and a small amount of fluid in the right pleural cavity

On October 6 1944 Dr Richard Sweet performed cardiac decortication using the anterior approach The entire frontal portion of the pericardium including a calcified band 38 mm (1½ inches) in width over the atrioventricular groove was removed The postoperative course was uneventful and he was discharged at the end of the month

During the next year and a half this young man remained in fairly good health doing light secretarial work with no difficulty In the spring of 1946 he had begun to notice progressive increase in the size of his abdomen shortness of breath and increase in weight Also there had been noted at about the same time the onset of atrial fibrillation Therefore on June 5th 1946 he was readmitted to the Massachusetts General Hospital On this occasion his venous pressure was much increased to 265 mm of water The heart was enlarged with pulmonary second sound of greater intensity The liver was slightly enlarged and tender There was occasional edema of the ankles His blood pressure was 108/84 The heart rhythm was grossly irregular at a rate of 82 The electrocardiogram confirmed the presence of atrial fibrillation and showed the same abnormalities as before in the T waves The total serum protein measured 7 Gm per cent

On June 20th 1946 a second pericardial resection was carried out by Dr Sweet The site of the original incision was used again More calcified pericardium was removed particularly over the area of the right atrioventricular groove At first postoperatively he seemed definitely better but within a month

of his return home his original symptoms recurred despite treatment with low sodium intake digitalis ammonium chloride and intravenous mercupurin

On December 10th 1946 having become obviously much worse in the interval of several months he returned to the Massachusetts General Hospital At this time the neck veins were very prominent and pulsating with a venous pressure of 300 mm of water A paradoxical pulse was present The rhythm was regular at a rate of 82 The blood pressure was 108/76 The liver was felt 7½ cm below the costal margin There was slight to moderate edema of the ankles The electrocardiogram now showed in addition to atrial fibrillation definite right axis deviation which had been developing in the interval of the two years since the first operation

Because of the failure of the previous operations the right axis deviation with atrial fibrillation which resembled the pattern of mitral stenosis and the accentuation of the pulmonary second sound it was now believed that he had constriction of the left heart chambers However to make sure of this cardiac catheterization was carried out in order to measure the pulmonary blood pressure This was kindly done for us by Dr Lewis Dexter at the Peter Bent Brigham Hospital who found that the pulmonary arterial pressure was 72 mm. mercury that is three times the normal

Therefore on January 17th 1947 after careful preoperative preparation a third pericardial resection was carried out by Dr Sweet using the left lateral transthoracic approach The operative note was as follows

A long oblique incision was made starting in front close to the previous pericardiolysis incision extending laterally under the breast and up beneath the pectoral fold as far as the midaxillary line This incision was enlarged through the sixth interspace and on inserting a rib-spreader after freeing the adhesions of the lung an excellent exposure was obtained The lung was densely adherent to the parietal pleura both beneath the ribs and along the mediastinal surface The mediastinal adhesions were separated and the lung was retracted posteriorly and laterally This gave an excellent exposure to the left posterior aspect of the pericardium The phrenic nerve was identified and held aside with a retractor The previously denuded section of heart appeared to be functioning well This included the right ventricle and a very small portion of the left The apex had been freed previously but there had been considerable re-formation of constricting fibrous tissue in this region This was freed and the remainder of the pericardium which enveloped and held in a constricting vise the left ventricle was released with moderate difficulty It was adherent almost everywhere with very dense adhesions in some of which were actually plaques of very thick calcium requiring cutting with heavy scissors but it was possible by freeing them to release the left ventricle completely all the way around behind. The *pericardium in this region was removed from the diaphragm and as far around* in back as the inferior pulmonary vein. Superiorly it was freed over the atrioventricular groove and the appendix of the left atrium which was held down in a vise of calcium was finally freed and was seen to retract upwards A rather large segment of pericardium was removed from the atrial portion as well as from the ventricular portion It was felt at the completion of the operation that a very wide liberation of the left ventricle and left atrioventricular septal groove had been accomplished The patient stood the operation well and the color of his blood was normal at its completion although in the beginning he was very cyanotic until the heart had been freed The lung expanded well A catheter was left in the space between the heart and the lung in order to provide for evacuation of serum and possibly any air which might result from an undiscovered leak from

the lung itself This was brought out through the center of the incision to be removed in twenty four hours The wound was closed in layers by means of interrupted silk sutures with several pericostal sutures of catgut in the intercostal portion of the incision

After a stormy postoperative course for two weeks he began to improve and when discharged from the hospital at the end of February 1947 the venous pressure had dropped to 190 mm of water and he showed a definite decrease in congestion

Later examinations have shown progressive improvement When seen in December 1947 he felt quite well requiring no treatment except for the maintenance of digitalis He was free from congestion The venous pressure had dropped to 167 mm of water He has remained perfectly well since then (note made in November 1953)

REFERENCES

1 Beck C S J A M A 97 824 1931
2 Burwell C S and Ayer G D Am Heart J 22 267 1941
3 Burwell C S and Strayhorn W D Arch Surg 24 106 (Jan) 1932
4 Burwell C S and Flickinger D Arch Int Med 56 250 (Aug) 1935
5 Chevers N Guy s Hosp Rep 7 387 1842
6 Churchill E D Arch Surg 19 1457 (Dec) (pt 2) 1929
7 Delorme Bull et mem Soc de chir de Paris 24 918 1898 Gaz d hop Paris 71 1150 1898
8 Finsen N R Ugeskr f laeger 1 890 1894
9 Paul O Castleman B and White P D Am J Med Sc 216 361 1948
10 Pick F Ztschr f klin Med 29 385 1896
11 Pickering G New England J M 237 487 (Sept 25) 1947
12 Sauerbruch F Die Chirurgie der Brustorgane Vol II Julius Springer Berlin 1925
13 Volhard and Schmieden Klin Wchnschr 2 5 (Jan 1) 1923
14 White P D Lancet 2 539 (Sept 7) 597 (Sept 14) 1935
15 White P D Alexander F Churchill E D and Sweet R H Am J Med Sc 216 378 1948
16 Wilks S Guy s Hosp Rep Third Series 16 196 1870 1871

CLAUDE S BECK M D

22

Surgery of the Heart and Pericardium

Introduction The application of the aseptic principle which was intro duced some seventy years ago marks the beginning of modern surgery Sepsis and secondary hemorrhage were banished by the aseptic methods and the dread of operation began to disappear after these methods were introduced A great development in surgery took place in a relatively short period of time All parts of the body were explored The chest presented special problems which delayed the development of thoracic surgery Who of the surgical pioneers living in the early aseptic period desired to remove a lung when the appendix uterus gallbladder breast kidney thyroid etc were more accessible? Who also desired to operate upon the heart—an organ that is always in motion—possessing a great capacity for hemor rhage and possessing also a constant threat of stopping? It is not surpris ing then to find a comment of this nature from Billroth the pioneer in gastric surgery made in 1883 as follows The surgeon who would attempt to suture a wound of the heart would lose the respect of his colleagues Wounds of the heart were considered to be necessarily fatal This was the general belief for many centuries [1] The first experiments on cardiac wounds that I can find in the literature were carried out by Block on rabbits in 1882 He produced stab wounds of the heart successfully sutured the wound and advocated suture of the wound when the human heart was stabbed In 1895 Del Vecchio demonstrated the healed scar that followed a wound that he had made in a dog s heart His demonstration was made before the Eleventh International Medical Congress at Rome and it attracted attention Shortly thereafter September 4 1895 the first oper ation on the human heart was performed by Alex Cappelen of Christiania Thus the heart entered the domain of surgery

Cappelen s Case A man aged twenty four received a stab wound in the fourth left interspace in the midaxillary line He walked home bleeding from the wound About an hour later he was admitted to the hospital at which time he showed signs of hemorrhage an imperceptible pulse and distant faint heart sounds Bleeding from the wound had ceased Camphor stimulated the heart so that the pulse could be felt and consciousness returned There was dulness to percussion over the left side of the chest

At operation chloroform anesthesia was used The third and fourth ribs on the left side were resected The intercostal artery was not cut The left pleural



FIGURE 1 Alex Cappelen (1858 1919) performed the first operation upon the human heart

cavity contained 1400 cc of blood The lung was not injured Bleeding continued from the depth of the operative field and an opening in the pericardium large enough to admit the tip of the finger was found The pericardium was distended with blood It was opened A wound in the left ventricle 2 cm long was sutured with chromic catgut and a bleeding coronary artery was ligated The rhythm of the heart was regular throughout the operation.

During the postoperative period which lasted two and one-half days the pulse was rapid cyanosis was present and there was a slight fever The cause of death was anemia and pericarditis The wound had not penetrated into the cavity of the left ventricle The bleeding had occurred from the coronary artery

Classification of Heart Disease These may be divided into the congenital and acquired forms The congenital group includes a wide variety of conditions such as septal defects valvular and subvalvular stenoses malpositions of blood vessels and a variety of shunts The acquired group includes stenosis and occlusion of coronary arteries valvular defects blood clots within the heart tumors of the heart aneurysms of the heart and other rare conditions Another classification of diseases is based upon the location of the disorder whether it be extrinsic and outside the heart or extrinsic and inside the heart

ADHESIONS TO THE HEART

This is one form of extrinsic lesion It was formerly taught that adhesions produced cardiac hypertrophy and failure and the Brauer operation of cardiolysis was evolved to treat this condition This operation consisted of removing the precordial ribs and cartilages so that the heart pulled upon soft yielding structures rather than the unyielding ribs This operation and the rationale upon which it was based have been given up However Hosler and Williams have shown that adhesions can disturb heart action by *rotating the heart in either a clockwise or counterclockwise direction* and by angulation of the heart from its normal position These disturbances in position produce tachycardia but they are rarely seen clinically except at the operating table At operation these disturbances are not tolerated except for short periods of time Compression of the heart is another form of extrinsic lesion This condition is produced by tight scars upon the heart or by fluid or tumors around the heart

COMPRESSION OF THE HEART

Physiology [3] Under normal conditions the pressure upon the heart and the great vessels at the base of the heart is negative or less than the pressure of the atmosphere This negative pressure is produced by the elastic recoil of the lungs and measures 4 to 6 cm of water Likewise the pressure within the venae cavae is negative by several centimeters of water The walls of the cavae are soft and collapsible and readily yield to pressures from within or from without Let us consider the effect of an increased pressure in the pericardial cavity such as occurs when the heart is stabbed and bleeding takes place from the wound As the heart and intrapericardial segments of the venae cavae are compressed by the accumulated blood we find that the venae cavae and the right auricle become collapsed The flow through these structures is immediately reduced and

the blood is held back in the venous system The venous pressure immediately begins to rise and if it can rise sufficiently high to overcome the collapsing effect of the intrapericardial blood filling of the heart is resumed If additional bleeding occurs so that the intrapericardial pressure is again increased we find that a repetition of events takes place, namely, slowing or stopping of the blood stream in the cavae and elevation of

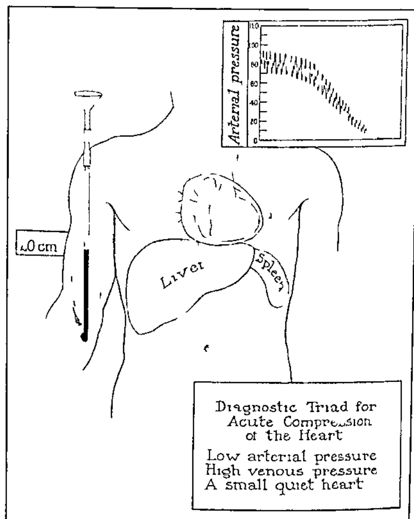


FIGURE 2 Triad for acute compression of the heart.

venous pressure It is apparent that a definite relationship exists between the pressure outside and the pressure inside the venae cavae There are certain limits above which the pressure outside the cavae cannot rise and these limits are determined by the heights to which the venous pressure can rise In acute conditions the venous pressure can rise to 15 or 20 cm of water In chronic conditions the venous pressure can rise to 42 cm of water Acute and chronic pressures above these respective levels can be considered as fatal

The amount of pressure that the heart and venae cavae can tolerate

depends upon several factors One of the factors that determines the amount of pressure that can be tolerated is the rapidity with which the pressure is built up in the pericardial cavity If it develops slowly it can go up to levels that are definitely higher than if it develops rapidly These higher chronic pressures are made possible because in the chronic conditions the venous pressure rises to higher levels than it does in patients with acute compression

Two factors help to elevate venous pressure in the chronic diseases One is an increase in the circulating blood volume The other is an increase in venous pressure produced by the waterlogging of the body An interesting observation that we made relative to venous pressure in patients with chronic compression was that the venous pressure fell when large quantities of fluid were removed from the abdomen This was due to the relaxation and engorgement of venous channels in the abdomen after the abdominal tension was released An abdominal binder restored venous pressure to its higher levels Other points of therapeutic value along this line can be mentioned

It is well to remember that venous pressure can be raised by the addition of fluid intravenously and that pressure upon the heart can be reduced by the aspiration of fluid from the pericardial cavity In those cases demanding urgent treatment these procedures are of value while preparations for operation are being made It should be noted that an elevated venous pressure is essential in cases of compression However after the compression agent has been removed the high venous pressure becomes something of a danger in that it dilates the heart

In one of my patients the heart failed after a compression scar had been successfully removed The heart dilated and failed In certain cases showing very high venous pressures bloodletting is sometimes indicated after the compression lesions are removed by operation This will reduce venous pressure and will lessen the degree of dilatation of the heart

The compressed heart is always a small heart It cannot dilate It cannot undergo hypertrophy It is an efficient organ and does not waste energy It receives a subnormal quota of blood and it pumps out a subnormal quota of blood In pumping out a subnormal quota of blood it performs a subnormal quota of work The heart can do nothing about the reduction in work load It plays a passive role and receives whatever blood the venae cavae can deliver to the cardiac chambers Inasmuch as the work load of the heart is reduced the heart muscle undergoes atrophy The heart muscle undergoes disuse atrophy in exactly the same way as any other muscle in the body undergoes atrophy when it is not allowed to perform its full normal function Roberts and Beck showed that the measurements of the heart muscle fibers in the compressed heart were smaller than normal The entire muscle-mass of the compressed heart is less than that of the normal heart

Acute Compression Triad [4] Acute compression of the heart is produced always by a fluid agent such as blood pus gas transudate or any combination of these The fluid is either in the pericardial cavity or in the mediastinum Stab wounds of the heart or great vessels are a common

cause of compression It occurs also in purulent pericarditis and it can occur as a complication following an operation in the mediastinum

A triad of signs has been formulated by the writer for the diagnosis of acute cardiac compression The triad consists of a small quiet heart a falling arterial pressure and a rising venous pressure (Fig 2) All other mani

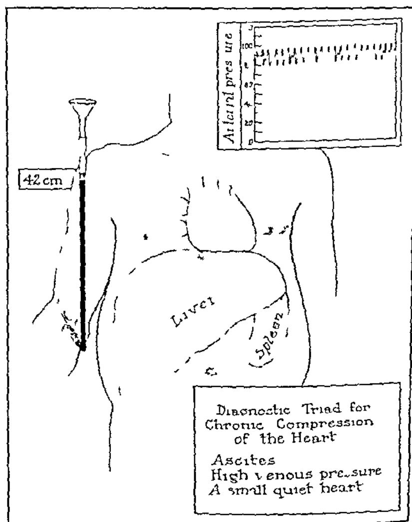


FIGURE 3 Triad for chronic compression of the heart

festations are secondary to these Such secondary manifestations are distant heart sounds absence of precordial pulsation, dyspnea, excitement followed by unconsciousness cold clammy skin and fever in the presence of infection

The treatment depends upon the lesion producing compression In the traumatic cases the blood clot should be removed and the injured structure repaired In the infected lesions the pus should be evacuated Penicillin should be given

Chronic Compression Triad [1] Chronic compression of the heart can be produced by a variety of lesions Compression by the formation of scar

tissue around the heart and in the parietal pericardium is the commonest cause Blood pus transudate or exudate in the mediastinum or pericardial cavity can produce chronic compression Neoplasms localized abscess bands of scar tissue over the auricle or venae cavae can produce the compression syndrome Adhesions to the heart never produce chronic compression

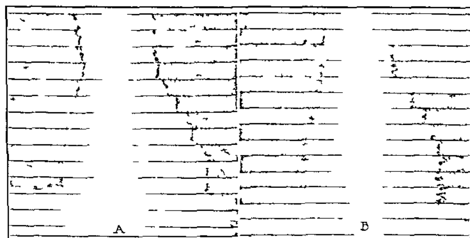


FIGURE 4 Reproduction of kymograph roentgenogram in patient with generalized cardiac compression due to scar The serrated outline indicates the amplitude of pulsation The roentgenograms are taken with a lead grid containing transverse slots in front of the plate The plate moves during the exposure so that every phase of systole and diastole is recorded on the plate *A* Before operation *B* After operation Note the increase in amplitude of pulsation after operation

A triad of signs has been formulated by the writer for the diagnosis of chronic cardiac compression This triad consists of a small quiet heart a high venous pressure as measured in a vein of the arm and ascites together with a large liver (Fig 3) This diagnostic triad cannot be wrong There should never be any confusion or mistake in making this diagnosis No special tests are necessary Indeed the diagnosis can be made by simple observation of the patient The presence of cyanosis of the hands lips ears and face and the prominent veins in the neck and arms point to stasis in the superior vena cava The next observation is of the abdomen Ascites points to stasis in the inferior vena cava The precordium is next observed and if there is no visible pulsation present the patient has chronic compression—not constrictive pericarditis not adhesive pericarditis not Pick s disease not Concato s disease not mediastinopericarditis These terms are confusing While the diagnosis of chronic cardiac compression can be made by simple observation alone it does not tell the nature of the anatomical lesion producing the compression The lesion must be determined by additional data A very large pericardial shadow in the x ray indicates fluid in the pericardial cavity and the fluid can be blood pus transudate or exudate A smaller shadow indicates a compression scar and an asymmetrical shadow indicates a neoplasm a dermoid cyst or a localized abscess

The secondary manifestations of chronic cardiac compression consist of subcutaneous edema which may not be marked hydrothorax of variable amount a venous pressure measuring 18 to 42 cm of water, dilated veins cyanosis, elevated cerebrospinal fluid pressure decreased circulation time, increase in circulating blood volume, distant heart sounds without murmurs pulsus paradoxus auricular fibrillation, auricular flutter or a normal mechanism reduction in amplitude of the heartbeat, pulse pressure of about 20 mm of mercury reduction in cardiac output to as little as 22 cc per beat in an adult, slurring and low voltage of the electrocardiogram weakness and malnutrition Fixation of the heart and fixation of the electrical axis are not important for diagnosis Reduction in amplitude of the heartbeat can be shown by the kymograph roentgenogram (Fig 4)

TRAUMA

Penetrating Wounds of the Heart

These are stab wounds and bullet wounds Any of the component structures of the heart can be injured—auricular or ventricular wall, interventricular septum coronary arteries and veins the conduction system, any of the valves the great vessels at the base of the heart and the parietal pericardium A foreign body can enter the heart through the skin through the esophagus or through the venae cavae or pulmonary veins Infection can be carried in from the outside A thrombus can form in one of the cardiac chambers at the site of the wound The thrombus can be swept into the lung or into the peripheral circulation Hemorrhage can occur from the heart or from the great vessels If the blood escapes from the pericardial cavity into the chest or into the mediastinum or to the outside, exsanguination can occur Compression of the heart is produced if the blood does not escape and remains locked in the pericardial cavity

The functional disturbances produced by cardiac trauma are dependent upon the structure or structures involved in the trauma A septal lesion involving the bundle of His can produce heart block If a leaf of the mitral valve is severed or if one of the chordae tendinae is severed, mitral insufficiency results If a stab enters a cardiac cavity, bleeding may or may not occur If the wound is small and enters obliquely into the ventricle the wound will not emit blood If a major coronary artery is severed the ventricular wall supplied by the artery becomes ischemic and ventricular fibrillation occurs

Diagnosis The manifestations of penetrating cardiac injuries are variable The clinical signs can be grouped as follows (1) Those produced by injury of the intrinsic structures of the heart, such as a valve a coronary artery the conduction system etc (2) those produced by exsanguination and (3) those produced by compression of the heart Severe injuries of intrinsic cardiac structures as a rule are immediately fatal and the problem of diagnosis is not presented Generally in such accidents the ventricles are thrown into fibrillation and death is immediate If the injury to the heart is less severe the patient will continue to live after the accident and the problems of diagnosis and treatment are presented In many of these patients the heart will show no evidence of intrinsic cardiac damage

The signs are entirely those of exsanguination or compression The blood escapes into the pleural cavity into the mediastinum into the pericardial cavity, or through the wound to the outside The signs of exsanguination need not be discussed

Treatment Only brief discussion of this subject can be given Most of the patients who reach the hospital alive require operation Occasionally a patient with a stab wound recovers without operation The body must be kept warm If the circulation has stopped or if it is feeble intravenous fluid should be given while preparation for operation is made If the respiration has stopped and if the patient has lost consciousness urgent heroic steps should be taken

It takes but a few moments to expose the heart and release the compression When the patient begins to breathe an anesthetic must be given



FIGURE 5 Author s method for suture of stab wound of the heart A suture is placed in the apex of the left ventricle This is held in the left hand and at the same time the left index finger is placed upon (not in) the wound This stops the bleeding Sutures are placed on each side of the wound the finger is removed and when this is done gentle traction is applied to these sutures to control bleeding The wound is then sutured

while the surgeon takes care of the wound For the less urgent operations an anesthetic is given before the operation is started and mechanical respiration is an added safeguard An exposure to the left of the midline is usually used If the wound is in the right side an exposure to the right of the sternum is indicated The pleural cavity is opened The pericardium is opened and the blood clot is evacuated This releases the compression and immediately the heart fills with blood

The first pulsations of the heart after release of the compression are more vigorous than normal and the tasks of controlling the bleeding and repairing the wound must be met by the surgeon The literature contains dramatic descriptions of the blood spurting of the surgeon getting it in his eyes of a foam rising up to cover the heart of the patient regaining consciousness and moving on the table of tearing the heart muscle when

the wound was plugged by a finger, of sutures tearing through the heart muscle, of exsanguination of a life saved or a life lost

The problems, difficult as they appear to be, can always be managed with satisfaction if a few facts are held in mind Hemorrhage from a ventricle must be controlled by placing a finger upon and never in the wound To keep the finger from slipping off the wound the heart is steadied by a suture in the apex After the apex suture is placed and after the index finger is placed upon the wound the urgency of the operation is over and time can be taken to carry out a satisfactory repair of the wound Control sutures are placed on each side of the finger, crossed and held under moderate tension by the assistant The finger is removed There is no bleeding and permanent sutures are placed The control sutures and the apex suture are removed (Fig 5)

An auricular wound cannot be controlled by this method It can be repaired easily by taking the margin of the wound in clamps bringing the margins together and then suturing the wound It is impossible to stop bleeding from an auricular wound by placing the finger upon the wound A hemostat will crush and break ventricular wall but will not do this to auricular wall

Complications such as foreign bodies and infections will not be discussed

Nonpenetrating Wounds or Contusions of the Heart

These wounds are inflicted when the body falls from a great height or when an impact or heavy force is applied to the chest or upper abdomen The commonest type of injury producing contusion of the heart is the steering wheel accident Another type of injury producing contusion of the heart is the passage of a wheel over the chest or over the upper abdomen, an impact by a fist by a golf ball or by a horse's hoof can produce a contusion of the heart Any part of the heart can be bruised any of the chambers can be ruptured and any of the valves can be torn Hemorrhage of variable degree occurs in the heart muscle when a contusive injury is received Areas of hemorrhage, contusion and laceration may occur, not only at the site of trauma but elsewhere in the heart These areas of hemorrhage can be multiple The heart can be bruised without fracture of sternum or ribs Indeed there may be no demonstrable evidence of injury to the chest wall

Rupture of the heart can occur in several ways It can be ruptured as a toy balloon can be ruptured in one s hand by the application of sudden severe compression One would expect that a trauma of this nature would be more destructive if it should be applied at the end of diastole or at the beginning of systole when the heart is filled with blood One would also expect this trauma to be more destructive if it should be applied from the base of the heart toward the apex, so that the blood cannot escape as the heart is compressed

The heart can be ruptured by breaking open the friable myocardium This can occur even though the heart is emptied of blood The heart can be ruptured by softening of the bruised area Analysis of the literature shows that if the patient survives the first nine hours after injury the

chances of surviving the first week are better than his chances of surviving the second week One would expect the greatest amount of softening of the injured myocardium to be present during the second week and this point should be given special consideration in the treatment of these cases so that such blowouts of the heart may be avoided Another mechanism by which the heart can be ruptured is by sudden distention with blood This can occur when the blood is forcibly driven from the legs and abdomen as when the body is engulfed in a cave in accident Spontaneous rupture of the right auricle has occurred

Incidence of Cardiac Contusions In 1935 Bright and Beck analyzed the literature on nonpenetrating injuries of the heart and found 152 instances of cardiac rupture 11 instances of failure without rupture and 12 instances of recovery In the recovery group the diagnosis was based upon clinical manifestations According to this analysis it appears that when the human heart received a contusion death was the rule and recovery was the exception According to experimental data the heart can withstand an enormous amount of contusive trauma and recover In the experiments recovery was the rule and death was the exception We can conclude from these data that the group of human cases in which recovery took place was much smaller than it should have been *The clinical diagnosis of cardiac contusion is made too infrequently It is my belief that contusions of the heart are fairly common* I believe they are of commoner occurrence than the penetrating wounds of the heart

Symptoms and Diagnosis Weakness coming on after the accident is the commonest symptom of cardiac contusion When the contusion is produced experimentally there is a fall in arterial pressure but as a rule the fall in pressure is of transient duration In the less severe cases of contusion the weakness is momentary The patient extricates himself from the wreck sits down for a while and is then on his way In cases of severe contusion the circulatory shock can be extreme The patient may be unconscious the arterial pressure low and the skin cold and clammy Restlessness and air hunger may be present Tachycardia is the rule but bradycardia is sometimes present Hemorrhage in the region of the bundle of His produces heart block

The heart sounds are distant and resemble the ticking of a watch Auricular fibrillation if it appears is usually transient but it can be permanent and disabling Pericardial discomfort or pain is almost always present It may be in the epigastrium or it may radiate into either arm Vomiting sometimes occurs The pain as a rule occurs immediately after the accident but it can occur after a latent period It can grow worse over a period of days or weeks following the accident It varies from a discomfort or ache to a sharp anginal pain

The electrocardiogram shows alterations from the normal The Q R S complex shows slurring and notching Deep Q waves large T waves high take off of T and inversion of T were frequently encountered in experimental studies In our experiments those deviations from normal usually disappeared in the course of four to six weeks The electrocardiographic changes that are due to hemorrhage disappear after the blood is absorbed Those that are due to destruction of muscle are permanent

The diagnosis of cardiac contusion not infrequently becomes a problem of patient *versus* insurance company Some of these problems are extremely difficult to settle For example a man is thrown out of his seat in a train accident and strikes his chest against a seat He dies a few hours later and coronary sclerosis is found at autopsy examination A woman, who never had signs or symptoms of heart trouble is thrown from the seat in a car accident The lumbar muscles are bruised, but she does not know whether or not she struck her chest Auricular fibrillation develops immediately after the accident Later an embolus lodges in a femoral artery and the leg must be amputated Did this patient sustain an injury to the heart producing auricular fibrillation or did the injury accentuate a cardiac lesion that was present but had not manifested itself, or was the injury entirely incidental?

Following is a brief summary of a case of cardiac contusion

A delivery man for a bakery twenty five years of age ran his truck into an automobile and demolished the front end of his truck. His chest was thrown forward against the steering wheel He transferred his load of bakery goods into another truck and proceeded with the delivery He worked the following day and experienced some upper abdominal pain On the second day following the accident he experienced weakness and shortness of breath He continued to work but on the fourth day consulted a physician At that time he had dyspnea on exertion pain in the chest and a pulse rate of 120 per minute Slight discoloration of the skin was found over the left seventh costal cartilage On the eighth day following the accident he worked fourteen hours but with great difficulty The next day he was unable to work His symptoms were weakness dyspnea pain in the chest and pain down the right arm He again consulted his physician He was in bed at home for seven days and in a hospital for ten days He walked home and had to stop several times because of dyspnea and weakness Blood stained sputum appeared The heart dilated and signs of failure appeared He died eighty five days after the accident. Mural thrombi were found in the right ventricle and in the left ventricle Pulmonary emboli were found and these most probably originated from the mural thrombus in the right ventricle The seventh costal cartilage was broken The heart wall directly beneath this cartilage had the thrombi The accident sustained by this patient was a steering wheel injury which produced myocardial contusion cardiac weakness dyspnea and pain mural thrombi pulmonary emboli cardiac failure and death

Treatment The symptoms can be transient and recovery rapid Weakness and tachycardia may require rest in bed I have observed the ventricles go from a rapid ventricular tachycardia to ventricular fibrillation following contusive trauma If quinidine can prevent the development of ventricular fibrillation its use in indicated Oxygen is indicated in the presence of dyspnea and cyanosis Morphine and other sedatives should be used to induce rest and quiet

Softening of the bruised muscle takes place especially in the second week and there is a danger of rupture of the heart Exertion is to be avoided Straining at the stool coughing etc are to be avoided Surgical intervention is indicated if rupture occurs It seems that operation might have been feasible in some of the patients in whom death occurred from rupture In some of these instances the bruised area was not so extensive but that sutures could have been placed to close the opening in ventricle

or auricle A graft of fascia lata or parietal pericardium can be placed upon the contusion to prevent rupture and the formation of an aneurysm of the heart Up to the present time this operation has not been done on the human heart We have repaired by suture rupture of the heart produced experimentally and we have reinforced the heart wall by free grafts Perhaps these procedures can be applied to the human heart The oppor tunity to do this operation is fleeting but there are instances in which there is sufficient time to do the operation

HEMOPERICARDIUM

Hemorrhage into the pericardial cavity occurs in the following condi tions Penetrating wounds of the heart and intrapericardial segments of the great vessels contusion of the heart without rupture of the heart con tusion of the heart with rupture spontaneous rupture of an auricle or ventricle rupture of a myocardial infarct rupture of an aneurysm of a ventricle rupture of the base of a sclerotic aorta tumor of the heart scurvy the hemorrhagic diatheses rheumatic fever

The hemorrhage can occur rapidly or slowly It can be constant until death occurs or it can stop It can recur If the bleeding is slow or inter mittent a large quantity of fluid can be contained in the pericardial cavity because the pericardium stretches in response to the continued low grade pressure within

The *clinical signs* and symptoms produced by an accumulation of blood or bloody fluid in the pericardial cavity vary with the rapidity of its formation Usually the signs of acute cardiac compression are produced but slow and intermittent bleeding can produce the symptoms of chronic cardiac compression

The *diagnosis* of hemopericardium is obvious in many instances If the nature of the fluid is obscure removal of fluid by aspiration is carried out The thin bloody exudates are treated by aspiration rather than by operation

The proper *treatment* requires nice judgment Repeated episodes of bleeding from the right auricle took place in a case reported by Clowe Kellert and Gorham There was no history of trauma in this patient Exploration and suture of the auricle was indicated in this condition in much the same way as in a penetrating wound of the heart that emits blood Mansell Moullin in a timely operation removed a blood clot from the pericardial cavity in a boy who received a nonpenetrating cardiac injury in a rugby game We should not be too conservative in performing operation for purposes of exploration Sauerbruch operating for a condi tion that he thought was a mediastinal cyst opened into an aneurysm that came off the right ventricle The thin walled sac could not be closed because the sutures tore out He then inserted two fingers into the struc ture and plugged the communication with the ventricular cavity Excision of the sac and closure of the ventricle were successfully accomplished

PURULENT PERICARDITIS

Purulent pericarditis should be suspected in any patient who shows signs of either acute or chronic compression of the heart in the presence

of infection It can occur as a complication or as a sequel to pneumonia osteomyelitis, empyema of the thorax, throat infections cholecystitis appendicitis peritonitis etc The infection can be introduced through a penetrating wound in the chest It can be introduced with a foreign body like a fish bone or a needle from the esophagus In some instances the infection is blood borne

Pus forms rapidly or slowly Usually it develops so rapidly that the pericardium does not have time to stretch as it does in the sterile effusions or in the tuberculous effusions The clinical picture is that of acute cardiac compression, but edema, ascites and enlargement of the liver can appear in a few days and the picture of chronic cardiac compression can develop

As a rule the patient is acutely ill The circulation is poor, the arterial pressure is low the hands and feet are cold clammy and cyanotic, and the patient is toxic from the infection The presence of purulent pericarditis should be suspected in every patient who has an infection such as osteomyelitis or pneumonia and who is not doing so well as he should in consideration of the infected lesion The pressure on the heart must be released and the pus must be evacuated if the patient s life is to be saved This must be done as early as possible

After the diagnosis of purulent fluid is confirmed by aspiration of pus open incision and drainage are carried out The operation should not be any more extensive than necessary The anesthetic of choice is novocain Inhalation anesthesia must be carefully given because the patient tolerates poorly any inhalation anesthetic drug The left fifth or sixth costal cartilage is removed The pericardium is opened and the margin of the pericardial incision is sutured to the skin The pericardial cavity can be irrigated with warm physiologic solution of sodium chloride Antiseptic chemicals, especially Dakin s solution, should never to used Penicillin should be given The pericardium cannot tolerate antiseptic solutions Rubber tubes and drainage materials should not be placed in the pericardial cavity because of the possibility of erosion of a vessel Occasionally a pocket of pus forms but in my experience the cavity becomes obliterated without abscess formation and the wound heals The incidence of purulent pericarditis has been greatly reduced by the antibiotics These may be injected directly into the pericardial cavity

A boy aged six years was admitted to the University Hospitals July 28 1935 with fever sore throat labored respiration and substernal pain His illness began six days before admission with sore throat and stiffness of the neck The cervical lymph nodes on one side became enlarged Two days later pain on breathing appeared beneath the sternum and respiration became shallow and labored The temperature was elevated The lungs were clear Upon admission to the hospital the patient was acutely ill He was dyspneic and cyanotic. The extremities were cold The pharynx was slightly injected The precordium was quiet and did not show any pulsation The heart sounds were distant and could not be clearly distinguished There were no murmurs The area of cardiopericardial dulness was increased The liver was tender and slightly enlarged The pulse rate was 120 to 130 per minute The pulse was thready and irregular Respiration rate was forty two per minute The systolic pressure was 86 mm of mercury The electrocardiogram showed slurring of

Q R S in all leads with deep S in Lead I T was upright in all leads and the S T take-off was elevated in all leads

An aspirating needle was inserted into the pericardial cavity and 100 cc of greenish yellow thin pus containing type four pneumococcus was removed The circulation immediately improved after this fluid was withdrawn but the improvement was temporary Aspiration was repeated on the following day with beneficial result but the improvement was again temporary Operation was carried out. Light nitrous oxide anesthesia was used The left fifth costal cartilage was removed The internal mammary vessels were ligated above and below The pericardium was incised Fluid spurted about 20 cm from the wound Three hundred cubic centimeters of pus were removed The heart was covered by fibrin. The pericardium was sutured to the skin Marked improvement in *the condition followed The following quotation was taken from my operative* note — This child represents a type of cardiac compression which is intermediate between the acute and chronic stages It is acute in that the arterial circulation is markedly impaired and the veins are not enlarged It is chronic in that the liver is enlarged and edema is present in the scrotum and ankles Empyema of the left chest and subcutaneous abscesses developed Improvement followed drainage All wounds healed and the patient was discharged from the hospital October 26 1935 The liver became smaller The temperature was normal and there was no evidence of infection

January 8 1936 the child was readmitted to the hospital for study He showed slight evidence of chronic compression of the heart On the venous side of the circulation were the following manifestations of stasis—subcutaneous edema ascites pleural effusion each of slight degree Cyanosis enlargement of the veins and enlargement of the liver were absent On the arterial side was a *systolic pressure of 85 mm of mercury and a diastolic pressure of 50 mm of* mercury The heart sounds were normal

On June 11 1936 the patient was readmitted for study The arterial pressure was 78 mm of mercury systolic and 60 mm of mercury diastolic The venous pressure was 15 cm of water The liver was slightly enlarged Slight edema of the ankles was present The precordium was quiet The cardiopericardial shadow was becoming smaller The heart was becoming compressed by the contracture taking place in the scarified pericardium The degree of compression became more marked during the next six months—a condition that anyone who is familiar with the chronic compression triad could recognize in a moment and recognize by inspection alone without any of the special tests

He had (1) a quiet heart as shown by inspection of the precordium (2) increased pressure in the superior vena cava as shown by inspection of the enlarged veins in the neck and arms and cyanosis of the capillary bed in the nails and (3) increased pressure in *the inferior vena cava as shown by* inspection of the swollen ankles and swollen scrotum and enlarged abdomen All other manifestations were secondary to these three primary components of this disease triad As a rule the heart is normal before it becomes compressed Compression being an extrinsic disorder should not produce murmurs The compressed heart is efficient although it is not adequate to meet the requirements of a normal intake and output It does not waste energy It undergoes atrophy of disuse The x rays showed a progressive diminution in the size of the pericardial shadow during the preceding year The heart was not fixed in position. The electrocardiogram showed low voltage and slurring of Q R S complex The diastolic systolic excursion was reduced (Fig 4*A*) The veins were distended Pulsus paradoxus was present The pulse pressure was 20 to 30 mm of

mercury Ascites was present The liver was enlarged Subcutaneous edema of ankles and scrotum were present

Operation December 3 1936 The scar was two to three millimeters in thickness intimately adherent to the heart Sharp dissection was necessary to separate it from the heart Separation was carried out over the anterior and lateral surfaces and the scar was excised The heart dilated after this was done indicating that the compression was corrected The child made an excellent recovery The cyanosis disappeared The venous pressure was normal Ascites and edema disappeared The liver became smaller The diastolic systolic excursion of the heart improved and the pulse pressure increased This patient is now twenty six years old and has no cardiac symptoms

CARDIAC COMPRESSION DUE TO SCARS

Etiology The compression scars are always extrinsic in origin They never develop as a sequel or complication of an intrinsic lesion They never originate from rheumatic heart disease The infection finds entrance into the pericardium from the pharynx lungs pleura or mediastinum However, Dakin's solution and other chemical irritants applied to the normal pericardium of animals result in scars that later undergo contracture and produce compression of the heart In my series of operated cases seven showed evidence of tuberculosis in the scars and thirty did not show evidence of tuberculosis in the scar removed at operation Two of this group of thirty patients however had tuberculosis elsewhere without showing tubercles in the scar

Diagnosis The author s triad makes the diagnosis of chronic cardiac compression simple and infallible (Fig 3) Usually the diagnosis can be made by inspection alone The ascites is apparent the distention of the venous system is apparent and the quiet precordium is readily observed Our understanding of cardiac compression has been greatly simplified by placing proper emphasis upon the compression and by eliminating the old terminology of adhesive pericarditis, Pick s disease, mediastinopericarditis and constrictive pericarditis together with the implication that the heart undergoes dilatation hypertrophy and failure because it pulls upon adhesions That the compressed heart is entirely free from these assumed disturbances even though adhesions are everywhere present has been demonstrated beyond any reasonable doubt

Differential diagnosis as a rule is not a problem Obstructions elsewhere at the tricuspid valve at the pulmonic valve at the pulmonary artery, at the mitral valve at the aortic valve and the aorta have characteristics that make the localization of the obstruction at these sites possible I have seen several patients with the obstruction in the pulmonary bed due to chronic pulmonary infection and fibrosis with narrowing of the smaller vessels in the pulmonary bed These patients showed the signs of stasis in each vena cava with ascites and cyanosis but the heart made a normal diastolic systolic excursion In the absence of a quiet heart the diagnosis of compression was not made and the fibrotic appearance of the lungs placed the obstruction in the lungs

Compression of the heart due to scar is to be differentiated from compression due to other agents such as fluid in the pericardial cavity blood

exudate transudate or a neoplasm The size and contour of the x ray shadow helps here If fluid is suspected aspiration might be carried out before operation is done In several of my patients the compression was due to a combination of fluid and scar

The compressed heart is always small The small atrophic condition of the heart may or may not be suggested by the x ray shadow Scars vary from one to about ten millimeters in thickness and a thick scar can give the atrophic heart the appearance of being either normal or enlarged

Preascitic Compression Scars When the venous pressure is greater than 20 cm water fluid filters out of the vascular bed into the abdomen pro ducing ascites When the pressure is less than this level ascites does not develop On the basis of this one would expect mild forms of compression without ascites and these cases do exist The venous pressure is 14 to 20 cm water The heart does not fill normally and the circulation is slowed by this mild compression of the heart The symptoms are mild but it is possible to recognize this condition I operated on several patients who had this condition and these patients were cured

Operation for Removal of Compression Scars In the past it was be lieved to be desirable to delay operation until the infectious process sub sided as indicated by the temperature of the patient The antibiotics have changed this attitude and operation can be carried out earlier in the course of the disease The patient is given a course of vigorous treatment with appropriate antibiotics and the agents that are effective in tubercu losis Holman and Willett[c] reported eight patients with tuberculous peri carditis and in six of whom viable tubercle bacilli were cultured These patients recovered from operation and were well The patient is dehydrated before operation Fluid is aspirated from the abdomen and chest if there is a considerable amount present The patient is digitalized before opera tion Light anesthesia is used Respiration should not be depressed by drugs My anesthetist uses a small amount of pentothal then introduces an intratracheal tube and carries the patient along with light ether anes thesia and relaxant drugs I use the Rand Wolfe respirator for all cardiac surgery and I think it is a great aid The anesthesia is such that the patient should be breathing on his own and awake as the dressing is applied to the incision The patient is placed in slight Fowler s position for operation The left arm is extended The incision is made between the third and fourth ribs and cartilages extending from the left border of the sternum to the midaxillary line The chest should be draped so that the incision can be extended across the sternum to the interspace on the right The exposure of the heart is much better if the sternum is cut across and retracted In the past I seldom cut across the sternum but now I recom mend it The mammary vessels are securely ligated before they are cut The left pleural cavity is opened and if necessary the right pleural cavity is also opened If both cavities are opened then a drainage tube is placed in each cavity before the wound is closed The left phrenic nerve and the vessels accompanying this nerve are dissected carefully from the peri cardium and retracted away from the operative area The scar is then incised and the proper plane is found between scar and heart As a rule this is done without difficulty but occasionally it is possible to cut into the

heart or cut a coronary artery One must be ever mindful that the coronary arteries may be cut or compressed by the finger I lost one patient from pressure on an artery which fibrillated the heart and at that time there was no method for defibrillation of the heart The scar is dissected by sharp or blunt dissection, a little at a time Transverse cuts in the scar open it up so that you can do this dissection with less difficulty As much scar as possible is removed but it is not necessary to remove it posteriorly where it is almost impossible technically to remove it There is a limit to the amount of dislocation that the heart can tolerate The base of the heart should be carefully freed of scar including auricles, aorta, pulmonary artery and the venae cavae Sometimes you can observe where the scar does most of its compression and it is great satisfaction to remove scar from these areas and observe result I recommend frequent rest periods for the heart during which the lungs are nicely inflated and nicely deflated The lungs must not be too forcibly inflated nor should they be continuously distended They should come up nicely and go down nicely with each cycle of the respiration If an accidental cut or tear is made in any of the cardiac structures it of course must be repaired As a rule, with good exposure, this can be repaired without difficulty If the rate goes up to 120 or higher per minute I recommend cedilanid be given intravenously This is a digitalis preparation which can be given intravenously and is a very important drug in all types of cardiac surgery

Results Obtained after Resection of Compression Scars The results in my cases up to 1949 were analyzed [7] There were seventy operations on sixty four patients There was one operative mortality from ventricular fibrillation referred to above 1 5 per cent In the postoperative period there were five from tuberculosis, five from other causes for a total of 15 7 per cent Two of these were due to infection and three were due to acute dilatation of the heart Perhaps the acute dilatation could have been taken care of by blood letting Deaths over a period of eighteen years were 5 or 7 8 per cent These five patients were improved insofar as compression was concerned One developed miliary tuberculosis and died several months later one developed pneumonia several years later, one developed recurrence of compression and died several years later and two died of unknown causes There were forty eight living patients or seventy five per cent and of these there are forty six complete cures and two with some recurrence but who were improved Operation was not refused a single patient because of seriousness of physical condition An analysis of my cases was reported by Chambliss and associates

Heuer and Andrus reported nineteen operations done on eighteen patients over a period of eight years Of these seven were cured three recently operated upon were improved and probably cured five were improved but not cured and four were not improved Cure was obtained in fifty five per cent of the patients Harrington operated upon twenty four patients Of these five died in the hospital There was one operative death two deaths due to tuberculosis and three due to cardiac failure Of the eighteen remaining patients nine were cured and nine were improved Cure was obtained in 37 5 per cent of the patients

THE PATENT DUCTUS ARTERIOSUS

In 1907 John Munro suggested that the ductus arteriosus might be ligated if it remained patent There appears to be no record of an attempt to perform the operation until 1937 when J W Strieder recorded an unsuccessful attempt to ligate the structure in a patient who had bacterial endocarditis John Hubbard selected the first patient upon whom the ductus was successfully ligated by Robert Gross [8]

Figure 6 illustrates the shunt in the circulation produced by this communication In this condition blood flows from the aorta where the pressure is relatively high into the pulmonary artery where the pressure is lower A part of the oxygenated blood in the aorta is returned to the lungs and a short circuit is thus set up This shunting of the blood stream is followed by certain complications In the first place the heart has increased work placed upon it The left ventricle dilates and undergoes hypertrophy in a manner similar to that seen when a fistula connects any large artery and vein as in the femoral region or in the neck or axilla The right ventricle also works against an increased resistance in the pulmonary bed Endocarditis may develop at any time in a patient with a patent ductus arteriosus Growth and nutrition can be affected by the condition and it would appear that the wall of the ductus is sometimes thin and may rupture

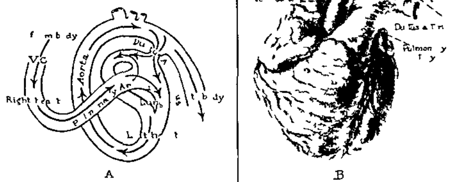


FIGURE 6 *A* Diagram of circulation showing the short circuit of blood through the patent ductus arteriosus *B* Heart of a child three days old illustrating patent ductus arteriosus (Nelson Loose Leaf Surgery 1927—ten years before the first operation)

Selection of Patients The indications for operation have become liberalized as surgeons gained experience in performing the operation and as the risk of doing the operation has fallen The opportune age for operation is four to six years but it has been done soon after birth in the presence of heart failure and it also has been done in late adult life As a rule the

operation is indicated when the diagnosis is made Sometimes there are no symptoms because the patient having been born with this lesion has never experienced normal health and activity

The Operative Procedure Several types of approach have been used Adequate exposure is necessary if the duct is to be dissected free and section of the duct carried out The writer uses a transverse incision below the left breast extending from the sternum laterally to the posterior axillary line The position on the table is such that the midportion of the incision is uppermost The pectoral muscle is cut parallel to the skin incision and retracted upward An intercostal incision is made between the third and fourth ribs A self retaining retractor is placed and the chest is opened for a distance of about 15 cm The pleura just superior to the hilum of the lung is cut along the vagus nerve The recurrent laryngeal nerve is identified and the duct is dissected free Sharp dissection is used and a word of warning is given not to use blunt dissection as it may tear the duct pulmonary artery or aorta Dissection beneath the duct is facilitated by a ball dissector which presents the tissue posterior to the duct so that it can be cut This ball dissector is a ball of metal 4 mm in diameter on a handle shaped like a cane When placed beneath the duct the tissues are presented so that they can be cut Special clamps are placed on the aortic and pulmonic ends Ordinary clamps crush these vessels and should not be used Pott s clamps are excellent for this purpose The duct is transected between clamps and each end is sutured by a No 5 deknatel arterial suture The technic that I use is a continuous mattress suture for the first line and then come back to the starting point with an over and over continuous suture If there is any bleeding when the clamps are removed an additional single or mattress stitch is applied Some surgeons dissect the aorta free and approach it laterally There are no intercostal arteries at this level I have never used this approach but if hemorrhage is encountered it is well to bear in mind that if the aorta is dissected free a clamp can be placed across the aorta but parallel to the aorta so as not to occlude it and the bleeding point controlled I know of one instance in which the aorta was clamped across and this was followed by paralysis of the legs The Potts clamp or the Beck aorta clamp will obviate this danger of transverse clamping These clamps are applied in the longitudinal direction of the aorta Hemorrhage can be troublesome If the dissection appears to be too hazardous it is advisable to ligate the duct Two ligatures of narrow umbilical tape are used together with one or two ligatures of silk The possibility of recanalization is slight

It is not advisable to suture the pleura over the vessels because if the pleura is closed it may obscure any bleeding from these structures The writer operated upon a patient in whom the pericardium came up over the duct and it was opened Several hours later the patient was in circulatory shock but only a small amount of blood had come out of the drainage tube in the chest The heart stopped beating as the incision was opened The pericardium was filled with blood and the patient had acute compression of the heart The heart was resuscitated The bleeding had come from a needle hole in the aorta and the blood entered the pericardium through the small opening made at operation

Gross reported a series of 568 patients in whom the duct was divided and sutured The mortality was 1 7 per cent [9] In a series of 143 patients operated upon by the writer the mortality was 1 4 per cent

Patent Ductus Arteriosus with Reverse Flow This occurs in patients with pulmonary hypertension when the pulmonary pressure exceeds aortic pressure When the pressure is the same in each of these vessels there may be no flow through the duct and the flow may change or reverse itself as the pressures change Reverse flow produces cyanosis of the lower extremities while the hands head and neck are pink If there is no flow through the duct it is possible to clamp the duct cut the duct between clamps and suture each end Following this procedure the pressure in the pulmonary artery has a tendency to fall to more normal levels When pulmonary artery pressure is higher than aortic pressure it is hazardous to divide the duct because of the possibility of right heart failure Reverse flow due to pulmonary hypertension is accepted as a contraindication to operation Reverse flow is sometimes associated with other cardiac abnormalities such as pulmonic stenosis septal defects tricuspid atresia and transposition of the great vessels

TETRALOGY OF FALLOT

The blue baby operation has received considerable attention due to the contribution by Blalock[10] and Taussig Potts [11] Brock[12] and others The term tetralogy of Fallot is generally applied to this lesion under discussion because Fallot in 1888 described it However Landifort in 1777 and Hope in 1842 also described it The essential features of this lesion consist of atresia or stenosis of the pulmonary artery dextroposition of the aorta ventricular septal defect and right ventricular hypertrophy The features of this defect that concern us most are (1) an inadequate amount of blood to the lungs and (2) a large amount of venous blood in the aorta The point of practical importance is to deliver some of the aortic blood to the pulmonary artery so that it can become oxygenated Blalock accomplished this by turning a systemic artery—subclavian or carotid—into the pulmonary artery Potts took a step farther and made direct anastomosis between aorta and pulmonary artery These have been phenomenal developments They have brought to light more blue babies than anyone thought existed In a short term of a few years about 1000 of them have been operated upon The operation is beneficial Improvement is marked although it should be stated that the operation does not completely correct the various defects It adds another defect but a beneficial defect—a patent ductus—to those already existing

The clinical features are cyanosis and clubbing a heart of normal size usually a murmur at the base and a pure second sound The electrocardiogram shows right axis deviation The x ray shows absence of the normal fulness of the pulmonary conus and clear lung fields Fluoroscopy shows no pulsations at the hilar regions of the lungs There are many variables The oxygen saturation of arterial blood may vary from eighty eight to ten per cent The exercise tolerance of the individual shows marked variation Operation is indicated for those who are severely handicapped Fig 7 is a photograph of Dr Blalock



FIGURE 7 Alfred Blalock (1899) whose shunt operation for tetralogy of Fallot did so much to stimulate the development of cardiac surgery

Selection of Patients The operation is indicated only in cases in which the primary difficulty is lack of circulation to the lungs Operation is possible only provided a pulmonary artery is present The pressure in the pulmonary artery must be lower than the pressure in the systemic artery The heart must be able to tolerate the altered circulation The heart should not be enlarged There is no fulness of the pulmonary conus and no pulsations in the lung fields Usually there is absence of hilar shadows However in patients with extensive collateral circulation these shadows may become pronounced but are composed of an aggregate of fine shadows and never show expansile pulsations

The operation is indicated in patients in whom cyanosis is present and inadequate amount of blood enters the pulmonary bed The admixture of blood is due to the over riding of the aorta with a septal defect beneath the aorta The aorta is considerably larger than the pulmonary artery and drains a large part of the blood from both ventricles In some instances the pulmonary artery is also narrowed and smaller than normal There may also be infundibular or valvular stenosis at the pulmonary out flow tract If there is a valvular stenosis present it is advisable to release this stenosis rather than carry out the shunting operation The opportune time for the operation is the age of four to six years although it has been done in the newborn and it has been done in adults The presence of cyanosis and the reduction of pulmonary markings are indications for operation

The Blalock Taussig Operation The reader is referred to the original papers by these authors This operation is anastomosis between a systemic artery and pulmonary artery The most desirable artery is the subclavian coming off the innominate but the innominate artery being only on the right side this favorable anatomical relationship can only be used when the approach is on the right side of the chest The writer uses the left sided approach in all cases The left chest is opened between the third and fourth ribs The pericardium is opened transversely in order to examine the pulmonary artery and the region of the pulmonary valve and the infundibular area of the right ventricle If a valvular stenosis is present the operation of choice is valvulotomy rather than placing a shunt Other advantages of opening the pericardium and exploration of the pulmonary artery is in the fact that the pulmonary artery may be so small that it may be *difficult to find the artery as it penetrates the lungs With the pericardium* opened the location of the pulmonary artery coming into the lung can always be determined The pulmonary artery is dissected free as it enters the left lung The left subclavian artery is also dissected free up to the point where it breaks up into several branches It is then determined whether or not the subclavian artery will be long enough to breach the gap between the aorta and pulmonary artery In some cases every millimeter of length is necessary in order to establish a satisfactory flow In some instances the artery is too short to make a circular turn around the aorta down to the pulmonary artery If there is any tension the artery should not be turned down for this purpose If it is too short then an alternate procedure should be carried out as described below If the length of the

artery is adequate, it is then cut across as far distally as possible It is then turned down and sutured end to side into the pulmonary artery Number 5 deknatel suture material is used for this purpose The suture may be either everting or an ordinary over and over suture There are special clamps which can pinch off enough of the pulmonary artery to open it without occluding it These clamps possess a handle, steady the artery without occluding it and facilitate anastomosis Experience has shown that the subclavian artery is about the proper size for the shunt in all patients with tetralogy In children the lumen of the artery is small and the shunt must be small In adults the artery is larger and the shunt can be larger

As a rule the results of the operation are very satisfactory The color becomes pinker the blood becomes thinner, the clubbing of fingers and toes begins to disappear, and the patient becomes stronger and more active Even though the anatomical defect in the heart has not been corrected some of these patients have led almost normal lives Several of my patients have gotten married and have had children and others have been able to support a household Occasionally as the patient grows in size tension develops on the subclavian artery and the shunt becomes occluded The murmur disappears the previous symptoms return and when this occurs a new shunt should be placed

The Potts Smith Gibson Operation This operation consists of direct anastomosis between aorta and pulmonary artery made possible by a special clamp which enables one to open the aorta without producing complete occlusion of the aorta This operation accomplishes the same purpose as the Blalock Taussig operation It has two advantages in that a systemic artery is not sacrificed for the anastomosis and the operation has a lower mortality rate In this operation the side on which operation is done is determined by the position of the aorta With a left arch the aorta comes down on the left and lies close to the left pulmonary artery With the aorta on the right side the operation is done on the right side

Potts originally made an opening in the aorta of /16 inch More recently he reduced this to 4/16 inch The opening can be made too large especially in small children The writer lost two young infants from pulmonary edema which he attributed to the size of the stoma in the aorta In small infants the stoma should not be larger than 4/16 inch and perhaps it should be slightly smaller The suture used is an over and over continuous suture It is remarkable that clotting does not take place at the site of the anastomosis in either operation This is due to the rapidity of blood flow through the anastomosis the systemic artery and aorta carrying a considerably higher pressure than the pulmonary artery and the blood washing away platelets and fibrin that tend to adhere to the suture line

Free Graft Between Aorta and Pulmonary Artery This operation was developed by the writer in 1948 and has not been published It consists in placing a free graft of fresh artery or vein between the aorta and the pulmonary artery In small children the segment of vein is taken from one of the parents In adults an autogenous segment of vein is used When a

free graft is not available at operation a segment of subclavian artery may be taken As a rule the free graft need not be longer than 1 or 2 cm to bridge the gap between the aorta and pulmonary artery This operation is used in those cases where the subclavian artery is too short and also those patients in whom direct anastomosis cannot be made In children the stoma in the aorta should be 3 5 mm In adults it should be 4 0 mm A special instrument is available to punch out a circular piece of aorta A Beck clamp is placed on the aorta The aorta is opened for several millimeters A punch is introduced in the opening made in the aorta The graft is then sutured to the aorta with an over and over suture A similar procedure is used on the pulmonary artery After the operation is completed it resembles a patent ductus arteriosus The graft lies in a good position to remain patent There is probably also some advantage in using a graft to avoid making too large a shunt as may occur in direct anastomosis without a graft

DIRECT APPROACH TO PULMONARY STENOSIS

This form of treatment was introduced by Brock and consists in the direct attack upon the stenosis An instrument is inserted into the right ventricle and directed into the area of stenosis If the stenosis is valvular, the ring is cut and dilated by special instruments If the stenosis is infundibular then some of the muscle on the cardiac side of the pulmonary valve is cut and removed by special instruments The direct approach has much to recommend it Brock reported 140 cases operated upon by this method Valvulotomy was done in fifty cases with good or very good results in seventy four per cent improvement in twelve per cent no improvement in two per cent and a mortality of twelve per cent Infundibular resection was done in sixty two cases with eighty seven zero and thirteen per cent respectively and in twenty eight cases infundibular resection plus valvulotomy were done with results of seventy two twenty one zero and seven per cent respectively The total mortality was 11 5 per cent These results are to be compared with those by Blalock and Taussig In 857 cases reported by them the results were good or very good in eighty per cent improvement in three per cent no improvement in two per cent and a mortality of fourteen per cent On the basis of these figures there is not much difference in the results obtained by the shunt operation and by the direct approach Each operation has its place each can produce a good or excellent result but *the writer believes the tendency is towards the direct approach* The writer has had patients who were relieved by a shunt for several years then the degree of improvement became less The direct operation in these patients produced an excellent result

After the stenosis is released the patient is left with a ventricular septal defect and surgery is now approaching a stage where even these defects are being closed by open heart operation

COARCTATION OF THE AORTA

Coarctation of the aorta is a congenital condition in which the aorta is narrowed or completely obstructed This narrowing of the aorta produces

an elevation of arterial pressure proximal to the obstruction and a reduction of arterial pressure distal to the obstruction There are two types of coarctation One is a localized narrowing of the aorta in the distal arch usually at or beyond the remnant of the ductus arteriosus The other type is a generalized narrowing of the aorta anywhere along its course

The final effect of coarctation upon the individual is indicated by a survey of autopsy material carried out by Reifenstein, Levine and Gross According to this survey there were four types of end result and each group was approximately the same size These groups were as follows (1) patients in whom there was little or no disability and in whom the coarctation was not related to the cause of death (2) patients who died of bacterial endocarditis or aortitis (3) patients who died of rupture of the aorta, (4) patients who died of cardiac failure or intracranial hemorrhage

Infection was most common in the third decade rupture of aorta or cerebral artery was most common in the second and third decades, and failure was most common in the third, fourth, and fifth decades The average life span was thirty years Coarctation is a serious condition Fortunately many of these conditions can be cured by operation

Clinical Manifestations The arterial pressure in the arms is moderately or markedly elevated Exercise brings forth a greater rise than normal A difference of pressure in the two arms of more than thirty to forty mm of mercury (Gross) may be suggestive evidence of the location of the coarctation as proximal or distal to the origin of the left subclavian artery The pressure in the legs is reduced Femoral pulse may be absent Collateral circulation between the high and low pressure beds develops by way of the internal mammary arteries and in the intercostal arteries Pulsation in these vessels is increased and can often be palpated The intercostal arteries sometimes erode the lower border of the ribs as shown by x rays The murmurs heard are variable Complete obstruction of aorta, like complete ligation of a major artery is silent Partial obstruction produces a murmur which can be heard between the scapulae in the neck, and over the base and sometimes the apex of the heart Murmurs may originate from other defects in the heart and great vessels and possibly also at the origin of greatly dilated branches coming off the aorta The heart may be enlarged and hypertrophic X rays taken in the proper plane in which the aortic shadow is away from the vertebrae may indicate narrowing of the aortic knob and descending aorta Usually such evidence cannot be obtained X rays may show notching or scalloping of the inferior border of the ribs in their posterior and lateral portions The upper three ribs do not show such changes Visualization of coarctation by injection of diodrast into the aorta is not recommended There have been a number of serious complications attending this study and the dangers are greater than the value obtained by visualization

Operation For the history of the surgical development of the treatment of coarctation, reference is made to articles by Crafoord and Nylin [13] Gross and Hufnagel [14] Clagett [1] and Blalock and Park [16]

The left chest is opened widely by a long incision between the third and

fourth ribs It is not necessary to remove a rib nor to cut them posteriorly The pleura over the aorta is incised and the aorta is dissected free over a distance of about 6 to 8 cm Adequate mobilization of the aorta is essential Usually the coarctation lies distal to the left subclavian artery As a rule there are no small branches coming off the aorta in this dissection proximal to the coarctation The ligamentum arteriosum is dissected free clamped cut and each end sutured The aorta distal to the coarctation gives origin to the intercostal arteries These are variable in number size and position Any of these arteries that arise from the aorta within a centimeter of the coarctation are ligated and cut Dissection of the aorta is carried distally and an area is found between intercostal arteries large enough for application of the distal clamp Any arteries proximal to the distal clamp are temporarily occluded After dissection has been completed a non crushing clamp is applied proximally and distally to the coarctation The clamps used are either those of Gross or straight or curved clamps of Potts The Crafoord clamps are sometimes useful The left subclavian artery should not be occluded by the proximal clamp if this is possible The narrowed area of the aorta is then excised by a heavy sharp straight scissors which will make a clean cut The cuts should be on the bias and should be parallel to each other both above and below so that the suture line after it has been made will have a large diameter after the two ends are brought together The narrow segment is removed A series of interrupted mattress sutures is then placed beginning in the posterior area of the aorta After this row of sutures has been placed the two ends of the aorta are brought together by the assistant who supports the clamps As a rule this can be done without difficulty Each suture is then tied Ten or twelve interrupted Lembert sutures are then placed in the everted cuff of the aorta As a rule it takes fifteen to twenty minutes to place these sutures and tie them The distal clamp is then removed Usually there is no bleeding but an additional suture may be necessary if there is bleeding The proximal clamp is then removed Any clamps on intercostal arteries are removed The pleura is sutured over the aorta The lungs are re expanded and a drainage tube is introduced into the chest

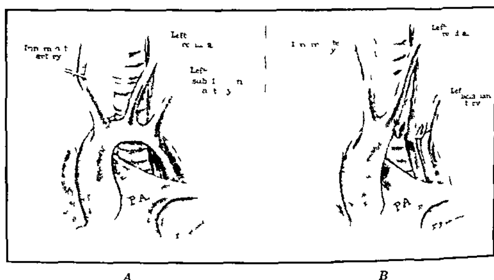
In the writer s series of fifty cases only one required a graft The graft may be a sleeve of nylon of proper size or a homograft of an aorta After the aorta is properly mobilized a section measuring 2 5 cm can be removed without grafting It is advisable not to use a graft unless a direct anastomosis does not seem to be possible Gross reported 19 of 180 patients operated upon in whom he used a graft but it is obvious from the illustrations of these patients that a graft was not necessary in each of these patients

Results of Operation The surgical procedure for correction of coarctation has improved with accumulation of experience The procedure of choice is direct end to end anastomosis without a graft whenever this is possible

In a series of fifty consecutive cases by the writer direct anastomosis was possible in forty nine and a graft was necessary in one In 180 cases

by Gross a graft was used in nineteen or about ten per cent There were two deaths in the writer s fifty cases or four per cent One was due to necrotizing arteriolitis of the abdominal organs Three other similar com plications have been reported by others One death was due to dehiscence of the aortic suture line about two weeks after discharge from the hospital and was due to infection In 270 patients by Gross the mortality was seventeen or six per cent but in the last 100 the mortality was two per cent

The blood pressure usually falls after the anastomosis has been com pleted and the clamps have been removed There are patients however in whom hypertension persists after operation and in one of the writer s



A *B*

FIGURE 8 *A* Double aortic arch with trachea and esophagus between the anterior and posterior portions of the aorta These structures were compressed *B* The anterior portion of the double arch has been ligated and divided thus relieving tracheal obstruction

patients a cerebral hemorrhage occurred several days later from which he recovered The pressure in the arms falls to normal in a week or two in eighty eight per cent in ten per cent some reduction occurs and in two per cent there was no reduction (Gross)

CONGENITAL MALFORMATIONS OF AORTA

Certain malformations of the aorta and its branches may compress trachea and esophagus and produce dysphagia wheezing respiration, stri dor retraction of the chest cough and pulmonary infection These symp toms may be severe Compression of esophagus and trachea can usually be visualized by x ray and fluoroscopic examination Angiocardiograms may visualize the aorta and its branches The trachea and esophagus are encircled by the double arch One arch is usually larger than the other In Group I the aorta comes off the heart in its normal position The double arch

extends from right to left one part behind and one part in front of esophagus and trachea The arches join together to the left and give rise to the descending aorta The ligamentum arteriosum lies on the left between pulmonary artery and aorta just beyond the origin of the subclavian artery The malformations of Group II are mirror images of Group I The aorta arises to the left of trachea and esophagus one arch lies in front and one behind these structures The arches join together to the right of esophagus and trachea to form the descending aorta which lower down crosses to the left side The ligamentum arteriosum is attached to the right pulmonary artery and aorta just beyond the origin of the right subclavian artery

It is possible to relieve some of these obstructions by ligation and section of the anterior arch (Fig 8) In some cases section of the ductus arteriosus either alone or in conjunction with the section of the arch gives relief

REVASCULARIZATION OF THE HEART FOR CORONARY ARTERY DISEASE[1-18]

Introduction This subject has been investigated by Beck and his associates since 1932 and over 5000 experimental operations were done on the coronary blood vessels of the heart This work has established a new line of thought on this subject It is reasonable to state that the coronary problem now can be defined with better understanding and this promises to bring about more effective treatment

Many avenues of approach to this problem have been investigated by these workers Many of these as has been the experience in all research contributed little to our knowledge but it was necessary to investigate them Certain facts have been established and from our present point of view these seem to have an enduring nature and will lead to better understanding in the future Certainly there will be no progress in the treatment of coronary artery disease if our thinking does not change Except for the anticoagulants the attitude of the profession towards this disease has been static and unrewarding No segment of the profession has earned respectability for what it has been able to do in the treatment of this disease The treatment consisted of sedation rest oxygen and pills and there is no evidence that any of these medical measures add or subtract a single drop of blood to ischemic myocardium Change in this attitude is a requirement The old must yield to the new

Definition of the Problem[19] There are two aspects to this problem One concerns the total amount of blood available to the myocardium and the other concerns the distribution of this blood to every part of the myocardium The capacity of the coronary arteries to carry blood is many more times as much as the capillary bed accepts and needs In severe disease the lumina of the coronary arteries sometimes are so narrowed that one wonders how the heart could beat with so little blood On the other hand there are instances in which the heart showed only slight arterial

stenosis and no myocardial infarct and one wonders why the heartbeat was destroyed

About ten per cent of the victims of the disease die from what we call a "muscle death" There is insufficient blood entering the heart to preserve the beat and failure develops Little or nothing can be done by operation for this group of patients The other ninety per cent of the patients die from an uneven distribution of the blood that gets into the heart There is enough that gets in but it is *not evenly* distributed and this uneven distribution leads to the production of electric currents which destroy the coordinated beat This type of death we refer to as "mechanism death" According to Yater and associates, one third of all victims of the disease have no infarct old or recent Much can be done to help these patients by operation

The Stable and Unstable Heart[20] An even distribution of oxygen to the heart produces electrical stability an uneven distribution produces electrical instability A uniformly pink heart is stable, a uniformly cyanosed heart is stable a pink heart containing a cyanosed area is unstable and a cyanosed heart containing a pink area is unstable (Fig 9) Stability is not related to the supply of oxygen delivered to the heart because oxygen can be cut off for minutes and the deeply cyanosed heart remains electrically stable When differences in oxygen content are created experimentally, then electrical currents are produced which can destroy the coordinated mechanism These differences can be produced in the pink heart and in the cyanosed heart These currents are responsible for the vast majority of deaths from this disease These deaths are not due to inadequate blood supply nor are they due to destruction of myocardium They are due to electrical currents in the heart and this heart without these currents would not fibrillate and could keep on beating for years The major emphasis therefore in the treatment of this disease should be placed upon these currents which in turn are related to the distribution of blood When the distribution of blood in the heart is even then these currents do not develop and the heart is in a good position to sustain one arterial occlusion after another until the inflow is reduced to such a level that the beat can no longer be sustained and the patient dies in failure

An Axiom in Coronary Artery Occlusion The fate of the patient depends upon the amount of blood available to the muscle beyond the occlusion This is a self evident fact Addition to or subtraction from this available amount alters the fate of the patient after occlusion

Amount of Blood Necessary to Preserve Life Experiments by my associate, David S Leighninger showed that when the descending ramus of the left coronary artery was ligated in one step at its origin 300 cc per hour to the ischemic area were necessary to preserve the heartbeat When the circumflex ramus was ligated 390 cc per hour to the ischemic area were necessary to preserve the heartbeat These quantities do not protect against the formation of an infarct They make it possible for the heart to keep on beating

The Mautz Gregg Backflow [1] This important method of measurement is carried out by placing a ligature on either the circumflex or descending ramus of the left coronary artery then severing the artery distal to the ligature and determining the amount of blood that flows from the cut end This blood comes from the intact arteries In normal dogs the amount varies from several drops per minute to 8 or 9 cc per minute but in two dogs 17 and 21 cc were obtained These dogs with high backflows have a

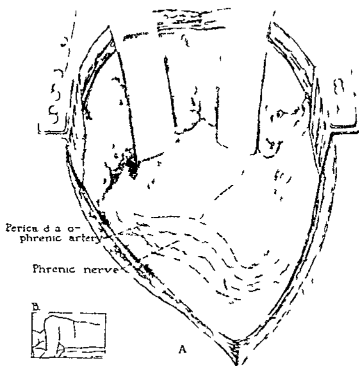


FIGURE 10 Left side of chest is opened by incision between the fifth and sixth ribs as indicated in the inset The pericardial incisions are indicated by the broken lines

good functioning set of intercoronary channels They were born with them and these dogs would survive descending or circumflex artery ligation They may be regarded as protected hearts Nine per cent of normal human hearts have a good set of intercoronaries They also were born with them These are the humans who survive an occlusion and if the disease is not too severe after the occlusion they make a splendid recovery It is desirable to give the ninety one per cent of the people an equally good

set of intercoronaries so that they also will have a better chance to survive arterial occlusion The average backflow in dogs is 3 8 cc per minute or 228 cc per hour

Operation The various steps in the operation are illustrated in Figs 10 11, 12, 13 14, 15 The patient is placed on his right side with the left side up An incision is made between the fifth and sixth ribs from the sternum laterally for about 20 cm A self retaining retractor is placed and

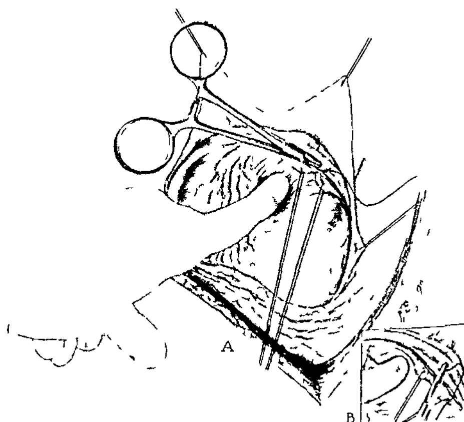


FIGURE 11 Placing a suture around the coronary sinus *B* needle penetrating the left atrium in a direction parallel and close to the sinus Needle is then turned in a clockwise direction ninety degrees to emerge just superior to the sinus Temporary traction sutures are in the fat to expose sinus

the ribs are spread apart for 10 cm The pericardium is opened on each side of the phrenic nerve and the lining of the pericardium is thoroughly abraded The heart is carefully explored for infarct, arterial disease reduction of pulsation aneurysm and enlargement of the heart A needle with a piece of silk is passed around the coronary sinus 1 or 2 cm from its stoma in the auricle The surface of the heart is carefully abraded A probe 3 mm in diameter is placed on the sinus and the silk is tied on this probe The probe is then removed and this narrows the sinus to about the size of

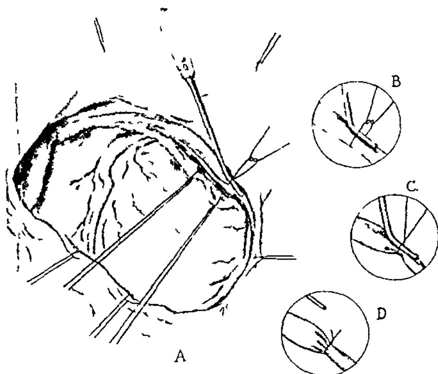


FIGURE 12 Partial ligation of the coronary sinus The ligature is tied on a stilet 3 mm in diameter as in *A* *B* and *C* and the stilet is removed after the ligature is tied as in *D*

the probe Three tenths grams of powdered asbestos are placed on the surface of the heart The pericardium is loosely closed The pericardial fat with its independent blood supply is spread over the surface of the heart as a graft Sometimes, but not often, anastomoses develop between the fat and the heart A drainage tube is placed in the chest Two sutures are placed around the ribs and the soft parts are closed with silk

What Does This Operation Accomplish When Applied to Normal Dog Hearts? When the descending ramus of the left coronary artery is ligated

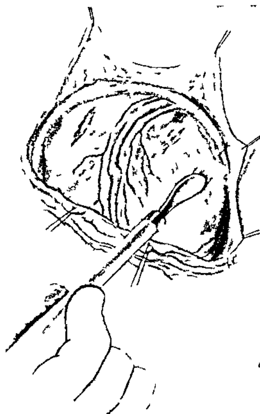


FIGURE 13 Epicardium removed by special burs Necrotizing chemicals should not be used for this purpose

at its origin in one step in normal dogs the mortality is seventy per cent When this operation was performed on the normal dog and then at some subsequent time this same test artery was ligated the mortality was twenty six per cent The mortality was reduced forty four per cent because of the operation Likewise the size of the infarct in the dogs that survived ligation was reduced by sixty to seventy per cent because of the operation The electrocardiogram showed fewer abnormalities because of the operation The Mautz Gregg backflow was increased from an average of 228 cc per hour in normal dogs to an average of 510 cc per hour in the operated

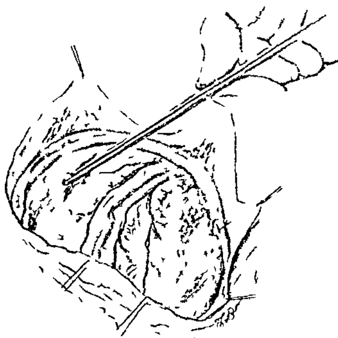


FIGURE 14 Sprinkling of an inflammatory agent (0 2 to 0 3 Gm of coarsely ground asbestos) over the entire surface of heart

dogs This is an increase of 282 cc per hour produced by operation In other words, the operation made available the equivalent of a transfusion of 282 cc of additional blood per hour to the ischemic area of myocardium when the circumflex artery was occluded and this blood was available at the time of the occlusion It was made available by the presence of inter coronary arterial channels (Fig 16)

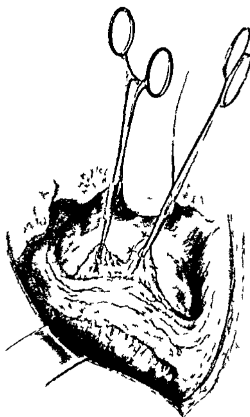
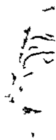


FIGURE 15 Pericardium partially closed Mediastinal fat is used to cover the heart as much as possible Here it is brought beneath the bridge of pericardium containing the pericardiacophrenic artery and vein In most instances it is attached to the right border of this bridge of tissue

Selection of Patients Three groups of patients are acceptable for operation The first group includes those patients who need the operation as a prophylaxis against coronary occlusion in the future So far no patient in this group has been operated upon but recently a patient, age forty one, requested advice His father and two uncles died at an early age from coronary artery occlusion He wanted to know whether he should have the operation because of his family history My advice was he should have the operation done now at a time when the risk was minimal or absent and should occlusion develop later on he would be in the group of ninety-one per cent of the humans who are born with a protective set of intercoronary arteries The second group of acceptable patients includes those who have







had coronary insufficiency without an infarct Operation should be done in this group when diagnosis of coronary insufficiency is made The third group includes those patients who have had one or more infarcts Six months should elapse between the infarct and operation

Certain patients are not candidates for operation These include patients with extensive disease enlargment of the heart, and signs of myocardial failure Patients who are having progressive symptoms should be given a period of time for the disease to become quiescent before the operation is

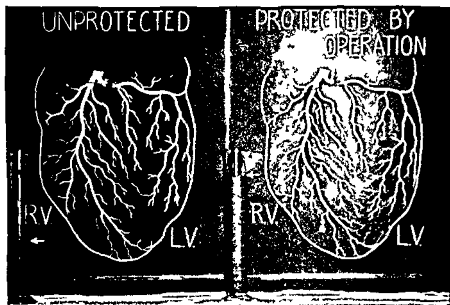


FIGURE 16 The average backflow from the circumflex artery in seventy normal hearts was 228 cc per hour The average backflow in forty one hearts after operation had been done was 510 cc per hour Operation added 282 cc per hour This is equivalent to a transfusion of life saving blood to the ischemic muscle This blood is available at the crisis of an occlusion and helps the heart to meet this crisis Medical measures do not add a single drop of blood to *ischemic muscle*

done If there is any question concerning the acceptability of a patient at any given time decision for delaying the operation is made and the patient is re evaluated later If the blood pressure should fall to 80 mm Hg under anesthesia before the incision is made and if the blood pressure does not rise to about 100 mm Hg after waiting one-half hour the operation is cancelled and is not done at a later date

Limitations of Medical and Surgical Treatment Neither form of treat ment cures coronary artery disease Neither stops the narrowing process in the arteries Neither restores degenerated myocardium The operation is not a guarantee that the patient will not get a fatal occlusion later on What the operation does accomplish is to change the coronary circulation so that when an occlusion occurs the heart is more likely to tolerate the occlusion than it would without operation It should be understood and accepted that a patient can be improved after operation so that he can do

a full day's work One of my patients worked for nine months, then his pain and disability recurred and he died three months later This patient died not because the operation did not help him because it did help him for nine months He died because his disease got worse and coronary inflow was reduced to levels not compatible with life Scientific evaluation requires a reasonable attitude towards this disease

Results of Operation This operation was applied to 170 patients with coronary artery disease in a period from January 1951 to January 1956 Some of the patients accepted during this period had enlargement of the heart and were regarded as salvage cases The operative mortality was two patients The early postoperative mortality was nine patients, making a total of eleven patients or 6 5 per cent A long term follow up study was made on 137 patients who had gone six months to five years after operation The average follow up period was two years Eighteen out of this group died which was 13 1 per cent We do not have a strictly comparable group of nonoperated patients for comparison Lindgren reported a series which probably most closely resembles ours and the mortality in this nonoperated group in two years was thirty per cent We believe that the operation protects the human heart in the same way it does the dog heart Human specimens show intercoronary vessels and it is reasonable to expect this operation to be a life saving procedure for patients who have coronary artery occlusion

The clinical results in 100 patients who have gone from six months to five years after operation are favorable Forty per cent of these patients state that they have no pain whatsoever and forty-eight per cent state that they have less pain than before operation This is a total of eighty eight per cent who have had relief from pain The results were analyzed from the standpoint of their ability to work Thirty four per cent stated that they were better able to work and had no limitations Fifty six per cent stated that they were better able to work than before operation but that they did have some moderate limitation of activity From the standpoint of being able to work ninety per cent showed improvement Some medical cardiologists believe that these favorable results are based on the mental reaction of the patient toward the operation rather than any favorable changes which were produced in the coronary circulation In view of the scientific measurements upon which this operation is based this attitude is scarcely less than nihilistic Most of the patients state that the tightness in their chest leaves them as early as three or four days after operation Most of the patients say their pain is better before they leave the hospital Occasionally the patient does not experience improvement for three or four months after operation Never had we had the experience of a patient condemning the operation as not having helped him and in our best patients the results are almost unbelievably good As of May 29 1956 the last sixty consecutive patients were operated upon and the mortality was 0

Other Operations for Coronary Artery Disease Other surgeons have worked on this subject and operations have been developed which bear the names of Thompson[22] Vineberg[23] and Fauteux[24] Thompson used talcum

powder applied to the surface of the heart as an inflammatory agent He has operated on a fairly large number of patients and results have been good Vineberg has used the internal mammary artery as a graft to the left ventricle This artery is dissected free it is ligated and cut but one or more of the small branches to the intercostals are left open This naked artery is then pulled into a tunnel into the wall of the left ventricle Arterial communications develop by a process referred to as budding Both of these operations have been tested in the writer s laboratory and it was found that the Vineberg operation is beneficial on the basis of pro duction of intercoronary channels by the trauma of the operation The Thompson operation was also beneficial on the same basis of the inter coronary channels Neither of these procedures in our hands produced as much protection as the operation described by the writer The Fauteux operation consisted of ligation of the magna cordis vein and removal of nerves at the base of the aorta

RESUSCITATION [5]

Introduction When the heart stops beating and death s at hand ven tricular asystole or ventricular fibrillation replace the heartbeat The factor producing death is not always known Sometimes a series of condi tions lead up to it A drug used in anesthesia may be the cause a reflex anoxia, accumulation of carbon dioxide manipulation of the heart blood loss position of the patient on the operation table intrinsic disease in the heart and other conditions may be the cause of death Sometimes the accumulation of electricity in the heart may destroy the coordinated mechanism and produce fibrillation Often the death factor is small reversible and preventable In view of these facts prevention of cardiac arrest and the resuscitation procedure are of great importance in saving life and they should be included in the training courses in medicine both in the undergraduate and postgraduate levels The surgeon and the anesthetist must necessarily be able to apply the procedure Society regards this knowledge as a requirement of the medical profession Courses in resuscitation are given in various parts of the country

Who Can Be Resuscitated? It is difficult to draw a line between those who can be resuscitated and those who cannot be resuscitated Several general statements may be made If success is not possible then the proce dure should not be attempted In this group in which it should not be done are the patients who have been dead for over six minutes patients who have incurable disease including cancer malignant gliomas severe disease in the heart and other conditions In the group in which it should be done are the patients with a good heart and a good pair of lungs patients who are having tonsils removed a hernia repaired teeth extracted and many other medical or surgical procedures Resuscitation has been extended to patients who had fatal heart attacks from coronary artery disease Two successful cases have been reported and a new door to medi cal progress has been opened by these successful cases Most victims of coronary artery disease do not die of reversible damage in the heart they die of electrical currents in the heart and these can be dissipated by pump

ing the heart by hand In some of these patients the death factor is a small factor similar to stopping and starting the pendulum of a clock, or turning on or off the ignition switch of a motor car Sometimes the only thing the heart needs is a second chance to beat

Necessary Apparatus and Supplies These include a knife to open the chest and a tube to inflate the lungs Later on a self retaining retractor relieves pressure on the wrist of the hand pumping the heart A properly fitting intratracheal tube with an inflatable cuff and a bag of oxygen are desirable A shocking device is necessary when the heart is fibrillating Anesthetic agents are sometimes needed and clamps and ligatures to close the chest are needed

The essential items should be at the head end of every patient who is operated upon whether the anesthetic be general or local This should be a rule laid down in every hospital These items are an intratracheal tube, a laryngoscope, a rubber bag, and a tank of oxygen

Can Resuscitation Be Extended Beyond the Hospital? This is indeed, possible if the necessary personnel and equipment are available The people who die on the golf course, at an athletic contest, watching television and so on are good candidates for resuscitation because they die of electric currents in the heart These currents are produced by oxygen differentials in the heart muscle One area has a higher oxygen content than an adjacent area and currents are produced These currents are not related to infarction of muscle they may form without infarction and the heart may be a good organ capable of beating for years

Success has spread from the operating room to the other parts of the hospital In the University Hospitals of Cleveland a successful procedure was started on a medical ward and completed in the operating room Another patient dressed in his street clothes, about to leave the hospital after getting an electrocardiogram fell over dead from a heart attack He was saved This patient is practicing medicine nine months later

Extension of the procedure to society at large involves several problems which can only be mentioned One is the training of nonmedical personnel to open the chest and pump the heart Another problem is to provide resuscitation kits which contained all necessary supplies and these kits could be serviced at regular intervals Another problem is acceptance by society Perhaps medicolegal problems would arise No doubt lives could be saved by this development

The Resuscitation Procedure

It should be divided into two parts Failure to break it down into these parts leads to confusion and failure

Part One This consists of restoration of the oxygen system Nothing else matters when the oxygen system has stopped except starting it again It is started by introducing oxygen into the lungs and then circulating the oxygen to the brain The best way to get oxygen into the lungs is to insert an intratracheal tube connect the tube to a bag of oxygen and squeeze the bag The best way to circulate it to the brain is to pump the heart by hand The chest must be opened wide enough to get your hand on the

heart then the heart is emptied The crisis is over when these two things have been accomplished The brain cells degenerate in three to five minutes without oxygen and this time limitation can determine success or failure These precious moments should not be wasted one should not "monkey around and this is more than a figure of speech

Part Two This consists in restoration of the heartbeat The emergency action is over but circulation of oxygen must be continued with nothing longer than momentary interruption at any one time As a rule the heart beat is easily restored A few squeezes of the heart often starts it beating If it does not start right away the pericardium is opened and the heart is observed An electrocardiogram may be taken If asystole is present 4 cc of 1 to 10 000 epinephrine solution is injected into the cavity of the right ventricle If fibrillation is present the heart is shocked using larger electrodes on each side of the heart and about 1 5 amperes of current Sometimes fibrillation recurs in which event repeated shocks are necessary Sometimes 2 to 4 cc of one per cent procaine solution injected into the cavity of the right ventricle will aid in stopping the fibrillation Then epinephrine and massage are used and the heart will start beating When dealing with a good heart in a patient whose brain has not died one should continue with his effort at resuscitation for several hours if necessary Any good heart can be made to beat again

Recommendation Special training in resuscitation should be a requirement for the practice of surgery and anesthesia In the absence of training it is recommended that one of the special courses be taken

OPERATIONS ON CARDIAC VALVES

In the first edition of this work 1940 the following statement was made Ten attempts on the mitral valve were carried out—seven by Cutler [6] one by Allen and Graham [7] one by Souttar [8] and one by Pribram [9] Doyen inserted a knife into the right ventricle for the purpose of cutting a stenosis of the pulmonary valve The patient died a few hours after the operation and at necropsy there was found a congenital narrowing of the conus arteriosus and perforation of the interventricular septum Griffin tried to dilate a stenotic aortic valve by inserting a finger through the invaginated wall of the aorta

The writer spent two years in the experimental laboratory working on the mitral valve under Cutler and assisted him in operation on patients The human hearts that we studied were preserved in formalin the valve leaflets were either like shoe leather or calcified and it looked as though a piece would have to be excised from the valve in order to reduce the stenosis This in turn created insufficiency Not a single specimen was examined in which the leaflets were soft and the commissures could be broken open It is possible that later on the sulfa drugs and the antibiotics have made the pathology of the valve more amenable to surgical correction The ventricular approach was used The chest was opened by splitting the sternum longitudinally The operating room dripped with drama It required great spirit to do these operations and Cutler's name deserves a place in the development of heart surgery even though this work

did not establish this operation as an acceptable and beneficial procedure (Fig 17) In 1946 new interest developed in this subject and the names of Bailey, Smithy, Brock, and Harken are associated with the development of the operation for mitral stenosis as we know it at the present time[30]

Mitral Stenosis

Selection of Patients How much incapacity is necessary in order to recommend surgical operation? Is the diagnosis of the disease enough for operation? In general the attitude is towards early operation especially if



FIGURE 17 Elliot C Cutler (1888 1947) For his sustained and long term effort in the surgical research laboratory working on the heart and for his early attempts to operate on the mitral valve

the x ray shows left auricular enlargement and if there are early signs of fatigue and dyspnea on exertion Auricular fibrillation is an added indication for operation because of the possibility of emboli Rheumatic activity should be treated intensively and operation should not be done until this subsides Only occasionally is the operation done under twenty years of age There is almost no limitation to the operation because of the seriousness of the illness Patients with severe failure and weight loss have been accepted for operation Mitral regurgitation is not a contraindication to operation An important problem is to decide whether stenosis is present with the regurgitation In some of these cases exploration is indicated and it is determined at operation whether there is any stenosis that can be

relieved by operation It is readily possible to pass up some of these severely crippled patients who could be helped by operation In patients in whom the decision for operation is difficult the following conditions favor operation—right ventricular hypertrophy high pulmonary artery pressure the absence of marked left ventricular hypertrophy and a diastolic murmur

Operation The approach is usually through the left side between the fourth and fifth ribs A purse string is placed around the base of the left auricular appendage A non crushing clamp is placed on the base of the appendage and the appendage is opened The right index finger is introduced through the appendage The finger feels for regurgitation the anatomy of the valve leaflets the presence of calcium in the leaflets the condition of the two commissures the size of the mitral orifice and the cordae tendinae If there are any clots adherent to the auricular wall these are not dislodged The valve is opened in the commissures Special knives are used but in the majority of patients the commissures can be torn open by the finger The finger is then withdrawn and umbilical tape is wrapped around the terminal phalanx another glove is placed on the hand so that the tape is covered and the valve is opened in stages up to a measured diameter of 2 5 cm or larger If the commissures cannot be torn open in this way the commissures are cut When a cut is made it is not always possible to avoid creating some regurgitation The appendage is ligated at its base it is amputated and the base is sutured

Complications The most important complication is the dislodgement of a clot in the auricle or breaking off a piece of calcium which is carried to the brain If the appendage contains clots these can be removed and free clots can be flushed out of the appendage If the auricular wall and the appendage harbor an extensive clot it is advisable to select an area where there are no clots for the approach This can readily be done Dislodged clots have been removed from the carotid arteries the aorta and the vessels of extremities after operation on the valve Sometimes the rheumatic infection flares up immediately after operation or weeks or months later Because of this possibility prophylactic penicillin or sulfa drugs are given for several months after the operation

Results The clinical results after operation are excellent as a rule If the patient has a tight stenosis and some of them are as small as 6 mm in diameter and if the valve is soft and readily opened the results are indeed excellent These may be regarded as cures There are various degrees of improvement ranging from none to good Some of the valves are heavily calcified and after the valve is opened it still stands out in a transverse direction and does not allow free flow of blood Another factor that may impair the result is the presence of regurgitation The myocardium is sometimes the seat of rheumatic infection and its capacity to function may be impaired The risk of the operation in the best type of patient is almost zero In patients with extensive disease with accompanying regurgitation with calcified valve with extreme enlargement of the heart with the presence of clots with emaciation (and some may weigh only 36 3 to 40 9 kg [80 to 90 lb]) then the risk of operation is high When such a patient

is operated upon it is a calculated risk that is being taken and sometimes it is advisable to accept the risk because occasionally considerable help can be given by operation, sometimes more than was anticipated

Mitral Insufficiency

This is a very common lesion and surgeons have been trying to devise operation whereby the regurgitation can be reduced So far this effort has



FIGURE 18 John Gibbon Jr (1903) For his original work on open heart surgery

not been altogether unrewarding There are some successful cases where the valve ring was narrowed by sutures but by and large this development remains for the future It is indeed difficult or impossible to place sutures using the closed method, *i e* where you cannot see inside to place the sutures Open heart surgery would be an important aid for doing plastic operations on the valves

Aortic Stenosis

This lesion can be torn or cut open with improvement in the circulation It is not nearly as amenable to surgical correction as the mitral valve because the deposition of calcium in the aortic valve may be very heavy and the danger of the operation is considerably greater There are two

approaches to the valve One is through the left ventricle A dilator is introduced through the wall of the ventricle and into the orifice of the aortic valve There are instances in which the orifice is so small and the plane of the valve is so tilted that even at autopsy it is not possible to enter it As a rule the orifice is entered and the calcified tissue is cracked open Some of these valves are so calcified that they cannot function as valves There is danger of fibrillating the heart by touching the septum There is also a problem of hemorrhage from the wall of the ventricle

The other approach is through the aorta The aorta is pinched off with a Beck or Potts clamp The aorta is opened and a sleeve of nylon is sutured to the aorta This allows entrance and exit to the valve Time can be taken to find the aortic orifice without making a false passage The valve is then cracked open The sleeve is removed and the aorta is sutured

The operation can produce good results The mortality ranges from about ten per cent in the most favorable cases to twenty per cent or higher in patients with severe failure In these patients a calculated risk is taken when the prognosis without operation is a matter of a few months of life

Aortic Insufficiency

Hufnagel devised a plastic valve which contains a ball and which allows blood to go in one direction This valve is in several sizes It is placed in the aorta just beyond the descending part of the arch It is indeed remark able that this valve can remain in situ after it has been placed In this position the valve prevents backflow beyond the valve It does not prevent backflow from arms and head Patients have been improved by this opera tion The risk is high in patients with advanced disease Some surgeons who have done the operation do not recommend it in their hands and refer the patient to Hufnagel for him to do the operation [31]

ATRIAL SEPTAL DEFECTS

There are several types of defects in the auricular septum referred to as absent septum ostium primum ostium secundum and atrioventricularis communis These defects are developmental Diagnosis is established by catheterization of the heart Operation is indicated in those patients who have progressive symptoms mild pulmonary hypertension early cardiac failure and those in whom there is a large shunt The operation should be done before severe pulmonary hypertension develops The operation is not recommended in patients with no symptoms and small shunts For the correction of these defects some surgeons have opened the heart and sutured the defect under vision Others have employed various procedures which do not envolve open heart surgery One of these methods consists of using a finger in the right atrial appendage as a guide to placing sutures between the rim of the defect and the atrial wall A series of sutures brings the atrial wall and the defect together so that it is closed In doing this operation care is taken not to occlude partially either vena cava Another method consists of placing a suture on a large slightly curved needle so that the septum is puckered together when the suture is tied The suture is passed in the atrial wall close to the aorta but not in the

aorta The needle is guided by a finger in the auricle The needle penetrates the septal wall around the defect and emerges superior to the coronary sinus Some defects can be readily closed in this manner When the defect extends down into the interventricular septal area it is not possible to close the defect Open heart approach will probably make some of these operations successful The prognosis in patients with severe pulmonary hypertension is grave and this is a contraindication to operation The risk of operation is about ten per cent mortality Closure of the defect can produce complete cure

INTERVENTRICULAR SEPTAL DEFECT

These have been closed by open and closed methods but the technic has not advanced to the stage where operation is recommended After open heart surgery has been made safer these defects probably will be closed successfully without a high mortality At present operation is not recommended for this lesion

OPEN HEART SURGERY

The original idea of open heart surgery was conceived and studied by Dr John Gibbon Jr of Philadelphia He spent many years working on this subject during a period when no one else was interested He has made a monumental contribution to surgery In the past decade many surgeons have become interested in this development Many methods have appeared There are now many different oxygenators pumps, defoaming devices, etc. all aimed at making it possible to open the heart Venous blood is removed from the venae cavae it is oxygenated and then returned to an artery The heart is then opened and corrective operation carried out Then the various tubes are removed There are many problems in this work and these can scarcely be discussed in this chapter Progress is being made and no doubt positive steps will be accomplished out of a large amount of effort now being made Greater success is just around the corner so to speak This is the credo of the scientist and it keeps him trying to do things better The heart has been opened under conditions of hypothermia and this method has been more successful [32] It is scarcely necessary to comment upon the possibilities of open heart surgery One of the most pressing is the repair of mitral insufficiency

REFERENCES

1 Ballance C A The Bradshaw Lecture on the Surgery of the Heart Dec 11 1919 London Macmillan Co 1920
Beck C S Arch Surg 13 205 1926
2 Hosler R M and Williams J E J Thoracic Surg 5 673 1936
3 Beck C S and Griswold R A Arch Surg 21 1064 1930
4 Beck C S J A M A 104 714 1935
5 Bright E F and Beck C S A M J 10 293 1935
Beck C S J A M A 104 109 1935
6 Holman E and Willett F J A M A 157 789 (March 5) 1955
7 Chambliss J R *et al* Circulation 4 816 1951
8 Gross R E New England J Med 233 586 1945 S G O 83 435 1946
9 Gross R E Surg of Infancy and Childhood Saunders Philadelphia 1953

10 Blalock A S G O 87 385 1948
Taussig H B J Thoracic Surg 16 241 1947
11 Potts W J Smith S and Gibson S J A M A 132 627 (Nov 16) 1946
Potts W J Ann Surg 130 342 1949
12 Brock R C Ann Surg 136 63 1952
13 Crafoord C and Nylin G J Thoracic Surg 14 347 1947
14 Gross R E and Hufnagel C A New England J Med 233 287 1945
15 Clagett O T Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clinic 22 124 (April 2) 1947
16 Blalock A and Park E A Ann. Surg 119 445 1944
17 Beck C S Ann. Surg 118 788 (Nov) 1943
18 Beck C S and Leighninger D S J A M A 156 1226 (Nov 27) 1954
J A M A 159 1264 (Nov 26) 1955
19 Beck C S Geriatrics 10 501 1955
20 Brofman B L and Leighninger D S Beck C S Circulation 13 161 1956
21 Mautz F R and Gregg D E Proc Soc Exper Biol and Med 36 797 1937
22 Thompson S A and Plachta A J Thoracic Surg 27 64 1954
23 Vineberg A Munro D D Cohen H Buller W J Thoracic Surg 29 1 1955
24 Fauteux M J Thoracic Surg 16 623 1947
25 Hosler R Manual on Cardiac Resuscitation Charles C Thomas Springfield Mass 1954
Beck C S and Rand H J J A M A 141 1230 (Dec 24) 1949
26 Cutler E C Levine S A and Beck C S Arch Surg 9 689 (pt 2) (Nov) 1924
Cutler E C and Beck C S Arch Surg 18 403 1929
27 Allen, D S and Graham E A J A M A 79 1028 (Sept. 23) 1922
28 Souttar H Brit M J 2 603 1925
29 Pribram B O Arch klin Chir 142 458 1926
30 Meade R H Surgery 38 432 1955
Bailey C P Surgery of the Heart Lea and Febiger Philadelphia 1955
Harken D E Ellis H B Ware P F Norman L R New England J Med 239 801 1948
31 Hufnagel C A Haney W P Rabil P J McDermott T F Surg 35 673 1954
32 Swan H Zeavin I Ann Surg 139 385 1954

ROBERT P GLOVER M D
AND
JULIO C DAVILA M D

23

Cardiovascular Surgery

Introduction For centuries the therapeutic problems of heart disease whether vascular valvular or myocardial were considered to be almost entirely within the province of the internist With the demonstration that the heart and great vessels could be manipulated clamped and invaded with safety and dispatch provided certain basic principles were heeded an entirely new concept of cardiac anatomy pathology and physiology has emerged As a result, the past decade has witnessed the development of cardiac surgery assume a position of major importance to climax a half century of far reaching surgical achievement This does not imply that surgeons of the present era are of greater skill or bolder in their approach to seemingly impregnable pathologic situations On the contrary the reverse may well be true for it has been the intrepid and fearless courage of many unsung pioneers of the past working in uncharted seas that has paved the way for present day developments

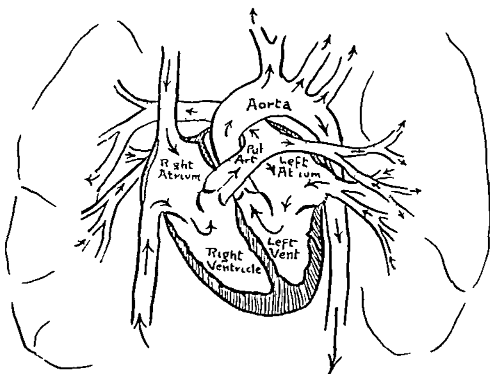
Cardiovascular surgery has not only the very considerable problems of its own inherent anatomic and pathologic distortions with which to contend but also must face and overcome the physiological deterrents presented by its surrounding environment the thorax Thus the evolution of this surgery has been the natural development of thoracic medicine and surgery itself in all its aspects—laboratory experimental and clinical—and it is therefore impossible to point out any one cornerstone or pillar upon which the vast structure of such a pyramiding new enterprise rests

Developmental Considerations Of primary importance in its development, however, are these basic contributions (1) The knowledge of the embryologic and anatomic development of the heart and its adjacent vascular structures as they occur normally and wherein they deviate into the many congenital malformations many of which are now recognizable clinically (2) The accumulation of pathologic data pertaining to the type and forms of distortion left in the wake of certain acquired disease entities such as rheumatic fever, syphilis arteriosclerosis traumatic injuries, acute infections and the like (3) The heart being as it is a pump carries out its work according to established mechanical and physiological principles Normal measurements of this activity have been recorded by the physiologist for years Any deviation due to defects within the pump itself or its vascular attachments likewise are measurable and such physiologic data in health and disease are of paramount importance in the proper appreciation of the surgical problem at hand (4) Improvements in anesthetic meth

ods and the development of controlled respiration (positive pressure) within the open thorax have overcome the hazards of the collapsed lung so that thoracic and, of course, cardiovascular surgery can now be carried out with the same measure of confidence enjoyed in other branches of surgery not confronted by this problem (5) Again, as in surgery as a whole, the availability and proper use of blood transfusions to combat shock and antibiotics to prevent infection, both intravascular and within the pleural and pericardial spaces, have supplied a great measure of safety unknown in years gone by

Anatomical and Physiological Considerations in General The heart is a hollow, muscular pump containing four separate and distinct chambers separated by muscular septae and thin, pliable valves The blood, having traversed the body, returns to the right atrium through the superior and inferior venae cavae It then passes through the tricuspid valve into the right ventricle, through the pulmonary valve and main pulmonary artery which divides, sending branches to the two lungs The pulmonary artery, although called an artery carries venous or unoxygenated blood The blood returns to the left atrium *via* the pulmonary veins which conversely carry arterial or oxygenated blood although called veins From left atrium the circulation passes through the mitral valve into the left ven

TO HEAD AND UPPER EXTREMITIES



TO TRUNK AND LOWER EXTREMITIES

FIGURE 1 Diagrammatic representation of normal circulation

tricle and out into the aorta through the aortic valve Having traversed the entire body the blood again enters the right heart to endlessly repeat the cycle (Fig 1)

Thus the heart and peripheral circulation is a completely closed system and as such is affected or responds according to the established principles of fluid circulating in a confined and isolated circuit No major or even minor defect (such as an obstruction leak cross communication etc) anywhere in the heart or circulation can exist without eventually exerting a profound effect upon the entire system both locally and as a whole For example a peripheral arterio venous fistula will show the local effects of inadequate circulation of the affected extremity and within time the heart itself will enlarge and decompensate because of the additional circulatory strain Similarly the pulmonary circulation and the right heart will evince failure secondary to obstruction within the left heart such as in mitral stenosis so that one can never consider a cardiovascular problem as affecting one isolated area alone

The heart is actually two hearts beating simultaneously each consisting of two chambers and two valves and separated from its fellow by an intact atrioventricular septum Normally there can be no intermingling of blood between the two hearts save by passage of the blood from the right side through the lungs and into the left heart In effect therefore the heart surrounds the lungs It is natural under these circumstances that the first subjective indication of heart disease is frequently pulmonary (dyspnea hemoptysis etc) for the lungs reflect the mechanical integrity of the vascular pump

The right heart is thinly muscled The vascular pressures within it are low It needs only to propel the vascular stream into the equally low pressure pulmonary vascular bed and has no need for the development of high heads of pressure The left heart with its attached aorta, on the other hand must maintain high pressure levels within itself and throughout the body and it even supplies the impetus for the circulating blood to return to the thorax through its venous extensions For this reason it is a heavily muscled structure capable of great effort under normal conditions and even greater under abnormal circumstances In consequence should there be an abnormal opening (congenital or otherwise) between the two hearts or their circulations the shunting flow of blood will be from left to right from high pressure to low pressure Only under extreme circumstances can right sided pressures equal or surpass left heart pressures with a resulting right to left shunt (advanced mitral stenosis combinations of congenital defects as in the tetralogy of Fallot etc) described below in the text

The valves of the heart—four in number—are normally thin pliable cellophane like structures They are passive in nature and in themselves cannot actively contract They open and close only in response to pressure changes on their two sides and thus can be buffeted about by the cardiac myocardium at will They are designed as are valves in all mechanical pumps to keep fluid moving in one direction only—forward The tricuspid on the right and the mitral valve on the left perform the heaviest

duty, as they each lie between two constantly contracting muscular chambers For this reason, their cusp margins are reinforced by a system of guy wires (chordae tendineae) attached to papillary muscular extensions from the ventricular myocardium and contract with it, thus drawing the chordae tendineae taut to prevent eversion of the valve cusps into the atria as they close during ventricular systole The pulmonary and aortic valves lie within the orifices of their respective vessels terminating the outflow tracts of the right and left ventricles Each consists of three sail like cusps attached

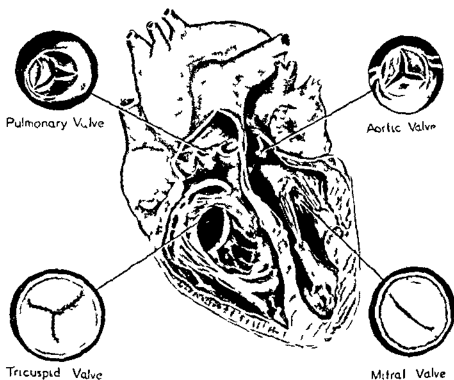


FIGURE 2 Anatomical dissection of the heart to show the position and structure of the cardiac valves

and cupped in such a way as to flatten against the vascular wall during systolic ejection and approximate perfectly along their cusp margins during ventricular diastole The cusps of the aortic valve are somewhat thicker and stronger than those of the pulmonary valve for they must cope with greater intracardiac and vascular pressures The aortic valve is further complicated from a surgical reconstructive point of view by the presence of the coronary artery orifices lying immediately distal to the valvular attachments and thus, they too may become affected by any pathologic change within the valve itself (Fig 2)

Three of the four valves are readily accessible to surgical exploration The tricuspid and mitral valves can be reached routinely by the exploring index finger of the surgeon through the auricular appendage without interfering appreciably with intracardiac circulation The pulmonary valve lies superficially within the exposed pulmonary artery extending from the

superior anterior aspect of the right ventricle and can be palpated either through the intact pulmonary arterial wall or by introducing the finger through a small incision in the outflow tract of the right ventricle The aortic valve *on the other hand is the most inaccessible for it lies deep* within the cardiac mass Although it can be reached through the wall of the aorta it is best and most safely approached by using probe like instruments introduced through the left ventricular myocardium near its apex Such instruments are guided upward into the valve by following the course of the interventricular septum (described below in the text)

In general it may be stated that most of the pathologic conditions with which the surgeon must deal in the right heart are congenital in nature whereas those in the left heart are acquired This refers primarily to valvular distortion to be sure but such a dictum can be used as a rough axiomatic rule Defects within the interatrial or interventricular septum congenital in nature, are strictly speaking neither right nor left but the surgical approach is usually from the right side

Diagnostic Considerations In every subdivision of medicine and surgery there are certain diagnostic methods peculiar to the organ or functional system under suspicion Although not primarily responsible for the recent renaissance of cardiovascular surgery nevertheless angiocardiography and cardiac catheteriatzion have been developing simultaneously with it and already have gone a long way toward a more complete clarification of the more obscure malformations with which the surgeon must be prepared to cope It is almost axiomatic that the cardiac surgeon must know before surgical intervention the exact diagnosis or location of the offending lesion for he does not enjoy the latitude of exploration available to the abdominal surgeon The heart lies between the pleural reflections of the two lungs and therefore must be approached as a rule from one side or the other When partially exposed it cannot be handled indiscriminately dislocated or turned about in quest of the trouble The surgeon must depend upon what he sees on external surfaces palpatory thrills gentle intracardiac probe or digital exploration rather than gross *manipulation lest serious and fatal cardiac arrhythmias develop For these* reasons it is of the utmost importance that whenever possible a pinpoint diagnosis be at hand so that definitive surgery can be directed immediately to the pathology and corrective procedures carried out with dispatch

Angiocardiography is a method of cardiovascular visualization in which an opaque inert substance (diodrast seventy per cent is commonly used) is injected into the venous circulation in sufficient quantity and concentration to outline that portion of the vascular bed under suspicion When used for examination of the heart and great vessels the course of diodrast as it passes through the cardiac chambers from right to left is followed by a roentgenographic device *capable of taking a rapid succession of films* (one to two per second) which can then be examined for the suspected malformation This type of study is particularly adapted to the detection of lesions within the right heart and pulmonary artery although in small children it may be quite adequate to outline the cardiac chambers on the left as well as the aorta (Fig 3) In larger children and adults it is often

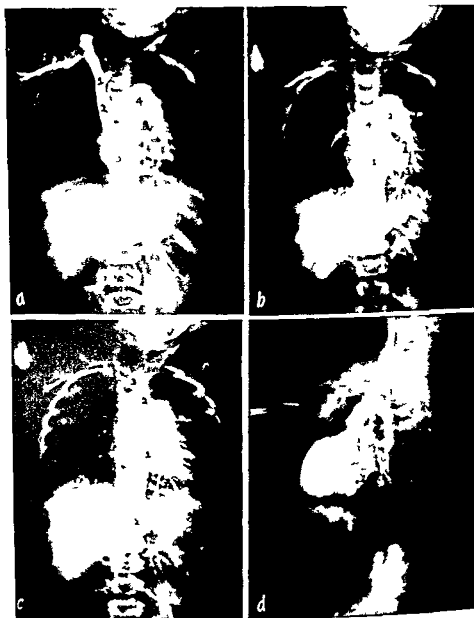


Figure 3 Angiocardiogram of the normal heart and great vessels *A* Diodrast outlining the superior vena cava (1 & 2) right atrium (3) and outflow tract of right ventricle and main pulmonary artery (4) at its bifurcation *B* Right ventricle (1) main pulmonary artery (2) branches of left pulmonary arterial bed (3) and right main pulmonary artery (4) *C* Left ventricular outflow tract (1) the aorta at its arch and shown within the upper abdomen (2) innominate artery (3) carotid arteries (4) right subclavian artery (5) *D* Lateral angiogram showing the complete sweep of the thoracic and abdominal aorta

of greater value, when lesions of the aorta are suspected to introduce the dye directly into the aorta where its high concentration supplies more adequate visualization This is necessary, because dye passing from the right to left heart must traverse the tremendous pulmonary vascular bed where it may become so diluted in the total blood volume as to render it useless as a visual aid when it reaches the left side Thus direct aortog

raphy for delineation of aortic anomalies congenital and acquired has also become a standardized procedure whenever its use seems essential

Cardiac catheterization when properly performed and intelligently interpreted is an even greater aid to intracardiac diagnosis than angiocardiography By exposing a small vein in the antecubital fossa of either arm or if necessary, using the saphenous vein in the upper thigh a long pliable catheter of small caliber can be introduced into the major veins of the extremity passed on into the vena cava (superior or inferior) thence into the right atrium, through the tricuspid valve and into the right ventricle By gently manipulating the exposed end of the catheter its intracardiac tip can be guided into the outflow tract of the right ventricle,

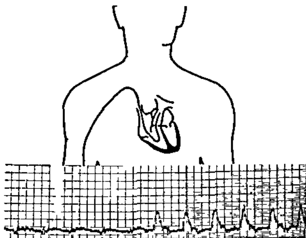


FIGURE 4 Diagrammatic representation of cardiac catheterization showing the catheter passing up the right basilic vein down the superior vena cava into the right atrium through the tricuspid valve right ventricle and pulmonary valve and lying in the main pulmonary artery It can be passed on into either right or left pulmonary artery Pressure tracings as shown below from the right ventricle and pulmonary artery

through the pulmonary valve into the pulmonary artery and out into either of its right or left branches as far as the size of the vessel will permit For obvious reasons it cannot be passed on into the left heart although considerable information concerning the left atrium and ventricle can be obtained indirectly without actually entering those chambers (Figs 4 & 5)

The information derived from this study is primarily of three types and when correlated with the clinical symptoms and findings will often lead to an exact diagnosis which heretofore could only be suspected but not proved

(1) As the catheter is opaque its course during introduction may be followed fluoroscopically Should it take a course obviously contrary to normal pathways such as entering the left atrium from the right through an interauricular septal defect this deviation can be immediately detected and diagnosis established Thus the observable course of the catheter acting as a probe may upon occasions provide the necessary information although its use in this manner is understandably limited

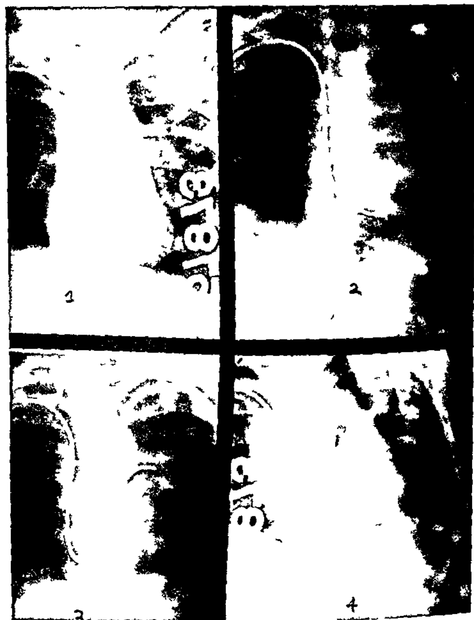


FIGURE 5 Cardiac catheterization The catheter is passed up the right basilic vein down the superior vena cava into the right atrium (1) right ventricle (2) pulmonary artery (3) and to the pulmonary venous capillary (4)

(2) At any point during the passage of the catheter, blood samples may be withdrawn and subjected to laboratory analysis for oxygen content Such samples are usually withdrawn from the vena cava at various points within the right atrium and ventricle as well as in the pulmonary artery and its branches As the normal values for oxygen saturation are well known and established in all these areas any deviation above the normal becomes readily apparent and direct evidence of an arterial shunt from the left heart between the atria ventricles, or from aorta to pulmonary artery, can be appreciated Thus, arteriovenous admixtures of

blood within the right heart as detected by oxygen content can herald the presence of intracardiac anomalies at any level particularly those in which there is an abnormal opening between the two sides of the heart

(3) Similarly, by attaching a manometer to the exposed end of the catheter, pressure readings at any level can be recorded Again normal pressure ranges in all the above described areas are known If the normal pressures have become increased either in a localized area or throughout *the right heart, it denotes a shunt of blood from the high pressure left* heart into the low pressure right heart or of an obstruction (valvular or otherwise) to the normal flow of blood into the pulmonary vascular bed

It must be clearly understood that angiocardiography and cardiac catheterization are purely diagnostic adjuncts in the overall study of the cardiac patient There can be no substitution for the clinical appraisal of the experienced cardiologist who must be in attendance working in complete cooperation with the cardiac surgeon whenever surgical intervention is being considered His armamentarium in addition to a thorough physical examination, with stethoscopic evaluation, has long included the electrocardiogram, an estimation of circulation times venous pressures when indicated and complete cardiac roentgenography with lateral and oblique exposure as well as the standard postero anterior film Barium *should always be employed to outline the esophagus for the detection of* individual chamber enlargement In recent years careful and intelligent fluoroscopic examination of the heart with observance of its total and individual chamber size and action has taken on great significance and is perhaps as valuable as any other single objective diagnostic aid By the correlation of all available data the cardiac anomaly or defect can usually be recognized with a considerable degree of accuracy Under these conditions the surgeon can resort to his operative intervention with greater assurance and the procedure will be attended by a marked degree of success

In any new and rapidly developing field of surgical endeavor it is imperative for the student to have a proper and thorough understanding primarily of those conditions for which the surgeon has developed an established and standardized procedure—*one which has proved itself by* the passage of time Toward this end the following outline has been prepared which will provide the basic framework of successful cardiovascular surgery to date To this in years to come will be added many other conditions both congenital and acquired, for which surgical intervention will be advisable

Cardiovascular Surgery

A Congenital
- I Great Vessels
  - a Patent ductus arteriosus
  - b Coarctation of the aorta
- II Intracardiac
  - a Pulmonary stenosis.
  - b Tetralogy of Fallot
  - c Tricuspid atresia

d Septal defects—auricular and ventricular
e Transposition of great vessels

B Acquired—heart and pericardium
 I Trauma
 II Infections
  a Acute pericarditis
  b Chronic constrictive pericarditis
 III Rheumatic heart disease—valvular
  a Mitral stenosis
  b Mitral insufficiency
  c Aortic stenosis
  d Aortic insufficiency
 IV Tumors of the heart
 V Coronary artery disease

C Cardiac standstill and resuscitation

D Extracorporeal circulation and corporal hypothermia

A CONGENITAL

I Great Vessels

(a) PATENT DUCTUS ARTERIOSUS

Definition The ductus arteriosus is a vascular communication between the pulmonary artery and the aorta during fetal life At birth, or shortly thereafter, it normally atrophies to form an obliterated fibrous cord (ligamentum arteriosum) When it fails to involute, and remains an open vessel it is called a patent ductus arteriosus Synonym—ductus (Fig 6)

Pathophysiology During the period of gestation, the fetus is a completely parasitic structure whose every requirement is supplied through the maternal placenta The fetal lungs therefore do not carry out their normal function of respiration and consequently there is no necessity for the entire circulation to pass through the pulmonary vascular bed Thus, right heart outflow passes into the main pulmonary artery and much of it, instead of proceeding into the lesser circulation flows directly through the ductus arteriosus into the aorta This can occur, for the fetal heart has not developed its eventual gradient of pressure (left higher than right) nor does it do so until after birth At this stage right and left heart pressures are equal Essentially then, the lungs are by passed but the continuity of the circulation is maintained The first gasp of the newborn child initiates expansion of the lungs and a vast pulmonary vascular bed is opened in its entirety to receive the outflow from the right ventricle A low pressure lake of great size is now available to the blood from the right ventricle hence taking the course of least resistance normal pulmonary parenchymal flow is established

At this point, the ductus arteriosus being no longer either essential or desirable begins its obliteration process which may take weeks or months Many theories have been advanced as to the etiology of this involution but

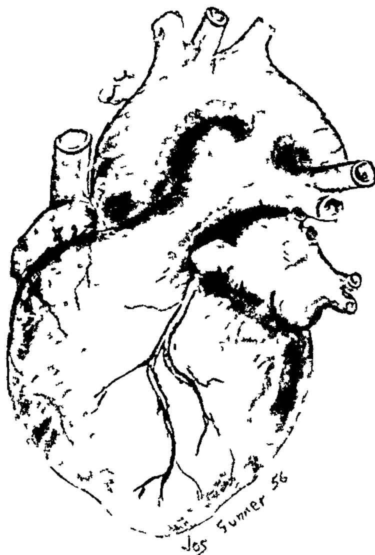


FIGURE 6 Heart and great vessels to show the anatomical location of the patent ductus arteriosus.

no actual reason is known other than that the established laws of natural development proceed inexorably despite the incomprehension of man

In a small percentage of instances reasons again not known the ductus does not obliterate and its continued patency brings about a reversed effect Right heart blood now passes normally through the lungs returning to the left heart and on out the aorta Left heart and aortic pressures however are now higher than those in the pulmonary artery leading to a reversed shunt (left to right) of flow from aorta to pulmonary artery (Fig 7) In consequence a considerable portion of left ventricular outflow leaks back into the lungs so that a sizable volume goes round and round from left heart to lungs and back to left heart The mechanical effect of such in

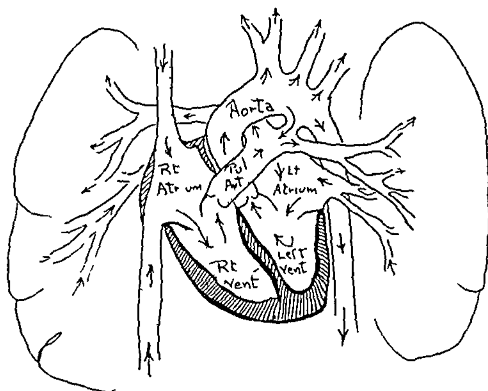


FIGURE 7 Ductus arteriosus abnormally patent after birth showing reversal of blood flow (aorta to pulmonary artery)—diagrammatic

efficiency as years go by is obvious The left heart must compensate for this lowering of effective diastolic aortic pressure and it does so either by working harder or faster in its attempt to maintain an effective systemic circulation It therefore wears out much earlier than would a normal heart to account for the greatly shortened life span of patients so afflicted Left ventricular hypertrophy eventually develops as does great dilatation of the pulmonary artery, in response to its unnatural environment of high pressure blood flow Death results then from either heart failure or subacute bacterial endocarditis the latter infection becoming superimposed on the strained and traumatized tissues of the ductus at the pulmonary artery Occasionally, rupture of the ductus or of the aneurysmal dilatation of the pulmonary artery is responsible for sudden disaster One of the great contributions to surgery and mankind has been the development of a simple and effective method to interrupt this vicious cycle of events

Clinical Findings The average sized ductus gives rise to few, if any symptoms during childhood Its presence is usually detected by discovering a murmur during an acute illness or at routine examination The knowledge that their child has a heart murmur may then lead the parents to suspect minor deviations from their other normal children Growth and

development, as a rule, are within normal limits although after surgical correction the child will usually develop more rapidly an indication that *insidious and unrecognized changes had been present Cyanosis is absent* Dyspnea palpitations and exercise intolerance are not noted until early adult life when congestive heart failure is an ever present threat

The cardiac findings are usually very characteristic and diagnostic There is a continuous murmur through systole and diastole located maximally in the second left intercostal space transmitted upward into the supraclavicular area It has the quality of running machinery,' and a humming top or a train in a tunnel ' An associated thrill is frequently present Very occasionally the systolic or diastolic component of the murmur may be faint or absent making it difficult to be certain of the diagnosis on auscultatory grounds alone A widened pulse pressure (normal systolic and lowered diastolic pressure) develops according to the size of the shunt and the age of the patient

Supportive Data Fluoroscopic and x ray examination when carefully performed will demonstrate prominence of the pulmonary artery markings and the increased pressure in these vessels may almost be visualized by the vigorous pulsations at the hilus of the lungs (hilar dance) The pulmonary artery conus segment of the left cardiac border may be prominent

The electrocardiogram is usually normal In older patients some evidence of left ventricular strain may be seen Right axis deviation is rarely if ever seen unless there be some additional cardiac anomaly to complicate the picture

Angiocardiography is of little or no value unless the opaque dye is introduced directly into the aorta above the lesion Rarely the ductus may be outlined in this manner but most commonly the presence of a ductus can only be suspected by observing simultaneous opacification of the aorta and the pulmonary artery The findings of an increased pressure in the pulmonary artery and a localized increase in its oxygen content by cardiac catheterization is further corroboratory evidence

Surgical Technic Ligation or division of the patent ductus, as perfected and practiced since *1938* results in a surgical cure *provided resort to* operative intervention has been made before the heart and great vessels have become too greatly damaged The operative mortality in childhood should not exceed one per cent In patients with secondary complications such as actual or impending heart failure, subacute bacterial endocarditis and the like the mortality may be somewhat higher For this reason the diagnosis of patent ductus arteriosus in a child over the age of two is considered indication enough for surgical correction without further delay The presence or the history of subacute bacterial endocarditis demands early surgery after a suitable period of antibiotic sterilization has elapsed

In 1907 Munro delivered a treatise before the Philadelphia Academy of Surgery entitled Ligation of the Patent Ductus Arteriosus in which he made a plea for greater diagnostic efforts in this condition Although he even presented in detail an acceptable surgical approach it was not until 1938 that Strieder made the first courageous attempt on the living

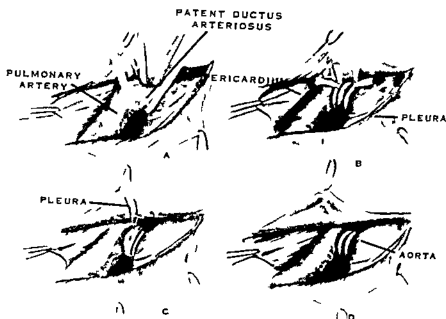


FIGURE 8 Surgical obliteration of patent ductus by the multiple ligation method (transfixion suture through the middle)

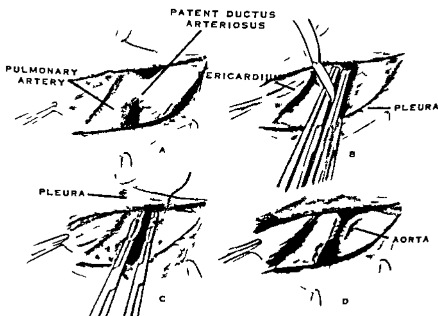


FIGURE 9 Surgical division of patent ductus arteriosus

patient demonstrating that the operation was certainly feasible The second such patient was operated upon later in the same year by Gross who firmly established the procedure and subsequently refined his technic to *insure maximum safety and excellence of results*

Ligation Technic The left chest is opened widely to gain exposure of the hilus of the lung and the superior mediastinum The pleura overlying the vagus nerve in the region of the aortic arch is incised The left pulmonary artery and the recurrent laryngeal nerve can be identified by locating the point of maximal thrill which always lies over the pulmonary artery The nerve is carefully isolated and retracted away from the ductus which is in turn, dissected from its surrounding fibrous attachments for the placement of ligatures Two small umbilical tapes are tightly tied one at the aortic end and the other at the pulmonary artery end of the ductus One or more transfixion suture ligatures are placed through the central portion (Fig 8)

Division and Suture Technic While the general approach to the ductus is the same it is usually necessary to isolate the ductus left pulmonary artery and adjacent portions of aorta more completely and to clean these structures thoroughly of all areolar attachments Actually for best results the identical technic should be carried out when ligation is contemplated This then permits the application of a pair of specially devised ductus clamps one close to the aorta and the other close to the pulmonary artery These clamps will not easily slip nor will they crush the vessel The ductus is divided and the two free ends are closed with continuous arterial silk (Fig 9)

In recent years the trend has been toward division of the ductus because of the possibility (remote when properly performed) of recanalization of the ductus ligated in continuity On the other hand division of the ductus may be somewhat more hazardous especially in the hands of the occasional operator leading to a higher mortality The procedure most easily safely and completely performed by the individual surgeon is the procedure of choice

(b) Coarctation of the Aorta

Definition Coarctation of the aorta is a congenital stenosis complete or partial usually found in the descending arch just distal to the subclavian artery It is frequently associated with the ductus or ligamentum arteriosus This anomaly was first described in 1761 by Morgagni (Fig 10)

Pathology There are two varieties of aortic coarctation the infantile and adult types The infantile type is less common occurring in not more than five per cent of cases It is seen primarily in the newborn or the very young and is commonly associated with other congenital abnormalities It is characterized by a long and diffuse narrowing of the aortic segment involved and often is more proximally located than is the adult type The aortic isthmus that area between the insertion of the ductus and the subclavian artery is the area involved However the narrowing may include the entire transverse arch and extend at times down into the ascending

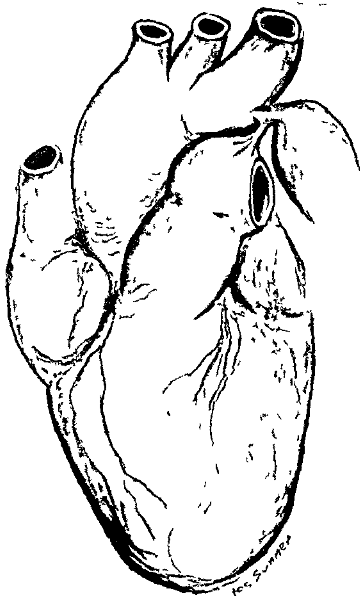


FIGURE 10 *Heart and great vessels to show the anatomical location of coarctation of aorta (adult type)*

portion Occasionally the ductus arteriosus will be patent and when this is the case, should the coarcted area lie proximal to the ductus lower extremity cyanosis is present

In the adult form the obstruction involves a much shorter segment of aorta is most often seen at the insertion of the ligamentum arteriosus and is the usual type seen in the older patient Very rarely the ductus arteriosus may be patent in this group and when this is true the coarcted orifice may be quite small In some of such cases the stenosis is complete

Rather typical changes are seen in the artery above and below the point of constriction Proximally, due to the excessive pressure produced by the

block dilatation thickening of the aortic wall and early degeneration and sclerosis are present in the aorta as well as the subclavian artery With incomplete obstruction varying degrees of thin walled post stenotic dilatation without the sclerotic changes complete the picture

The cardiac effect of the lesion is an increased work load on the left ventricle and left ventricular hypertrophy is noted in approximately seventy five per cent of cases

The blood supply to the trunk and lower extremities is maintained by an extensive collateral circulation circumventing the aortic obstruction through the upper intercostal arteries from the subclavian artery giving rise to anastomotic channels around the shoulder and scapula and on into the internal mammary and deep epigastric arteries

Incidence and Prognosis In Abbott s series of 1000 cases of congenital defects of the cardiovascular system 142 coarctations of the aorta were found The adult form was commoner than the infantile form by five to one and males predominated four to one over females

Seventy five per cent of the untreated cases will die as a direct result of the hemodynamics of the aortic obstruction The usual causes of death are rupture of the aorta from dissecting aneurysm and cardiac decompensation Other complications are cerebral hemorrhage and endarteritis or endocarditis The average age of death in patients untreated surgically is thirty two

Symptoms There are many patients with a mild or moderate form of obstruction who have very few if any symptoms In the more severe forms of coarctation headache vertigo palpitations and blurring of vision on exertion may be the presenting complaint Due to the diminished blood flow in the lower extremities claudication and paresthesias will often develop as a part of the clinical picture

Diagnosis The most important physical finding leading to the diagnosis of coarctation of the aorta is upper extremity hypertension and hypotension or no recordable pressure in the legs Full and bounding pulses in the arms and markedly diminished to absent pulses in the lower extremities complete the picture

Evidence of the marked collateral circulation compensating for the obstruction should next be sought This is noted over the interscapular region where definite pulsations easily palpable will be found and in many instances a systolic bruit can be heard just medial to the border of the scapulae

A systolic murmur is usually heard over the upper precordium and is transmitted to the axilla and/or may be audible over the back

The roentgenogram will confirm the presence of the collateral circulation by showing a notching or scalloping of the inferior edge of the ribs Additional x ray evidence of coarctation often overlooked is the lack of a prominent aortic knob in the PA projection Increase in the size of the left ventricle will be noted in the majority of the older cases of severe obstruction However in the younger patient the notching of the ribs and left ventricular enlargement may not be present by radiographic examination

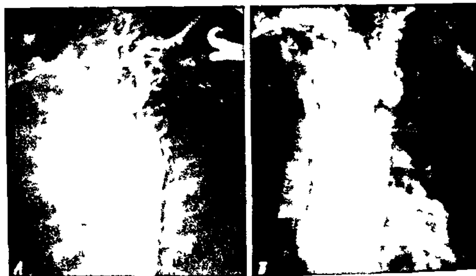


FIGURE 11 Direct aortography illustrating two types of coarctation of the aorta A The infantile type which the aorta below the left subclavian artery is atrophic for a considerable length B The adult type showing a more localized stricture of the aorta at the level of the obliterated ductus arteriosus Note the tremendous dilatation of the internal mammary arteries (collateral circulation)

Electrocardiographic changes of left ventricular preponderance will aid in the overall picture in the older cases where the increased work load has been present over a long period of time

Final confirmation can be afforded by the use of retrograde aortography This is accomplished by injecting the contrast media directly into the proximal aorta through the brachial artery Care should be taken during injection of the dye to protect the brain by hyperoxygenation and tem

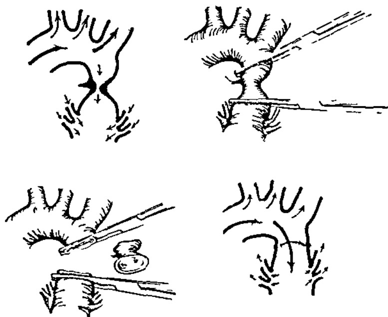


FIGURE 12. Surgical resection of the coarcted segment and end to-end anastomosis.

porary carotid compression Aortography is by no means necessary for the accurate diagnosis of coarctation of the aorta but will give useful added information as to the length and exact location of the stricture and will aid in detecting the presence or absence of associated congenital ab normalities (Fig 11)

Treatment At the present time the surgical relief of coarctation of the aorta is relatively simple and is a curative procedure In most of the cases resection of the coarcted segment and end to-end suture of the divided aorta can be accomplished (Fig 12)

In the longer types it may be necessary to bridge the defect with a preserved homograft Since there are now several acceptable methods for preserving vascular tissues grafting in this area is done with facility Prior to the time when grafts were readily available the left subclavian artery was sacrificed and turned down to restore continuity to the aorta Since this has proved to be an inadequate method the preferred technic today is grafting

The optimum time for operation is between the ages of seven and fifteen years before extensive and possibly irreversible cardiovascular changes have developed While cases in the fourth decade have been successfully operated upon the risk is materially greater due to the marked degenera tive changes in the arterial wall seen after this lapse of time In capable hands the mortality should not exceed five per cent in uncomplicated cases of coarctation of the aorta

II Intracardiac

(a) Pulmonary Stenosis

Definition Pulmonic stenosis is an obstruction of the pulmonary arterial system at or just proximal to the pulmonary valve

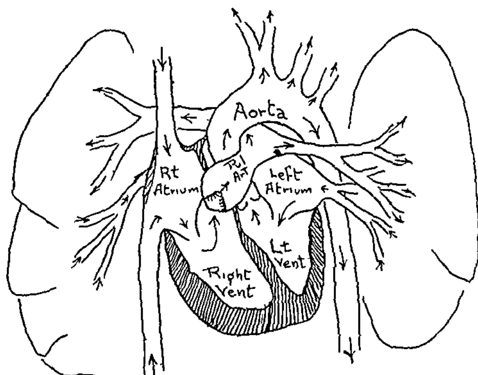
Synonyms Pulmonary valvular stenosis pure pulmonary stenosis pulmonary stenosis with intact interventricular septum pulmonary ste nosis with patent foramen ovale etc

Pathophysiology Pulmonary stenosis may be due to a general narrow ing of the outflow tract of the right ventricle (called the pulmonary conus or infundibulum of the right ventricle) or much more commonly is due to a congenital fusion of the pulmonary valve leaflets into a small cone or megaphone like diaphragm In this condition there is an intact ventricular septum and no malposition of the aorta which arises normally from the left ventricle Therefore all egress of blood from the right ventricle can only be made through the stenotic pulmonary valve Thus as the entire blood flow must pass through the pulmonary artery on its way to the lungs there is no shunt of right heart blood (venous or unoxygenated) into *the left heart or systemic circulation Hence there is no peripheral* oxygen unsaturation and cyanosis is not present (Fig 13)

As the otherwise normal child grows and becomes increasingly active the right ventricle experiences progressively greater difficulty with the dis charge of the returning circulation through the tiny unyielding pulmonary orifice Great dilatation and hypertrophy of the right ventricle gradually ensues Eventually this leads to insufficiency of the tricuspid valve and

to a similar congestion and distention of the right atrium Should the *foramen ovale*, in a given instance, remain as an overlapping valve, rather than closed by fusion, dilatation and patency of this *structure may* de velop With right atrial pressures unnaturally as high or higher than those in the left atrium, a right to left shunt may result Unoxygenated blood then mixes with the returning flow from the pulmonary veins within the left atrium and is pumped out through the left ventricle and aorta producing a constant or intermittent cyanosis especially enhanced by ex

TO HEAD AND UPPER EXTREMITIES



TO TRUNK AND LOWER EXTREMITIES

Figure 13 Diagrammatic representation of pulmonary valvular stenosis with post stenotic dilatation of the pulmonary artery

ercise It is to be emphasized and remembered that this phenomenon is purely a secondary one resulting from long standing unrelieved pulmonary stenosis and is not considered an integral part of the clinical entity of pulmonic stenosis, as it is commonly seen

Clinical Findings As a rule such a patient is asymptomatic until early adolescence when exercise intolerance becomes noticeable Prior to this the typical precordial systolic murmur most prominent in the second and third interspaces on the right will have been noted at the time of routine physical examination A faint thrill may be detectable Dyspnea and in capacity are usually progressive

Supportive Data Radiographically the cardiac silhouette becomes en larged particularly to the right The pulmonary artery conus segment of

the left cardiac border becomes increasingly prominent Great dilatation of the pulmonary artery (post stenotic) beyond the point of valvular obstruction is evident The pulmonary lung fields may show diminution of the normal vascular markings Fluoroscopic evaluation will show the enlargement of the cardiac chambers on the right in contrast to their normal sized neighbors on the left Angiocardiography if desired will more clearly delineate these salient features

The electrocardiogram will reveal a right axis deviation

Cardiac catheterization demonstrating abnormally high pressures within the right ventricle as compared to the much lower readings within the



FIGURE 14 Pulmonary valvulotome introduced through the right ventricle dividing the stenotic valve cone Insert shows the bicuspid nature of the divided pulmonary valve cone

9 Rennie J B The oedematous syndrome of nephritis with special reference to prognosis *Quart J Med (N S)* **16** 21 1947

10 Rosenblum, A H H B Lander and H Popper Lipoid nephrosis complicated by homologous serum jaundice *J Pediat* **35** 465, 1949

11 Rytand, D A Fatal anuria nephrotic syndrome and glomerulonephritis as sequels of dermatitis of poison oak, *Am J Med* **5** 548, 1948

Contents

Final Pathologic Diagnoses

Part I Cardiac Problems

Part II Vascular Problems

Part III Renal Problems